

**ARTEP 1-113-MTP  
MISSION TRAINING PLAN FOR THE  
ASSAULT HELICOPTER BATTALION**



**DECEMBER 2005**

**HEADQUARTERS, DEPARTMENT OF THE ARMY**

**DISTRIBUTION RESTRICTION:** Approved for public release;  
distribution is unlimited.

**This publication is available at Army Knowledge  
Online ([www.us.army.mil](http://www.us.army.mil)) and the General Dennis J.  
Reimer Training and Doctrine Digital Library at  
([www.train.army.mil](http://www.train.army.mil)).**

# **MISSION TRAINING PLAN FOR THE ASSAULT HELICOPTER BATTALION**

## **Contents**

	<b>Page</b>
<b>Preface.....</b>	<b>iv</b>
<b>Chapter 1 Unit Training .....</b>	<b>1-1</b>
1-1. General.....	1-1
1-2. Supporting Material .....	1-1
1-3. Contents .....	1-3
1-4. Mission and Tasks.....	1-4
1-5. Principles of Training.....	1-6
1-6. Training Strategy .....	1-8
1-7. Conducting Training .....	1-12
1-8. Force Protection (Safety) .....	1-14
1-9. Environmental Protection .....	1-15
1-10. Evaluation.....	1-16
1-11. Feedback.....	1-18
<b>Chapter 2 Training Matrixes.....</b>	<b>2-1</b>
2-1. General.....	2-1
2-2. Mission-to-Collective Tasks Matrixes.....	2-1
2-3. Supporting-References-to-Collective Task Listing.....	2-7
<b>Chapter 3 Training Plans.....</b>	<b>3-1</b>
3-1. General.....	3-1
3-2. Long-Range Planning.....	3-2
3-3. Short-Range Planning .....	3-9
3-4. Near-Term Planning .....	3-11
3-5. Training the Headquarters .....	3-15
3-6. Developing Training Exercises.....	3-19
3-7. Mission Outline.....	3-20

---

**Distribution Restriction:** Approved for public release; distribution is unlimited.

\*This publication supersedes ARTEP 1-113-MTP, 31 August 2001.

<b>Chapter 4</b>	<b>Training Exercises</b> .....	<b>4-1</b>
	4-1. General .....	4-1
	4-2. Field Training Exercise .....	4-1
	4-3. Situational Training Exercise .....	4-1
	4-4. Other Training Exercise .....	4-2
	4-5. Objective .....	4-3
	4-6. Interface .....	4-4
	4-7. Training Enhancers .....	4-4
	4-8. Conduct of the FTX .....	4-5
	4-9. T&EO Sequence .....	4-8
	4-10. STX-1 Objective .....	4-11
	4-11. STX-1 Interface .....	4-11
	4-12. STX-1 Preliminary Leader Training .....	4-11
	4-13. Leader Training Tips .....	4-11
	4-14. Training Enhancers .....	4-12
	4-15. Conduct of STX-1 .....	4-13
	4-16. STX-1 Special Situation .....	4-15
	4-17. Support Requirements .....	4-16
	4-18. STX-1 T&EO Sequence .....	4-17
	4-19. Objective .....	4-18
	4-20. Interface .....	4-18
	4-21. Preliminary Leader Training .....	4-18
	4-22. Leader Training Tips .....	4-18
	4-23. Training Enhancers .....	4-19
	4-24. General Situation .....	4-19
	4-25. Special Situation .....	4-21
	4-25. Support Requirements .....	4-21
	4-27. STX-2 T&EO Sequence .....	4-22
<b>Chapter 5.</b>	<b>Training and Evaluation Outlines</b> .....	<b>5-1</b>
	5-1. Introduction .....	5-1
	5-2. Structure .....	5-1
	5-3. Format .....	5-1
	5-4. Use .....	5-2
<b>Chapter 6.</b>	<b>External Evaluations</b> .....	<b>6-1</b>
	6-1. General .....	6-1
	6-2. Preparing the Evaluation .....	6-1
	6-3. Resource Requirements and Planning Consideration .....	6-8
	6-4. Selecting and Training the Evaluators/Observers-Controllers .....	6-9
	6-5. Selecting and Training the Opposing Force .....	6-11
	6-6. Conducting the Evaluation .....	6-12
	6-7. Recording External Evaluation Information .....	6-13
	6-8. Conducting the After-Action Review .....	6-18

<b>Appendix A</b>	<b>Combined Arms Training Strategies .....</b>	<b>A-1</b>
<b>Appendix B</b>	<b>Exercise Operation Orders .....</b>	<b>B-1</b>
<b>Appendix C</b>	<b>Risk Management .....</b>	<b>C-1</b>
<b>Appendix D</b>	<b>Aircraft Survivability .....</b>	<b>D-1</b>
<b>Appendix E</b>	<b>Training Aids, Devices, Simulators, and Simulations.....</b>	<b>E-1</b>
<b>Appendix F</b>	<b>Digital Annex.....</b>	<b>F-1</b>
	<b>Glossary .....</b>	<b>Glossary-1</b>
	<b>References .....</b>	<b>References-1</b>

## Preface

This mission training plan (MTP) provides a descriptive, mission-oriented training program for use in training assault helicopter battalions to perform critical wartime missions. Army operations require worldwide strategic and tactical mobility. As a fully integrated member of the combined arms team, aviation forces conduct combat, combat support (CS), and combat service support (CSS) operations to support combined arms and joint operations. Aviation, as a maneuver force, provides a third dimensional capability to the mobility of the land force. Assault helicopter battalions enable the force commander to rapidly concentrate combat power at the decisive time and place on the battlefield. They give the force commander a highly mobile and rapid means of moving priority combat systems and personnel and supplies throughout the area of operations (AO). In addition, assault helicopter battalions—supported by attack helicopters, appropriate fire and close air support (CAS), and required air defense support—give the force commander a robust air assault force. This air assault force is capable of moving large numbers of combat Soldiers great distances. They operate throughout the battlefield framework. They are capable of conducting operations day and night.

MTPs are a basic source document for collective training; developed to be used by all leaders who have training responsibilities. They are training documents that give leaders an inventory of collective tasks that describe *what* to train. They also give leaders a suggested method of *how* to train to achieve critical wartime mission proficiency for each unit echelon.

This assault helicopter battalion MTP is based on the training principles listed in FM 7-0, FM 7-1, FM 3.04-111, and FM 3.04-113. It complements the Army's collective training doctrine from an aviation assault helicopter battalion commander's perspective. It is intended for all assault helicopter battalions. These units include—

- TOE 01105G000 Assault Battalion.
- TOE 01205G000 Assault Battalion.
- TOE 01205G100 Assault Battalion.
- TOE 01206G100 Assault Battalion.
- TOE 01207G000 Assault Company.
- TOE 01325G100 Assault Battalion.
- TOE 01405A000 Assault Battalion.
- TOE 01209G100 Aviation Support Company, UH-60.
- TOE 63217G300 Forward Support Company, Assault Battalion.

The proponent of this publication is TRADOC. Send comments and recommendations on DA Form 2028 (*Recommended Changes to Publications and Blank Forms*) to Commander U.S. Army Aviation Center, ATTN: ATZQ-TD-D, Fort Rucker, Alabama 36362-5101. Feedback for this ARTEP may be provided on DA Form 7507 (*ARTEP Mission Training Plan User Feedback*).

---

**Note.** For immediate assistance on any MTP related issue, contact DOTD, Doctrine Division at DSN 558-1183 or via e-mail at; [av.doctrine@us.army.mil](mailto:av.doctrine@us.army.mil).

---

This publication applies to the Active Army, the Army National Guard (ARNG)/the Army National Guard of the United States (ARNGUS), and the United States Army Reserve (USAR) unless otherwise stated.

This publication has been reviewed for operations security (OPSEC) considerations.

## Chapter 1

# Unit Training

**1-1. GENERAL.** This mission training plan (MTP) provides the assault helicopter battalion commander, the S3, and leaders with guidance on how to train the key missions of the unit. The specific details of the unit's training program depend on the following factors:

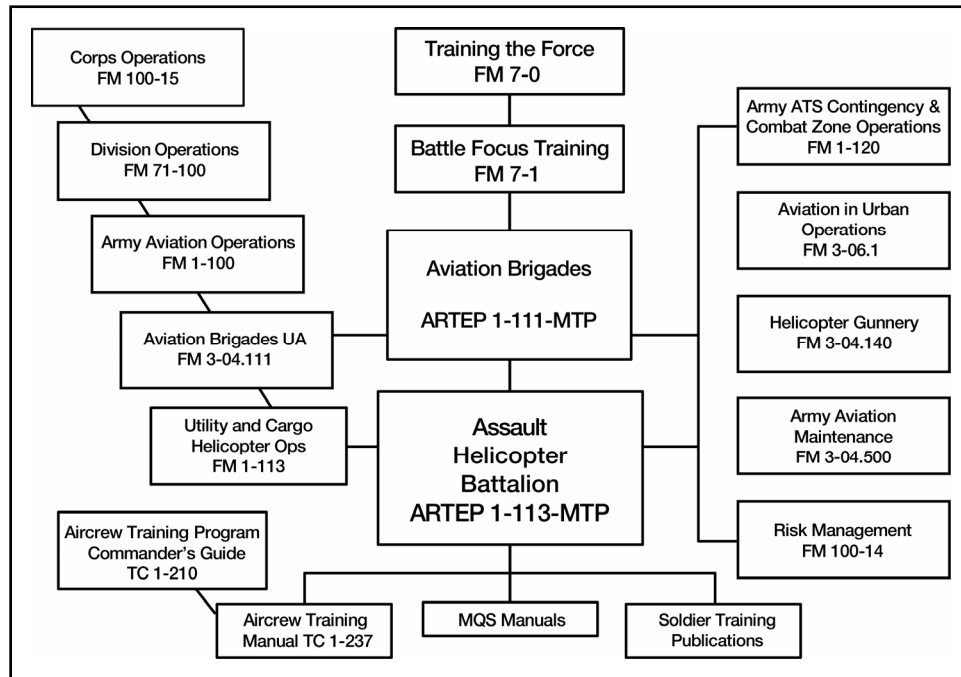
- a. Unit's mission essential task list (METL).
- b. Training directives and guidance established by the chain of command.
- c. Training priorities of the unit.
- d. Training resources and areas available.

---

**Note.** Using the term aviation brigade throughout this document is generally meant to include all aviation brigade sized units—both active and reserve component.

---

**1-2. SUPPORTING MATERIAL.** Aviation forces routinely conduct combat, combat support (CS), combat service support (CSS), and air assault missions as members of combined arms or joint task forces. These missions require aviation commanders and their subordinate leadership to be well versed in the fundamental doctrine governing assault helicopters and the supporting battle tasks. Assault helicopter battalion Soldiers must be prepared to support operations at all levels of command. Often, this support is conducted with minimal guidance and little prior planning and under some of the most severe adverse environmental conditions. The battalion's training program is oriented toward its critical wartime missions. In addition to this MTP, the training program is based on the publications listed below. Figure 1-1 shows the relationship of these publications.



**Figure 1-1. Mission training plan echelon relationship diagram**

a. Soldier's manuals (SMs) for the appropriate military occupational specialty (MOS) and skill level. This includes manuals for MOS 67T and the low-density MOSs held by company and battalion personnel.

b. Soldier training publications (STP) 1-15II-MQS for aviation company grade officers and commissioned grade warrant officers and STP 21-II-MQS for common tasks for lieutenants and captains. The references section contains a complete listing of appropriate STPs.

c. Other supporting doctrinal material.

- (1) ARTEP 1-111-MTP.
- (2) FM 1-100.
- (3) FM 1-113.
- (4) FM 1-120.
- (5) FM 3-04.111.
- (6) FM 3-04.140.
- (7) FM 3-04.300.
- (8) FM 3-04.500.
- (9) FM 3-06.1.
- (10) FM 7-0.
- (11) FM 7-1.
- (12) FM 71-100.
- (13) FM 100-14.
- (14) FM 100-15.
- (15) TC 1-210.
- (16) TC 1-237.



---

**Note.** The Army is fielding a fully integrated training system using CD-ROMs and the Internet. Units are able to download current doctrine from the Army Knowledge Online (AKO) at <https://akocomm.us.army.mil/usapa/>. For immediate assistance on any MTP related issue, please contact DOTD, Doctrine Division at DSN 558-1183/2329 or via e-mail at; [av.doctrine@us.army.mil](mailto:av.doctrine@us.army.mil).

---

**1-3. CONTENTS.** This MTP has six chapters and six appendixes:

a. Chapter 1, Unit training, provides the explanation and organization of this MTP. It stresses aspects of training unique to aviation units. It serves as a foundation for other chapters and appendixes and explains their use. This chapter also explains how to use the MTP to establish an effective training program. It includes doctrinal principles and implications outlined in FM 7-0. Based on these guidelines, commanders must tailor the information to meet the doctrinal requirements for their specific branch.

b. Chapter 2, Training matrixes, shows the relationship between battalion missions, supporting collective tasks, and individual tasks. It also gives references for each collective task sorted by warfighting functions.

c. Chapter 3, Training plans, describes using of the MTP to develop battalion-level training plans and provides mission outlines. It helps commanders prepare training plans for critical wartime missions.

d. Chapter 4, Training exercises, provides guidance on planning, preparing, and executing battalion training exercises. These exercises may be modified to suit the training needs of each unit. This chapter consists of a field training exercise (FTX) and supporting situational training exercises (STXs). They provide training information and a preconstructed scenario. Also, they can serve as a part of an internal and external evaluation.

e. Chapter 5, Training and evaluation outlines, provides training criteria for all collective tasks that the battalion and its subordinate elements—staff, flight companies, headquarters, and CSS sections—must master for the unit to perform its critical wartime missions. Each task is a training and evaluation outline (T&EO) that identifies task steps, performance measures, individual and leader tasks, and opposing force (OPFOR) counter tasks. Each T&EO is part of a mission and, in various combinations, composes the training exercises (STXs and FTXs) in chapter 4.

f. Chapter 6, External evaluations, provides instructions for planning, preparing, and executing evaluations of battalion training exercises. The evaluation involves determining proficiency based on the training objectives of the exercises and this MTP. Normally, the formality and scope of the after-action review (AARs) increase as the level and scope of the training expand. This chapter explains how to conduct an AAR.

g. Appendix A, Combined arms training strategy (CATS), addresses the overarching strategy of training in the combined arms realm as it applies to aviation. CATS is the U.S. Army's training strategy that captures training event frequency, critical gates, and supporting resources. The strategy describes the mix of training for the unit and individual, both now and in the future. In addition, it prescribes the mix of training resources that Army aviation requires for present and long-range training.

h. Appendix B, Exercise operation orders, contains sample operation orders (OPORDs) that give the trainer the process to develop an order to coordinate the execution of an exercise. The sample OPORD is a combat order; that is, it pertains to strategic, operational, or tactical operations and their service support.

i. Appendix C, Risk management, helps the trainer or commander assess tactical, operational, and fratricide hazards associated with a mission. A thorough informed risk assessment, which includes mitigated factors to reduce the overall risk, can be an effective combat multiplier in applying assets to a task with emphasis on protecting the force.

j. Appendix D, Aircraft survivability, centers on the fundamentals of aircraft survivability. It covers how survivability equipment will reduce the vulnerability of Army aircraft. This allows the aircrew to accomplish its immediate mission and to survive to fight another day. It includes the functions of

electronic attack (EA), electronic protection (EP), and electronic support (ES). It also includes a five-fold approach to ensure that Army aircrews are able to accomplish their mission. It provides examples of threat considerations and threat weapon sensors as well as the categories of aircraft survivability equipment (ASE) systems. This appendix gives the tactical operations officer (TOO) guidelines for mission planning, risk assessment, and mission execution.

k. Appendix E, Training aids, devices, simulators, and simulations, presents the United States Army Aviation Center (USAAVNC) simulation strategy to use as a management and planning tool for the Army aviation simulation community. This strategy addresses current and future systems requirements. It supports Army aviation modernization and the process of continuous transformation to Force XXI. It gives recommended training, exercises, and military operations for all echelons. These range from individual trainers through collective, combined arms, and combined and joint exercises. It includes example rehearsals for plans and operations and evaluations of completed missions.

l. Appendix F, Digital annex, introduces the Army battle command system (ABCS) with special emphasis on Force XXI Battle Command and Below (FBCB2) and its capabilities at the company/platoon/platform level. It also shows the interaction of FBCB2 with other digital systems.

#### **1-4. MISSIONS AND TASKS**

a. This MTP contains specified missions found in the table of organization and equipment (TOE) that this unit must perform to accomplish the specified missions. The critical missions are the focus for this unit. The TOE for the assault helicopter organizations is summarized in the preface. Critical missions for the assault helicopter organizations, as found in their CATS, include—

- Air assault operations.
- Air defense operations.
- Air movement operations.
- Air volcano operations.
- Command, control, communications, computers, and intelligence operations.
- Combat service support operations.
- Combat support operations.
- Deployment/redeployment operations.
- Fast Rope Insertion and Extraction System (FRIES)/Special Patrol Infiltration/Exfiltration System (SPIES) operations.
- Mission planning/preparation operations.
- Mobility, countermobility, and survivability operations.
- Personnel recovery/self-recovery operations.
- Aerial reconnaissance and surveillance operations.
- Stability operations and support operations.

b. The key to training and sustaining proficiency of these wartime tasks is to understand how to train to fight at every echelon. Training programs must result in demonstrated tactical and technical competence, confidence, and initiative in Soldiers and their leaders. FM 7-0 (FM 25-100) establishes the Army's training doctrine. FM 7-1 contains techniques and procedures to plan, execute, and assess training. TC 1-210 contains unique guidance for aviation commanders. Every commander is expected to know, understand, and apply the concepts found in these manuals.

(1) Battle-focused training. Battle focus is a concept used to derive peacetime training requirements from wartime missions. Battle-focused training guides the planning, execution, and assessment of each organization's training program. This concept ensures that its members train as they are going to fight. Battle focus is critical throughout the training process. Commanders use battle focus to allocate resources for training based on the unit's METL. Its implementation helps commanders structure a training program that copes with nonmission-related requirements while focusing on mission-essential training activities. Battle focus is recognition that a unit cannot attain proficiency to standard on every task that it is capable of performing—because of time or other resource constraints. However, commanders can achieve a successful training program by narrowing the focus to a reduced number of mission-essential tasks.

(2) Mission training plans. Collective training builds combat teams. It develops critical teamwork needed by units. It also provides a challenging environment where units at various echelons can train to progressively tougher and more realistic conditions. It prepares Soldiers to perform collective tasks that are essential for success in combat through training events. This MTP is the basic source document for the collective training required by an assault helicopter battalion. It is a descriptive training document that gives leaders an inventory of critical tasks that describe what to train. It also gives a suggested method on how to train to achieve critical wartime mission proficiency. The CATS complements MTPs by describing who will be trained and when, where, and how collective tasks will be trained.

(3) Combined arms training strategy. CATS is the Army's overarching training architecture. It contains approved training and doctrinal strategy. It provides the framework for total Army structured training for both units and institutions. CATS functionally groups tasks to guide the integration of tasks into combined-arms oriented training strategies. Current CATS provides doctrine-based training strategies. It includes events, gates, and training resource options for the institution or unit trainer. It integrates training horizontally among levels of a type of unit and vertically across the combined arms and services team. Aviation CATS includes a crosswalk of individual, crew, and collective METL tasks that requires flying hours. It provides a basis for the preparation of a unit's flying-hour program.

(a) The training program developed and executed by the assault helicopter battalion is a component of the Army's CATS. The purpose of CATS is to provide direction and guidance on how the total Army will train. It identifies the resources required to support that training. CATS provides the tools that enable the Army to focus and manage training in an integrated manner. Central to CATS is a series of proponent-generated unit and institutional strategies that describe the training and resources required to train to standard. CATS gives the commander a descriptive menu for training.

(b) The assault helicopter battalion CATS is a descriptive training strategy that provides a means for training the battalion to standard. It lists required training events, critical training gates, training event frequencies, and training resources. The commander selects from this MTP those tasks required to train the METL. The commander then uses the strategies in the CATS to develop a battle-focused training plan and integrates and links METL-driven MTP tasks with CATS training events.

(c) The building blocks of the training program for each critical operation are individual tasks, which are found in appropriate SMs and military qualification standard (MQS) manuals and the ATM-TCs; crew tasks found in the ATM; and the collective unit tasks covered by the T&EOs in chapter 5 of this MTP. These tasks may be trained individually or combined with others to form more complex exercises such as STXs and FTXs described in chapter 4. FM 7-0 and chapter 3 of this MTP outline the process to select tasks for training.

(d) The aviation CATS is built on the premise that about 75 to 80 percent of individual and crew aviator training can be done while performing collective tasks. Individual, crew, and collective tasks requiring flying hours have been crosswalked to determine the operating tempo (OPTEMPO) required in maintaining individual, crew, and collective proficiency. In addition, the CATS provide guidance for using simulators to train specific tasks. It also provides information on task requirements for readiness reporting along with TC 1-210 and TC 1-237.

(4) Integration of Soldier, leader, and collective training. A critical aspect of the battle-focused concept is to understand the responsibility for, and the linkage between, the collective mission-essential tasks and the individual and crew tasks that support them. A unique aspect of Army aviation is that commanders must satisfy individual and aircrew training requirements as individual aviators; however, they also must provide the training guidance, resources, and focus to ensure that aviators are effectively and efficiently trained to standard. Fortunately, commanders have aviation noncommissioned officers (NCOs) and senior warrant officers with the technical and tactical expertise to train, evaluate, and provide management assistance. As a team, the commander, command sergeant major (CSM), and senior standardization officer must jointly coordinate the collective mission-essential tasks and the individual and crew training tasks. The unit will concentrate its efforts on these tasks during a given period. The NCOs primary role is to train and develop individual Soldier skills. The standardization officer's primary role is to train and develop individual aviator skills. Soldier's at every level train to established standards during individual and collective training.

**1-5. PRINCIPLES OF TRAINING.** These principles are based on the premise that training is the process that melds human and material resources into the required capabilities for the Army to accomplish assigned strategic roles. Aviation units are expected to fight and train as members of combined arms and joint teams. An assault helicopter battalion commander must prepare the staff to plan for operations across the warfighting functions, focusing on operations of the division or corps commander. This MTP is based on the training principles listed in figure 1-2. (See FM 7-0 for more information.)

- **Commanders are responsible for unit training.**
- **NCOs train individuals, crews, and small teams.**
- **The unit—**
  - **Trains as a combined arms and joint team.**
  - **Trains for combat proficiency using—**
    - **Realistic conditions**
    - **Performance-oriented training.**
    - **Battle-focused training.**
  - **Trains to standard using appropriate doctrine.**
  - **Trains to adapt.**
  - **Trains to maintain and sustain.**
  - **Trains using multiechelon techniques.**
  - **Trains to sustain proficiency.**
  - **Trains and develop leaders.**

**Figure 1-2. Principles of training**

a. **Commanders are Responsible for Training.** Commanders are responsible for the training and performance of their Soldiers and units. They are the primary training managers and trainers for their organization, are actively engaged in the training process, and adhere to the principles of training. To accomplish their training responsibility, commanders must—

- Be present at training to the maximum extent possible.
- Base training on mission requirements.
- Train to applicable Army standards.
- Assess current levels of proficiency.
- Provide the required resources/fence off external distracters.
- Develop and execute training plans that result in proficient individuals, leaders, and units.

b. **NCOs Train Individuals, Crews, and Small Teams.** NCOs continue the soldierization process of newly assigned enlisted Soldiers and begin their professional development. NCOs are responsible for conducting standards-based, performance-oriented, battle-focused training. They identify specific individual, crew, and small team tasks that support the unit's collective mission essential tasks; plan, prepare, rehearse, and execute training; and evaluate training and conduct AARs to provide feedback to the commander on individual, crew, and small team proficiency. Senior NCOs coach junior NCOs to master a wide range of individual tasks.

c. **Trains as Combined Arms and Joint Team.** Army doctrine places a premium on teamwork. When committed to battle, each unit must be prepared to execute combined arms, joint, and coalition operations. They must do so without additional training or lengthy adjustment periods. Combined arms proficiency develops when battalions train together. Leaders must regularly practice METL tasks across the full wartime spectrum of combat, CS, and CSS units. Assault helicopter battalions, other than in the air assault division, are not normally integrated into a *brigade slice*; however, commanders must actively seek opportunities to train across the warfighting functions. Such training is critical for the aviation leaders and staffs to prepare to fight aviation task forces as members of a larger combined or joint operation task force or to act as the command and staff for the combined arms task force. Participating in and

coordinating training strategies with other commanders—formally and informally—is critical to the process. Quarterly training briefs (QTBs), preparation of long-range training calendars, and development of annual flying-hour programs offer opportunities to plan combined training exercises.

d. **Trains for Combat Proficiency.** The goal of all training is to achieve the standard. This training develops and sustains combat-capable warfighting organizations. To achieve this goal, units must train to standard under realistic conditions. Achieving standards requires hard work by commanders, staff officers, unit leaders, and Soldiers. Within the confines of safety and common sense, commanders and leaders must be willing to accept less-than-perfect results initially and must demand realism in training.

e. **Trains to Standard Using Appropriate Doctrine.** Training must be done to the Army standard and conform to Army doctrine. In cases in which mission tasks involve emerging doctrine or nonstandard tasks, commanders establish the tasks, conditions, and standards using mission orders and guidance; lessons learned from similar operations; and their professional judgment. The next higher commander approves the creation of the standards for these tasks. FM 3-0 provides the doctrinal foundation. Supporting doctrinal manuals describe common tactics, techniques, and procedures (TTP) that permits commanders and organizations to adjust rapidly to changing situations. Doctrine provides a basis for a common vocabulary across the force. In units, new Soldiers will have little time to learn nonstandard procedures. Therefore, units must train to the Army standard contained in the MTP and Soldier training publications while applying Army doctrine and current regulatory guidance.

f. **Trains to Adapt.** Commanders train and develop adaptive leaders and units and prepare their subordinates to operate in positions of increased responsibility. Repetitive, standards-based training provides relevant experience. Commanders intensify training experiences by varying training conditions. Training experiences, coupled with timely feedback, build competence. Leaders build unit, staff, and Soldier confidence when they consistently demonstrate competence. Competence, confidence, and discipline promote initiative and enable leaders to adapt to changing situations and conditions. They improvise with the resources at hand, exploit opportunities, and accomplish their assigned mission in the absence of orders. Commanders, at every echelon, integrate training events in their training plans to develop and train imaginative, adaptive leaders and units.

g. **Trains to Maintain and Sustain.** Maintenance training is a vital part of every training program. Readiness—as a function of training, personnel, and equipment availability—directly reflects the number of missions that a unit can accomplish. Balancing the often-competing demands of a high mission OPTEMPO with maintenance training proficiency is the challenge of leaders at all levels. During surges of high aviation training—such as FTXs, Army training and evaluation programs (ARTEPs), and combat training center (CTC) rotations—aircraft readiness often decreases. An increase follows as the training intensity slows. Commanders are challenged to balance maintenance and training to remain in the training band of excellence. Soldiers and leaders are responsible for maintaining all assigned equipment and supplies in a high state of readiness to support training or operational missions. Units must be capable of fighting for sustained periods of time with the equipment that they are issued. Soldiers must become experts in both the operation and maintenance of their equipment. This link between training and sustainment is vital to mission success.

h. **Trains Using Multiechelon Techniques.** Aviation units require technically and tactically proficient Soldiers. Commanders must use all available resources to maximum efficiency. The aviation CATS reflects multiechelon training to optimize training opportunities at all levels. Therefore, individual and crew sustainment training must be an integral part of a unit's ongoing collective training. However, not all individual and crew training can be done while units are engaged in training a collective task. Some training resources must be allocated to individual and crew training as outlined in appropriate ATMs. CATS takes this training into consideration and reflects the OPTEMPO required to support these tasks.

i. **Trains to Sustain Proficiency.** Major changes have been made to the aircrew training program (ATP). Historically, aviation units focused on currency at the individual level instead of collective proficiency. The aviation CATS reflects sustained individual, crew, and collective proficiency. TC 1-210, individual aircraft ATMs, and this MTP outline the process. The CATS has been crosswalked with the battle level training model (BLTM) to ensure adequate OPTEMPO (live, virtual, or constructive) and with AR 220-1 to reflect readiness requirements. Commanders develop and execute a training program that builds collective proficiency based on sustained individual and crew training.

j. Trains and Develop Leaders. Commanders have a duty and execute a vital role in leader training and leader development. They teach subordinates how to fight and how to train. They mentor, guide, listen to, and “think with” subordinates. They train leaders to plan training in detail, prepare for training thoroughly, execute training aggressively, and evaluate short-term training proficiency in terms of desired long-term results. Training and developing leaders is an embedded component of every training event. Nothing is more important to the Army than building confident, competent, adaptive leaders for tomorrow.

(1) Use performance-oriented training. Aviators are aware of the need to build experience and expertise by frequently performing critical tasks and missions. The underlying premise of the task-based aviation CATS is to sustain a proficient level of expertise at critical individual, crew, and collective tasks. Optimizing training resources to practice accepted tasks, conditions, and standards on a continuing basis sustains this level of expertise. Aviation commanders must use structured training, including available training aids, devices, simulators, and simulations (TADSS), to optimize the expenditure of limited flying hours. In addition, leaders should become familiar with the insertion of high-technology training techniques and other Army Training XXI initiatives such as distance learning, the Reimer Digital Library (<http://www.adtdl.army.mil>), and the AKO (<https://www.us.army.mil>).

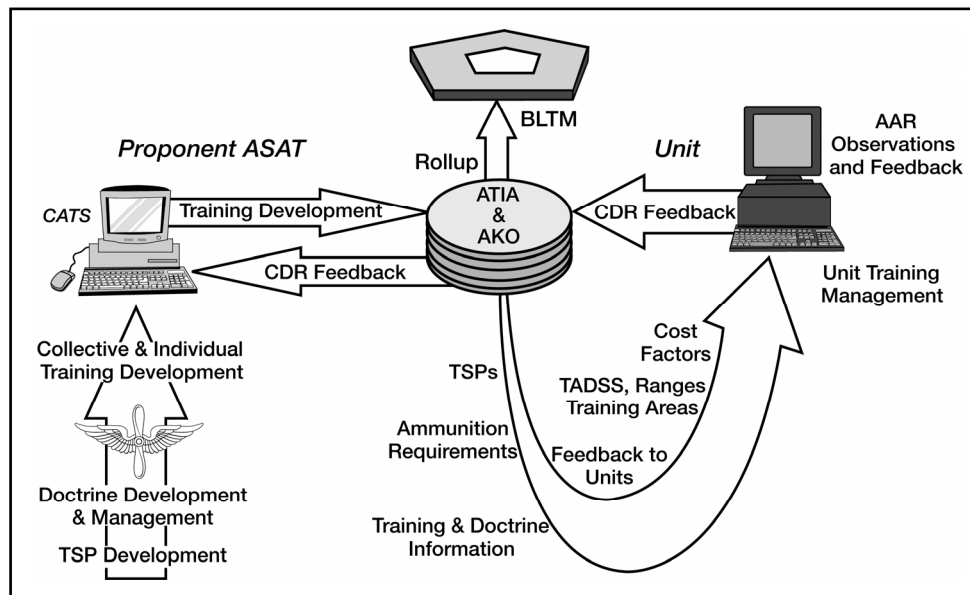
(2) Train with a challenge. Realistically, intellectually and physically challenging training excites and motivates Soldiers and leaders. It builds competence and confidence by developing and honing skills. Aviators must operate their assigned aircraft proficiently and be able to lead tactical missions. They must be confident, proficient aviators rather than merely current pilots. Individuals and crews must be prepared to fight the combined arms fight—often at night using night vision devices in adverse environmental conditions. Individual, crew, and collective training must be conducted to standard on a continuing basis. Aviation maintenance and rearming and refueling personnel, leaders, staffs, commissioned officers, warrant officers, and enlisted personnel must all be challenged to use the capabilities of their unique weapon systems to the optimum.

(3) Make commanders the primary trainers. One of the keys to success is proficient leadership at each level of command. Leaders must understand the training process and their unique responsibilities. Leaders must be given the resources and guidance to train to warfighting standards. Commanders set the standards, personally and professionally, in and out of the cockpit. They plan, integrate, and provide guidance and resources for battalion training. The toughest training challenge for most commanders is to train a competent warfighting staff that has mastered the numerous tasks included in this MTP. Commanders are responsible for the safety program, standardization program, and ATPs. All aviation commanders have subordinate leaders (officers and NCOs), staff officers, and standardization instructor pilots (SIPs). These officers are specifically trained to support aviation training. Aviation battalion commanders normally fight and lead from their designated aircraft. They are expected to maintain the highest level of proficiency in the aircraft. They train commanding officers (COs) and evaluate platoons. Therefore, the battalion commander focuses company training and integrates the company into combined arms training. The company commander integrates the company into the combined arms fight. Like the battalion commander, the CO is expected to become a pilot in command (PC) and a highly proficient crewmember. The company commander integrates the platoons and executes company training. The company commander trains platoon leaders and evaluates individuals and crews. The platoon leaders and unit instructor pilots (IPs) help the CO ensure that crews are properly trained.

**1-6. TRAINING STRATEGY.** This MTP's role is to facilitate planning, preparation, and execution of unit training in a logical and efficient manner. The commander plans, prepares, and conducts unit training. However, the commander requires significant help from numerous agencies within the chain of command to ensure that the battalion's training is maximized within available resourcing. The commander must understand Army training doctrine (FM 7-0 and FM 7-1) as it relates to the commander's specific warfighting requirements. The commander also must understand the resourcing and training development processes that are designed to facilitate his success.

a. Training Development Process. Figure 1-3 shows the Army's process to develop training for Soldiers. The process for an assault helicopter battalion is initiated at the USAAVNC. Aviation doctrine (field manuals, TTPs) and training publications (CATS, MTPs, ATMs, STPs, TSPs) are developed and continually updated with feedback from commanders. These manuals are published and placed into a

digital database for access by commanders and staffs and resourcing personnel. As such, commanders and staffs must become familiar with the Reimer Digital Library (RDL) process to enable them to access digital publications.



**Figure 1-3. Training development process**

b. Aviation Training Vision. The aviation branch's training vision is to develop a realistic and executable Army aviation training strategy. This strategy will continue to provide the force with highly motivated aviation Soldiers. It also will give the force leaders (that are equipped with modern systems) world class proficiency. The leaders will operate in organizations that are inherently versatile with maneuver advantage and warfighting effectiveness that will influence all dimensions of the current and future battlespace. Aviation commanders are expected to be proficient task force commanders, capable of planning and leading forces across the warfighting functions. Aviation commanders are expected to develop training strategies that—

- Develop battle-focused training based on current training doctrine.
- Conduct task-based training based on unit CATS and METL.
- Train leaders at every level.
- Train combined arms staffs.
- Focus on proficiency rather than currency.
- Focus on warfighting needs and readiness.
- Maximize individual, crew, and collective simulation to allow units to enter live training at a higher level.

c. Battalion Commander's Training Strategy. A battalion commander's training strategy is to provide structured training. The training prepares the Soldiers to deploy, fight, and win in combat at any intensity level, anywhere in the world. The battalion commander's strategy provides task-based, structured training. It incorporates the three training environments (constructive, virtual, and live). The battalion commander's strategy focuses on the target audience—Soldiers, leaders, staffs, and subordinate units. It allows training progress in a crawl/walk/run fashion through the training environments. This training progress ensures that proficiency is gained at the lower level before Soldiers move to the next level. The strategy reflects a thorough analysis and understanding of his unit's METL, CATS, ATM, and this MTP. It synchronizes with the battalion commander's specific set of resource constraints and training emphasis.

(1) The battalion's METL forms the basis for the organization's training plans. It is stabilized, when approved, and is normally modified only if changes occur in wartime missions. No attempt should be made to prioritize tasks within the METL. By definition, all tasks that have been placed on the METL are equally essential to ensure mission accomplishment. METL and available resources will form the framework of the battalion training strategy. The METL will establish the width, and the available resources will set the depth.

(2) The training planning process, outlined in FM 7-1, links unit METL and individual Soldier and aircrew training with the execution of battle-focused training. Commanders initiate the process using subordinates, key staff members, warrant officers, and NCO leaders to assess the training level on mission-essential tasks. The process is two phased—long- and short-range planning. The aircrew training is an integral part of these plans and must be reflected on long- and short-range calendars. Most importantly, it must be specifically addressed in the commander's quarterly training guidance. It also must be an integral part of QTBs at all levels of command. Aviation commanders must become familiar with FM 7-0 and FM 7-1. They are used to format training plans, QTBs, and resourcing documents within divisions and corps.

(3) Because FM 7-0 and FM 7-1 do not consider some unique aspects of aviation training, additional guidance for aviation commanders is included in TC 1-210. Aviation commanders use it as a guide to develop and execute an ATP that focuses on individual, crew, and collective proficiency. TC 1-210 provides guidance on integrating the CATS, MTP, ATMs, and appropriate resourcing and readiness regulations.

(4) Maintenance capabilities and training plans must be synchronized. Army training doctrine challenges commanders to train to sustain proficiency, or in other words, sustain proficiency within the band of excellence. The aviator's challenge comes with often competing demands to keep aviation maintenance within the band and sustain training excellence. Aviation commanders must include the maintenance factor in planning to sustain their band of excellence. Individual, collective, and leader proficiency increases during training surges—such as FTXs, ARTEPs, and CTC rotations. However, during these same periods of high training intensity, aircraft maintenance excellence—as measured by aircraft operational readiness rates and bank time—will gradually decrease. As training intensity slows, the status of aircraft maintenance will increase. These effects are manageable.

(5) A key element in any unit training strategy is to identify critical training gates. These are defined as training events that must be executed to standard before the Soldier or unit moves on to a more difficult or costly training event or task.

(a) Training gates follow the crawl/walk/run method. For instance, if the training strategy requires the unit to conduct an FTX and an STX has been identified as a critical training gate for the FTX, the unit must execute the training tasks contained in the STX to standard before conducting the FTX.

(b) Standards for all tasks must be clearly defined so that the trainer can assess whether his Soldiers or units is ready to move to more complex training events. The provision for critical training gates recognizes that the task force METL and the task force commander's assessment of his unit's training status will determine the selection and timing of the collective training exercises in the company team's training strategy.

d. Gunnery. The UH-60A/L is configured and mission-profiled to be equipped with door gunners. FM 3-04.140, states, in part—to make helicopter crews and units work together as a team, the commander must execute a well-planned, realistic, and consistent training program . . . the unit commander's training assessment and planning are essential to the success of unit level gunnery training program . . . the goal of this training is to maximize combat ready crews. Door gunners are an essential element in maintaining the defensive posture for assault helicopters and must be able to acquire and engage a variety of targets from varied flight profiles. DA Pam 350-38 mandates that 90 percent of the assigned M60D gunners must have completed qualification according to FM 3-04.140 and table X within the past 12 months. DA Pam 350-38 also establishes the resource requirement for two door gunners per aircraft as assigned. An effective door gunnery training program is progressive and consists of 10 training tables that progress in numerical order from individual marksmanship training to multiship live fire.

e. Standardization Program. The aviation commander is responsible for his unit's standardization program. According to AR 34-4, the objectives of standardization are to improve and sustain proficiency



and readiness among Soldiers and units throughout the Army. Universal application of approved practices and procedures and a reduction of the adverse effects of personnel turbulence (such as retraining) following reassignment will accomplish this goal. The commander's primary standardization staff members include subordinate commanders, unit standardization officers, and NCOs.

f. **Aviation Training Balance.** The status of aviation unit training depends on the proficiency level of individuals, crews, and unit collective training. Developing individual and crew skills through readiness-level progression initially sets the foundation for collective proficiency. There are battalion-level requirements; however, collective proficiency is assessed at the company level and is the basis of the aviation battle-focused training program. The key to success in training is balance and consistent flying as opposed to peaks and valleys. Commanders should ensure that collective training is conducted whenever possible with an uncooperative OPFOR. The aircraft survivability equipment trainer (ASET-IV) or tactical radar threat generator (TRTG) should be used, as well as observer/controllers (OCs). In addition, multiple integrated laser engagement system (MILES)/air-ground engagement system (AGES) should be used whenever possible. It helps show the crews what correct collective training looks like. Balance means that collective training is not funded at the expense of individual/crew training. However, commanders can conduct individual/crew training as part of collective training events. A major opportunity will be to integrate the aviation combined arms tactical trainer (AVCATT) into the unit's collective training strategy as a mission planning, rehearsal, execution, and AAR tool.

g. **Resourcing.** Resourcing is a major challenge for all commanders. Appendix A of this MTP discusses CATS. It helps commanders identify, quantify, and acquire training resources. Aviation commanders must understand and work the resourcing processes. Unfortunately, funding for flying hours and allocating flying hours do not flow from Headquarters, Department of the Army (HQDA) together. It is not unusual to receive flying hours without adequate dollars to support the expenditure of these hours. To be successful, dollars and hours must be tracked concurrently. Often it is a matter of educating higher-level commanders and staffs. This resource planning can be done very effectively during a division commander's QTB.

h. **Readiness.** An assault helicopter battalion commander submits a recurring unit status report (USR) according to guidance contained in AR 220-1, TC 1-210, and TC 2-237. The report determines a unit's status by comparing selected personnel, equipment, and training factors to wartime requirements and by using the commander's overall assessment of the unit. The unit training level indicates the unit's ability to perform assigned wartime missions based on the demonstrated proficiency of subordinate units, leaders, and Soldiers and the availability of critical resources required to support METL training. Proficiency is measured in terms of the unit's demonstrated ability to perform the tasks as stated in the approved unit METL. Commanders use results from recent external evaluation of MTP standards, training densities at the CTCs, emergency deployment readiness exercises, FTXs, CPXs, combined arms live-fire exercises, operational readiness exercises, and other training events described in the unit's CATS. TC 1-210 and TC 1-237 provide crew readiness guidelines. This evaluation emphasizes collective proficiency—rather than currency—as the standard for individual aviators, crews, and units. Most aviation units are funded and supported to a command and control (C2) level of readiness.

i. **Sustainment Training.** Once individuals and units have trained to a required level of proficiency, leaders must structure collective and individual training plans to repeat critical task training at the minimum frequency necessary to sustain proficiency. Army units prepare to accomplish wartime missions by frequent sustainment training on critical tasks rather than by infrequent peaking to the appropriate level of wartime proficiency. Sustainment training enables crews and individuals to operate in the band of excellence described in FM 7-0 by appropriate repetitions of critical task training. MTPs, ATMs, and the individual training evaluation program (ITEP) are tools to help achieve and sustain collective, crew, and individual proficiency. The aviation task-based CATS crosswalks these tools to support the development of unit training plans.

j. **Training Management.** Historically, the ATP reflects the requirements necessary to train individual aviators to some level of proficiency as outlined in appropriate ATMs and to maintain currency as outlined in AR 95-1. With the advent of aviation forces capable of conducting maneuver operations, the concept of an ATP has grown to include training of those individual, crew, and collective training tasks needed to accomplish joint and combined arms operations. To ensure proficiency at all levels, the

commander's collective challenges include developing a battle-focused ATP in concert with the battle-focused plans of the other combined arms team members. It also includes synchronizing individual crew and collective training and managing scarce resources such as flying hours, time, and maintenance support. Training and providing resources for an aviation battalion are the same as training and providing resources for other battalions with one exception. The exception is the division. The division three-cycle time-management system to plan and conduct training does not usually apply. The resulting challenge is to ensure that aviation battalions have the same opportunities and time as other battalions to adequately prepare for their METL.

k. Training Aids, Devices, Simulators, And Simulations (TADSS). It is difficult to train and maintain a modern aviation battalion at a T-level of proficiency without using TADSS. Resources, environmental restrictions, personnel tempo (PERSTEMPO), and safety put serious limitations on the principle to train as we fight. ATPs must reflect structured training programs that use available TADSS for individual, crew, and collective training. Structured training programs with supervision and after-action reviews are necessary for individual, crew, and collective simulation training periods. Commanders must ensure that TADSS are included in long-range planning. Commanders are encouraged to become familiar with the Army's training modernization process, Army Training XXI, to ensure that they can capitalize on high-technology training concepts such as distance learning via classroom XXI.

l. Protecting the Force (Safety). Protecting aviation Soldiers and their weapon systems is a way of life in the aviation business. An effective training program that is well thought out and planned along with appropriate regulations and guidance is arguably the most important factor in any unit's safety program—when it is embraced by every Soldier in the unit. Flying by the book does not hinder a unit's battle focus but will actually enhance it. Risk management, crew coordination training, crew endurance programs, and all of the other facets of an ATP set the tasks, conditions, and standards for training as we will fight. Appendix C addresses risk management.

**1-7. CONDUCTING TRAINING.** (This assault helicopter battalion MTP facilitates planning, preparation, coordination, and execution of unit training in a logical and efficient manner. Coordination is not discussed as a separate step; however, it must take place throughout the entire eight-step training process. Continuous coordination reduces the likelihood of unforeseen training distracters. It helps ensure that enough resources will be on hand for training. It gives the commander a proactive means to identify and address issues before they become serious challenges. Coordination is the thread that binds the eight-step training process together. It should be encouraged at each level of command. Coordination between infantry and aviation company commanders, as an example, can often lead to valuable, mutually supported training opportunities for both units. As in tactical operations, planning lays the foundation for successful execution of the battalion's training plan. It is an expression of the commander's vision—based on an understanding of the unit's mission, doctrine, capabilities, supporting and supported units' doctrine and capabilities, enemy capabilities, training philosophy, and the training environment. The following covers several aspects of the planning process.

a. Planning for the training program involves leaders at all levels of the unit organization. Each subordinate must understand the higher commander's intent. In turn, the leader must develop his own intent and synchronize his training with his commander's plan.

(1) The aviation brigade commander is the primary trainer of all the battalions within the brigade. The aviation brigade commander develops a comprehensive, long-term training strategy encompassing a variety of training events (such as FTXs and STXs). Based on the unit's METL, the commander makes an initial assessment of the entire brigade, including the assault helicopter battalion and its companies, to identify systemic weaknesses. The commander develops a training focus and specifies the individual, crew, and collective tasks he wants to train and evaluate. An aviation brigade and all of its battalions must synchronize its training plan with the division/corps commanders and supported units to maximize aviation training while flying in support of supported commanders. This is critical to the planning process.

(2) The battalion commander will use the brigade commander's plan to define his responsibilities and to develop and execute his own training strategy. The battalion commander helps the company commanders plan and execute training for their units. The battalion commander will usually focus on individual leader training, crew training, and collective tasks and battle drills, primarily through by

using STXs. Again, the battalion commander must coordinate and synchronize the training program with supported units to maximize training opportunities.

(3) Company leaders then focus on individual, crew, and collective training, primarily at the crew level. Companies should be able to perform all collective tasks and battle drills according to standards and guidelines provided by the appropriate field manuals, MTPs, ATMs, and unit standing operating procedures (SOPs). To accomplish this collective training, companies should plan and execute limited STXs before taking part in battalion-level training. These exercises can increase the confidence level of individual crew member and provide valuable operational experience. In addition, the company commander can use the AVCATT, sand-table exercises, rehearsal of concept (ROC) drills, and OPORD drills to ensure aircrews have a basic understanding of the tasks that they must execute.

(4) TC 1-210 provides critical guidance to commanders at all levels on how to integrate individual, crew, and collective training into their aviation training strategy. Aviation commanders use a crawl/walk/run strategy for individual and crew training and then integrate individual and crew sustainment training into their collective training strategy.

b. In developing the battalion training plan, leaders at all levels should follow the principles outlined in FM 7-0 and FM 7-1. In addition, they should use this MTP, the ATM, and TC 1-210 as guides. They should employ the following development tools from this MTP.

(1) The lists in chapter 2 and the assault helicopter battalion CATS identify the battalion collective tasks and leader tasks used during training exercises.

(2) The mission outlines in chapter 3 show the hierarchy of related missions that also must be trained to meet the commander's goals. The outlines are adjustable, allowing leaders to tailor STXs to their needs.

(3) Chapter 4 provides guidance for planning and conducting exercises used to train designated missions (FTXs) or single tasks or groups of related tasks (STXs). TC 1-210 and the CATS support the integration of individual and crew training into these FTXs and STXs.

(4) Chapter 5 contains T&EOs for the battalion collective tasks that support the critical wartime operations.

(5) Chapter 6 provides guidance for planning, conducting, and evaluating company exercises.

c. There is never enough time to train everything. In developing their training plans, leaders must prioritize the tasks that require training. They must focus on their units' biggest operational challenges and on their most difficult sustainment skills. Before training begins, commanders must conduct a training meeting with all leaders in their units—including company commanders, company first sergeants, and company standardization and company safety officers—according to TC 25-30, to analyze training requirements and prioritize tasks. This kind of session also can help identify weak areas that require the attention of trainers and leaders.

d. Once the unit leaders have identified the tasks to be trained, they must integrate them into a training schedule. The company commander may submit a personal list of the tasks and related training events to the battalion commander. The battalion commander, in turn, develops his own list, but must review the company commander's recommendations. Once the commander has approved the list of tasks and related training events, the battalion commander includes them on the battalion training schedule. The battalion commander can use the following procedures:

(1) List the tasks according to their priority and the frequency with which they need to be trained.

(2) Determine the amount of time required, and decide how multiechelon training will be used.

(3) Determine the site for the training.

(4) Determine who will be responsible for what. The leader of the element being trained must always be involved.

(5) Organize training needs into blocks of time and required training resources—such as ammunition, MILES equipment, and suitable training areas.

e. Aviation OPTEMPO is a major resourcing challenge for the Army; it receives significant attention. Most aviation units are resourced at a C2 level of readiness as defined by the CATS.

Commanders must be aware of the funds allocated to fund the flying-hour program. They must ensure that they are programmed to fund the maintenance necessary to execute the training strategy. Maintenance cannot be separated from training. Therefore, it must be included in any training plan.

f. The importance of a QTB—annual training brief (ATB) for Reserve Component (RC) units—to the battalion commander cannot be overemphasized. It is the forum in which commanders identify their training resource needs and get resource commitments from the higher commander. It provides an opportunity for the battalion's leadership to discuss warfighting and training challenges with their senior commander. The focus should be on the unit's proficiency level at the individual, crew, and collective levels. QTBs are considered to be short-range briefings conducted by senior commanders to review and approve the training plans of subordinate units. It is an opportunity for a senior commander to teach subordinates the fine points of his philosophy and strategies in all aspects of warfighting. It also is an excellent opportunity for a subordinate commander and his key leaders to gain a better understanding of how their METL relates to the battle-focused training programs of their senior commanders and peers.

g. Army National Guard (ARNG) aviation units continue to face multiple challenges. These challenges include equipment modernization, declining resources, and ever-increasing operational requirements. Tactically, the most challenging issue for the commander is to accomplish collective training. Commanders may become more innovative in their approach to training opportunities. They do this by managing and allocating resources based on a tier concept to meet readiness requirements. Inactive duty training (IDT) and additional flight training periods (AFTPs) are used mainly for individual and crew training. Annual training periods are focused toward collective training. These training periods include rotational deployments in support of Joint Chiefs of Staff (JCS) exercises, National Training Center (NTC)/Joint Readiness Training Center (JRTC) support, and worldwide partial selective reserve call-ups. In addition, ARNG aviation units remain a valuable asset in state and local emergencies. This dual mission capability, unique to the ARNG, meets this need. At the same time, this capability strengthens ties to the local community.

h. All good training, regardless of the specific collective, leader, and/or individual tasks being executed, must comply with certain common requirements. These include adequate preparation, effective presentation and practice, and thorough evaluation. The execution of training includes preparing for training, conducting training, and recovering from training.

## **1-8. FORCE PROTECTION (SAFETY)**

a. Safety is a component of force protection. Military history clearly reveals risk as a principle of operations and the severe consequences of not effectively managing it. Military operations are inherently risky and dangerous whether in training or in actual operations. The element of risk, along with the combined effects of terrain, time, and the environment—and the designed efforts of the enemy to induce failure—can combine to produce disastrous results. The outcome cannot be left to play out according to chance or in the hope that things will work out well. As an institution, the Army demands responsible action, which includes protecting Soldiers as they accomplish their mission. Therefore, complacency or a cavalier acceptance of risk is not acceptable. Articulating risk—collecting data, quantifying risk, and making a decision—is a command responsibility.

b. The purpose of risk management is to identify operational risks and to take reasonable measures to reduce or eliminate hazards. Risk management allows units to operate successfully in high-risk environments. Leaders at every level have the responsibility to identify hazards, to take measures to reduce or eliminate hazards, and then to accept risk only to the point that the benefits outweigh the potential losses. The Army's doctrinal manuals articulate the risk-management process as the principal risk-reduction tool. Risk management is not an add-on feature to the decisionmaking process, but is a fully integrated element of planning and executing operations. The goal is to make risk management a routine part of planning and executing operational missions. Therefore, it is fully integrated into this MTP (see appendix C).

c. Commanders incorporate risk management into all training plans and supporting training events. The nature of the profession is inherently dangerous. Commanders must train their units to tough standards under the most realistic conditions possible. Applying the risk-management process will not detract from this training goal but will enhance the execution of highly effective, realistic training. Risk

management is a continuous process for each mission or training event. It must be integral to military decisions, be tied into each training plan, and become a continuous part of preparation for training.

d. Safety demands total chain of command involvement in planning, preparing, executing and evaluating training. The chain of command for responsibilities is—

- (1) Commanders.
- (2) Staff.
- (3) Subordinate leaders.
- (4) Individual Soldiers.

**1-9. ENVIRONMENTAL PROTECTION.** Protecting natural resources is an ever-increasing concern to the Army. All unit leaders have the responsibility to decrease and, if possible, eliminate damage to the environment when conducting training. The commander's challenge is to conduct tough, realistic training while complying with environmental restrictions.

a. Environmental awareness. The three general areas most commonly applied to environmental awareness are maneuver, logistics and maintenance, and gunnery.

(1) Maneuver. All defensive and offensive tactical operations require an element to maneuver. Most training areas have environmental restrictions that a unit must follow when conducting tactical operations. Some examples of these are where to cross a stream, what area to drive over, where to place a forward arming and refueling point (FARP), or where to dig a battle position. Unique to aviation units is the flight route parameters resulting from environmental and noise-complaint restrictions. These restrictions must be considered while planning aviation missions and during mission briefs. Training must be conducted to accommodate the environmental restrictions.

(2) Maintenance and logistics support. Aviation units use large amounts of hazardous materials while conducting routine maintenance. Commanders will be held responsible for the proper disposal of oils, lubricants, and rags. The operation of FARPs is especially challenging because of the potential for major environmental catastrophes. Most training areas have specific environmental standing operating procedures (SOPs) for operations in that area. The SOPs will specify proper procedures for disposing of oils and lubricants, using drip pans, and washing grease and oil off vehicles.

(3) Gunnery. All gunnery ranges will have environmental SOPs. These SOPs will include normal environmental guidance. They also will include specific instructions for the disposal of casings and ammunition boxes and maneuvering of weapon systems.

---

**Note.** Each U.S. installation is subject to local and state environmental regulations in addition to federal legislation. For information pertaining to a specific location, contact the installation environmental office. When overseas or on deployment, contact the operations staff officer (S3)/operations staff officer (G3).

---

b. Environmental risk management. Environmental risk management parallels safety risk management and is based on the same philosophy and principles. It consists of the following steps.

(1) Identify hazards. Potential sources of environmental degradation will be identified during analysis of the factors of mission, enemy, terrain and weather, troops and support available, time available, and civil considerations (METT-TC). Environmental hazards are created when conditions exist with the potential for polluting air, soil, or water and/or destroying cultural or historical artifacts.

(2) Assess hazards. Using the environmental risk assessment matrix (figure 1-4), the potential severity of environmental degradation for each training activity will be analyzed. The matrix allows trainers to quantify the risk to the environment. The risk impact value is an indicator of the level of severity.

(3) Make environmental risk decisions. Leaders make risk management decisions based on the results of the assessment. Other than the overall risk rating, the risk assessment matrix also can be used to help make environmental risk decisions. For example, the unit operations that are most likely to cause damage (see step 2) can be the focus of risk controls. The environmental areas that are most at risk also can be determined (see step 3).

(4) Brief the chain of command. All responsible individuals and agencies will be briefed on proposed plans and pertinent high-risk environmental factors. This will include the installation environmental office, if applicable. Risk decisions are made at the level of command that corresponds to the degree of risk.

(5) Implement controls. Environmental protection measures will be implemented by integrating them into plans, orders, SOPs, training standards, and rehearsals.

(6) Supervise. Environmental protection standards will be enforced during supervision of all training activities.

**1-10. EVALUATION.** The T&EOs in chapter 5 describe standards that must be met for each task.

a. All training must be evaluated. Evaluations can be internal or external. Internal evaluations are conducted at all levels; they must be inherent in all training. External evaluations are usually more formal and normally are conducted by headquarters two levels above the unit being evaluated. (See chapter 6.)

b. The ARTEP concept is based on simultaneous training and evaluation. Too often, leaders do not practice continuous evaluation. Often, Soldiers or small units are trained to perform a task to standard. Then later, when they execute that task as part of a training exercise, they execute it poorly or incorrectly and are not corrected. For this program to work, trainers and leaders must continually evaluate training as it is being executed.

c. Leaders should emphasize direct, on-the-spot evaluations. Correcting poor performance during individual or small-group training is easy to do. In higher level exercises, it is usually not feasible to do this with outside evaluators; however, on-the-spot evaluations should not be totally eliminated. Plan AARs at frequent logical intervals during the exercises—usually after the completion of a major subordinate task. This is a proven technique that allows leaders to correct performance shortcomings while they are still fresh in everyone's mind. This prevents reinforcement of bad habits.

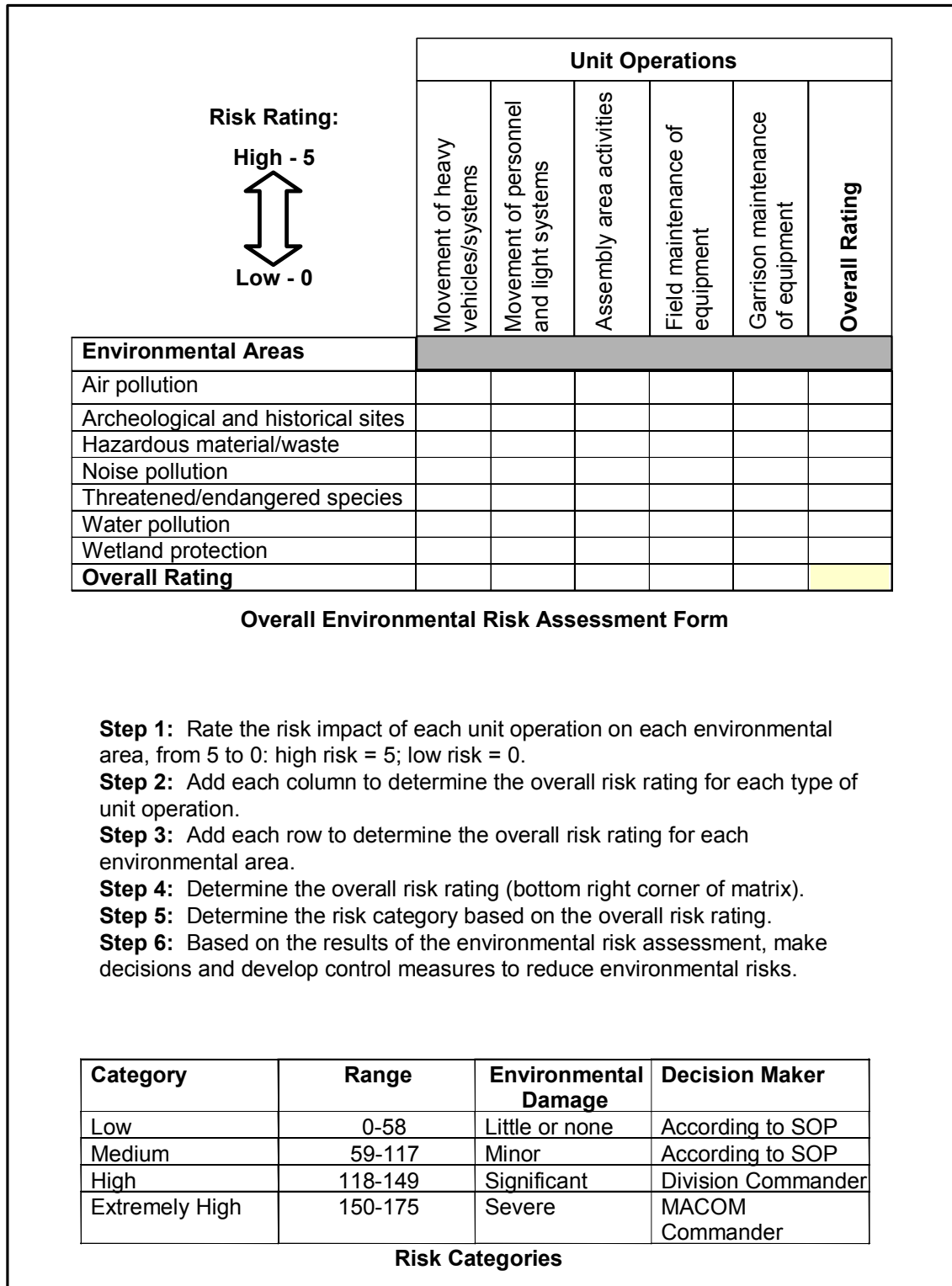


Figure 1-4. Environmental risk management matrix

d. Evaluation can be informal, formal, internal, external, or any combination. (See chapter 6.)

(1) Informal evaluations take place when a leader conducts training with his unit; for example, when a squad leader trains his squad to assault an objective. This type of evaluation provides real-time feedback on the training environment and the proficiency resulting from training.

(2) Formal evaluations are provided with dedicated evaluators and are generally scheduled in the long-range or short-range training briefings. To the maximum extent possible, headquarters two echelons higher conduct formal external evaluations; that is, division commanders evaluate battalions, brigade commanders evaluate companies, and battalion commanders evaluate platoons.

(3) Internal evaluations are planned by, resourced by, and conducted by the organization undergoing the evaluation.

(4) External evaluations are planned by, resourced by, and conducted by a headquarters at an echelon higher in the chain of command than the organization undergoing the evaluation or a headquarters outside the chain of command.

e. Training evaluations are a critical component of any training assessment. The evaluation measures the demonstrated ability of Soldiers, commanders, leaders, battle staffs, and units against the Army standard. The training evaluation is integral to standards-based training and is the cornerstone of leader training and leader development.

f. FM 7-1 provides detailed instructions for conducting an AAR and detailed guidance on coaching and critiquing during training.

**1-11. FEEDBACK.** Recommendations for improving this MTP are requested. Feedback will help ensure that appropriate changes are included in future training publications and to this MTP. A questionnaire is included at the end of this MTP to facilitate the submission of recommendations and comments. The mailing address is Commander, U.S. Army Aviation Center, Directorate of Training Doctrine, Doctrine Division, ATTN: ATZQ-TD-D, Fort Rucker, Alabama 36362. Points of contact may be reached by e-mail at [www.atzq-td-d@rucker.army.mil](mailto:www.atzq-td-d@rucker.army.mil) or [av.doctrine@us.army.mil](mailto:av.doctrine@us.army.mil).



## Chapter 2

# Training Matrixes

**2-1. GENERAL.** The training matrix assists the commander in planning the training of his unit's personnel. The mission identification table listed below (figure 2-1) provides mission identification for the unit.

- Conduct air assault operations
- Conduct air defense operations
- Conduct air movement operations
- Conduct air volcano operations
- Conduct command, control, communications, computers, and intelligence operations
- Conduct combat service support operations
- Conduct combat support operations
- Conduct deployment/redeployment operations
- Conduct fast rope insertion and extraction system / special patrol infiltration/exfiltration system operation
- Conduct mission planning/preparation
- Conduct mobility, countermobility and survivability operations
- Conduct personnel recovery operations
- Conduct reconnaissance and surveillance operations
- Conduct stability operations and support operations
- Conduct casualty evacuation

**Figure 2-1. Mission identification table**

**2-2. MISSION-TO-COLLECTIVE TASKS MATRIXES.** This matrix (table 2-1), identifies the mission and their supporting collective tasks. The warfighting functions used in this matrix are defined in TRADOC Pam 11-9. A specific mission is trained by identifying collective tasks in the vertical column for the mission. Based on the proficiency of the unit, training is focused on operational weaknesses.

**Table 2-1. Mission-to-collective task listing**

<i>Mission</i>	<i>Collective Task</i>	
	<i>Task Number</i>	<i>Task Title</i>
Conduct air assault operations	01-1-5130	Conduct battalion air assault operations
	01-2-1034	Coordinate special patrol infiltration/exfiltration system missions (UH-60)
	01-2-1035	Coordinate fast rope insertion and extraction system missions (UH-60)
	01-2-5218	Perform air assault operations
	01-3-1353	Provide pathfinder support
Conduct air defense operations	01-2-5180	Employ countermeasures against enemy air defense artillery
	44-2-0220	Employ passive air defense measures
	44-2-0221	Employ active combined arms air defense measures
Conduct air movement operations	01-1-5131	Conduct battalion air movement operations
	01-1-5152	Plan aviation air movement operations (UH-60)
	01-2-5103	Perform air movement procedures (UH-60)
Conduct air volcano operations	01-2-5222	Perform air volcano operations
Conduct command, control, communications, computers, and intelligence (C4I) operations	01-1-0342	Restrict local population interference with ongoing U.S. military operations
	01-1-0343	Conduct command and control battalion/squadron operations
	01-1-0344	Direct the battalion/squadron staff
	01-1-0346	Manage the status of enlisted personnel assigned to the battalion
	01-1-0347	Integrate key operations and support functions into battalion operations
	01-1-0348	Manage the battalion/squadron safety program
	01-1-0349	Direct the battalion/squadron standardization program
	01-1-0355	Develop an aviation media plan
	01-1-0356	Process information into intelligence
	01-1-5134	Plan aviation operations using the military decision making process
	01-1-5146	Coordinate aviation liaison officer operations
	01-1-5147	Establish battalion/squadron tactical command post operations
	01-1-5149	Coordinate procedures for establishing a tactical operations center

**Table 2-1. Mission-to-collective task listing**

<i>Mission</i>	<i>Collective Task</i>	
	<i>Task Number</i>	<i>Task Title</i>
	01-1-5164	Integrate the army airspace command and control (A2C2) plan into aviation operations
	01-1-5165	Coordinate personnel recovery/self-recovery operations
	01-2-0341	Perform composite risk management procedures
	01-2-5160	Perform troop-leading procedures
	01-2-5181	Perform operations within established army airspace command and control (A2C2) measures
	01-2-5223	Perform command, control, communications, computers, and intelligence (C4I) operations
	01-1-5174	Establish battalion/squadron tactical communications
	01-1-5175	Coordinate aviation tactical command, control, communications, computer, and intelligence (C4I) systems planning
	01-4-5221	Establish an aviation frequency modulated radio retransmission station
	07-2-5045	Conduct negotiations
	19-3-3105	Process captured documents and equipment
	19-3-3106	Handle enemy prisoners of war (EPWs)
	34-1-2040	Conduct intelligence preparation of the battlefield (IPB) (Bn)
Conduct combat service support (CSS) operations	01-1-0336	Perform personnel strength management operations
	01-1-0352	Organize pre-deployment activities
	01-1-0354	Conduct casualty reporting activities
	01-1-0357	Comply with the noncombatants processing plan
	01-1-1103	Conduct replacement operations
	01-1-1105	Provide other personnel and administrative services
	01-1-1402	Coordinate the requisition, acquisition, and distribution of supplies and equipment
	01-1-5129	Provide sustainment to the force
	01-1-5132	Provide combat support and combat service support
	01-1-5143	Plan requirements to establish a forward arming and refueling point
	01-1-5153	Plan aviation combat service support (CSS) operations
	01-1-5154	Plan aerial casualty evacuation (CASEVAC) operations
	01-1-5156	Comply with requirements to keep an isolated personnel report (ISOPREP) database current
	01-1-5168	Establish an aviation administrative and logistics operations center (ALOC)

**Table 2-1. Mission-to-collective task listing**

<i>Mission</i>	<i>Collective Task</i>	
	<i>Task Number</i>	<i>Task Title</i>
	01-1-5169	Organize security measures for temporary enemy prisoners of war (EPW) at a collection point
	01-1-5170	Organize external transportation assets for movement of personnel, supplies, and equipment
	01-1-5171	Perform logistics operations
	01-2-0334	Perform unit-level logistics operations
	01-2-0335	Conduct personnel strength management procedures
	01-2-0338	Conduct helicopter maintenance
	01-2-0339	Perform forward arming and refueling point operations
	01-2-1360	Conduct casualty evacuation operations
	01-2-5120	Comply with mission-oriented protective posture gear exchange procedures
	01-2-5158	Control an assembly area
	01-2-5161	Process casualty feeder reports and witness statements
	01-2-5208	Provide support to the tactical operations center
	01-2-5209	Provide production control support in the maintenance and shop sections
	01-2-5210	Provide quality control for unit programs and work completed by maintenance and shop sections
	01-2-5211	Perform helicopter repairs and required inspections of aircraft systems
	01-2-5212	Perform helicopter repairs and required inspections of aircraft subsystems
	01-2-5213	Perform helicopter battle damage assessment and repair (BDAR)/recovery operations
	01-2-5214	Perform maintenance operations on aviation ground support equipment
	01-2-5215	Maintain aviation life support equipment
	01-2-5216	Coordinate operational readiness and aircraft availability for mission planning with the S3
	01-2-5217	Perform Fat Hawk/Wet Hawk operations
	01-4-0359	Perform unit supply support operations
	01-4-0361	Perform ground vehicle recovery operations
	01-4-0362	Perform ground vehicle unit-level maintenance
	10-2-0056	Perform food service support operations
	16-1-1001	Conduct unit religious support
	08-1-8102	Perform aviation medicine (flight surgeon) support activities
	08-2-0003	Provide first aid to casualties

**Table 2-1. Mission-to-collective task listing**

<i>Mission</i>	<i>Collective Task</i>	
	<i>Task Number</i>	<i>Task Title</i>
	08-2-8101	Provide health service support (aviation)
	08-2-C316	Evacuate casualties
	08-2-R315	Perform field sanitation functions
	63-1-4009	Prepare operations plan/operations order and annexes
Conduct combat support (CS) operations	01-1-1103	Conduct replacement operations
	01-1-5132	Provide combat support and combat service support
	01-1-5143	Plan requirements to establish a forward arming and refueling point
	01-2-1034	Coordinate special patrol infiltration/exfiltration system (SPIES) missions (UH-60)
	01-2-1035	Coordinate fast-rope insertion and extraction system (FRIES) missions (UH-60)
	01-2-5103	Perform air movement procedures (UH-60)
	01-4-0359	Perform unit supply support operations
	01-4-0361	Perform ground vehicle recovery operations
	01-4-0362	Perform ground vehicle unit-level maintenance
	10-2-0056	Perform food service support operations
Conduct deployment/redeployment operations	01-1-0345	Direct deployment/redeployment operations
	01-1-5124	Conduct deployment/redeployment operations
	01-2-0327	Perform deployment/redeployment operations
Conduct FRIES/SPIES operation	01-2-1034	Coordinate special patrol infiltration/exfiltration system missions (UH-60)
	01-2-1035	Coordinate fast-rope insertion and extraction system missions (UH-60)
Conduct mission planning/preparation	01-1-5125	Conduct quick reaction force planning operations
	01-1-5166	Employ automated mission planning systems
	01-2-5198	Conduct aviation mission planning/preparation
Conduct mobility, countermobility and survivability operations	01-1-0330	Plan aviation urban operations
	01-1-5162	Comply with unit's established security measures
	01-1-5163	Employ aircraft survivability measures
	01-2-0328	Establish unit defense measures
	01-2-0333	Conduct convoy operations

**Table 2-1. Mission-to-collective task listing**

<i>Mission</i>	<i>Collective Task</i>	
	<i>Task Number</i>	<i>Task Title</i>
	01-2-0340	Perform advance/quartermen operations
	01-2-5113	Defend unit position
	01-2-5159	Employ fratricide prevention measures
	01-2-5181	Perform operations within established army airspace command and control measures
	01-2-5196	Perform aerial passage of lines operations
	01-2-5204	Perform hasty assembly area displacement
	01-2-5222	Perform air volcano operations
	01-2-7759	Perform aviation urban operations at company level
	03-1-C404	Supervise chemical, biological, radiological, and nuclear defense operations
	03-3-C312	Conduct thorough decontamination operations
	03-3-C201	Prepare for operations under chemical, biological, radiological, and nuclear conditions
	03-3-C202	Prepare for a chemical attack
	03-3-C203	Respond to a chemical attack
	03-3-C206	Prepare for a nuclear attack
	03-3-C208	Cross a radiologically contaminated area
	03-3-C222	Respond to the residual effects of a nuclear attack
	03-3-C224	Conduct operational decontamination
	03-3-C225	Conduct chemical reconnaissance
	07-2-1112	React to ambush
	07-2-1923	React to indirect fire
	07-2-6045	Employ camouflage, concealment, and deception techniques (infantry company)
	31-2-1809	React to a terrorist or insurgent incident
	55-2-4001	Plan unit move
Conduct personnel recovery operations	01-2-5219	Conduct personnel recovery/self-recovery operations (UH-60)
Conduct reconnaissance and surveillance operations	01-1-5133	Conduct aerial reconnaissance and surveillance/observation operations

**Table 2-1. Mission-to-collective task listing**

<i>Mission</i>	<i>Collective Task</i>	
	<i>Task Number</i>	<i>Task Title</i>
Conduct stability operations and support operations	01-1-5126	Conduct aviation stability operations and support operations
	01-1-5157	Plan aviation stability operations and support operations

**2-3. SUPPORTING-REFERENCES-TO-COLLECTIVE TASK LISTING.** This listing (table 2-2), identifies references that provide additional information on each of the collective tasks.

**Table 2-2. Supporting references-to-collective tasks listing**

<b>WARFIGHTING FUNCTION: INTELLIGENCE</b>	
<b>Collective Task:</b>	01-1-0356 - Process information into intelligence
<b>References:</b>	FM 1-100, FM 2-0, FM 3-0, FM 3-04.111, and FM 5-0.
<b>Collective Task:</b>	01-1-5136 - Coordinate aviation psychological operations
<b>References:</b>	AR 95-1, FM 1-100, FM 1-112, FM 1-113, FM 3-04.111, FM 3-05.30, FM 3-05.301, FM 3-06, FM 3-100.12, FM 4-0, FM 7-1, FM 71-100-3, FM 90-4.
<b>Collective Task:</b>	19-3-3105 - Process captured documents and equipment
<b>References:</b>	FM 1-100, FM 1-112, FM 1-113, FM 2-0, FM 3-0, FM 3-04.111, FM 3-100.12, FM 3-19.1, FM 3-19.4, FM 3-19.40.
<b>Collective Task:</b>	34-1-2040 - Conduct intelligence preparation of the battlefield (battalion)
<b>References:</b>	FM 1-02, FM 2-0, FM 34-130, FM 34-80, FM 5-0.
<b>WARFIGHTING FUNCTION: MANEUVER</b>	
<b>Collective Task:</b>	01-1-0330 - Plan aviation urban operations
<b>References:</b>	AR 95-1, FM 1-100, FM 1-112, FM 1-113, FM 3-04.111, FM 3-04.300, FM 3-06, FM 3-06.11, FM 3-100.12, FM 3-100.4, FM 4-01.011, FM 7-0, FM 7-1, TC 1-201.
<b>Collective Task:</b>	01-1-0345 - Direct deployment/redeployment operations
<b>References:</b>	FM 1-100, FM 100-17, FM 1-112, FM 1-113, FM 3-04.111, FM 3-100.12, FM 3-100.4, FM 4-01.011, FM 7-0, FM 7-1.
<b>Collective Task:</b>	01-1-5125 - Conduct quick reaction force planning operations
<b>References:</b>	FM 1-100, FM 1-112, FM 1-113, FM 3-0, FM 3-04.111, FM 3-06, FM 3-07, FM 3-100.12, FM 7-0, FM 7-1.
<b>Collective Task:</b>	01-1-5130 - Conduct battalion air assault operations
<b>References:</b>	FM 1-100, FM 1-112, FM 1-113, FM 3-0, FM 3-04.111, FM 3-04.300, FM 3-100.12, FM 4-0, FM 7-0, FM 7-1, FM 71-100-3, FM 90-4, TC 1-201, TC 1-210, TC 1-237.
<b>Collective Task:</b>	01-1-5131 - Conduct battalion air movement operations
<b>References:</b>	FM 1-100, FM 1-113, FM 3-0, FM 3-04.111, FM 3-04.300, FM 3-100.12, FM 4-0, FM 7-0, FM 7-1, FM 90-4, TC 1-201, TC 1-210, TC 1-237.

**Table 2-2. Supporting references-to-collective tasks listing**

<b>Collective Task:</b>	01-1-5133 - Conduct aerial reconnaissance and surveillance/ observation operations
<b>References:</b>	AR 95-1, FM 1-100, FM 1-113, FM 3-04.111, FM 3-04.300, FM 3-100.12, FM 3-100.4, FM 7-1, FM 90-4, TC 1-201, TC 1-210, TC 1-237.
<b>Collective Task:</b>	01-1-5135 - Implement operations security measures
<b>References:</b>	FM 1-100, FM 1-112, FM 1-113, FM 2-0, FM 3-0, FM 3-04.111, FM 3-100.12, FM 3-100.4, FM 4-0, FM 7-1, FM 90-4, TC 1-210, TC 1-237.
<b>Collective Task:</b>	01-1-5151 - Plan aviation air assault operations (UH-60)
<b>References:</b>	FM 1-100, FM 1-112, FM 1-113, FM 3-0, FM 3-04.111, FM 3-04.300, FM 3-100.12, FM 71-100-3, FM 90-4, TC 1-201, TC 1-210, TC 1-237.
<b>Collective Task:</b>	01-1-5152 - Plan aviation air movement operations (UH-60)
<b>References:</b>	FM 1-100, FM 1-112, FM 1-113, FM 3-04.111, FM 3-04.300, FM 3-100.12, FM 90-4, TC 1-201, TC 1-210, TC 1-237.
<b>Collective Task:</b>	01-1-5153 - Plan aviation combat service support operations
<b>References:</b>	AR 710-2, DA Pam 710-2-1, DA Pam 710-2-2, FM 1-100, FM 1-113, FM 3-0, FM 3-04.111, FM 3-04.500, FM 3-100.12, FM 4-0, FM 90-4, TC 1-210, TC 1-237.
<b>Collective Task:</b>	01-2-0327 - Perform deployment/redeployment operations
<b>References:</b>	FM 1-100, FM 100-17, FM 1-112, FM 1-113, FM 3-04.111, FM 3-100.12, FM 3-100.4, FM 4-01.011, FM 7-0, FM 7-1, FM 71-100.
<b>Collective Task:</b>	01-2-0328 - Establish unit defense measures
<b>References:</b>	FM 1-100, FM 1-112, FM 1-113, FM 3-04.111, FM 3-100.12, FM 3-100.4, FM 7-0, FM 7-1.
<b>Collective Task:</b>	01-2-0333 - Conduct convoy operations
<b>References:</b>	FM 1-112, FM 1-113, FM 3-0, FM 1-100, FM 3-04.111, FM 3-06, FM 3-100.12, FM 3-100.4, FM 55-30.
<b>Collective Task:</b>	01-2-0340 - Perform advance/quarterming party operations
<b>References:</b>	FM 1-100, FM 1-112, FM 1-113, FM 3-0, FM 3-04.111, FM 3-04.513, FM 3-100.12, FM 7-0, FM 7-1, FM 71-100.
<b>Collective Task:</b>	01-2-1034 - Coordinate special patrol infiltration/exfiltration system missions (UH-60)
<b>References:</b>	AR 95-1, FM 1-100, FM 3-05.60, FM 1-113, FM 3-04.111, FM 3-100.12, FM 71-100-3, FM 90-4, TC 1-201, TC 1-210, TC 1-237, TC 21-24.
<b>Collective Task:</b>	01-2-1035 - Coordinate fast-rope insertion and extraction system missions (UH-60)
<b>References:</b>	AR 95-1, FM 1-100, FM 1-112, FM 1-113, FM 3-05.60, FM 3-04.111, FM 3-04.300, FM 3-100.12, FM 3-100.4, FM 71-100-3, FM 90-4, TC 1-201, TC 1-210, TC 1-237.
<b>Collective Task:</b>	01-2-5103 - Perform air movement procedures (UH-60)
<b>References:</b>	FM 1-100, FM 1-113, FM 3-04.111, FM 3-04.300, FM 3-04.513, FM 3-100.12, FM 3-100.4, FM 4-01.011, FM 71-100-3, FM 90-4, TC 1-201, TC 1-210, TC 1-237



**Table 2-2. Supporting references-to-collective tasks listing**

<b>Collective Task:</b>	01-2-5113 - Defend unit position
<b>References:</b>	AR 95-1, FM 1-100, FM 1-112, FM 1-113, FM 3-04.111, FM 3-100.12, FM 7-0, FM 7-1, FM 90-4, TC 1-210, TC 1-237.
<b>Collective Task:</b>	01-2-5158 - Control an assembly area
<b>References:</b>	FM 1-100, FM 1-112, FM 1-113, FM 3-04.111, FM 3-100.12, FM 7-0, FM 7-1.
<b>Collective Task:</b>	01-2-5196 - Perform aerial passage of lines operations
<b>References:</b>	FM 1-100, FM 1-112, FM 1-113, FM 3-04.111, FM 3-100.12, FM 3-20.98, FM 7-0, FM 7-1, FM 90-4, TC 1-201.
<b>Collective Task:</b>	01-2-5198 - Conduct aviation mission planning/preparation
<b>References:</b>	FM 1-100, FM 1-112, FM 1-113, FM 3-04.111, FM 3-04.300, FM 3-04.500, FM 3-100.12, FM 7-1, FM 90-4, JP 3-05.2.
<b>Collective Task:</b>	01-2-5204 - Perform hasty assembly area displacement
<b>References:</b>	FM 1-100, FM 1-113, FM 3-0, FM 3-04.111, FM 3-100.12, FM 71-100-3, TC 1-201.
<b>Collective Task:</b>	01-2-5218 - Perform air assault operations
<b>References:</b>	FM 1-100, FM 1-113, FM 3-04.111, FM 3-04.300, FM 3-04.513, FM 3-07, FM 3-100.12, FM 3-100.4, FM 4-0, FM 71-100-3, FM 90-4, TC 1-201, TC 1-210, TC 1-237.
<b>Collective Task:</b>	01-2-7759 - Perform aviation urban operations at company level
<b>References:</b>	FM 1-112, FM 1-113, FM 1-114, FM 3-0, FM 3-04.111, FM 3-06, FM 3-06.1, FM 3-06.11, FM 5-0, .
<b>Collective Task:</b>	01-3-1353 - Provide pathfinder support
<b>References:</b>	FM 1-100, FM 1-113, FM 3-04.111, FM 3-04.300, FM 3-04.513, FM 3-07, FM 3-100.12, FM 3-100.4, FM 3-21.38, FM 4-0, FM 6-0, FM 7-0, FM 7-1, FM 71-100, FM 90-4, FM 10-450-3, FM 10-450-4, FM 21-60, FM 24-1, FM 24-18, TC 1-201.
<b>Collective Task:</b>	55-2-4001 - Plan unit move
<b>References:</b>	FM 1-100, FM 1-112, FM 1-113, FM 3-04.111, FM 3-100.12, FM 4-01.011, FM 4-01.30, FM 55-30, FM 4-01.011, FM 7-0, FM 7-1, FM 100-17.
<b>WARFIGHTING FUNCTION: FIRE SUPPORT</b>	
<b>Collective Task:</b>	01-1-5142 - Plan fire mission in support of aviation operations
<b>References:</b>	FM 1-100, FM 1-112, FM 1-113, FM 3-0, FM 3-04.111, FM 3-09.31, FM 3-20.98, FM 3-100.12, FM 7-1.
<b>WARFIGHTING FUNCTION: MOBILITY/COUNTERMOBILITY/SURVIVABILITY (M/CM/S)</b>	
<b>Collective Task:</b>	01-1-5128 - Conduct force protection operations
<b>References:</b>	FM 1-100, FM 1-112, FM 1-113, FM 3-0, FM 3-04.111, FM 3-06, FM 3-100.12, FM 3-100.4, FM 3-20.98, FM 4-0, FM 7-0, FM 7-1.
<b>Collective Task:</b>	01-1-5162 - Comply with unit's established security measures
<b>References:</b>	FM 1-100, FM 1-112, FM 1-113, FM 3-04.111, FM 3-100.12, FM 3-19.30, FM 90-4, JP 3-54.
<b>Collective Task:</b>	01-1-5163 - Employ aircraft survivability measures
<b>References:</b>	AR 95-1, FM 1-100, FM 1-112, FM 1-113, FM 3-04.111, FM 3-04.300, FM 3-100.12, FM 90-4, TC 1-210, TC 1-237.

**Table 2-2. Supporting references-to-collective tasks listing**

<b>Collective Task:</b>	01-2-5159 - Employ fratricide prevention measures
<b>References:</b>	FM 1-100, FM 1-112, FM 1-113, FM 3-0, FM 3-04.111, FM 3-100.12, FM 7-0, FM 7-1.
<b>Collective Task:</b>	01-2-5180 - Employ countermeasures against enemy air defense artillery
<b>References:</b>	FM 1-100, FM 1-112, FM 1-113, FM 44-8, FM 3-04.111, FM 3-100.12, FM 44-100, FM 71-100-3.
<b>Collective Task:</b>	01-2-5181 - Perform operations within established army airspace command and control measures
<b>References:</b>	FM 1-112, FM 1-113, FM 1-100, FM 3-04.111, FM 3-100.12, FM 3-52, FM 7-0, FM 7-1, FM 71-100-3, FM3-100.2.
<b>Collective Task:</b>	01-2-5222 - Perform air volcano operations
<b>References:</b>	FM 1-100, FM 1-113, FM 3-04.111, FM 3-04.300, FM 3-100.12, FM 3-100.4, FM 4-0, FM 71-100-3, FM 90-4, TC 1-201, TC 1-210, TC 1-237, TM 9-1345-203-12.
<b>Collective Task:</b>	03-3-C312 - Conduct thorough decontamination operations
<b>References:</b>	FM 1-100, FM 1-112, FM 1-113, FM 3-04.111, FM 3-100.12, FM 3-11.4, FM 3-3, FM 3-5, FM 7-0, FM 7-1.
<b>Collective Task:</b>	03-3-C201 - Prepare for operations under chemical, biological, radiological, and nuclear conditions
<b>References:</b>	FM 1-100, FM 1-112, FM 1-113, FM 3-0, FM 3-04.111, FM 3-100.12, FM 3-11.4, FM 3-3, FM 7-0, FM 7-1.
<b>Collective Task:</b>	03-3-C202 - Prepare for a chemical attack
<b>References:</b>	FM 1-100, FM 1-112, FM 1-113, FM 3-0, FM 3-04.111, FM 3-100.12, FM 3-11, FM 3-11.4, FM 7-0, FM 7-1, FM 71-100.
<b>Collective Task:</b>	03-3-C203 - Respond to a chemical attack
<b>References:</b>	FM 1-100, FM 1-112, FM 1-113, FM 3-0, FM 3-04.111, FM 3-100.12, FM 3-11, FM 3-11.4, FM 3-3, FM 3-5, FM 7-0, FM 7-1, FM 71-100.
<b>Collective Task:</b>	03-3-C206 - Prepare for a nuclear attack
<b>References:</b>	FM 1-100, FM 1-112, FM 1-113, FM 3-0, FM 3-04.111, FM 3-100.12, FM 3-11, FM 3-11.4, FM 3-3, FM 7-0, FM 7-1, FM 71-100.
<b>Collective Task:</b>	03-3-C208 - Cross a radiologically contaminated area
<b>References:</b>	FM 1-100, FM 1-112, FM 1-113, FM 3-0, FM 3-04.111, FM 3-100.12, FM 3-11, FM 3-11.4, FM 3-3, FM 7-0, FM 7-1, FM 71-100.
<b>Collective Task:</b>	03-3-C222 - Respond to the residual effects of a nuclear attack
<b>References:</b>	FM 1-100, FM 1-112, FM 1-113, FM 3-0, FM 3-04.111, FM 3-100.12, FM 3-11, FM 3-11.4, FM 3-3, FM 7-0, FM 7-1.
<b>Collective Task:</b>	03-3-C224 - Conduct operational decontamination
<b>References:</b>	FM 1-100, FM 1-112, FM 1-113, FM 3-0, FM 3-04.111, FM 3-100.12, FM 3-5, FM 7-0, FM 7-1.
<b>Collective Task:</b>	03-3-C225 - Conduct chemical reconnaissance
<b>References:</b>	FM 1-100, FM 1-112, FM 1-113, FM 3-0, FM 3-04.111, FM 3-100.12, FM 3-11.19, FM 7-0, FM 7-1.
<b>Collective Task:</b>	03-3-C226 - Cross a chemically contaminated area
<b>References:</b>	FM 1-100, FM 1-112, FM 1-113, FM 3-0, FM 3-04.111,

**Table 2-2. Supporting references-to-collective tasks listing**

	FM 3-100.12, FM 3-3, FM 7-0, FM 7-1.
<b>Collective Task:</b>	07-2-1112 - React to ambush
<b>References:</b>	FM 1-100, FM 1-112, FM 1-113, FM 3-0, FM 3-04.111, FM 3-100.12, FM 7-0, FM 7-1, FM 71-100.
<b>Collective Task:</b>	07-2-1923 - React to indirect fire
<b>References:</b>	FM 1-100, FM 1-112, FM 1-113, FM 3-04.111, FM 3-100.12, FM 6-20, FM 7-1.
<b>Collective Task:</b>	07-2-6045 - Employ camouflage, concealment, and deception techniques (infantry company)
<b>References:</b>	FM 1-02, FM 101-5-2, FM 1-112, FM 1-113, FM 20-3, FM 21-60, FM 24-35, FM 1-100, FM 3-04.111, FM 3-100.12.
<b>Collective Task:</b>	31-2-1809 - React to a terrorist or insurgent incident
<b>References:</b>	FM 1-100, FM 1-112, FM 1-113, FM 3-04.111, FM 3-05.30, FM 3-05.301, FM 3-100.12, FM 3-19.40.
<b>WARFIGHTING FUNCTION: AIR DEFENSE</b>	
<b>Collective Task:</b>	44-2-0220 - Employ passive air defense measures
<b>References:</b>	FM 1-100, FM 1-112, FM 1-113, FM 3-04.111, FM 3-04.300, FM 3-100.12, FM 44-8, FM 90-4.
<b>Collective Task:</b>	44-2-0221 - Employ active combined arms air defense measures
<b>References:</b>	FM 1-100, FM 1-112, FM 1-113, FM 3-04.111, FM 3-100.12, FM 7-0, FM 7-1, FM 90-4.
<b>WARFIGHTING FUNCTION: COMBAT SERVICE SUPPORT (CSS)</b>	
<b>Collective Task:</b>	01-1-0336 - Perform personnel strength management operations
<b>References:</b>	FM 1-100, FM 1-113, FM 3-04.111, FM 3-100.12, FM 3-100.4, FM 5-0.
<b>Collective Task:</b>	01-1-0352 - Organize pre-deployment activities
<b>References:</b>	AR 200-1, AR 25-400-2, FM 1-100, FM 3-0, FM 1-100, FM 3-04.111, FM 12-6, FM 4-01.011, FM 5-0, FM 55-1, FM 7-0, FM 7-1 FM 100-17.
<b>Collective Task:</b>	01-1-0354 - Conduct casualty reporting activities
<b>References:</b>	FM 1-100, FM 3-04.111, FM 3-04.513, FM 3-100.12, FM 4-0, FM 5-0.
<b>Collective Task:</b>	01-1-0357 - Comply with the noncombatants processing plan
<b>References:</b>	FM 1-100, FM 2-0, FM 3-0, FM 3-04.111, FM 3-07, FM 5-0.
<b>Collective Task:</b>	01-1-1103 - Conduct replacement operations
<b>References:</b>	FM 1-100, FM 1-113, FM 3-0, FM 1-100, FM 3-04.111, FM 3-100.12, FM 5-0, FM 7-0, FM 7-1, FM 12-6.
<b>Collective Task:</b>	01-1-1105 - Provide other personnel and administrative services
<b>References:</b>	AR 27-10, DA Pam 600-8, FM 1-100, FM 3-04.111, FM 1-113, FM 3-0, FM 4-0, FM 5-0, FM 12-6.
<b>Collective Task:</b>	01-1-1402 - Coordinate the requisition, acquisition, and distribution of supplies and equipment
<b>References:</b>	AR 710-2, DA Pam 710-2-1, DA Pam 710-2-2, FM 1-100, FM 3-04.500, FM 4-0, FM 4-30.3.

**Table 2-2. Supporting references-to-collective tasks listing**

<b>Collective Task:</b>	01-1-5124 - Conduct deployment/redeployment operations
<b>References:</b>	FM 1-100, FM 1-112, FM 1-113, FM 3-0, FM 3-04.111, FM 3-20.98, FM 3-100.12, FM 4-01.011, FM 7-0, FM 7-1, FM 100-17.
<b>Collective Task:</b>	01-1-5129 - Provide sustainment to the force
<b>References:</b>	FM 1-100, FM 1-112, FM 1-113, FM 3-0, FM 3-04.111, FM 3-04.500, FM 3-100.12, FM 3-100.4, FM 4-0, FM 7-0, FM 7-1.
<b>Collective Task:</b>	01-1-5132 - Provide combat support and combat service support
<b>References:</b>	FM 1-100, FM 1-112, FM 1-113, FM 3-0, FM 3-04.500, FM 3-04.513, FM 3-100.12, FM 3-100.4, FM 4-0, FM 7-0, FM 7-1, FM 10-27-4, FM 71-100-3, FM 90-4, TC 1-210, TC 1-237.
<b>Collective Task:</b>	01-1-5143 - Plan requirements to establish a forward arming and refueling point
<b>References:</b>	FM 1-100, FM 1-112, FM 1-113, FM 3-0, FM 3-04.111, FM 3-100.12, FM 7-1, FM 10-67, FM 90-4.
<b>Collective Task:</b>	01-1-5154 - Plan aerial casualty evacuation operations
<b>References:</b>	FM 1-100, FM 1-112, FM 1-113, FM 3-04.111, FM 3-04.300, FM 3-100.12, FM 3-100.4, FM 8-10-6, FM 90-4, TC 1-210, TC 1-237.
<b>Collective Task:</b>	01-1-5156 - Comply with requirements to keep an isolated personnel report database current
<b>References:</b>	AR 600-8, AR 600-8-24, AR 600-8-104, AR 635-200, FM 1-100, FM 1-112, FM 1-113, FM 3-04.111.
<b>Collective Task:</b>	01-1-5168 - Establish an aviation administrative and logistics operations center
<b>References:</b>	FM 1-100, FM 1-112, FM 1-113, FM 3-04.111, FM 3-04.500, FM 3-04.513, FM 3-100.12, FM 4-0.
<b>Collective Task:</b>	01-1-5169 - Organize security measures for temporary enemy prisoners of war at a collection point
<b>References:</b>	AR 190-8, FM 1-100, FM 3-04.111, FM 3-19.40.
<b>Collective Task:</b>	01-1-5170 - Organize external transportation assets for movement of personnel, supplies, and equipment
<b>References:</b>	FM 1-100, FM 1-112, FM 1-113, FM 3-04.111, FM 3-04.500, FM 3-100.12, FM 4-0, FM 7-1.
<b>Collective Task:</b>	01-1-5171 - Perform logistics operations
<b>References:</b>	AR 700-138, AR 700-4, FM 1-100, FM 1-112, FM 3-04.500, FM 3-04.513, FM 3-100.12, FM 4-0, FM 63-11.
<b>Collective Task:</b>	01-2-0334 - Perform unit-level logistics operations
<b>References:</b>	AR 700-138, AR 700-4, FM 1-100, FM 1-112, FM 1-113, FM 3-04.111, FM 3-04.500, FM 3-100.12, FM 4-0, FM 10-27-4, FM 63-11, JP 4-01.6.
<b>Collective Task:</b>	01-2-0335 - Conduct personnel strength management procedures
<b>References:</b>	AR 600-8, AR 600-8-101, AR 600-8-104, AR 600-8-6(C), FM 1-100, FM 1-112, FM 1-113, FM 3-04.111, FM 4-0.
<b>Collective Task:</b>	01-2-0338 - Conduct helicopter maintenance
<b>References:</b>	AR 750-1, ARTEP 1-500-MTP, DA Pam 738-750, DA Pam 738-751, FM 1-100, FM 1-112, FM 1-113, FM 3-04.111, FM 3-04.500, FM 4-30.3.

**Table 2-2. Supporting references-to-collective tasks listing**

<b>Collective Task:</b>	01-2-0339 - Perform forward arming and refueling point operations
<b>References:</b>	AR 95-1, FM 1-100, FM 1-112, FM 1-113, FM 3-04.111, FM 3-100.12, FM 10-67,
<b>Collective Task:</b>	10-2-0056 - Perform food service support operations
<b>References:</b>	FM 1-100, FM 3-100.12, FM 3-100.4, FM 8-34, FM 8-42, FM 10-23.
<b>Collective Task:</b>	01-2-1360 - Conduct casualty evacuation operations
<b>References:</b>	AR 600-8-1, FM 1-100, FM 1-113, FM 3-04.111, FM 3-04.513, FM 3-100.12, FM 12-6, FM 90-4, TC 1-201, TC 1-210, TC 1-237.
<b>Collective Task:</b>	01-2-5120 - Comply with mission-oriented protective posture gear exchange procedures
<b>References:</b>	FM 1-100, FM 1-112, FM 1-113, FM 3-04.111, FM 7-0, FM 7-1, FM 71-100, TM 10-8415-209-10.
<b>Collective Task:</b>	01-2-5161 - Process casualty feeder reports and witness statements
<b>References:</b>	AR 600-8-1, DA Form 1155, DA Form 1156, FM 1-100, FM 1-112, FM 1-113, FM 3-0, FM 3-04.111, FM 3-100.12, FM 12-6.
<b>Collective Task:</b>	01-2-5208 - Provide support to the tactical operations center
<b>References:</b>	FM 1-100, FM 1-112, FM 1-113, FM 3-0, FM 3-04.111, FM 3-100.12, FM 4-0, FM 5-0, FM 7-0, FM 7-1, FM 71-100-3, FM 90-4.
<b>Collective Task:</b>	01-2-5209 - Provide production control support in the maintenance and shop sections
<b>References:</b>	AR 700-138, AR 750-1, AR 750-43, DA Pam 738-751, FM 1-100, FM 1-112, FM 1-113, FM 3-04.111, FM 3-04.500, FM 3-04.508, FM 3-100.12, FM 4-30.3, FM 7-0, FM 7-1.
<b>Collective Task:</b>	01-2-5210 - Provide quality control for unit programs and work completed by maintenance and shop sections
<b>References:</b>	AR 700-138, AR 750-1, AR 750-43, DA Pam 738-751, FM 1-100, FM 1-112, FM 1-113, FM 3-04.111, FM 3-04.500, FM 3-04.508, FM 3-100.12, FM 7-0, FM 7-1.
<b>Collective Task:</b>	01-2-5211 - Perform helicopter repairs and required inspections of aircraft systems
<b>References:</b>	DA Pam 738-751, FM 1-100, FM 1-112, FM 1-113, FM 3-0, FM 3-04.111, FM 3-04.500, FM 3-04.508, FM 3-100.12, FM 7-0, FM 7-1, FM 71-100.
<b>Collective Task:</b>	01-2-5212 - Perform helicopter repairs and required inspections of aircraft subsystems
<b>References:</b>	DA Pam 738-751, FM 1-100, FM 1-112, FM 1-113, FM 3-04.111, FM 3-04.500, FM 3-04.508, FM 3-100.12.
<b>Collective Task:</b>	01-2-5213 - Perform helicopter battle damage assessment and repair / recovery operations
<b>References:</b>	DA Pam 738-751, FM 1-100, FM 1-112, FM 1-113, FM 3-04.111, FM 3-04.500, FM 3-04.508, FM 3-100.12.
<b>Collective Task:</b>	01-2-5214 - Perform maintenance operations on aviation ground support equipment (AGSE)
<b>References:</b>	AR 700-138, AR 750-1, AR 750-43, DA Pam 738-750, DA Pam 738-751, FM 1-100, FM 1-112, FM 1-113, FM 3-04.111, FM 3-04.500, FM 3-100.12, FM 4-30.3, TM 1-1500-204-23-9.
<b>Collective Task:</b>	01-2-5215 - Maintain aviation life support equipment
<b>References:</b>	AR 750-1, AR 750-43, DA Pam 738-750, DA Pam 738-751, FM 1-100, FM 1-112, FM 1-113, FM 3-04.111, FM 3-04.500,

**Table 2-2. Supporting references-to-collective tasks listing**

	FM 3-04.508, FM 3-100.12.
<b>Collective Task:</b>	01-2-5216 - Coordinate operational readiness and aircraft availability for mission planning with the S3
<b>References:</b>	AR 700-138, FM 1-100, FM 1-112, FM 1-113, FM 3-04.111, FM 3-04.500, FM 3-04.508, FM 3-04.513, FM 3-100.12, FM 4-0, FM 7-1.
<b>Collective Task:</b>	01-2-5217 - Perform Fat Hawk/Wet Hawk operations
<b>References:</b>	FM 1-100, FM 1-113, FM 3-04.111, FM 3-04.300, FM 3-04.500, FM 3-100.12, FM 3-100.4, FM 4-0, FM 71-100-3, FM 90-4, TC 1-201, TC 1-210, TC 1-237.
<b>Collective Task:</b>	01-4-0359 - Perform unit supply support operations
<b>References:</b>	AR 710-2, AR 735-5, DA Pam 710-2-1, DA Pam 710-2-2, FM 1-100, FM 1-112, FM 1-113, FM 3-04.111, FM 3-04.500, FM 3-04.513, FM 3-100.12, FM 4-0.
<b>Collective Task:</b>	01-4-0361 - Perform ground vehicle recovery operations
<b>References:</b>	DA Pam 738-750, FM 1-100, FM 100-14, FM 1-112, FM 1-113, FM 1-100, FM 3-04.111, FM 3-04.500, FM 3-100.12, FM 3-20.15, FM 4-0, FM 4-30.3, FM 9-43-2.
<b>Collective Task:</b>	01-4-0362 - Perform ground vehicle unit-level maintenance
<b>References:</b>	DA Pam 738-750, FM 1-100, FM 1-112, FM 1-113, FM 3-04.111, FM 3-04.500, FM 3-20.15, FM 3-100.12, FM 4-0, FM 4-30.3, FM 9-43-2.
<b>Collective Task:</b>	16-1-1001 - Conduct unit religious support
<b>References:</b>	FM 1-100, FM 1-05, FM 3-0, FM 3-04.111, FM 7-0, FM 71-100.
<b>Collective Task:</b>	03-1-C404 - Supervise nuclear, biological, and chemical defense operations
<b>References:</b>	FM 1-100, FM 1-112, FM 1-113, FM 3-04.111, FM 3-100.12, FM 3-11.4, FM 3-5, FM 3-6, FM 3-11.9, FM 7-0, FM 7-1.
<b>Collective Task:</b>	08-1-8102 - Perform aviation medicine (flight surgeon) support activities
<b>References:</b>	AR 40-3, AR 40-400, AR 40-501, FM 22-51, FM 1-100, FM 3-04.111, FM 3-100.12, FM 3-100.4, FM 3-11.4, FM 4-02, FM 4-02.7, FM 7-0, FM 8-10-26, FM 8-55, TC 3-34.489.
<b>Collective Task:</b>	08-2-0003 - Provide first aid to casualties
<b>References:</b>	AR 600-8-1, FM 1-100, FM 1-112, FM 1-113, FM 3-04.111, FM 3-11.4, FM 3-3, FM 3-5, FM 3-100.12, FM 4-02.283, FM 4-02.7, FM 4-25.11, FM 7-0, FM 7-1, FM 8-10-26, FM 8-10-6, FM 8-284, FM 8-285, FM 8-9, FM 22-51, STP 8-91W15-SM-TG.
<b>Collective Task:</b>	08-2-8101 - Provide health service support (aviation)
<b>References:</b>	AR 190-8, AR 200-1, AR 40-3, AR 40-400, AR 40-501, AR 40-66, FM 1-100, FM 3-04.111, FM 3-100.4, FM 4-02.7, FM 8-10-26, STP 8-91W15-SM-TG, TC 3-34.489.

Table 2-2. Supporting references-to-collective tasks listing

<b>Collective Task:</b>	08-2-C316 - Evacuate casualties
<b>References:</b>	AR 200-1, AR 385-10, AR 600-8-1, FM 1-100, FM 1-112, FM 1-113, FM 3-100.12, FM 3-100.4, FM 3-11.4, FM 3-3, FM 3-5, FM 4-02, FM 4-02.283, FM 4-02.6, FM 4-02.7, FM 7-0, FM 7-1, FM 8-10-26, FM 8-10-6, FM 8-285, FM 8-42, FM 8-55, FM 8-9.
<b>Collective Task:</b>	08-2-R315 - Perform field sanitation functions
<b>References:</b>	AR 200-1, AR 385-10, AR 40-5, FM 1-112, FM 1-113, FM 3-3, FM 3-11.21, FM 3-100.4, FM 4-25.12, FM 8-284, FM 8-285, FM 8-42, FM 21-10, TC 3-34.489.
<b>Collective Task:</b>	19-3-3106 - Handle enemy prisoners of war
<b>References:</b>	FM 1-100, FM 1-112, FM 1-113, FM 2-0, FM 3-04.111, FM 3-19.1, FM 3-19.4, FM 3-100.12.
<b>WARFIGHTING FUNCTION: COMMAND AND CONTROL (C2)</b>	
<b>Collective Task:</b>	01-1-0342 - Restrict local population interference with ongoing U.S. military operations
<b>References:</b>	FM 1-100, FM 1-112, FM 1-113, FM 3-04.111, FM 3-06, FM 3-06.11, FM 3-100.12, FM 3-100.4, FM 7-0, FM 7-1.
<b>Collective Task:</b>	01-1-0343 - Conduct command and control battalion/squadron operations
<b>References:</b>	FM 1-100, FM 1-112, FM 1-113, FM 3-04.111, FM 3-52, FM 3-100.4, FM 3-100.12, FM 6-0, FM 7-0, FM 7-1.
<b>Collective Task:</b>	01-1-0344 - Direct the battalion/squadron staff
<b>References:</b>	FM 1-100, FM 1-112, FM 1-113, FM 3-04.111, FM 3-100.12, FM 7-0, FM 7-1.
<b>Collective Task:</b>	01-1-0346 - Manage the status of enlisted personnel assigned to the battalion
<b>References:</b>	DA Pam 385-1, FM 1-100, FM 1-112, FM 1-113, FM 3-0, FM 3-04.111, FM 3-100.12, FM 7-0, FM 7-1.
<b>Collective Task:</b>	01-1-0347 - Integrate key operations and support functions into battalion operations
<b>References:</b>	FM 100-14, FM 1-100, FM 1-112, FM 1-113, FM 3-0, FM 3-04.111, FM 3-100.12, FM 7-0, FM 7-1.
<b>Collective Task:</b>	01-1-0348 - Manage the battalion/squadron safety program
<b>References:</b>	AR 385-10, AR 95-1, FM 1-100, FM 1-112, FM 1-113, FM 3-04.111, FM 3-04.513, FM 3-100.12, FM 7-0, FM 7-1.
<b>Collective Task:</b>	01-1-0349 - Direct the battalion/squadron standardization program
<b>References:</b>	AR 95-1, FM 1-100, FM 1-112, FM 1-113, FM 3-04.111, FM 3-100.12, FM 7-0, FM 7-1, TC 1-210.
<b>Collective Task:</b>	01-1-0355 - Develop an aviation media plan
<b>References:</b>	FM 1-100, FM 3-0, FM 1-100, FM 3-04.111, FM 3-100.12, FM 3-100.4.
<b>Collective Task:</b>	01-1-5126 - Conduct aviation stability operations and support operations
<b>References:</b>	FM 1-100, FM 1-112, FM 1-113, FM 3-04.111, FM 3-04.300, FM 3-04.500, FM 3-06.11, FM 3-07, FM 3-100.12, FM 4-0, FM 7-0, FM 7-1, FM 90-4, TC 1-210, TC 1-237.
<b>Collective Task:</b>	01-1-5134 - Plan aviation operations using the military decision making process
<b>References:</b>	FM 1-100, FM 1-112, FM 1-113, FM 2-0, FM 3-0, FM 3-04.111, FM 3-04.300, FM 3-100.12, FM 3-100.4, FM 4-0, FM 7-1.

**Table 2-2. Supporting references-to-collective tasks listing**

<b>Collective Task:</b>	01-1-5146 - Coordinate aviation liaison officer operations
<b>References:</b>	FM 1-100, FM 1-112, FM 1-113, FM 3-0, FM 3-04.111, FM 3-100.12, FM 7-0, FM 7-1.
<b>Collective Task:</b>	01-1-5147 - Establish battalion/squadron tactical command post operations
<b>References:</b>	FM 1-100, FM 1-112, FM 1-113, FM 3-04.111, FM 3-100.12, FM 7-0, FM 7-1.
<b>Collective Task:</b>	01-1-5149 - Coordinate procedures for establishing a tactical operations center
<b>References:</b>	FM 1-100, FM 1-112, FM 1-113, FM 3-04.111, FM 3-100.12, FM 7-0, FM 7-1.
<b>Collective Task:</b>	01-1-5155 - Direct civil-military operations
<b>References:</b>	FM 1-100, FM 1-112, FM 1-113, FM 3-19.15, FM 3-04.111, FM 3-05.301, FM 41-10, FM 3-06, FM 3-100.12, FM 41-10, JP 3-57.
<b>Collective Task:</b>	01-1-5157 - Plan aviation stability operations and support operations
<b>References:</b>	FM 1-100, FM 1-112, FM 1-113, FM 3-04.111, FM 3-04.300, FM 3-07, FM 3-100.12, FM 90-4.
<b>Collective Task:</b>	01-1-5164 - Integrate the Army airspace command and control plan into aviation operations
<b>References:</b>	FM 1-100, FM 1-112, FM 1-113, FM 3-04.111, FM 3-04.300, FM 3-100.2, FM 3-52, FM 6-0, FM 71-100-3, FM 90-4.
<b>Collective Task:</b>	01-1-5165 - Coordinate personnel recovery/self-recovery operations
<b>References:</b>	FM 1-100, FM 1-112, FM 1-113, FM 3-04.111, FM 3-100.12, FM 4-0, FM 71-100-3, FM 90-4, TC 1-210, TC 1-237.
<b>Collective Task:</b>	01-1-5166 - Employ automated mission planning systems
<b>References:</b>	FM 1-100, FM 1-112, FM 1-113, FM 3-0, FM 3-04.111, FM 7-1, JP 3-05.2.
<b>Collective Task:</b>	01-2-0341 - Perform composite risk management procedures
<b>References:</b>	AR 95-1, FM 1-100, FM 1-112, FM 1-113, FM 3-04.111, FM 3-04.500, FM 3-04.513, FM 3-100.12, FM 3-100.4, TC 1-210, TC 1-237.
<b>Collective Task:</b>	01-2-5160 - Perform troop-leading procedures
<b>References:</b>	FM 1-100, FM 1-112, FM 1-113, FM 3-0, FM 3-04.111, FM 3-100.12, FM 4-01.011, FM 7-0, FM 7-1.
<b>Collective Task:</b>	01-2-5219 - Conduct personnel recovery/self-recovery operations (UH-60)
<b>References:</b>	FM 1-100, FM 1-113, FM 3-04.300, FM 3-04.513, FM 3-100.12, FM 4-0, FM 90-4, TC 1-201, TC 1-210, TC 1-237
<b>Collective Task:</b>	01-2-5223 - Perform command, control, communications, computers, and intelligence operations
<b>References:</b>	FM 1-100, FM 1-112, FM 1-113, FM 3-04.111, FM 3-100.12, FM 3-100.4, FM 3-52, FM 4-0, FM 6-0, FM 7-1, FM 71-100-3, FM 90-4, TC 1-210, TC 1-237.
<b>Collective Task:</b>	01-1-5174 - Establish battalion/squadron tactical communications
<b>References:</b>	FM 1-100, FM 1-112, FM 1-113, FM 3-04.111, FM 3-100.12, FM 7-0, FM 7-1, TC 24-12, TC 24-21, FM 24-24.



**Table 2-2. Supporting references-to-collective tasks listing**

<b>Collective Task:</b>	01-1-5175 - Coordinate aviation tactical command, control, communications, computer, and intelligence systems planning
<b>References:</b>	FM 1-100, FM 1-112, FM 1-113, FM 3-04.111, FM 3-100.12, FM 7-0, FM 7-1, JP 6-0, JP 6-02, TC 1-210, TC 1-237.
<b>Collective Task:</b>	01-4-5221 - Establish an aviation frequency modulated radio retransmission station
<b>References:</b>	FM 1-100, FM 1-112, FM 1-113, FM 3-04.111, FM 3-100.12.
<b>Collective Task:</b>	07-2-5045 - Conduct negotiations
<b>References:</b>	FM 1-100, FM 1-112, FM 1-113, FM 3-0, FM 3-04.111, FM 3-100.12, FM 3-21.11, FM 41-10, FM 7-0, FM 7-1, FM 71-100.

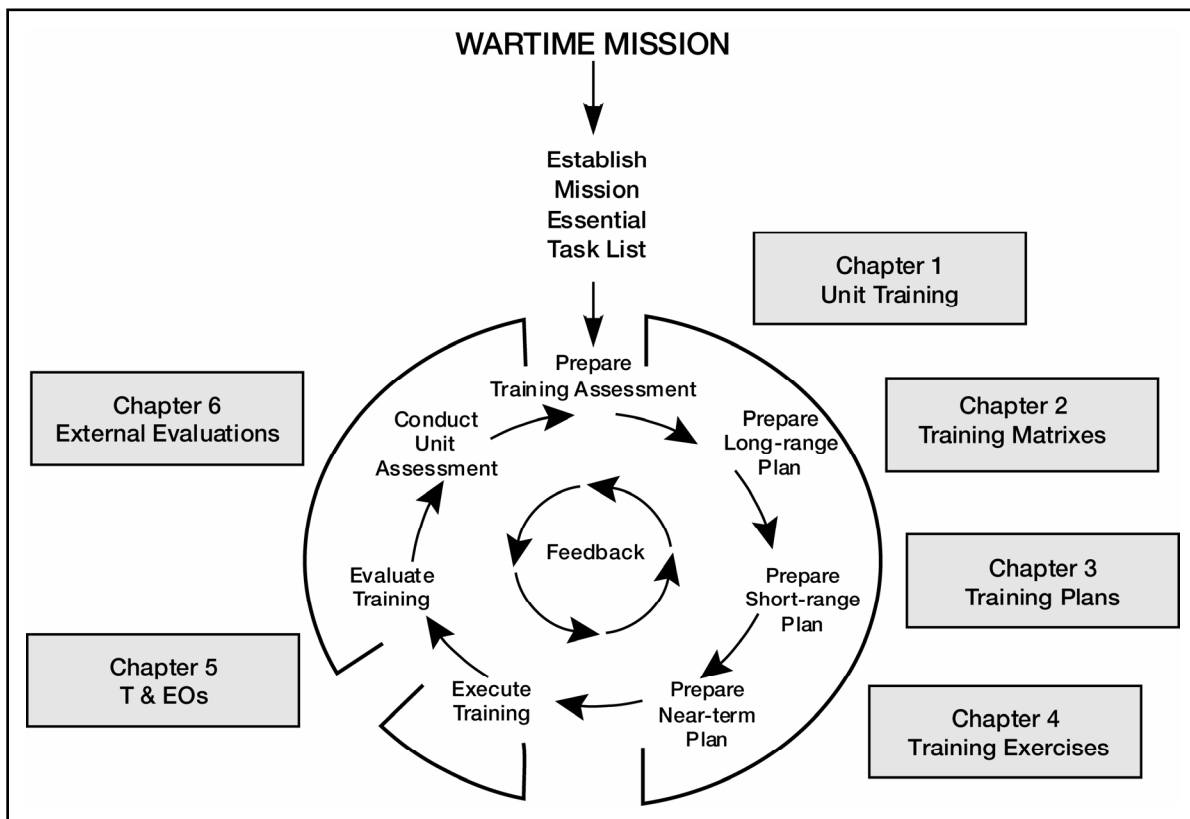
**This page intentionally left blank.**

## Chapter 3

# Training Plans

**3-1. GENERAL.** This chapter describes using the ARTEP-MTP to develop the assault battalion-level training plans and provides mission outlines. It helps commanders prepare training plans for critical wartime missions. Along with this ARTEP; the ARTEP 1-111-MTP, FM 7-0, FM 7-1, and FM 3-04.111, provide detailed information on the training management approach to the developing focused training. These field manuals and MTPs are source documents used to develop the assault battalion's training plans.

a. Army training management cycle. Figure 3-1 shows the stages of the training management cycle. The training management cycle is METL-based and depends on continuous feedback. This cycle is a common thread throughout this chapter.



**Figure 3-1. Training management cycle**

b. Training management automation. Accomplishment of these Army training (AT) XXI training management automation objectives will support unit training at the battalion level. These improvements are described below and in each section of this MTP.

(1) Army training information architecture-migrated (ATIA-M). The Army has fielded the ATIA-M portal to facilitate assault commander's access to current doctrinal publications and references. ATIA-M can be accessed via; <http://www.train.army.mil>. ATIA provides commanders and staff a full suite of the latest doctrinal publications and references (field manuals, ARTEP-MTPs, Soldier training publications [STPs], technical manuals, aircrew training manuals [ATMs],

and training circulars [TCs]). The ATIA-M portal, along with this ARTEP 1-113-MTP, assists commanders and staff when developing their training programs.

(2) Training support packages. Warfighter training support packages (TSPs) provide unit-tailored training scenarios for live, virtual, and constructive simulation training. Warrior TSPs and WarMod TSPs provide scenarios, courses, and materials for individual and systems training. When the unit has triggering circumstances such as—lessons learned, new Army transformation doctrine, and/or new equipment—the analysis is conducted to determine if the unit needs/requires a TSP. This TSP can minimize unit preparation time and increase actual training time. TSPs are available on the Reimer Digital Library (RDL) web site is <http://www.adtdl.army.mil>.

(3) Training aids, devices, simulators, and simulations (TADDS). TADSS is a set of training tools to offset the financial, safety, environmental, and technological constraints associated with training. TADSS also provide enhanced realism through the synthetic application of all warfighting functions, related units, and diverse training environments. It includes physical devices for institutional and collective training and synthetic environment (SE) tools.

(4) Center for Army lessons learned (CALL). The CALL is the Army's after-action review (AAR) source for standardized and automated data/information storage, distribution, and retrieval. It supports trainers, doctrine writers, testers, analysts, materiel developers, combat developers, and training developers. It provides doctrine, organization, training, materiel, leadership and education, personnel, and facilities (DOTMLPF) based data. The Internet address for CALL is <http://call.army.mil/>.

(5) General Dennis J. Reimer training and doctrine digital library. The RDL is an information repository that allows trainers, trainees, training developers, and doctrine writers to store and retrieve training and doctrine products and materials via the Internet (website listed above).

c. Battle-focus planning. As in tactical operations, planning lays the foundation for successful execution of any training plan. Planning involves leaders at all levels of the organization. It is an extension of the battle-focus concept that links organizational METL with the execution and evaluation of training. Battle focus allows the commander to narrow his scope of planning to wartime mission-essential tasks. All training, planned and conducted, must be linked to the METL and support collective battle tasks. It includes improving proficiency on some tasks and sustaining performance on others. When planning training, aviation commanders should include the senior warrant officer and the senior NCO at each level of command, as the senior trainers in their unit. The battalion commander is responsible for long-range, short-range, and near-term training plans.

### **3-2. LONG-RANGE PLANNING**

a. Command training guidance (CTG). The CTG is published at division and brigade to document the organization's long-range—sometimes called annual—training plan. It is the training counterpart of the organization's operational war plan. It must be read and understood by every commander because it is used as a ready reference to plan, execute, and assess training throughout the long-range planning period.

b. Unit METL development. This is the initial process in developing a battle-focused, long-range training plan. METL development is the catalyst to focus training on wartime operational missions. The METL is an unconstrained statement of tasks required to accomplish the unit's wartime missions. It must be continuously reviewed and crosschecked against the unit's modified table of organization and equipment (MTOE), CATS, and this MTP. It must support and complement the METL of the next higher headquarters and be based on the wartime mission. All members of the organization must understand their unit METL. Listed below is a checklist for METL development:

(1) The brigade commander provides a restated wartime mission and approved METL to the battalion commander.

(2) The battalion commander identifies specified and implied tasks based on lessons learned.

(3) Collective tasks that support critical wartime missions and other tasks required to execute war plans are identified using the mission-to-collective-task matrix (table 2-1).

(4) All collective tasks are compiled in a list sequenced as they are expected to occur during the wartime mission.

(5) The restated mission is analyzed, and only those tasks essential to accomplish the wartime mission are selected from the task list. Subordinate commanders, key warrant officers, and key NCOs participate in selecting the tasks. When the tasks are approved, these mission-essential tasks compose the specific battalion's unit METL and battle tasks.

(6) The brigade commander then approves the battalion's METL. A unit's METL is stabilized when approved and is normally modified only if changes occur in wartime missions. METL development is covered in detail in FM 7-1.

(7) The battalion's restated mission and approved METL are provided to the subordinate chain of command. Figure 3-2 shows a sample METL for an assault helicopter battalion.

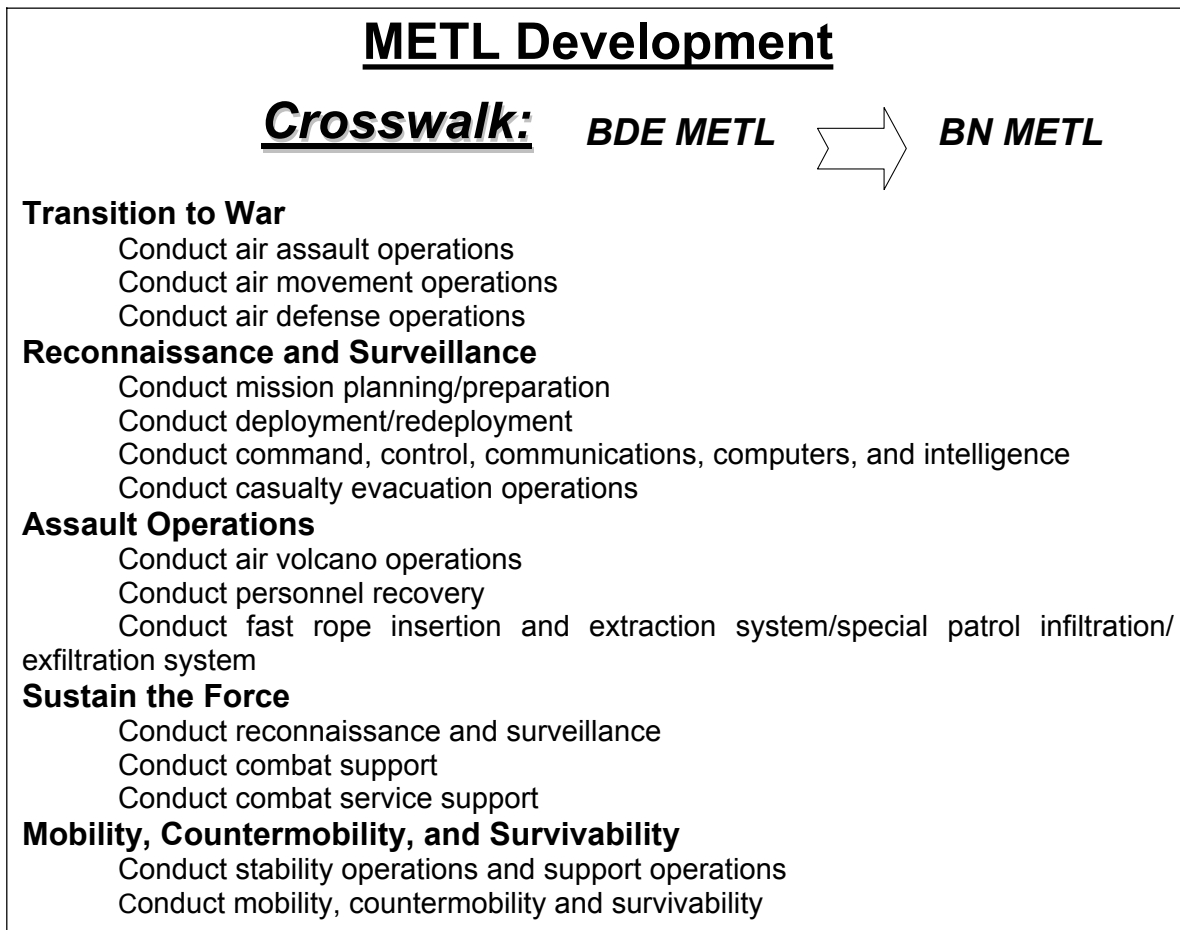


Figure 3-2. Sample assault helicopter battalion METL

c. Establish training objectives. After the METL is approved, the commander establishes training objectives. The training objectives are conditions and standards, which describe the situation or environment and ultimate outcome criteria that the unit must meet to successfully perform the tasks. Training objectives and standards for METL can be obtained from the MTP, STP, higher headquarters command guidance, and the local SOP. Another source of task information is the Army Universal Task List (AUTL) which is used as a cross-reference as explained in the FM 7-15. Every task should have a condition and a standard so that all training can be evaluated and critiqued to the standard. Each time that a METL is selected as a training objective, the task and standard remain the same for different training events. However, conditions may be varied for different training events to match the skill level of the training audience.

d. Commander's training assessment. Every commander has specific goals. These goals are based on his own vision, guidance from higher commanders, and guidance in appropriate doctrinal manuals. An initial METL assessment is required to set the starting point for developing the battalion's training strategy. An ongoing evaluation process is required to ensure that the battalion continues to be focused on preparation for its wartime missions. Aviation commanders must always include the proficiency of individual aviators and aircrews in their assessment. The training assessment is the commander's continuous comparison of the unit's current proficiency with the proficiency required to fight and win on the battlefield. The commander, his staff, and subordinate commanders assess the organization's current proficiency on mission-essential tasks against the required standard. The commander then indicates the current proficiency by rating each task as "T" (trained), "P" (needs practice), or "U" (untrained). The outcome of the training assessment identifies the unit's training requirements. The METL assessment compares current levels of training with the Army standard and is used to update unit goals and objectives. Figure 3-3 summarizes the METL assessment process. Table 3-1 shows a sample commander's training assessment for an assault helicopter battalion. Tips for conducting the commander's training assessment are as follows:

- (1) Review all formal and informal (internal/external) evaluations—such as the CTC, AAR, command inspection program (CIP) results, and aviation resource management survey (ARMS) inspection trends. Pay particular attention to recurring deficiencies.
- (2) Review past QTBs to determine how the previous commander assessed the unit with respect to the METL and his training strategy.
- (3) Review all equipment availability and readiness reports to detect deficiencies.
- (4) Talk to the headquarters commander, aviation maintenance officer, motor officer, and aviation support battalion commander.
- (5) Review past unit status reports (USRs) for readiness information.
- (6) Review command information system (CIS) reports on individual training records—check weapons qualification, common task training (CTT), and physical training (PT) scores.
- (7) With company commanders, review individual aircrew training folders for overall correctness, the commander's task list, and minimum training requirements. Discuss aviation training with the battalion standardization officer.
- (8) Review selected individual flight records to ensure that pilots maintain medical qualification. Ensure that pilots have current (commander-signed) DA Form 4186 (*Medical Recommendation for Flying Duty*) on file for annual exams and all temporary groundings. Discuss training with the flight surgeon.
- (9) Review the unit's gunnery programs.
- (10) Request a review of the aircrew training program, PC status, and no-notice evaluation program. Also request a report of who is on track, behind, and ahead with respect to ATM progression from the battalion standardization officer.

(11) Request an assessment of unit training from key leaders within the organization—such as staff, company commanders, senior warrant officers, and NCOs.

(12) Review the personnel status report for critical personnel shortages. Note personnel turnover trends. Pay particular attention to low-density MOS turnover.

(13) Participate in several company-level training exercises.

(14) Talk to the Soldiers.

(15) Determine operator proficiency on newly fielded equipment—such as a new series of cargo vehicle, new generators, and new or updated personal weapons.

(16) Consult with the battalion aviation safety officer. Review the unit safety record, paying particular attention to trends in accidents and incidents.

(17) Consult with the brigade commander, S3, and CSM. The perceptions of the battalion's training status by these three individuals will have tremendous impact on the battalion commander's training assessment.

### **Training Assessment**

- Made by the commander based on triggering circumstances and lessons learned.
- Compared current level of training with the Army standard.
- Was the cornerstone of the long-range planning process.
- Based on firsthand observations and input from all leaders.
- Was a continuous process.
- Used to set or update unit goals and objectives.
- Influenced by future events.
- Compared unit's ARTEP-MTP tasks with the Army universal task list (AUTL).

**Figure 3-3. Training assessment summary**

**Table 3-1. Sample battalion commander's training assessment**

UNIT METL TASKS	WARFIGHTING FUNCTIONS						COMMAND AND CONTROL	
	INTELLIGENCE	MANEUVER	FIREPOWER	SURVIVABILITY	MOBILITY, COUNTERMOBILITY,	COMBAT SERVICE SUPPORT		AIR DEFENSE
Conduct air assault operations	T	T				T	T	T
Conduct air movement operations	P	P	P				P	P
Conduct stability operations and support operations	P	P	P				P	P
Conduct personnel recovery operations	T	T	T				T	T
Conduct combat support and combat service support operations	P	P	P	P		P	P	P
Conduct deployment/redeployment operations	P	P	P				P	P
Conduct mobility, countermobility, and survivability	T	T		T		T	T	T
Conduct reconnaissance and surveillance operations	T	T	T			T	T	T
Conduct air defense operations	T	T	T			T	T	T
Conduct air volcano operations	T	T	T			T	T	T
Conduct FRIES/SPIES operations	T	T				T	T	T
Conduct mission planning/preparation operations	T	T				T	T	T
Conduct C4I operations	T	T	T			T	T	T
Conduct casualty evacuation operations	T	T	P			T	T	T

**Note.** Current proficiency is shown by rating each task as "T" (trained), "P" (needs practice), or "U" (untrained).

e. Army National Guard (ARNG) commander's training assessment. ARNG commanders face additional challenges in the training assessment process. Sources that may offer training insight include—

- The brigade final exercise report (FER), if the unit has recently completed a brigade command and battle staff training (BCBST) rotation.
- The training assessment module (TAM), after an annual training exercise.
- Information gained from consulting with the unit's training support battalion (TSBN).

f. Develop training strategy and commander's guidance. The training strategy is developed using the outcome from the training assessment. With the training strategy, the commander and his staff establish training priorities by determining the minimum frequency with which each mission-essential task will be trained during the upcoming planning period. It includes the commander's guidance, which includes the commander's training vision. To develop unit goals, the commander must—

- Review the higher commander's goals.
- Spell out, in real-world terms, what his unit will do to comply with the goals of higher commanders.
- List in broad terms his goals for the unit. Figure 3-4 provides a sample of the commander's guidance with training goals, objectives, and priorities.



<b>Command Training Guidance</b>
<b>Training goals</b>
Train all battalion METL proficiencies to standard.
Refine battle staff proficiencies and TOC/ALOC battle tracking procedures.
Get brigade ready to conduct a well planned and precisely executed FTX during next quarter.
<b>Training objectives</b>
Ensure newly assigned Soldiers/leaders are trained and confident on SOPs/TTPs.
Incorporate newly assigned aviators into the commander's ATP within 10 days of arrival in the unit.
Train battalions and brigade staff for upcoming brigade FTX.
<b>Training priorities</b>
Ensure individual/crew proficiency sustainment.
Conduct mission collective training.
Use gunnery skills.
Use staff battle tracking procedures.
Conduct CBRN training.

**Figure 3-4. Sample commander's guidance**

g. Establish training priorities. Priorities are established for training METL tasks by basing the priorities on training status, the criticality of the task, and the relative training emphasis that the task should receive.

h. Integrate training into the long-range planning calendar. Long-range planning is the process of integrating the battalion's training strategy into the brigade's long-range training calendar. This process ensures that resources (such as major training areas, ammunition, and fuel) are allocated and shortfalls are identified. It synchronizes supporting units and agencies so that training events can be properly executed. The tools used to develop a long-range training plan are the battalion training strategy, the brigade and division's CTG, and the brigade and division long-range training calendar—12 to 18 months out. The following basic steps can be used to develop the long-range planning calendar.

(1) Required training events on the calendar. Brigade or higher headquarters direct these requirements. These events provide excellent training opportunities. Evaluate the training strategy, and determine in which areas the battalion can train during these events.

(2) Time management. Highlight prime-time training periods available to the unit and support periods. Focus resources and training exercise planning to take advantage of prime-time training. Account for holiday periods.

(3) Training cycle management. Many headquarters use a training cycle system to insulate units from training distracters during peak training periods. Capitalize on training opportunities during these peak periods. However, the nature of support in an aviation battalion often mandates some level of continuous support to other combat units, even during peak training cycles. Aligning aviation battalions in habitual support relationships will significantly affect training management.

(4) Unit exercises and other training. Schedule events that will improve or sustain METL proficiency along with the higher headquarters-directed training requirements.

(5) Aircrew training program. A major consideration in developing the long-range training plan for any aviation unit is the ATP and factors that affect it. Consideration must be given to—

- Individual pilot proficiency.
- Aircrew proficiency (battle roster).
- The unit maintenance program.
- Flight-hour allocation to supported units where aviation training is conducted along with supported unit missions.
- Individual and aircrew training that is usually accomplished while not in a support role (such as emergency procedure training, flight evaluations, and instrument proficiency training).
- Pilot training accomplished in the crew and collective simulators/simulations like the aviation combined arms tactical trainer (AVCATT).
- Training accomplished with the aircraft survivability equipment training (ASET) system.

(6) Other requirements. Identify other requirements that affect training (such as announced inspections, weekly sergeants' time, new equipment fielding) and community and installation support events (such as post cleanup and parades).

i. Long-range planning. The commander and S3 can automate many of the long-range planning steps.

(1) METL development. During METL development, the ATIA can be accessed via <http://www.train.army.mil>. ATIA includes the RDL icon used for MTOE references. A generic mission statement for the battalion is in the MTOE. The battalion's official mission as approved by the brigade commander is obtained together with the brigade's approved METL. With this information and the commander's guidance, the S3 can prepare a proposed METL for discussion with the company commanders. After incorporating results from these discussions and examination of implied battle tasks, informal coordination can be made with the brigade S3. The battalion commander approves the unit's proposed METL and then sends it to the brigade commander for approval. The battalion commander may send it electronically through shared databases on the battalion and brigade terminals.

(2) Commander's training assessment. The commander, or the S3, needs to examine the previous commander's training assessment. In coordination with the CSM, company commanders, senior warrant officers, first sergeants (1SGs), and the staff, the commander updates the commander's training assessment based on the new METL, any training evaluations available, and the personal observations of his team of leaders. From this process, the battalion commander develops his training vision, goals, and priorities that will be published as the commander's guidance. Face-to-face coordination will occur throughout this process. The assessment documentation will be shared electronically via ATIA.

(3) Long-range planning calendar annual training calendar. For the new annual training calendar, the S3 will carefully study the brigade CTG and the key training events in which his unit will participate. The TSPs that relate to those events can be found through the RDL. Based on the commander's training assessment, the S3 tailors the T&EO or STX for each event to emphasize the METL tasks that need practice. The METL tasks that must be trained will be the focus of battalion-directed training. The S3 selects appropriate training scenarios with supporting operating plans (OPLANs) from the TSPs in the database. OPLAN annexes provide details on resources, sequences, and duration of training. Along with the brigade, division, and the military community, the S3 chooses training event dates that do not conflict with other key calendar events. The proposed annual training calendar is then ready to be published. It is coordinated and approved by the battalion commander and meets the requirements of the CTG, and training is provided resources. The S3 includes the newly approved METL and establishes training objectives for each mission-essential task. The S3 also identifies long-lead time resources and long-term coordination requirements for CTC rotations.

**3-3. SHORT-RANGE PLANNING.** A short-range training plan defines, in greater detail, the broad guidance on training events and other activities contained in the long-range training guidance and on the long-range calendar. It begins with a review of the commander's training assessment and the brigade's quarterly training guidance (QTG). It results in the quarterly training calendar and QTB. The short-range plan is prepared using the following steps.

a. Review the training program. The commander reviews the training program described in the long-range planning process. The commander reviews it to determine whether assessments made during long-range planning are still valid. The commander reviews the following.

(1) Short-range QTG published at each level of command from division through battalion. QTG enables commanders and staffs to prioritize and refine mission-essential training guidance contained in the long-range CTG. Battalion commanders publish their QTG after receiving the brigade and division QTG. This usually occurs about 90 days before the start of each quarter. The roles of the CSM and battalion standardization officer are an important aspect of the QTG development process. They help identify the individual and crew training tasks that must be integrated into collective mission training during the short-range planning period.

(2) The training goals and priorities to determine whether goals are still valid. Established priorities must support these goals. To update priorities during the short-range planning process, the commander uses the same process followed in establishing priorities during the long-range planning process.

(3) Training guidance from higher headquarters to ensure the training program described in the long-range planning calendar meets the established training guidance.

(4) Long-range planning calendars of the unit and higher headquarters for entries that affect short-range planning. Changes to the long-range planning calendar may affect the unit's ability to accomplish its training program.

(5) Previous short-range planning calendars for the Active Component (AC) or monthly schedules for the RC. The commander reviews them for training accomplished, training pre-empted, and lessons learned.

b. Review current unit proficiency. The commander performs this review to update priorities. The commander's training assessment is reviewed to provide a snapshot of the unit's current Soldier, leader, and collective task proficiency. Individual and crew training sustainment must be included in the plan.

c. Review resources. This review is performed to determine if it is still possible to execute the program described on the long-range planning calendar.

d. Review the training environment. The commander's second review of the training environment takes on added importance as training events and activities approach. Factors that affect the training environment and that collectively affect the training program are—

- Personnel assigned.
- Personnel turbulence.
- Morale.
- Education programs.
- Mandatory training.
- Visits, inspections, and tests.
- Supplies and equipment.
- Nonmission-related activities.

e. Develop a detailed plan of action. The commander develops a detailed plan for the duration of the short-range plan. The detailed plan of action is prepared as described below.

(1) Validate the need for scheduled events. The commander examines the events identified on the long-range training plan to determine whether they are still valid.

(2) Before preparation transfer valid events to a quarterly training calendar.

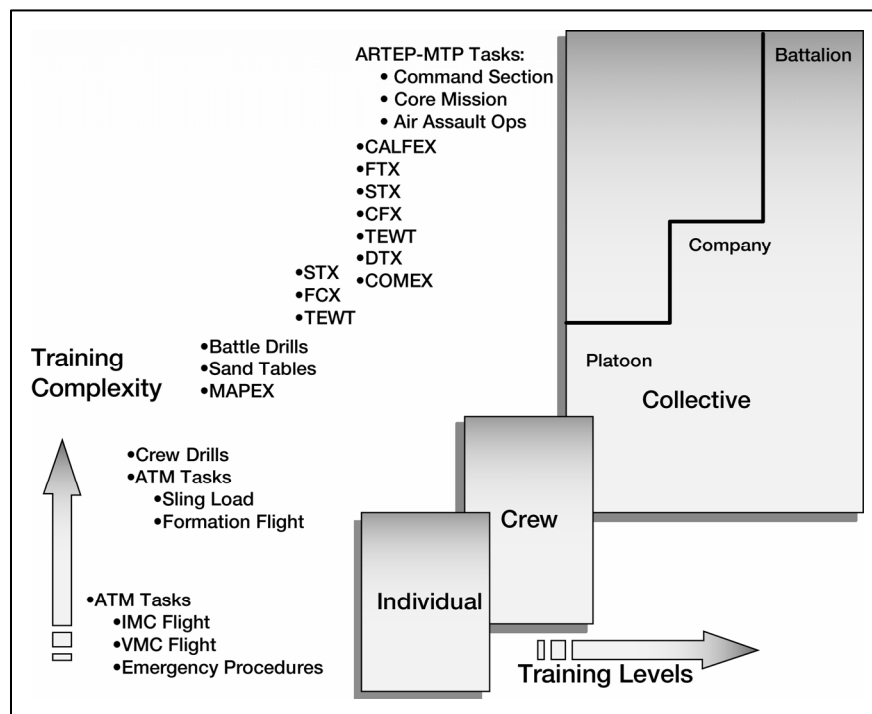
(3) Determine desired outcomes for scheduled events. The commander determines what his expectations are to accomplish with each event and then plans backward to achieve the desired outcome.

(4) Analyze supporting missions to determine the related individual, leader, and collective tasks. The success of collective training is a function of the training achievement of crews and of individuals. Figure 3-5 shows the relationships among training levels and exercises that support that training.

(5) Select specific training objectives for missions and tasks to be trained. The T&EOs in chapter 5 give the commander the conditions, standards, task steps, and performance measures for the collective tasks that support the unit's missions.

(6) Prepare a quarterly training calendar. When preparing the quarterly training calendar, the S3 studies the brigade CTG and the battalion annual training calendar. The S3 refines and expands the annual calendar, as appropriate. He identifies, allocates, and coordinates short lead-time resources, such as local training facilities. The S3 pays particular attention to CTC lessons learned, as obtained from standard army after-action review system (STAARS) and the RDL in the database, as the S3 begins to develop training objectives and tasks for inclusion in an FTX OPORD. The S3 allocates time on the AVCATT and other critical training resources. The S3 cross-references each event with specific training objectives and coordinates with all supporting agencies, the battalion staff, and unit commanders.

(7) Review short-range plans with higher headquarters.



**Figure 3-5. Training exercises and training levels**

(8) Issue guidance specifically addressing how training will be accomplished. Commanders pass guidance to lower echelons in many ways, including—

- Letters of instruction.
- Training meetings.
- Command and staff calls.
- Published S3 notes.

**3-4. NEAR-TERM PLANNING.** Near-term planning covers a six- to eight-week period before training. It defines specific actions required to execute the short-range plan and is the final phase of planning before training execution.

a. Company and platoon planning.

(1) The battalion staff uses the training plan to define responsibilities and assist the company commanders in the planning and execution of training for their units. When preparing for training, the company commander may execute his own training strategy. Flight company commanders focus on individual pilot and aircrew training. They take maximum advantage of training opportunities afforded by flight hours allocated to supported units. Maintenance company commanders focus on individual Soldier/maintainer development and maintenance team development.

(2) Flight platoon leaders focus on individual pilot proficiency training and on collective training of aircrews. The platoon should be able to perform all of its collective tasks and battle drills according to standards and guidelines provided by the appropriate ATM, MTP, field manuals, and unit SOPs. Platoons can plan and execute limited STXs before taking part in company-level training. These exercises can increase the confidence level of individual aircrews and provide valuable operational experience. In addition, the platoon leader can use sand table exercises, ROC drills, and OPORD drills to ensure his subordinates have a basic understanding of the tasks and drills they must execute. In developing the platoon training plan, leaders at all levels should adhere to the principles outlined in FM 7-0 and FM 7-1 as well as using this MTP as a guide. Platoon leaders should crosswalk training references to identify the platoon collective tasks and the crew, leader, and individual tasks used during training exercises.

b. Tips for commanders. In near-term planning, commanders—

(1) Conduct battalion and company training meetings to coordinate and finalize all training events, activities, and resources.

(2) Provide specific guidance to trainers.

(3) Prepare training objectives.

(4) Prepare T&EOs.

(5) Ensure that attached or units under operational control (OPCON) have been integrated.

(6) Determine time for preexecution checks.

(7) Prepare detailed training schedules.

(8) Crosswalk aircraft requirements with aircraft maintenance.

(9) Review AARs from previous training.

c. Training meetings. Training meetings are nonnegotiable at the battalion and company level; they must be held. During training meetings, commanders provide guidance for forming training schedules, conduct near-term planning, and provide resources for long-range planning. The primary focus of training meetings is management issues for the next six weeks. At the company level, training meetings focus on the specifics of training to be conducted. Well-structured, well-organized, and recurring training meetings produce training events that are exciting, demanding, and directly related to the unit's mission. Training meetings are conducted in three phases—phase I, assessment of completed training; phase II, coordination; and phase III, future planning. They produce coordinated and locked-in training schedules. Battalion training meetings are—

(1) Conducted by the commander.

(2) Focused on training issues only.

(3) Conducted weekly.

(4) Routinely scheduled on the same day and time.

(5) Posted on the training schedule.

(6) Oriented agenda .

- (7) Attended by all necessary participants to include all commanders.
- (8) Focused on training that is METL oriented.
- (9) Held to ensure that risk management is integrated.
- (10) Used as forums to identify and overcome problems or distracters.

d. Training schedules. The training schedule is the company's primary management tool to ensure that training is conducted on time, by qualified trainers, and with the necessary resources. Draft training schedules must be initiated at least six- to eight-weeks out to ensure that resources are coordinated and external support is requested. Once the battalion commander approves and the company commander signs the training schedule, it constitutes an official order. Training schedules must be living documents; however, the S3 should approve all changes. The S3 ensures that they are up-to-date and posted where every Soldier in the unit can read them. Training schedules ensure that information is disseminated and that every Soldier knows who is to be at the scheduled training and with what equipment and the date/time/place where the training will take place.

e. Preparation for training. As with any tactical unit, aviation units must be proficient at the myriad of tasks necessary to deploy, establish assembly areas (AAs) and conduct operations, perform maintenance, and defend organizational assets, while located at a field site. In addition, aviation units must maintain extremely high standards of crew member proficiency. The following discussion covers preparation for training for both ground-oriented tasks and aircrew tasks.

(1) Train and certify leaders. This is an important step and covers all trainers, evaluators, and unit leaders involved in unit training. The proficiency and preparedness of the evaluation team will directly affect the quality of training and the proficiency that units gain at the training site. Before executing training, senior leaders must certify all trainers and leaders to ensure their technical and tactical proficiency in relation to the unit that they will train and evaluate. Senior leaders use a series of officer and NCO professional development sessions, followed by certification exercises or examinations. These can take many forms such as written exams and sand-table evaluations. The trainers should be knowledgeable and experienced in the position of the individuals they are selected to evaluate. Leaders must also undergo training before the unit takes part in a collective training exercise. Commanders at each level must ensure that subordinate leaders are able to perform the required leader tasks in support of the collective tasks to be trained. In turn, the leadership will train subordinate leaders on the individual and crew tasks supporting the collective tasks.

(2) Reconnoiter the site. After trainers, evaluators, and leaders are certified, the commander and evaluation team must make a site reconnaissance of the area where the training will be conducted. At this point, they can begin to develop graphic control measures for the exercise. They also conduct a terrain analysis to identify all key terrain as well as the following locations:

- (a) STX lanes.
- (b) Opposing forces (OPFOR) positions.
- (c) AAs.
- (d) Leader training sites.
- (e) AAR sites.
- (f) Logistics support locations.
- (g) Command post (CP) locations.
- (h) Retraining areas.

(3) Conduct risk management. Risk management can be a great asset to training realistically and safely. It must be done correctly and used to improve training. Identifying hazards, assessing hazards, making decisions, implementing controls, and supervising execution—whether formal or informal—are the commander's business. Training realistically for war requires commanders to properly manage the risks that are inherent in the business. This means eliminating all unacceptable risks and properly dealing with the acceptable calculated risks that remain. Appendix C of this MTP covers risk management.

(4) Issue the plan. After planning and coordination have been completed, the training event begins. The platoon leader receives the OPORD and begins his troop-leading procedures. While the platoon leader formulates his plan, the rest of the platoon conducts the various activities of troop-leading procedures, including crew training, to prepare for the exercise. The trainer/commander evaluates the platoon leader on his understanding of the OPORD, requiring him to back brief the order. This ensures that the platoon leader is ready to issue the OPORD to his platoon. It also tests his ability to understand oral orders and builds his confidence before stepping in front of his team leaders, pilots, and vehicle commanders to issue the order.

(5) Brief the mission. The mission briefing communicates mission specifics (specified and implied tasks and intent) to the aircrew or flight. Communicating information and intent is commander business. The mission briefing is an indicator of the amount of preparation that has gone into a given mission. An incomplete, poor briefing sheet may be a false indicator of adequate planning. It also may be a true indicator of less-than-adequate planning.

(6) Conduct rehearsal. The key to successful execution is practice. Regardless of the unit's level of proficiency, it will benefit from conducting rehearsals. Rehearsals ensure understanding of the mission, concept of the operation, commander's intent, specific responsibilities and timing of actions, and backup procedures. Time may be critical; however, some form of rehearsal must be done before mission execution. Commanders should try to avoid redundancy. Commanders also should know the desired outcome of the rehearsal and establish standards. Some rehearsal techniques used at battalion and company level are map rehearsals, sand table/terrain model, and ROC drills. A well thought-out and executed rehearsal results in synchronized, successful execution of combat actions. The rehearsal should cover the mission from start to finish, concentrating on actions in the objective area. If time is limited, the commander must decide the critical events of the mission and rehearse them first:

(a) Minimize changes at the rehearsal. Rehearsals generally occur at the eleventh hour. Major changes at this point can be disastrous. Instill in the members of the unit that if they see a potential conflict, they should not wait until the rehearsal to voice it—the more time to implement a change, the better.

(b) Insist that members of each participating crew attend the rehearsal. There is no more important duty than this critical preparation task.

(c) Think risk management.

(d) Build and use an easily transportable rehearsal box/kit. Contents may include engineer tape, paint, chalk, string, rope, tent stakes, three-by-five cards, and model threat and friendly vehicles and aircraft.

(e) Reinforce earlier training, and increase proficiency in the critical tasks to be evaluated.

(f) Synchronize the actions of team leaders, vehicle commanders, aircraft crews, and other subordinate elements.

(g) Confirm coordination requirements between the platoon and adjacent units.

(h) Improve each Soldier's understanding of the concept of the operation, the fire support plan, anticipated contingencies, and possible actions and reactions for various situations that may arise during the operation.

f. Training execution. Executing a training exercise should be attempted only when the unit/crew/individual clearly understands how to execute the mission. The trainer determines this at the conclusion of the rehearsals. At that point, the trainer either allows the unit to execute the

task or continues with additional rehearsals, focusing on leader training. During the execution phase, the trainer conducts a detailed evaluation for use during the AAR, which immediately follows the exercise.

g. Conducting the AAR. A properly conducted AAR is the key to assessing the training program. The two types of AARs are formal and informal. Formal AARs normally are scheduled and conducted as part of an external or internal evaluation. Informal AARs require less planning, and the focus is on-the-spot reviews of Soldier and collective training performance. AARs should take the format of issues, discussion, and recommendations. They analyze the training event through the planning, preparation, and execution phases of the operation. The AAR is a professional discussion that requires the active participation of those being trained. This structured review process allows training participants to discover for themselves what happened, why it happened, and how the unit can improve its performance. Crews should conduct informal AARs after every training flight. These lessons learned should be captured and shared at the next company pilot briefing. AARs should always—

- (1) Be standards-based and capture the good and bad aspects of the training.
- (2) Provide the participants with a rating for each task trained during the exercise.
- (3) Tell a story about what was planned, what happened and why it happened and what could be done differently to improve performance.
- (4) Tell what was good and needs to stay the same.
- (5) Reinforce and increase the learning that took place.
- (6) Increase Soldier and leader interest and motivation.
- (7) Identify and analyze both strengths and weaknesses.
- (8) Involve all participants.
- (9) Guide the training unit toward achieving learning objectives.
- (10) Link lessons learned to subsequent training.

h. Retraining. Based on the evaluation results, the unit should undergo retraining on each task for which it receives a NO-GO rating. Trainers and leaders must develop a training program to meet these specific requirements. The unit can then be reevaluated later.

i. Automating near-term planning. For the monthly training schedule using AT XXI automated tools, the S3 calls up TADSS on the ATIA portal (<http://www.train.army.mil>) to review current doctrinal publications and references. The S3 uses STAARS to ensure that appropriate AARs are included in training. The S3 also uses it to ensure that lessons learned from other units are studied before training begins and new lessons learned are captured when the event ends. The S3 must supervise to ensure that all training events are presented as scheduled and ensures that they are accurate, well structured, efficient, realistic, safe, and effective. The S3 must ensure that informal evaluation and feedback by trainers and senior leaders are continuous, and formal evaluations are included in training plans. Evaluation documentation can range from annotated T&EOs to CTC take-home packages. The STAARS can be accessed to provide simple, codified methods to capture and disseminate the results of formal evaluations as well as lessons learned using standard CALL formats. Using the command assessment program established by the battalion commander, the S3 gathers all of the related reports, results, feedback, scores, evaluations, and related data used to assist in the commander's organizational assessment. The commander assesses the battalion's overall go-to-war readiness in every area, not just training. The commander uses the assessment results to update the unit files in STAARS. The information is then available—

- (1) For input to the unit level logistics system (ULLS).
- (2) For the standard installation/division personnel system (SIDPERS) to update the resource database.
- (3) To update the RDL.
- (4) To link to the status of resource and training system (SORTS).



### 3-5. TRAINING THE HEADQUARTERS

a. Training at the battalion level. Planning training for the battalion staff presents the commander with unique challenges. The staff and headquarters are involved in day-to-day priority operations and support of subordinate unit training. It is difficult to find the time to address the training needs of these elements; however, they must be capable of fulfilling their roles for the unit to perform its wartime missions. The battalion executive officer (XO) is the key. The battalion XO must coordinate with the commander to ensure that staff tasks are mastered, while still accomplishing the day-to-day priorities.

b. Training the coordinating staff. Chapter 4 identifies the training tasks for the battalion staff. The strategy used to train the staff varies based on the considerations used in planning training, such as level of proficiency and training support available. FM 7-1 contains detailed information on conducting exercises. Methods of training the staff are discussed below.

(1) Tactical exercise without troops (TEWT).

(a) General. The TEWT is a low-cost, low-overhead exercise conducted in the field on actual terrain suitable for training units for specific missions. It is used to train subordinate leaders and battle staffs on terrain analysis and unit and weapons emplacement. The TEWT also provides training to plan the execution of a unit mission, which may include employing CS and CSS assets. A TEWT can be used to train personnel to—

- Analyze terrain.
- Employ units according to terrain analysis.
- Emplace weapon systems to best support the unit's mission.
- Plan the conduct of the unit's mission.
- Plan and place CS and CSS assets.
- Coach subordinates on the best use of terrain.

(b) Planning phase. TEWTs require limited resources (maps, graphic materials, and organic vehicles for transportation) during the exercise. Commanders begin planning, using the following steps: operations, tasks, objectives, personnel trained, and resources.

- When conducting reconnaissance of the terrain, inspect the area for all military aspects. Take detailed notes about the area, and select rendezvous points, briefing or AAR sites, parking areas, and routes.
- In developing the scenario, include the general situation, initial situation, requirements, and time schedule. Check the scenario to ensure that it fits the terrain. During this check, war-game likely responses to situations and requirements.
- Ensure that narratives for the scenario (situations) are short and create a realistic battlefield picture.
- Finalize plans and the scenario. The starting point for a TEWT can be either the issuance of an OPORD or the commander's concept of the operation and intent; then reconnaissance, planning, coordination, and preparation can begin. The higher headquarters staff should assist in preparation of the OPORDs.

(c) Preparation phase. A rehearsal is conducted by war gaming with the staff.

(d) Execution phase. All participants must be present, to include staff, company commanders, attached or OPCON commanders, platoon leaders, and CS and CSS personnel. If the staff and commander are initially preparing an OPORD, only the planning staff needs to be present. During the execution phase:

- Explain the purpose and objectives of the exercise.
- Present the general situation. (This may be given earlier.)
- Orient personnel on the terrain and identify prominent features.
- Present the initial situation and requirements. Include the location and time of rendezvous for briefing the plan. Solutions or plans can be briefed at the same point, depending on the similarity of the company missions.

- Organize personnel into groups and release groups to conduct reconnaissance; maintain combat organization—company commanders with platoon leaders and staff with special elements.
- Move through the area to observe personnel conducting reconnaissance and formulating plans.
- Ensure that all personnel meet at the designated time and place.
- Select the order and personnel to brief.
- Ensure that briefers use sand tables or map boards with graphics and walk the terrain.
- Ensure that personnel listen to each briefing or brief the commander on their plan separately and then move to the next position.
- Ask specific questions or provide a format for the briefer. For example, the commander may want leaders to brief on organization and employment of CS and CSS elements.
- At the end of subordinate back-briefs, the commander may conduct a sand-table or terrain-board rehearsal of the operation.
- Conduct TEWTs using the same procedures and techniques as for planning and preparing an actual operation.

---

**Note.** At the end of subordinate back briefs, the commander may conduct a sand table or terrain board rehearsal of the operation.

---

(e) After-action review. At the conclusion of each plan or after all solutions have been presented, conduct an AAR that covers solutions, employment of forces, and the six warfighting functions. Conduct the final AAR using the same steps and procedures as for an FTX.

(2) Map exercise (MAPEX).

(a) General. The MAPEX is a low-cost, low-overhead training exercise that requires a minimum number of support personnel and portrays military situations on maps and overlays. It may be supplemented with training aids, such as terrain models and sand tables. A MAPEX enables a commander to train the staff and leaders to plan, coordinate, and execute operations under simulated wartime conditions. The commander uses a MAPEX to train his staff and leaders in—

- Functioning as an effective team.
- Exchanging information.
- Preparing estimates.
- Giving appraisals.
- Making recommendations and decisions.
- Preparing plans.
- Issuing orders.
- Coordinating execution of orders.

(b) Methods. MAPEXs can be conducted internally or with higher headquarters' MAPEXs. They should include all leadership of attached and supporting elements. MAPEXs can be conducted several ways. One method involves only the staff and commander. The commander issues a higher headquarters order to his staff and then war-games, plans, and develops an OPORD. Another method involves staff and subordinate commanders. The commander and staff plan, as in the first method, and present the OPORD to the battalion orders group. The subordinate commanders and leaders then prepare orders and position forces on sand tables, map boards, or overlays. The orders group war-games through the operation. The commander presents different what-if situations to test the participants. In these MAPEXs, the commander acts as the primary trainer but participation from higher headquarters and supporting CS and CSS elements increases the value of the exercise.

- (c) Planning phase. To plan and conduct a MAPEX for his unit, the commander —
- Determines the tasks, operations, and objectives to be evaluated as part of short-range planning. (Normally, tasks on which staff performance is weak, as identified during FTXs, have priority.)
  - Determines who will be trained. (The first MAPEX may involve the commander and staff; follow-on exercises can include leaders down to platoon level. Staff planning should involve all CS and CSS leaders—air defense artillery [ADA], forward support battalion [FSB], engineers, forward air controller [FAC], chemical, biological, radiological, and nuclear [CBRN], military intelligence [MI], organic elements. The higher headquarters staff should provide the OPORD and representatives during the exercise).
  - Develops an outline plan (scenario).
  - Determines the location of the exercise and resources required—classroom, tents, map boards, sand tables, butcher paper.
- (d) Preparation phase. In preparing for a MAPEX, the commander —
- Conducts training on staff coordination, estimates, recommendations, or orders preparation.
  - Sets up the MAPEX site.
  - Writes orders. (This normally is done by the higher headquarters staff to promote coordination and teamwork between the headquarters and the battalion.)
- (e) Execution phase. The commander explains to his staff and leaders the objectives, sequence of events, and procedures. The commander—
- Begins the exercise when the higher headquarters OPORD is given to the staff by the commander or a headquarters representative.
  - Gives initial guidance and starts the military decisionmaking process (MDMP).
  - Develops the plan or order using FM 5-0.
  - Stops the sequence of events at any time to conduct an AAR or provide guidance to the staff.
  - Issues the OPORD to the staff, company commanders, and other attached or unit commanders under OPCON after the staff completes the plan. (Commanders plan and position their forces on a map board or sand table.)
  - Uses OPFOR to drive a MAPEX, to show various enemy actions, and allow the commander and staff to practice their own reactions and execution procedures. (Simulations [discussed below] can also be used to make MAPEXs more execution-oriented and allow planning of better evaluations.)
- (f) After-action review. AARs are conducted throughout the exercise, with a final AAR at the end of the MAPEX. Because there are no assessed results of the battle, the need for an in-depth discussion of what happened and why it happened and how to improve is even more critical.

(3) Command post exercise (CPX).

- (a) General. The CPX is a medium-cost, medium-overhead exercise that may be conducted from garrison locations or between participating headquarters, in which the forces are simulated. At a minimum, it requires establishing unit CPs with their necessary communications equipment, demanding a greater commitment of personnel, time, and resources. However, normal battlefield distances between CPs may be reduced. The CPX trains commanders and staff to prepare and transmit estimates, plans, and orders, as well as to establish and use communications equipment. The CPX trains commanders and staff to—
- Execute the MDMP.
  - Refine SOPs.
  - Build teamwork and cohesion.
  - Exchange information correctly using tactical SOPs.

- Prepare estimates, plans, and orders.
- Establish and use tactical communications.
- Displace headquarters and CPs.
- Integrate synchronized warfighting functions.

(b) Preliminary exercises. Battalions often conduct either a staff exercise (STAFFEX) or a tactical operations center exercise (TOCEX), or they may conduct both before conducting a CPX. In a STAFFEX, principal and special staffs practice organizing for war—such as establishing CPs and conducting staff calls, and conducting training of wartime missions. In a TOCEX, the command group and staff practice setting up their CPs. Battalions normally participate in a CPX as part of a larger force; however, they may conduct internal CPXs. Simulation systems (as discussed below) assist in conducting realistic CPXs.

(c) Planning phase. The CPX requires most of the senior leadership and staff elements to conduct extensive battlefield planning, preparation, and C2 while using their tactical communications equipment and TAC CP. In addition to the following considerations, see the sections on MAPEXs and TEWTs above for more planning considerations:

- Normal battlefield distances between CPs may be reduced.
- CPXs should be conducted under battlefield conditions to validate staff and unit procedures. (Tactical exercises integrate nuclear and chemical weapons employment; CBRN warning and reporting; reconnaissance; mission-oriented protective posture [MOOPP], logistics, and decontamination operations; and perimeter defense.)
- Electronic warfare (EW) should be portrayed to show its importance to all elements and to illustrate how it hinders commanders and staff who are not prepared.
- CPXs require controllers and evaluators. (The controllers, directed by the chief controller, manage the exercise and cause play to flow to a logical conclusion. The evaluators observe player activities to determine if tasks are performed to established standards at each echelon.)
- Battalion produces a letter of instruction (LOI) that provides the basis for subunit planning as well as for briefing controllers and evaluators.

(d) Preparation phase. Controllers and players require training in certain basic subjects before starting the exercise. Subjects should include—

- Purpose and scope of the exercise.
- Training objectives.
- Controller duties.
- Casualty and damage assessment.
- Controller records and reports.
- Intelligence play.
- War-game procedures.
- After-action reviews.
- ROE.

(e) Execution phase. This phase begins with the chief controller and staff giving the player commander and staff a commander's update briefing. The briefing covers any changes to the LOI or other items that must be addressed. Immediately following the commander's update briefing, the chief controller assumes the role of the players' higher commander and is briefed by controllers representing the higher staff. The chief controller converts the OPLAN to an OPORD and announces that the staff is available for coordination with player counterparts. This marks the start of exercise.

(4) FTXs and STXs. The FTX is a high-cost, high-overhead exercise conducted under simulated combat conditions in the field. It exercises C2 of all echelons in battle functions against actual or simulated OPFOR. It provides a method for training a battalion in its entire mission and a means to perform the tasks practiced in an STX. An FTX should be oriented toward the unit's METL. The FTX outlined in this chapter is developed only to the extent necessary to link it to the

example supporting STXs. The commander can combine a number of STXs to create an FTX that meets his unit's specific training needs.

(5) Progressive exercises. For battalion-level units, a method to optimize staff and unit training is to integrate TEWTs, MAPEXs, and CPXs to prepare the orders and plans for upcoming battalion FTXs. This technique exercises the entire spectrum of the staff effectively and also optimizes unit field training time. The AVCATT-A virtual simulation system provides an excellent medium to conduct combined company- and battalion-level command and staff training. The bottom line is that each unit is different and only the commander can determine the best method of training his staff.

(6) Staff training using simulations. Constructive and virtual simulation systems are making staff and unit training easier as TADSS becomes accessible to units. The following simulations may contribute to training the battalion staff and subordinate companies.

(a) Brigade and battalion simulation (BBS). This microcomputer-based simulation system trains officer and NCO leaders at battalion and brigade levels in all facets of combat, CS, and CSS operations in a CPX or STAFFEX mode. BBS is a training tool that exercises the full range of battle command and staff execution orders. The virtual combat environment remains transparent to the training audiences, who conduct operations from their normal TOC/TAC configurations. Work cells within the simulation center replicate platoons and companies/troops fighting on the battlefield. BBS aids in building effective teams by causing participants to coordinate tasks, refine and standardize processes, and exchange information. BBS can be exercised from within a local simulation center or deployed to remote locations. Exercises may run from 2 to 36 hours, depending on training objectives. AARs may be formal or informal and generally last 2 hours.

(b) Janus Army (JA). This microcomputer-based, two-sided, interactive combat simulation model employs a dynamic graphical representation to simulate force-on-force engagements. Janus Army focuses on individual fighting system engagements and assessments, with aggregation capability up to company-sized elements. C2 of the individual systems can be exercised; however, simulation of CS and CSS is limited. Janus trains NCOs and officer leaders at the platoon and company level in an educational setting. Simulation supports training of tactical leadership skills and is excellent for evaluating OPORDs and battle synchronization. Leaders can experiment and receive immediate individual feedback. It is relatively easy to set up an exercise, but setup requires about 8 hours. A typical exercise takes approximately 4 hours, followed by an AAR lasting about 1½ hours.

(c) AVCATT. In the virtual environment, the AVCATT reconfigurable manned simulator allows units to replicate the battlefield and conduct a full spectrum of aviation operations at a level not attainable in the live or constructive realm. It supports training of crew skill through company collective tasks. The battalion commander has near-perfect vision of the training and can tailor the teaching, coaching, and mentoring according to each of his commander's strengths and weaknesses. Crews can observe the full effect of their decisions. By linking warfighters' simulation (WARSIM) or one semiautomatic force (OneSAF) to the AVCATT, battle staffs can work large-scale operations in real time.

**3-6. DEVELOPING TRAINING EXERCISES.** Units may use TSPs in developing their training exercises. TSPs are task-based and provide structured situational training scenarios for live, virtual, or constructive training. TSPs include all needed training products and subsequently simplify the commander's tasks of planning, executing, and assessing training. Exercise plans are normally prepared as part of the short-range plan. The following topics should help in preparing the unit training exercise.

a. Selecting missions and tasks for training. This was accomplished during the development of the long-range plan and refined during the development of the short-range plan.

b. Selecting a training site selection. Confirm selection of a training maneuver area.

c. Developing a scenario. After missions and tasks are selected, prepare a detailed scenario for the exercise as follows:

- (1) List the missions, tasks, and events in the preferred sequence of occurrence.
  - (2) Identify events necessary to control the exercise. These activities would normally include the issuance of orders, AARs, and any other administrative or logistical actions necessary to conduct the exercise.
  - (3) Prepare exercise overlays that show the sequence of actions and the terrain to be used for each event.
  - (4) Determine the estimated time for each event using the overlay and scenario. The total time is determined to ensure that the scenario can be completed in the time allocated for the exercise.
- d. Selecting observer/controllers (OCs) and opposing forces. OCs and OPFOR normally are desired for every FTX and STX. Ideally, higher headquarters or sister units should provide OCs and OPFOR. It is difficult for a battalion-size unit to provide these from its resources. When the battalion is required to provide OCs and OPFOR, unit leaders may have to serve as OCs for their units.
- e. Preparing the control plan. Control plans are developed to coordinate the actions of the training units, OPFOR, and OCs. The scenario is used, and a detailed control plan is prepared. The control plan includes—
- (1) Detailed schedules of OPFOR actions.
  - (2) Detailed instructions for the OPFOR, to include ROE.
- f. Preparing the evaluation plan. All training is evaluated by someone, either internally or externally. The evaluation plan identifies the tasks to be evaluated, by whom, and at what time. The evaluation plan includes specific instructions for the OCs, a sequential list of T&EOs to be evaluated by each OC, and detailed time schedules for evaluation of tasks and AARs.

**3-7. MISSION OUTLINE.** The mission outline graphically portrays the relationship of the critical wartime missions to FTXs and STXs. Figure 3-6 shows the relationship between the missions and their collective supporting tasks. The mission outline is designed to provide a graphic portrayal of the relationship of the critical wartime missions to FTXs and STXs. It illustrates the relationship between the missions and their collective supporting tasks.

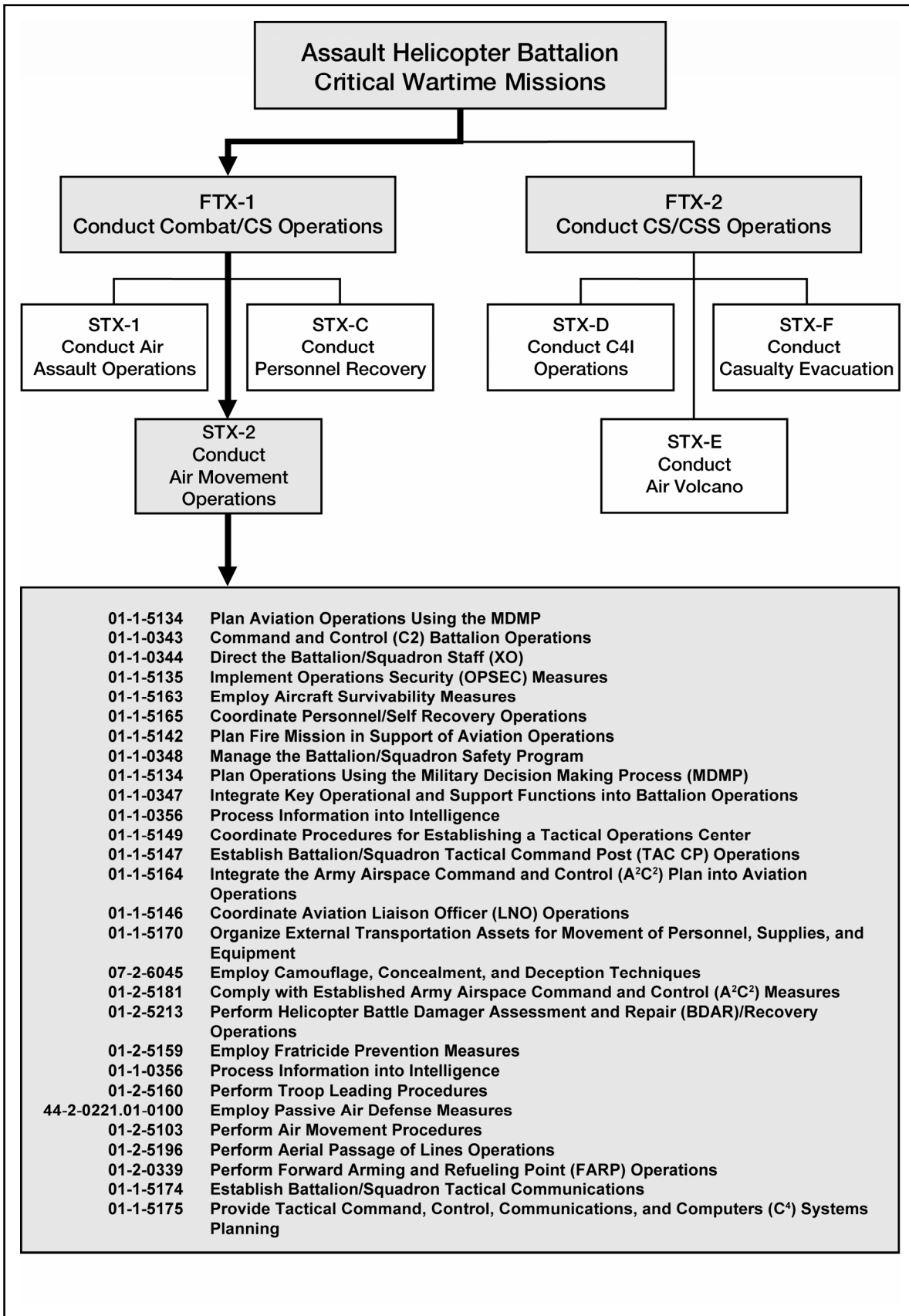


Figure 3-6. Example mission outline to FTX/STX

**This page intentionally left blank.**



## Chapter 4

# Training Exercises

### SECTION I. INTRODUCTION

**4-1. GENERAL.** The assault helicopter battalion training exercises focus on collective training and practicing collective tasks. Collective training exercises help trainers, at all levels, to develop, sustain, and evaluate unit proficiency of collective tasks that constitute critical wartime tasks and special mission requirements. Training exercises prepare units to execute combat, CS, or CSS missions. The commander has a range of training exercise types available to conduct collective training. They vary from simple to complex, from inexpensive to resource-intensive, and from simulations to hands-on. Table 4-1 shows examples of a FTX and STX. They are developed later in this chapter. All exercises and T&EOs (chapter 5) in this MTP have been designed for easy removal, photocopying, and distribution to subordinate leaders.

**Table 4-1. Training exercises**

<i>Exercise Number</i>	<i>Title</i>	<i>Page</i>
FTX	Conduct Combat/Combat Support Operations	4-3
STX-1	Conduct Air Assault Operations	4-11
STX-2	Conduct Air Movement Operations	4-18

**4-2. FIELD TRAINING EXERCISE.** The FTX is an exercise conducted under simulated combat conditions in the field. It exercises command and control (C2) of all echelons in battle functions against an actual or simulated opposing force (OPFOR). It provides a method for training a battalion in its entire mission and a means to perform the tasks practiced in an STX. An FTX should be oriented toward the unit's METL. The FTX outlined in this chapter is developed only to the extent necessary to link it to the example supporting STXs. The commander combines a number of STXs to create an FTX that meets his unit's specific training needs.

**4-3. SITUATIONAL TRAINING EXERCISE.** The STX is a mission-related exercise. It is designed to train one collective task or a group of related tasks or drills through practice. It is characterized by distinct start and stop points, representing a segment of battle. The STXs in this chapter are mission-oriented exercises. They cover a group of closely related tasks that collectively compose a tactical operation. The STXs can be used to train a separate unit or as part of the parent unit's training. These STXs support the referenced FTX. They should involve the unit's full complement of external combat, CS, and CSS assets. The STXs provide information for training the smaller component tasks of a mission. The focus is on identified weaknesses and providing repetitive training on portions of missions. These exercises save time by providing most of the information needed to develop an exercise for training. Before practicing the entire mission, the STX allows the unit to practice the selected critical part of a mission. The STXs in this MTP are examples only. They may be modified as required for a particular mission. Other STXs may also be designed. Other suggested assault helicopter battalion STXs include but are not limited to—

- a. Employing physical security resources.
- b. Conducting air assault operations.
- c. Conducting forward arming and refueling point operations.
- d. Conducting air movement operations.

**4-4. OTHER TRAINING EXERCISES.** Brief descriptions of other recognized exercises are listed below. (Chapter 3 discusses exercises that are conducive to staff training.)

a. Battle simulation exercise (BSX). The BSX is a military war-game that recreates combat situations on a map or terrain model. Pieces or markers represent units. Specific rules govern movement, fire, losses, and other aspects of actual combat. The BSX is best suited for leader training, especially in terms of fire and maneuver.

b. Combined arms live fire exercise (CALFEX). The CALFEX is a high-cost, resource-intensive exercise. In this exercise, player units maneuver and employ organic and supporting weapons systems with full-service ammunition. This exercise integrates all combat, CS, and CSS functions.

c. Computer assisted exercise (CAX). A CAX is a CPX in which a computer driver provides force simulation.

d. Command field exercise (CFX). The CFX is a field training exercise with reduced company and vehicle density but with full C2, CS, and CSS elements—such as a platoon leader in his aircraft representing the entire platoon. The CFX lies between the CPX and FTX in terms of resources. It may serve as a backup for an FTX if maneuver damage, weather, or other factors prohibit FTX execution. The CFX is less expensive and exercises intersystem linkages and actual distances.

e. Communications exercise (COMEX). The COMEX is a low-cost, low-overhead exercise. Its primary purpose is to ensure the operational abilities of communications systems as well as the training status of operators, staffs, and leaders. At a minimum, the COMEX should include proper use of the SOI; the establishment of, entry into, and exit from the radio net; and communications discipline.

f. Command post exercise (CPX). The CPX is a medium-cost, medium-overhead exercise. It may be conducted from garrison locations or between participating headquarters. The forces are simulated in this CPX. At a minimum, it requires establishing unit CPs with their necessary communications equipment. It demands a greater commitment of personnel, time, and resources. However, normal battlefield distances between CPs may be reduced. The CPX trains commanders and staff to prepare and transmit estimates, plans, and orders, as well as to establish and use communications equipment.

g. Combined training exercise (CTX). The CTX is a training exercise jointly conducted by military forces of more than one nation. It also is referred to as multinational training.

h. Deployment exercise (DEPEX). The DEPEX is an exercise that provides training for Soldiers, units, and support agencies. The training includes the tasks and procedures used to deploy from home stations or installations to areas of potential employment.

i. Decisionmaking exercise (DMX). The DMX is a low-cost, low-overhead exercise that assesses how a unit's key leadership reviews and performs case-study analysis of previous war-gaming decisions. A DMX usually incorporates a MAPEX.

j. Digital training exercise (DTX). The DTX is an exercise conducted on a simulated battlefield. It is used to train battalion/squadron and brigade staffs and subordinate elements. It can involve a constructive simulation-based MAPEX linked to collective virtual simulators—such as the AVCATT—and/or legacy simulators, both ground and air, from remote locations.

k. Emergency deployment readiness exercise (EDRE). An EDRE is a minimum-notice exercise to test unit deployment capabilities for contingency operations.

l. Fire coordination exercise (FCX). The FCX is a medium-cost, reduced-scale exercise that can be conducted at the platoon, company team, or battalion task force level. It exercises C2 skills by integrating and synchronizing organic weapon systems, indirect fires, supporting fires, and maneuver. Targets, ranges, and weapon densities may be reduced for participating units and subcaliber devices substituted for service ammunition.

m. Joint training exercise (JTX). The JTX is an exercise that involves forces of more than one service.

n. Logistics coordination exercise (LCX). The LCX is a medium-cost, medium-overhead exercise in which leaders train to conduct unit sustainment operations (such as supply, transportation, medical, personnel replacement, maintenance, and graves registration). The LCX clarifies the key elements of the unit's logistics apparatus, as well as their relationships. It incorporates a tactical war game that produces a variety of logistics requirements, while exercising the flow of logistics information.

o. Live fire exercise (LFX). The LFX is a resource-intensive exercise. In this exercise, player units maneuver and employ organic and supporting weapons systems, using full-service ammunition. Extensive range and resource requirements limit unit sizes to platoon and company/team level. This results in a focus on small units and their integration of weapon systems.

p. Logistics exercise (LOGEX). The LOGEX is a training exercise that concentrates on tasks associated with the CSS warfighting function.

q. Lane training exercise (LTX). The LTX is a technique for training company (troop)/team level and smaller units on a series of selected Soldier, leader, and collective tasks (STX) using specific terrain.

r. Map exercise (MAPEX). The MAPEX is a low-cost, low-overhead training exercise. It requires a minimum number of support personnel and portrays military situations on maps and overlays. It may be supplemented with training aids such as terrain models and sand tables. A MAPEX enables a commander to train the staff and leaders to plan, coordinate, and execute operations under simulated wartime conditions.

s. Mobilization exercise (MOBEX). The MOBEX is a major-scale exercise conducted by forces command (FORSCOM). It is usually a part of an Armywide involvement in a Chairman, Joint Chiefs of Staff (CJCS) or HQDA exercise. It involves actions necessary to deploy active and reserve components on short notice up to the point of actually moving to the proposed deployment location. The MOBEX is used to test plans, procedures, and systems for mobilization, deployment, sustainment, redeployment, and demobilization. All or parts of this exercise can be executed, depending on the commander's assessment.

t. Partnership for peace exercise (PFPX). The PFPX is a North Atlantic Treaty Organization (NATO) exercise conducted as one of a series of training events. It enhances the coordination of military forces for peacekeeping, humanitarian assistance, and search-and-rescue operations. Based on nonlethal scenarios, the PFPX program seeks to expand and intensify military and political cooperation throughout Europe.

u. Staff exercise (STAFFEX). The STAFFEX is a training exercise in which the principal and special staffs organize for war (CPs and cells) and train MTP wartime missions.

v. Sealift emergency deployment readiness exercise (SEDRE). The SEDRE is a minimum-notice exercise to test surface deployment capabilities of the unit, installation, and transportation-operating agency for contingency operations.

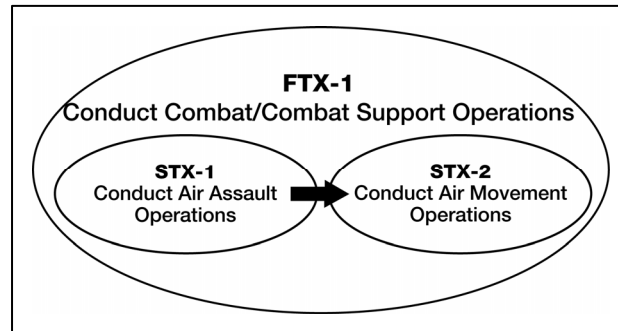
w. Tactical exercise without troops (TEWT). The TEWT is a low-cost, low-overhead exercise. It is conducted in the field on actual terrain suitable for training units for specific missions. It is used to train subordinate leaders and battle staffs on terrain analysis and unit and weapons emplacement. The TEWT also provides training on planning the execution of a unit mission, which may include the employment of CS and CSS assets.

## **SECTION II. FTX-1: CONDUCT COMBAT/COMBAT SUPPORT OPERATIONS**

**4-5. OBJECTIVE.** This sample FTX provides training for the assault helicopter battalion to conduct continuous tactical operations while deployed to a field site. It is designed to train the unit to move from one location to another and conduct combat and combat support (CS) operations.

During the exercise, the unit reacts to threat situations, reorganizes, conducts sustainment operations, and continues its mission. Within the FTX, the unit should incorporate STXs to train unit deficiencies or to take advantage of training resources not usually available such as gunnery ranges or urban operations facilities. The battalion may train as a unit, as separate companies, or as a combination. All exercises may be conducted with battalion staff support. The success of the exercise depends on the unit's ability to secure and defend an assembly area (AA) and to sustain operations in a tactical environment.

**4-6. INTERFACE.** STX-1, page 4-11 and STX-2, page 4-18, support this FTX. These STXs may be battalion- or company-level exercises depending on the level of involvement during the exercise. Figure 4-1 shows the general relationship between this FTX and the supporting STXs.



**Figure 4-1. FTX-1: Conduct combat/combat support operations**

**4-7. TRAINING ENHANCERS.** Chapter 2 shows the collective tasks that must be mastered to perform this critical wartime mission. The following training events will enhance the unit's ability to perform the missions:

- a. Staff training. (See chapter 3, paragraph 3-5, page 3-15.)
- b. Map and sand table exercises (key leaders—officers and NCOs).
- c. Classes on threat force capabilities, tactics, and doctrine and how to counter them—all Soldiers to a varying degree.
- d. Adventure training to increase morale and confidence—such as escape-and-evasion exercises, land navigation, and orienteering.
- e. Reverse-cycle training.
- f. Review of T&EOs (all key leaders).
- g. Review of FTX training objectives (all key leaders).
- h. Review of STX training objectives (all key leaders).
- i. Review of field tactical standing operating procedures (TACSOP), to include load plans (all key leaders).
- j. Exercises with artillery simulation, fire support, and close air support (CAS).
- k. Condition options. After the unit has demonstrated proficiency in the tasks for this FTX and the leaders are trained in the leader tasks, this FTX may be conducted under several condition options—with OPFOR, night tactical movement and AA establishment, and within a CBRN environment.
- l. Complex situations. The exercise should be tailored to the appropriate level of unit proficiency. As the unit becomes increasingly proficient, trainers may add more complex situations—such as ground attack, ambush, and decontamination operations.

m. Training and evaluation outline (T&EO) task standards. During training, leaders must enforce the task standards in the T&EOs. As training progresses and more realistic conditions are added, the unit must be able to maintain those standards, and retrain on the particular task steps and procedures or entire tasks that were performed below standard.

#### **4-8. CONDUCT OF THE FTX**

a. This exercise must be tailored to the specific requirements of the battalion with defined training goals. It should be based on mission priorities, TO&E structure, and tactical proficiency. This sample FTX may begin with an alert or recall exercise or the receipt of an OPORD. The FTX ends after all stated training objectives are satisfactorily demonstrated.

b. An AAR should be conducted after major events during the FTX, after completing each STX, and following the end of the FTX. If an STX is a battalion exercise, a company AAR should be conducted before the battalion's exercise. If necessary, portions of the exercise should be repeated until the unit's performance is satisfactory.

c. Figure 4-2 portrays the general scenario of tasks performed in this FTX.

d. Table 4-2 shows a suggested time allocation for the FTX. Many training tasks listed may be a part of an STX. It has approximate times required to perform tasks. Many factors (such as the location of and distance to training areas) may cause actual times to vary. The table also provides a sample of the thought process that trainers must use when planning an FTX. Leaders and trainers must identify all relevant training objectives. They also must collectively establish an FTX schedule that accomplishes all training goals. The schedule should include flexible events and timetables to allow for weather variables. It also may provide time for a second iteration of a particular task to ensure proper training.

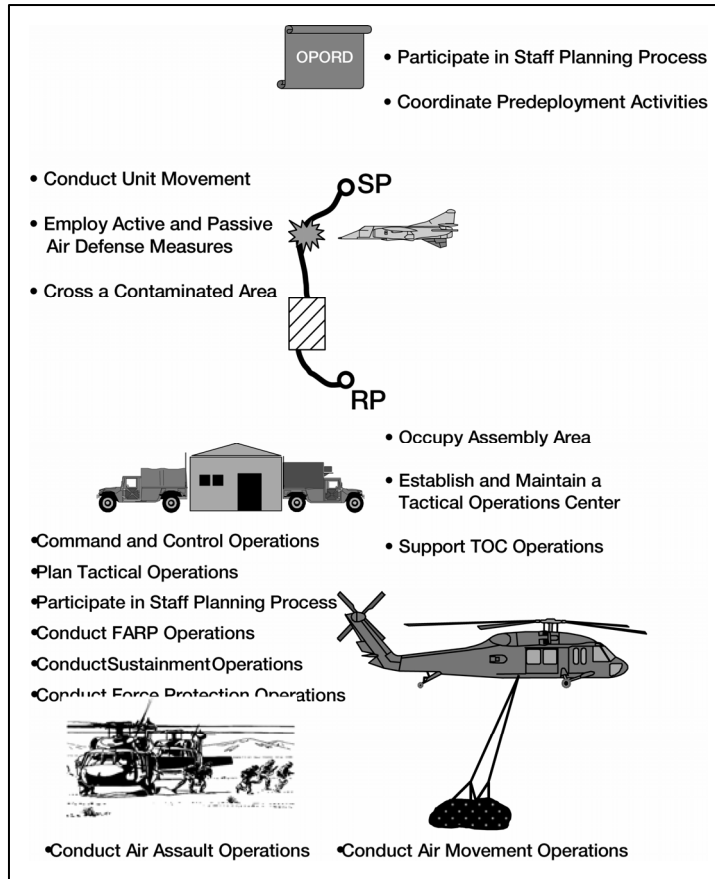


Figure 4-2. General scenario illustration of the FTX

Table 4-2. Suggested time allocation for FTX

<i>FTX-1: Conduct combat/combat support operations</i>		
<b>Number</b>	<b>Task or Event</b>	<b>Time Required</b>
1	Administrative preparations.	Pre-FTX
2	Battalion receives OPORD.	1 hour
3	Battalion initiates personnel recall and issues WARNO to companies.	2 hours
4*	Battalion prepares for tactical movement.	4 hours
5	Battalion staff conducts staff planning process and prepares OPORD.	(2 to) 4 hours (Depending on the complexity of the mission)
6*	Coordinate required assistance during movement.	6 hours
7	Battalion issues OPORD to subordinate elements.	1 hour
8*	Monitor movement of subordinate elements.	6 hours

**Table 4-2. Suggested time allocation for FTX**

<b>FTX-1: Conduct combat/combat support operations</b>		
<b>Number</b>	<b>Task or Event</b>	<b>Time Required</b>
9*	Conduct advance party operations.	1.5 hours
10	Main body conducts tactical move.	1.5 hours (Total en route time without training events, based on distance traveled)
11*	Advance party secures AA and establishes hasty defense.	1 hour
12	Main body crosses a contaminated area (decontamination is not performed; crossing is to train or evaluate crossing procedures only).	0.5 hour (AAR if required)
13	Main body continues tactical move to AA.	NA
14	Main body reacts to hostile aircraft.	0.5 hour (AAR if required)
15	Main body continues tactical move to AA.	NA
16	Main body closes on and occupies AA.	1 hour (Unit SOP will vary on when AA occupation is complete)
17*	Battalion establishes perimeter defense.	1 hour
18*	Aircraft arrive on site and conduct arming and refueling as necessary.	0.7 hour (Depending on distance)
19	Battalion headquarters establishes TOC.	1 hour
20*	Companies establish CPs.	1 hour
21*	Battalion establishes communications with higher headquarters (may be simulated).	0.5 hour
22*	Battalion establishes internal communications.	0.5 hour
23	Conduct AAR: Company and battalion.	1.5 hour
24	Battalion conducts tactical sustainment.	72.0 hours
25*	Battalion executes STX-1: Conduct air assault operations.	12 hours
26*	Battalion executes STX-2: Conduct air movement operations.	12 hours
27	Battalion receives fragmentary order (FRAGO) to redeploy to home station.	1 hour
28*	Battalion prepares for redeployment.	3 hours
29	Battalion staff conducts staff planning process and issues a FRAGO to the companies.	2 (to 4) hours (Depending on the complexity of the mission)
30	Redeployment OPORD issued by battalion.	1 hours
31*	Conduct advance party operations.	1.5 hours

**Table 4-2. Suggested time allocation for FTX**

<i>FTX-1: Conduct combat/combat support operations</i>		
<b>Number</b>	<b>Task or Event</b>	<b>Time Required</b>
32	Main body conducts tactical move.	1.5 hours
33	Main body closes on and occupies AA home station.	3.0 hours (May be extended for equipment servicing and storage)
34	Conduct Final AAR: company and battalion.	1.5 hours
		Estimated Total Time: 146.7 hours

\* Indicates that time is not added to the total time because tasks are performed simultaneously with other tasks.

**Note.** Additional time is required if large portions of the exercise are conducted at night, under limited visibility, or under MOPP conditions.

**Note.** Events will be trained to standards, not to time limitations. The time required to train an event will vary based on METT-TC factors and staff proficiency. AARs are not time constrained.

**4-9. T&EO SEQUENCE.** Table 4-3 lists the T&EOs in chapter 5 to be used for this FTX.

**Table 4-3. T&EOs supporting the FTX**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
01-1-5124	Conduct deployment/redeployment activities
01-1-5126	Conduct aviation stability operations and support operations
01-1-5128	Conduct force protection operations
01-1-5129	Provide sustainment to the force
01-1-5130	Conduct battalion air assault operations
01-1-5131	Conduct battalion air movement operations
01-1-5132	Provide combat support and combat service support
01-1-5133	Conduct aerial reconnaissance and surveillance/observation operations
01-1-0342	Restrict local population interference with ongoing U.S. military operations
01-1-5155	Direct civil-military operations
01-1-0343	Conduct command and control battalion/squadron operations
01-1-5134	Plan aviation operations using the military decision making process
01-1-0344	Direct the battalion/squadron staff
01-1-0345	Direct deployment/redeployment operations
01-1-0346	Manage the status of enlisted personnel assigned to the battalion
01-1-0347	Integrates key operational and support functions into battalion operations
01-1-0348	Manage the battalion/squadron safety program
01-1-0349	Direct the battalion/squadron standardization program
08-1-8102	Perform aviation medicine (flight surgeon) support activities
16-1-1001	Conduct unit religious support
01-1-0336	Perform personnel strength management operations
01-1-0352	Organize predeployment activities



**Table 4-3. T&EOs supporting the FTX**

<i>Task Number</i>	<i>Task Title</i>
01-1-0354	Conduct casualty reporting activities
01-1-0355	Develop an aviation media plan
01-1-1103	Conduct replacement operations
01-1-1105	Provide other personnel and administrative services
01-1-0356	Process information into intelligence
01-1-0357	Comply with the noncombatants processing plan
01-1-5135	Implement operations security measures
01-1-5156	Comply with requirements to keep an isolated personnel report database
01-1-5162	Comply with unit's established security measures
19-3-3105	Process captured documents and equipment
19-3-3106	Handle enemy prisoners of war
34-1-2040	Conduct intelligence preparation of the battlefield
01-1-0330	Plan aviation urban operations
01-1-0344	Direct the battalion/squadron staff
01-1-0345	Direct deployment/redeployment operations
01-1-5125	Conduct quick reaction force planning operations
01-1-5136	Coordinate aviation psychological operations
01-1-5142	Plan fire mission in support of aviation operations
01-1-5143	Plan requirements to establish a forward arming and refueling point
01-1-5146	Coordinate aviation liaison officer operations
01-1-5147	Establish battalion/squadron tactical command post operations
01-1-5149	Coordinate procedures for establishing a tactical operations center operations
01-1-5151	Plan aviation air assault operations (UH-60)
01-1-5152	Plan aviation air movement operations (UH-60)
01-1-5153	Plan aviation combat service support operations
01-1-5154	Plan aerial casualty evacuation operations
01-1-5157	Plan aviation stability operations and support operations
03-1-C404	Supervise chemical, biological, radiological, and nuclear defense operations
63-1-4009	Prepare operations plan/operations order and annexes
01-1-5163	Employ aircraft survivability measures
01-1-5164	Integrate the army airspace command and control plan into aviation operations
01-1-5165	Coordinate personnel/self-recovery operations
01-1-5166	Employ automated mission planning systems
01-1-1402	Coordinate the requisition, acquisition, and distribution of supplies and equipment
01-1-5168	Establish an aviation administrative and logistics operations center
01-1-5169	Organize the security of temporary enemy prisoners of war collection point
01-1-5170	Organize external transportation assets for movement of personnel, supplies, and equipment
01-1-5171	Perform logistics operations
01-2-5118	Establish battalion tactical base operations
01-1-5175	Coordinate aviation tactical command, control, communications, computers, and intelligence systems planning
01-1-5221	Establish an aviation frequency modulated radio retransmission station

**Table 4-3. T&EOs supporting the FTX**

<i>Task Number</i>	<i>Task Title</i>
01-2-5219	Perform personnel recovery/self-recovery operations (UH-60)
01-2-1034	Coordinate special patrol infiltration/exfiltration system mission (UH-60)
01-2-1035	Coordinate fast-rope insertion and extraction system mission (UH-60)
01-2-1360	Conduct casualty evacuation operations
01-2-5103	Perform air movement procedures (UH-60)
01-2-5180	Employ countermeasures against enemy air defense artillery
01-2-5181	Perform operations within established army airspace command and control measures
01-2-5196	Perform aerial passage of lines operations
01-2-5198	Conduct aviation mission planning/preparation
01-2-5204	Perform hasty assembly area displacement
01-2-5215	Maintain aviation life support equipment (also in ASC section)
01-2-5217	Perform Fat Hawk/Wet Hawk operations
01-2-5218	Perform air assault operations
01-2-5222	Perform air volcano operations
01-2-5223	Perform command, control, communications, computers, and intelligence operations
01-2-5208	Provide support to the tactical operations center
08-2-8101	Provide health service support (aviation)
01-2-5209	Perform production control in the maintenance and shop sections
01-2-5210	Provide quality control for unit programs and work completed by maintenance and shop sections
01-2-5211	Perform helicopter repairs and inspections of aircraft systems
01-2-5213	Perform helicopter battle damage assessment and repair recovery operations
01-2-5214	Perform maintenance operations on aviation ground support equipment
01-2-5215	Maintain aviation life support equipment
01-2-5216	Coordinate operational readiness and aircraft availability for mission planning with the S3
01-4-0361	Perform ground vehicle recovery operations
01-4-0362	Perform ground vehicle unit-level maintenance
01-4-0359	Perform unit supply support operations
10-2-0056	Provide food service support operations
01-2-0339	Perform forward area and refueling point operations
01-2-0327	Perform deployment/redeployment activities
01-2-0328	Establish unit defense measures
01-2-0333	Conduct convoy operations
01-2-0334	Perform unit level unit operations
01-2-0335	Conduct personnel strength management procedures
01-2-0338	Conduct helicopter maintenance
01-2-0340	Perform advance/quartering party operations
01-2-0341	Perform composite risk management procedures
01-2-5113	Defend unit position
01-2-5120	Comply with mission-oriented protective posture gear exchange procedures
01-2-5158	Control an assembly area
01-2-5159	Employ fratricide prevention measures
01-2-5160	Perform troop-leading procedures

**Table 4-3. T&EOs supporting the FTX**

<i>Task Number</i>	<i>Task Title</i>
01-2-5161	Process casualty feeder reports and witness statements
03-3-C201	Prepare for operations under chemical, biological, radiological, and nuclear conditions
03-3-C202	Prepare for a chemical attack
03-3-C203	Respond to a chemical attack
03-3-C206	Prepare for a nuclear attack
03-3-C208	Cross a radiologically contaminated area
03-3-C222	Respond to the residual effects of a nuclear attack
03-3-C224	Conduct operational decontamination
03-3-C225	Conduct chemical reconnaissance
03-3-C226	Cross a chemically contaminated area
03-3-C312	Conduct thorough decontamination operations
07-2-1112	React to an ambush
07-2-1923	React to indirect fire
07-2-5045	Conduct negotiations
07-2-6045	Employ camouflage, concealment, and deception techniques
08-2-0003	Provide first aid to casualties
08-2-0316	Evacuate casualties
08-2-R315	Perform field sanitation functions
31-2-1809	React to a terrorist or insurgent incident
44-2-0220	Employ passive air defense measures
44-2-0221	Employ active combined arms air defense measures
55-2-4001	Plan unit move
01-3-1353	Provide pathfinder support

### **SECTION III. STX-1: CONDUCT AIR ASSAULT OPERATIONS**

**4-10. STX-1 OBJECTIVE.** This sample STX trains the organization to conduct air assault operations. During the exercise, the unit reacts to threat situations, reorganizes, and continues the mission. This STX helps the unit develop, test, and improve SOPs; prevents wasted time and effort; and maintains operational efficiency. It can be used at battalion or at company level.

**4-11. STX-1 INTERFACE.** This STX supports FTX-1. It is not supported by drills.

**4-12. STX-1 PRELIMINARY LEADER TRAINING.** Before the unit conducts this STX, unit leaders must be proficient in the required tasks. Leader training includes the following subjects.

- a. Classroom discussion. This includes how to plan the exercise, how to implement the unit SOP, and how to coordinate supporting fires.
- b. MAPEX. This includes using the exact area where the STX is to be conducted.
- c. Terrain boards or sand table exercises. These permit using simulations or miniatures to gain a three-dimensional perspective while rehearsing the exercise.
- d. TEWT. The emphasis is given to threat capabilities, active and passive defensive techniques, movement techniques, visual signals, reorganization following enemy contact, risk management, and safety.

**4-13. LEADER TRAINING TIPS.** The following are training tips for leaders:

- a. Know the requirements of an air assault as discussed in FM 1-113 and FM 3-97.4.

- b. Review the T&EO requirements for conducting an air assault.
- c. Become familiar with the other T&EOs listed in table 4-5 that support this exercise.
- d. If possible, personally conduct a reconnaissance of the training area before the MAPEX or TEWT.
- e. Develop a plan based on mission, enemy, terrain, troops, time, and civilian considerations (METT–TC). Consider such questions as the following:
  - (1) What information is available on the pickup zones (PZs) and landing zones (LZs) from which the battalion/company will conduct the air assault?
  - (2) What is the likelihood of a ground, an air, or a CBRN attack?
  - (3) What effect will adverse weather have on the mission?
  - (4) What is the condition of unit personnel and equipment?
  - (5) How many aircraft are required?
  - (6) How many aircraft are available?
  - (7) How are the aircraft to be organized?
  - (8) What aircraft and crew configurations are required?
  - (9) What is required of the supported units?
  - (10) What intelligence is available for mission planning?
  - (11) What supporting fires are required?
  - (12) What are the personnel recovery/self-recovery and downed aircraft/aircrew recovery team (DART) arrangements?
  - (13) How much time is needed to prepare?
  - (14) How long will it take to complete the operation?
  - (15) How much planning time is available?

#### **4-14. TRAINING ENHANCERS**

- a. After the unit has demonstrated proficiency in the tasks for this STX and the leaders are trained in the leader tasks, this STX may be conducted under the following condition options:
  - (1) With troops (assault force).
  - (2) With air assault security helicopters.
  - (3) With OPFOR.
  - (4) At night, using night-vision devices.
  - (5) Within a CBRN environment.
- b. The exercise should be tailored to the appropriate level of unit proficiency. As the unit becomes increasingly proficient, trainers may add more complex situations such as the following:
  - (1) Increased number of aircraft (use of serials).
  - (2) Multiple lifts.
  - (3) Multiple PZs.
  - (4) Multiple LZs.
  - (5) Extraction of the assault force following the mission.
  - (6) Backhaul casualties.
  - (7) Threat air defense artillery (ADA).
  - (8) Downed aircrew recovery/escape and evasion.
  - (9) Simulated loss of a leader (premission or midmission).
  - (10) Incidents of meaconing, interference, jamming, and intrusion (MIJI).
  - (11) En route change/modification of mission—such as alternate PZ/LZ.

(12) With external loads.

c. During training, leaders must enforce the task standards in the T&EOs. As training progresses and more realistic conditions are added, the unit must be able to maintain those standards. Otherwise, they must retrain on the particular task steps and procedures or entire tasks that were performed below standard.

d. The OPFOR is a vital element in the training process. In the early stages of training, the leadership should discuss OPFOR tactics and ways to defeat them. As training progresses, walk-through training can be conducted to show the unit how to defeat the threat. When the unit can perform all tasks at an acceptable level, the OPFOR should be employed to enhance and reinforce training. An OPFOR evaluator or observer must monitor OPFOR actions.

e. During the exercise, leaders should take advantage of any information regarding suspected OPFOR activity or adverse conditions. Alternate flight routes should be reconnoitered, planned, and briefed for each mission.

f. When the unit has demonstrated proficiency in this STX as a stand-alone event, the unit sustains proficiency by executing the STX as part of the FTX. Personnel turnover will require leaders to assess the need for additional training to maintain proficiency.

#### **4-15. CONDUCT OF STX-1**

a. The company is in an AA. It is ordered to conduct an air assault operation.

b. The unit will conduct the exercise under various environmental conditions, day, or night.

c. The STX is over when the unit has demonstrated collective proficiency at executing air assault operations.

d. Figure 4-3 portrays the general scenario of tasks performed in this STX.

e. Table 4-4 shows the estimated time needed for each part of this exercise as a training event during this STX.

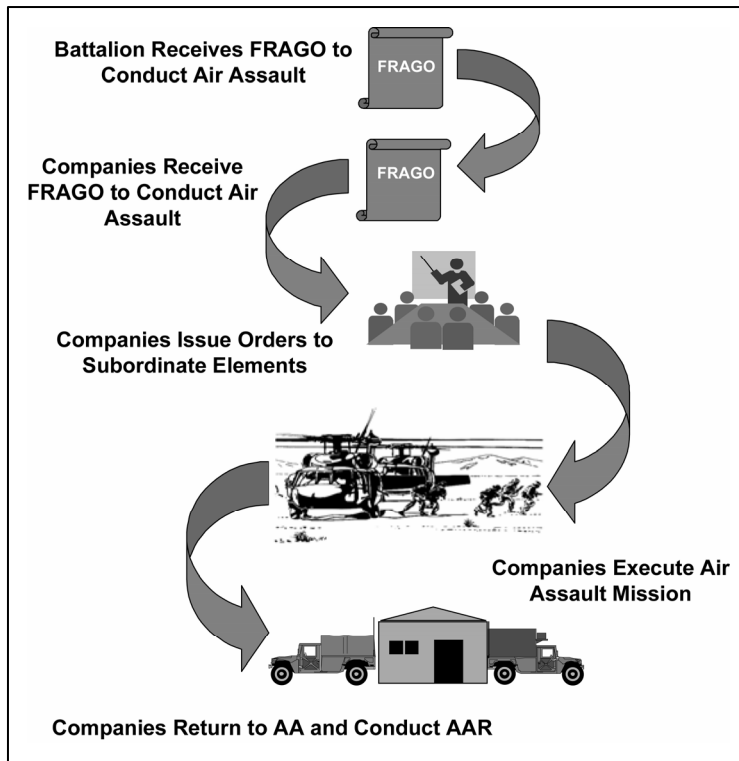


Figure 4-3. General scenario illustration of STX-1

**Table 4-4. Suggested time allocation for STX-1**

<b>STX-1: Conduct air assault operations</b>		
<b>Event</b>	<b>Action</b>	<b>Time Required</b>
1	Battalion receives FRAGO to conduct air assault mission.	1 hour
2	Battalion staff conducts staff planning process and issues a FRAGO to the companies.	2 hours (Depends on mission complexity)
3	Companies coordinate and plan operations according to FRAGO.	3 hours (Depends on mission complexity)
4	Company commanders issue an aircrew mission briefing to aircrews, and conduct rehearsal.	2 hours
5	Companies execute air assault missions.	2.5 hours (Depends on mission complexity and distance traveled)
6	Conduct AARs at company and/or battalion.	1.5 hours
7*	Companies conduct sustainment operations.	NA
		Total Time: 12 hours

\* Indicates time is not added to the total time because tasks are performed simultaneously with other tasks.

**Note.** Due to the complexity of air assault operations, the mission should be included as an on-order mission in the FTX OPORD to allow additional planning time. For company-level air assaults, a minimum of 24 hours should be allotted for air assault planning. For battalion and brigade level air assaults, 72 hours should be allotted for air assault planning. Air assault operations involving small numbers of aircraft and personnel long range surveillance detachment (LRSD), and scout insertions may not require as much planning time.

**Note.** These missions should be able to be done successfully with at least 6 hours planning time. These planning times are recommended and are based upon the ability to thoroughly plan and synchronize all air assault assets. Air assaults may be conducted with less time to plan than this; however, the air assault task force commander (AATFC) must understand that a much greater risk is assumed with a condensed planning time.

Additional time is required if large portions of the exercise are conducted at night, under limited visibility, or under MOPP conditions. Events will be trained to standards, not to time limitations. The time required to train an event will vary based on METT-TC factors and staff proficiency. AARs are not time constrained.

#### **4-16. STX-1 SPECIAL SITUATION**

a. The commander may choose to use a FRAGO to initiate STXs to support of the FTX. Figure 4-4 is a suggested format for a FRAGO. The unit receives this as an example.

**FRAGMENTARY ORDER \_\_\_\_\_****1. SITUATION**

**a. Enemy forces.** Elements of the (enemy force) are in hasty defensive positions between phase line (designation) and phase line (designation).

**b. Friendly forces.** (battalion designation) Conducts an air assault to support (air assault task force headquarters) beginning NLT (date/time group). (Sister unit) conducts an air assault of (supported infantry unit) company into LZ (designation), located at (grid location), beginning (date/time group). (Unit designation) provides air assault security beginning (date/time group).

**2. MISSION.** (training unit) Company conducts an air assault of (supported infantry unit). Company into LZ (designation), located at (grid location\*), beginning (date/time group) in order to defeat the enemy on objective (designation).

**3. EXECUTION**

**a. Intent:** Air assault (supported infantry unit) company into position to conduct an attack of objective (designation).

**b. Concept of operations.** (training unit) Company is the main effort. (training unit) company arrives at PZ (designation) NLT (date/time group). (training unit). Company proceeds along route (designation) to arrive at LZ (designation) at (date/time group).

**c. Tasks to subordinate units.** (Optional)

**d. Coordinating instructions.** See change \_\_\_ to annex C, operations overlay.

**4. SERVICE SUPPORT.** FARP (designation), located at (grid location), will be operational beginning NLT (date/time group), until end of mission.

**5. COMMAND AND SIGNAL.** No change to OPORD \_\_\_.

**\*Note.** Location of the LZ should be within enemy area of operations.

**Figure 4-4. Suggested format for an STX-1 FRAGO**

b. Leaders use troop-leading procedures to conduct an air assault. They must receive, plan, coordinate, and execute assigned missions. The commander evaluates and critiques the unit's performance, considers any information on threat conditions, and briefs leaders on sustainment operations.

**4-17. SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS**

a. Minimum trainers or observer/controllers (OCs). The commander is the primary trainer. One OC is the minimum required to conduct this exercise. For internal evaluations, the commander is also the primary OC. At least one other OC is required if OPFOR is used.

b. Opposing force. Use OPFOR in this exercise after the company has demonstrated basic proficiency and is at the run phase of training. The OPFOR should be familiar with area reconnaissance operations and employ thoroughly planned tactics to disrupt mission execution. Such tactics may affect AA occupation, aircraft availability and employment, and other aspects of the operation.

c. Vehicles and communications. Every attempt should be made to use only vehicles and communications equipment that are organic and on hand. When OPFOR is employed, additional vehicles and communications equipment will be required for the OPFOR and the OC. These additional vehicles and equipment should come from outside the unit.

d. Maneuver area. The training area should be large enough to allow for tactical displacement of all required organic aircraft and equipment.

e. Pyrotechnic and ammunition support requirements.

(1) Pyrotechnics and ammunition are not required to conduct this STX. DA Pam 350-38 contains pyrotechnic training aids and ammunition authorizations. It is the proponent publication for their authorization and is subject to change. DA Pam 350-38 is available via the Internet from the United States Army Publishing Directorate (APD) at <http://www.apd.army.mil>. Training managers should verify the currency of their information when preparing yearly forecasts and when ordering TADSS for a particular exercise.



(2) FM 3-04.140 contains ammunition requirements for door-gunnery training. This publication is available from the Army training information architecture (ATIA) at <http://www.train.army.mil>.

(3) Unit trainers must divide these resources among their subordinate units as the training situation dictates. The pyrotechnics listed in DA Pam 350-38 are the total annual allocation for a assault helicopter battalion. The headquarters and headquarters company (HHC) and OPFOR requirements are included in the total. Commanders may desire to use more or fewer pyrotechnics for a particular exercise. However, units cannot exceed their annual allocation.

(4) Pyrotechnic requirements for CTCs are allocated separately and are not part of the unit's annual allocation.

(5) When this STX is conducted using ammunition and MILES devices, an additional company OC is required.

**4-18. STX-1 T&EO SEQUENCE.** Table 4-5 lists the T&EOs in chapter 5 to be used for this STX.

**Note.** If a company is conducting this STX independently, battalion staff tasks would not necessarily be required.

**Table 4-5. T&EOs supporting STX-1**

<i>Task Number</i>	<i>Task Title</i>
01-1-0343	Conduct command and control battalion/squadron operations
01-1-0344	Direct the battalion/squadron staff
01-1-0349	Direct the battalion/squadron standardization program
01-1-5135	Implement operations security measures
01-1-5163	Integrate aircraft survivability measures
01-1-5165	Coordinate personnel/self-recovery operations
01-1-5142	Plan fire mission in support of aviation operations
01-1-0348	Manage the battalion/squadron safety program
01-1-5134	Plan aviation operations using the military decision making process (S1, S2, S3, S4, S6, Cmd, XO, ASO, CSM)
01-1-0356	Process information into intelligence
01-1-5149	Coordinate procedures for establishing a tactical command center operations
01-1-5147	Establish battalion/squadron tactical command post operations
01-1-5164	Integrate the army airspace command and control plan into aviation operations
01-1-5146	Coordinate aviation liaison officer operations
01-2-5160	Perform troop-leading procedures
01-2-5216	Coordinate operational readiness and aircraft availability for mission planning with the S3
03-3-C312	Conduct thorough decontamination operations
01-2-5181	Perform operations within established army airspace command and control measures
01-2-5159	Employ fratricide prevention measures
01-2-5198	Conduct aviation mission planning/preparation
44-2-0220	Employ passive air defense measures
01-2-5103	Perform air movement procedures (UH-60)
01-2-5218	Perform air assault operations
01-2-5196	Perform aerial passage of lines operations
01-2-5219	Conduct personnel recovery/self-recovery operations (UH 60)

**Table 4-5. T&EOs supporting STX-1**

<i>Task Number</i>	<i>Task Title</i>
01-3-1353	Provide pathfinder support
01-3-0339	Conduct forward arming and refueling point operations
01-2-5118	Establish battalion tactical base operations
01-4-1414	Provide tactical command, control, communications, and computers systems planning

## **SECTION IV. STX-2: CONDUCT AIR MOVEMENT OPERATIONS**

**4-19. OBJECTIVE.** This sample STX trains the organization to conduct air movement operations. During the exercise, the unit reacts to threat situations, reorganizes, and continues the reconnaissance. This STX helps the unit develop, test, and improve SOPs. It helps prevent wasted time and effort and maintains operational efficiency. It can be used at battalion or company level.

**4-20. INTERFACE.** This STX supports FTX . It is not supported by drills.

**4-21. PRELIMINARY LEADER TRAINING.** Before the unit conducts this STX, unit leaders must be proficient in the required tasks. Leader training includes the following.

- a. Classroom discussion. This includes how to plan the exercise, how to implement the unit SOP, and how to coordinate supporting fires.
- b. MAPEX. This includes using the exact area where the STX is to be conducted.
- c. Terrain board or sand table exercises. These permit using simulations or miniatures to gain a three-dimensional perspective while rehearsing the exercise.
- d. TEWT. The emphasis is given to threat capabilities, active and passive defensive techniques, movement techniques, visual signals, reorganization following enemy contact, risk management, and safety.

**4-22. LEADER TRAINING TIPS.** These training tips include the following:

- a. Know the requirements of air movement as discussed in FM 1-113.
- b. Review the T&EO requirements for conducting air movement.
- c. Become familiar with the T&EOs listed in table 4-6 that support this exercise.
- d. If possible, personally conduct a reconnaissance of the training area before the MAPEX or TEWT.
- e. Develop a plan based on METT-TC. Consider questions such as the following:
  - (1) What information is available on the PZs and LZs from which the battalion/company will conduct the air assault?
  - (2) What is the likelihood of a ground, an air, or a CBRN attack?
  - (3) What effect will adverse weather have on the mission?
  - (4) What is the condition of unit personnel and equipment?
  - (5) How many aircraft are required?
  - (6) How many aircraft are available?
  - (7) How are the aircraft to be organized?
  - (8) What aircraft and crew configurations are required?
  - (9) What is required of the supported units?
  - (10) What intelligence is available for mission planning?
  - (11) What supporting fires are required?

- (12) What are the personnel recovery/self-recovery and DART arrangements?
- (13) How much time is needed to prepare?
- (14) How long will it take to complete the operation?
- (15) How much planning time is available?

#### **4-23. TRAINING ENHANCERS**

a. After the unit has demonstrated proficiency in the tasks for this STX and the leaders are trained in the leader tasks, this STX may be conducted under the following condition options.

- (1) With internal loads.
- (2) With external loads.
- (3) With OPFOR.
- (4) At night using night vision devices.
- (5) Within a CBRN environment.

b. The exercise should be tailored to the appropriate level of unit proficiency. As the unit becomes increasingly proficient, trainers may add more complex situations such as the following:

- (1) Increased number of aircraft.
- (2) Multiple lifts.
- (3) Multiple PZs.
- (4) Multiple LZs.
- (5) Backhaul of equipment and personnel.
- (6) Threat ADA.
- (7) Downed aircrew recovery/escape and evasion.
- (8) Simulated loss of a leader (pre-mission or mid mission).
- (9) Incidents of MIJI.
- (10) En route change/modification of mission—such as alternate PZ/LZ.

c. During training, leaders must enforce the task standards in the T&EOs. As training progresses and more realistic conditions are added, the unit must be able to maintain those standards or retrain on the particular task steps and procedures or entire tasks that were performed below standard.

d. The OPFOR is a vital element in the training process. In the early stages of training, the leadership should discuss OPFOR tactics and ways to defeat them. As training progresses, walk-through training can be conducted to show the unit how to defeat the threat. When the unit can perform all tasks at an acceptable level, the OPFOR should be employed to enhance and reinforce training. An OPFOR evaluator or observer must monitor OPFOR actions.

e. During the exercise, leaders should take advantage of any information regarding suspected OPFOR activity or adverse conditions. Alternate flight routes should be reconnoitered, planned, and briefed for each mission.

f. When the unit has demonstrated proficiency in this STX as a stand-alone event, the unit sustains proficiency by executing the STX as part of the FTX. Personnel turnover will require leaders to assess the need for additional training to maintain proficiency.

#### **4-24. GENERAL SITUATION**

- a. The company is in an AA. It is ordered to conduct an air movement operation.
- b. The unit will conduct the exercise under various environmental conditions, day or night.
- c. The STX is over when the unit has demonstrated collective proficiency at executing air movement operations.
- d. Figure 4-5 graphically portrays the general scenario of tasks performed in this STX.

e. Table 4-6 shows the estimated time needed for each part of this exercise as a training event during this STX.

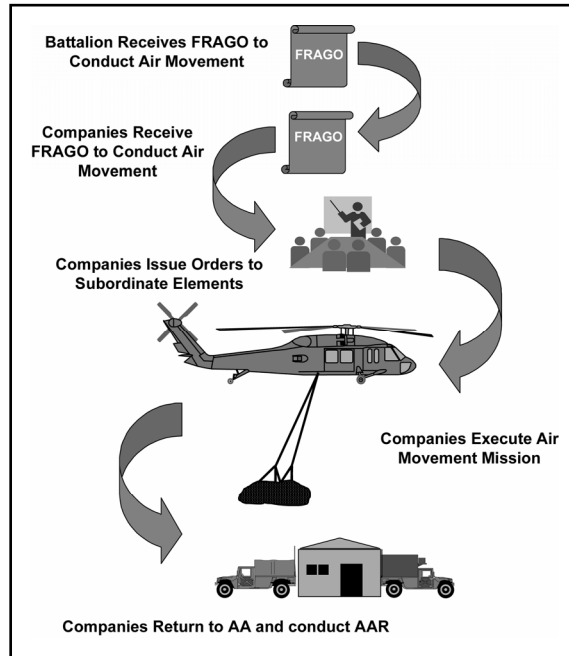


Figure 4-5. General scenario illustration of STX-2

Table 4-6. Suggested time allocation for STX-2

<i>STX-2: Conduct air movement operations</i>		
<i>Event</i>	<i>Action</i>	<i>Time Required</i>
1	Battalion receives FRAGO to conduct an air movement mission.	1 hour
2	Battalion staff conducts staff planning process and issues a FRAGO to the companies.	2 (to 4) hours (Depends on mission complexity)
3	Companies coordinate and plan operations according to FRAGO.	2.5 hours (Depends on mission complexity)
4	Company commanders issue aircrew mission briefing to aircrews.	1 hour
5	Companies execute air movement missions.	(2 to) 4 hours (Depends on mission complexity and distance traveled)
6	Conduct AARs at company and/or battalion.	1.5 hours
7*	Companies conduct sustainment operations.	NA
		Total Time: 12 hours

\* Indicates time is not added to the total time because tasks are performed simultaneously with other tasks.

**Note.** Because of the complexity of air movement operations, the mission should be included as an on-order mission in the FTX OPORD to allow additional planning time.

**Note.** Additional time is required if large portions of the exercise are conducted at night, under limited visibility, or under MOPP conditions. Events will be trained to standards, not to time limitations; the time required to train an event will vary based on METT-TC factors and staff proficiency. AARs are not time constrained.

#### 4-25. SPECIAL SITUATION

a. The commander may choose to use a FRAGO to initiate subsequent STXs to support the FTX. Figure 4-6 is a suggested format for a FRAGO. The unit receives this as an example.

<p><b>FRAGMENTARY ORDER _____</b></p> <p><b>1. SITUATION</b></p> <p><b>a. Enemy forces.</b> Elements of the <u>(enemy force)</u> are in hasty defensive positions between phase line <u>(designation)</u> and phase line <u>(designation)</u>.</p> <p><b>b. Friendly forces.</b> <u>(battalion designation)</u> Conducts an air movement to support <u>(supported unit)</u> beginning NLT <u>(date/time group)</u>. <u>(sister unit)</u> Conducts an air movement to support <u>(supported unit)</u> beginning <u>(date/time group)</u>.</p> <p><b>2. MISSION.</b> <u>(training unit)</u> Company conducts an air movement of personnel and equipment into LZ <u>(designation)</u>, located at <u>(grid location)</u>, beginning <u>(date/time group)</u> to support <u>(supported unit)</u>.</p> <p><b>3. EXECUTION</b></p> <p><b>a. Intent.</b> Move critical personnel and equipment to LZ <u>(designation)</u> to sustain the combat operations of <u>(supported unit)</u>.</p> <p><b>b. Concept of operations.</b> <u>(training unit)</u> Company is the main effort. <u>(training unit)</u> Company arrives at PZ <u>(designation)</u> NLT <u>(date/time group)</u>. <u>(training unit)</u> Company proceeds along route <u>(designation)</u> to arrive at LZ <u>(designation)</u> at <u>(date/time group)</u>.</p> <p><b>c. Tasks to subordinate units.</b> (Optional)</p> <p><b>d. Coordinating instructions.</b> See change ___ to annex C, operations overlay.</p> <p><b>4. SERVICE SUPPORT.</b> FARP <u>(designation)</u>, located at <u>(grid location)</u>, will be operational beginning NLT <u>(date/time group)</u>, until end of mission.</p> <p><b>5. COMMAND AND SIGNAL.</b> No change to OPORD ___.</p>
---

**Figure 4-6. Suggested format for an STX-2 FRAGO**

b. Leaders use troop-leading procedures to conduct air movement operations. They must receive, plan, coordinate, and execute assigned missions. The commander evaluates and critiques the unit's performance, considers any information on threat conditions, and briefs leaders on sustainment operations.

#### 4-26. SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS

a. Minimum trainers or observer-controllers. The commander is the primary trainer. One OC is the minimum required to conduct this exercise. For internal evaluations, the commander is also the primary OC. At least one other OC is required if OPFOR is used.

b. Opposing force. Use OPFOR in this exercise after the company has demonstrated basic proficiency and is at the run phase of training. The OPFOR should be familiar with zone reconnaissance operations and employ thoroughly planned tactics to disrupt mission execution. Such tactics may affect AA occupation, aircraft availability and employment, and other aspects of the operation.

c. Vehicles or communications. Every attempt should be made to use only vehicles and communications equipment that are organic and on hand. When OPFOR is employed, additional vehicles and communications equipment will be required for the OPFOR and the OC. These additional vehicles and equipment should come from outside the unit.

d. Maneuver area. The training area should be large enough to allow for tactical displacement of all required organic aircraft and equipment.

e. Pyrotechnic and ammunition support requirements.

(1) Pyrotechnics and ammunition are not required to conduct this STX. DA Pam 350-38 contains pyrotechnic training aids and ammunition authorizations. It is the proponent publication for their authorization and is subject to change. DA Pam 350-38 is available via the Internet from USAPD at <http://www.apd.army.mil>. Training managers should verify the currency of their information when preparing yearly forecasts and when ordering these TADSS for a particular exercise.

(2) FM 3-04.140 contains ammunition requirements for door gunnery training. This publication is available at <https://akocomm.us.army.mil/usapa/doctrine/index.html>.

(3) Unit trainers must divide these resources among their subordinate units as the training situation dictates. The pyrotechnics listed in DA Pam 350-38 are the total annual allocation for a assault helicopter battalion. The HHC and OPFOR requirements are included in the total. Commanders may desire to use more or fewer pyrotechnics for a particular exercise. However, units cannot exceed their annual allocation.

(4) Pyrotechnic requirements for CTCs are allocated separately and are not part of the unit's annual allocation.

(5) When this STX is conducted using ammunition and MILES devices, an additional company OC is required.

**4-27. T&EO SEQUENCE.** Table 4-7 lists the T&EOs in chapter 5 to be used for this STX.

---

**Note.** If a company is conducting this STX independently, battalion staff tasks would not necessarily be required.

---

**Table 4-7. T&EOs supporting STX-2**

<i>Task Number</i>	<i>Task Title</i>
01-1-0343	Conduct command and control battalion/squadron operations
01-1-0344	Direct the battalion/squadron staff
01-1-0349	Direct the battalion/squadron standardization program
01-1-5135	Implement operations security measures
01-1-5163	Integrate aircraft survivability measures
01-1-5165	Coordinate personnel/self-recovery operations
01-1-5142	Plan fire mission in support of aviation operations
01-1-0348	Manage the battalion/squadron safety program
01-1-5134	Plan aviation operations using the military decision making process (S1, S2, S3, S4, S6, Cmd, XO, ASO, CSM)
01-1-0356	Process information into intelligence
01-1-5149	Coordinate procedures for establishing a tactical command center operations
01-1-5147	Establish battalion/squadron tactical command post operations
01-1-5164	Integrate the army airspace command and control plan into aviation operations
01-1-5146	Coordinate aviation liaison officer operations
01-2-5160	Perform troop-leading procedures
01-2-5216	Coordinate operational readiness and aircraft availability for mission planning with the S3
03-3-C312	Conduct thorough decontamination operations
01-2-5181	Perform operations within established army airspace command and control measures
01-2-5159	Employ fratricide prevention measures
01-2-5198	Conduct aviation mission planning/preparation
44-2-0220	Employ passive air defense measures
01-2-5103	Perform air movement procedures (UH-60)
01-2-5218	Perform air assault operations
01-2-5196	Perform aerial passage of lines operations
01-2-5219	Conduct personnel recovery/self-recovery operations (UH 60)
01-3-1353	Provide pathfinder support
01-3-0339	Conduct forward arming and refueling point operations
01-2-5118	Establish battalion tactical base operations
01-4-1414	Provide tactical command, control, communications, and computers systems planning

**This page intentionally left blank.**



## Chapter 5

# Training and Evaluation Outlines

**5-1. INTRODUCTION.** This chapter contains the training and evaluation outlines (T&EOs) for the assault helicopter unit. T&EOs are the foundation of the mission training plan (MTP) and the collective training of the units. T&EOs are training objectives (task, conditions, and standards) for the collective tasks which support critical wartime operations. The unit must master designated collective tasks to perform its critical wartime operations. T&EOs may be trained separately, in the situational training exercise (STX), in the field training exercise (FTX), or in live-fire exercises. For collective live-fire standards, the trainer needs to refer to the applicable gunnery manual for the appropriate course of fire. Those standards and courses of fire need to be integrated into the training exercise.

**5-2. STRUCTURE.** The T&EOs in this chapter are listed in figure 5-1. The mission-to-collective task matrix in chapter 2 lists the T&EOs required to train the critical wartime missions according to their specific warfighting functions.

**5-3. FORMAT.** The T&EOs are prepared for every collective task that supports critical wartime operation accomplishment. Each T&EO contains the following items—

a. Element. This identifies the unit or unit element(s) that performs the task. Collective tasks that are common to multiple organizations (such as assault helicopter, heavy helicopter, attack reconnaissance, air cavalry) will indicate elements from all organizations that perform the tasks.

b. Task. This describes the action to be performed by the assault helicopter unit, and provides the task number.

c. References. These are in parenthesis following the task number. The reference which contains the most information (primary reference) about the task is listed first and underlined. If there is only one reference do not underline the reference.

d. Iteration. Used to identify how many times the task is performed and evaluated during training. The "M" identifies when the task is performed in mission-oriented protective posture level 4 (MOPP4).

e. Commander/leader assessment. This is used by the unit leadership to assess the proficiency of the unit in performing the task to standard. Assessments are subjective in nature and use all available evaluation data and submit leader input to develop an assessment of the organization's overall capability to accomplish the task. Use the following ratings—

(1) T – Trained. The unit is trained and has demonstrated its proficiency in accomplishing the task to wartime standards.

(2) P – Needs practice. The unit needs to practice the task. Performance has demonstrated that the unit does not achieve standard without some difficulty or has failed to perform some task steps to standard.

(3) U – Untrained. The unit can not demonstrate an ability to achieve wartime proficiency.

f. Condition. This is a statement of the situation or environment in which the assault helicopter unit is to do the collective task.

g. Task standard.

(1) The task standard states the performance criteria that an assault helicopter unit must achieve to successfully execute the task. This overall standard should be the focus of training. It should be understood by every Soldier.

(2) The trainer or evaluator determines the assault helicopter unit's training status using performance observation measurements (where applicable) and his judgment. The unit must be evaluated in the context of the METT-T conditions. These conditions should be as similar as possible for all evaluated elements. This will establish a common base line for unit performance.

h. Task steps and performance measures. This is a listing of actions that is required to complete the task. These actions are stated in terms of observable performance for evaluating training proficiency. The task steps are arranged sequentially along with supporting individual tasks and their reference. Leader tasks within each T&EO are indicated by an asterisk (\*). Under each task step are listed the performance measures that must be accomplished to correctly perform the task step. If the unit fails to correctly perform one of these task steps to standard, it has failed to achieve the overall task standard.

i. GO/NO-GO column. This column is provided for annotating the platoon's performance of the task steps. Evaluate each performance measure for a task step and place an "X" in the appropriate column. A major portion of the performance measures must be marked a GO for the task step to be successfully performed.

j. Task performance/evaluation summary block. This block provides the trainer a means of recording the total number of task steps and performance measures evaluated and those evaluated as GO. It also provides the evaluator a means to rate the units demonstrated performance as a GO or NO-GO. It also provides the leader with a historical record for five training iterations.

k. Supporting individual tasks. This is a listing of all supporting individual tasks required to correctly perform the task. Listed are the reference, tasks number, and task title.

l. OPFOR standards. These standards specify overall OPFOR performance for each collective task. These standards ensure that OPFOR Soldiers accomplish meaningful training and force the training unit to perform its task to standard or "lose" to the OPFOR. The OPFOR standards specify what must be accomplished—not how it must be accomplished. The OPFOR must always attain its task standards, using tactics consistent with the type of enemy they are portraying.

**5-4. USE.** The T&EOs can be used to train or evaluate a single task. Several T&EOs can be used to train or evaluate a group of tasks (such as an STX or FTX). The T&EOs are listed below by warfighting functions (table 5-1) and by element (figure 5-1).

**Table 5-1. Listing of training and evaluation outlines (T&EOs)****INTELLIGENCE**

Process Information into Intelligence (01-1-0356) .....	5-13
Coordinate Aviation Psychological Operations (01-1-5136) .....	5-16
Process Captured Documents and Equipment (19-3-3105) .....	5-19
Conduct Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield (Battalion) (34-1-2040) .....	5-21

**MANEUVER**

Plan Aviation Urban Operations (01-1-0330) .....	5-25
Direct Deployment/Redeployment Operations (01-1-0345) .....	5-37
Conduct Quick Reaction Force Planning Operations (01-1-5125) .....	5-41
Conduct Battalion Air Assault Operations (01-1-5130) .....	5-44
Conduct Battalion Air Movement Operations (01-1-5131) .....	5-49
Conduct Aerial Reconnaissance and Surveillance/Observation Operations (01-1-5133) .....	5-53
Implement Operations Security Measures (01-1-5135) .....	5-56
Plan Aviation Air Assault Operations (UH-60) (01-1-5151) .....	5-59
Plan Aviation Air Movement Operations (UH-60) (01-1-5152) .....	5-63
Plan Aviation Combat Service Support Operations (01-1-5153) .....	5-67
Perform Deployment/Redeployment Operations (01-2-0327) .....	5-70
Establish Unit Defense Measures (01-2-0328) .....	5-74
Conduct Convoy Operations (01-2-0333) .....	5-78
Perform Advance/Quartering Party Operations (01-2-0340) .....	5-82
Coordinate Special Patrol Infiltration/Exfiltration System (SPIES) Missions (UH-60) (01-2-1034) .....	5-86
Coordinate Fast-Rope Insertion and Extraction System (FRIES) Missions (UH-60) (01-2-1035) .....	5-91
Perform Air Movement Procedures (UH-60) (01-2-5103) .....	5-95
Defend Unit Position (01-2-5113) .....	5-98
Control an Assembly Area (01-2-5158) .....	5-101
Perform Aerial Passage of Lines Operations (01-2-5196) .....	5-106
Conduct Aviation Mission Planning/Preparation (01-2-5198) .....	5-109
Perform Hasty Assembly Area Displacement (01-2-5204) .....	5-113
Perform Air Assault Operations (01-2-5218) .....	5-116
Perform Aviation Urban Operations at Company Level (01-2-7759) .....	5-120
Provide Pathfinder Support (01-3-1353) .....	5-125
Plan Unit Move (55-2-4001) .....	5-129

**FIRE SUPPORT**

Plan Fire Mission in Support of Aviation Operations (01-1-5142) .....	5-132
---	-------

**MOBILITY/COUNTERMOBILITY/SURVIVABILITY (M/CM/S)**

Conduct Force Protection Operations (01-1-5128) .....	5-136
Comply With Unit's Established Security Measures (01-1-5162) .....	5-140
Employ Aircraft Survivability Measures (01-1-5163) .....	5-142
Employ Fratricide Prevention Measures (01-2-5159) .....	5-145
Employ Countermeasures Against Enemy Air Defense Artillery (ADA) (01-2-5180) .....	5-149
Perform Operations Within Established Army Airspace Command and Control (A2C2) Measures (01-2-5181) .....	5-153
Perform Air Volcano Operations (01-2-5222) .....	5-156

Conduct Thorough Decontamination Operations (03-3-C312)	5-159
Prepare for Operations Under Chemical, Biological, Radiological, and Nuclear (CBRN) Conditions (03-3-C201)	5-164
Prepare for a Chemical Attack (03-3-C202)	5-166
Respond to a Chemical Attack (03-3-C203)	5-168
Prepare for a Nuclear Attack (03-3-C206)	5-171
Cross a Radiologically Contaminated Area (03-3-C208)	5-173
Respond to the Residual Effects of a Nuclear Attack (03-3-C222)	5-175
Conduct Operational Decontamination (03-3-C224)	5-177
Conduct Chemical Reconnaissance (03-3-C225)	5-181
Cross a Chemically Contaminated Area (03-3-C226)	5-184
React to Ambush (07-2-1112)	5-187
React to Indirect Fire (07-2-1923)	5-190
Employ Camouflage, Concealment, and Deception Techniques (Infantry and Aviation) (07-2-6045)	5-192
React to a Terrorist or Insurgent Incident (31-2-1809)	5-197
Plan Base Cluster Operations (63-1-4014)	5-200
Secure Civilians During Operations (07-2-4054)	5-204
<hr/>	
<b>AIR DEFENSE</b>	
<hr/>	
Employ Passive Air Defense Measures (44-2-0220)	5-207
Employ Active Combined Arms Air Defense (AD) Measures (44-2-0221)	5-209
<hr/>	
<b>COMBAT SERVICE SUPPORT (CSS)</b>	
<hr/>	
Perform Personnel Strength Management Operations (01-1-0336)	5-213
Organize Predeployment Activities (01-1-0352)	5-215
Conduct Casualty Reporting Activities (01-1-0354)	5-218
Comply With the Noncombatants Processing Plan (01-1-0357)	5-220
Conduct Replacement Operations (01-1-1103)	5-223
Provide Other Personnel and Administrative Services (01-1-1105)	5-225
Coordinate the Requisition, Acquisition, and Distribution of Supplies and Equipment (01-1-1402)	5-228
Conduct Deployment/Redeployment Operations (01-1-5124)	5-230
Provide Sustainment to the Force (01-1-5129)	5-233
Provide Combat Support and Combat Service Support (01-1-5132)	5-237
Plan Requirements to Establish a Forward Arming and Refueling Point	5-242
Plan Aerial Casualty Evacuation (CASEVAC) Operations (01-1-5154)	5-244
Comply With Requirements to Keep an Isolated Personnel Report (ISOPREP) Database Current (01-1-5156)	5-248
Establish an Aviation Administrative and Logistics Operations Center (ALOC) (01-1-5168)	5-250
Organize Security Measures for Temporary Enemy Prisoners of War (EPW) at a Collection Point (01-1-5169)	5-252
Organize External Transportation Assets for Movement of Personnel, Supplies, and Equipment (01-1-5170)	5-254
Perform Logistics Operations (01-1-5171)	5-256
Perform Unit-Level Logistics Operations (01-2-0334)	5-260
Conduct Personnel Strength Management Procedures (01-2-0335)	5-262
Conduct Helicopter Maintenance (01-2-0338)	5-264
Perform Forward Arming and Refueling Point Operations (01-2-0339)	5-268
<hr/>	
<b>PROVIDE FOOD SERVICE SUPPORT (10-2-0056)</b>	<b>5-271</b>
<hr/>	
Conduct Casualty Evacuation Operations (01-2-1360)	5-276

Comply With Mission-Oriented Protective Posture Gear Exchange Procedures (01-2-5120) .....	5-279
Process Casualty Feeder Reports and Witness Statements (01-2-5161) .....	5-282
Provide Support to the Tactical Operations Center (01-2-5208).....	5-284
Provide Production Control Support in the Maintenance and Shop Sections (01-2-5209) .....	5-286
Provide Quality Control for Unit Programs and Work Completed by Maintenance and Shop Sections (01-2-5210) .....	5-289
Perform Helicopter Repairs and Required Inspections of Aircraft Systems (01-2-5211) .....	5-292
Perform Helicopter Repairs and Required Inspections of Aircraft Subsystems (01-2-5212) .....	5-295
Perform Helicopter Battle Damage Assessment and Repair/Recovery Operations (01-2-5213).....	5-298
Perform Maintenance Operations on Aviation Ground Support Equipment (AGSE) (01-2-5214).....	5-301
Maintain Aviation Life Support Equipment (01-2-5215) .....	5-303
Coordinate Operational Readiness and Aircraft Availability for Mission Planning With the S3 (01-2-5216).....	5-305
Perform Fat Hawk/Wet Hawk Operations (01-2-5217) .....	5-308
Perform Unit Supply Support Operations (01-4-0359).....	5-311
Perform Ground Vehicle Recovery Operations (01-4-0361).....	5-314
Perform Ground Vehicle Unit-Level Maintenance (01-4-0362).....	5-317
Conduct Unit Religious Support (16-1-1001) .....	5-321
Supervise Chemical, Biological, Radiological, and Nuclear Defense Operations (03-1-C404).....	5-324
Perform Aviation Medicine (Flight Surgeon) Support Activities (08-1-8102).....	5-329
Provide First Aid to Casualties (08-2-0003) .....	5-333
Provide Health Service Support (Aviation) (08-2-8101).....	5-336
Evacuate Casualties (08-2-0316).....	5-341
Perform Field Sanitation Functions (08-2-R315).....	5-344
Handle Enemy Prisoners of War (19-3-3106) .....	5-347

---

## COMMAND AND CONTROL (C2)

---

Restrict Local Population Interference With Ongoing U.S. Military Operations (01-1-0342) .....	5-349
Conduct Command and Control Battalion/Squadron Operations (01-1-0343) .....	5-353
Direct the Battalion/Squadron Staff (01-1-0344) .....	5-358
Manage the Status of Enlisted Personnel Assigned to the Battalion (01-1-0346).....	5-361
Integrate Key Operations and Support Functions into Battalion Operations (01-1-0347) .....	5-364
Manage the Battalion/Squadron Safety Program (01-1-0348).....	5-366
Direct the Battalion/Squadron Standardization Program (01-1-0349) .....	5-368
Develop an Aviation Media Plan (01-1-0355).....	5-371
Conduct Aviation Stability Operations and Support Operations (01-1-5126).....	5-374
Plan Aviation Operations Using the Military Decision Making Process (01-1-5134) .....	5-378
Coordinate Aviation Liaison Officer Operations (01-1-5146) .....	5-391
Establish Battalion/Squadron Tactical Command Post Operations (01-1-5147) .....	5-395
Coordinate Procedures for Establishing a Tactical Operations Center (01-1-5149).....	5-398
Direct Civil-Military Operations (01-1-5155).....	5-400
Plan Aviation Stability Operations and Support Operations (01-1-5157).....	5-407
Integrate the Army Airspace Command and Control Plan into Aviation Operations (01-1-5164) .....	5-410
Coordinate Personnel Recovery/Self-Recovery Operations (01-1-5165).....	5-413
Employ Automated Mission Planning Systems (01-1-5166).....	5-416
Perform Composite Risk Management Procedures (01-2-0341).....	5-418

Establish Battalion Tactical Base Operations (01-2-5118).....	5-420
Perform Troop-Leading Procedures (01-2-5160).....	5-425
Conduct Personnel Recovery/Self-Recovery Operations (UH-60) (01-2-5219).....	5-429
Perform Command, Control, Communications, Computers, and Intelligence Operations (01-2-5223) .....	5-433
Establish Battalion/Squadron Tactical Communications (01-1-5174).....	5-437
Coordinate Aviation Tactical Command, Control, Communications, Computers, and Intelligence Systems Planning (01-1-5175).....	5-441
Establish an Aviation Frequency Modulated Radio Retransmission Station (01-4- 5221) .....	5-444
Conduct Negotiations (07-2-5045) .....	5-447
Prepare Operations Plan/Operations Order and Annexes (63-1-4009).....	5-454

<b>Assault Helicopter Battalion Tasks Listed by the Element</b>		
<b>ELEMENT AND TASK TITLE</b>	<b>T&amp;EO AND TASK NUMBER</b>	<b>PAGE NUMBER</b>
<b>ASSAULT BATTALION AVIATION (CORE MISSIONS)</b>		
Conduct deployment/redeployment activities	01-1-5124	5-230
Conduct aviation stability operations and support operations	01-1-5126	5-374
Conduct force protection operations	01-1-5128	5-136
Provide sustainment to the force	01-1-5129	5-233
Conduct battalion air assault operations	01-1-5130	5-44
Conduct battalion air movement operations	01-1-5131	5-49
Provide combat support and combat service support	01-1-5132	5-237
Conduct aerial reconnaissance and surveillance/observation operations	01-1-5133	5-53
<b>ASSAULT BATTALION AVIATION COMMAND SECTION (SPECIAL MISSIONS)</b>		
Restrict local population interference with ongoing U.S. military operations	01-1-0342	5-349
Direct civil-military operations	01-1-5155	5-400
Plan base cluster operations	63-1-4014	5-200
<b>ASSAULT BATTALION AVIATION COMMANDER (COMMAND SECTION)</b>		
Conduct command and control battalion/squadron operations	01-1-0343	5-353
Plan aviation operations using the military decision making process	01-1-5134	5-378
<b>ASSAULT BATTALION AVIATION EXECUTIVE OFFICER (COMMAND SECTION)</b>		
Direct the battalion/squadron staff	01-1-0344	5-358
Direct deployment/redeployment operations	01-1-0345	5-37
<b>Note.</b> Refer to plan aviation operations using the military decision making process	01-1-5134	5-378
<b>ASSAULT BATTALION AVIATION COMMAND SERGEANT MAJOR (COMMAND SECTION)</b>		
Manage the status of enlisted personnel assigned to the battalion	01-1-0346	5-361
Integrates key operational and support functions into battalion operations	01-1-0347	5-364
<b>Note.</b> Refer to plan aviation operations using the military decision making process	01-1-5134	5-378

<b>Assault Helicopter Battalion Tasks Listed by the Element</b>		
<b>ELEMENT AND TASK TITLE</b>	<b>T&amp;EO AND TASK NUMBER</b>	<b>PAGE NUMBER</b>
<b>ASSAULT BATTALION AVIATION SAFETY OFFICER (COMMAND SECTION)</b>		
Manage the battalion/squadron safety program	01-1-0348	5-366
<b>Note.</b> Refer to plan aviation operations using the military decision making process	01-1-5134	5-378
<b>ASSAULT BATTALION AVIATION STANDARDIZATION OFFICER (COMMAND SECTION)</b>		
Direct the battalion/squadron standardization program	01-1-0349	5-368
<b>Note.</b> Refer to plan aviation operations using the military decision making process	01-1-5134	5-378
<b>ASSAULT BATTALION AVIATION FLIGHT SURGEON (COMMAND SECTION)</b>		
Perform aviation medicine (flight surgeon) support activities	08-1-8102	5-329
<b>ASSAULT BATTALION AVIATION MINISTRY TEAM</b>		
Conduct unit religious support	16-1-1001	5-321
<b>ASSAULT BATTALION AVIATION S1 SECTION</b>		
Perform personnel strength management operations	01-1-0336	5-213
Organize pre-deployment activities	01-1-0352	5-215
Conduct casualty reporting activities	01-1-0354	5-218
Develop an aviation media plan	01-1-0355	5-371
Conduct replacement operations	01-1-1103	5-223
Provide other personnel and administrative services	01-1-1105	5-225
<b>Note.</b> Refer to plan aviation operations using the military decision making process	01-1-5134	5-378
<b>ASSAULT BATTALION AVIATION S2 SECTION</b>		
Process information into intelligence	01-1-0356	5-13
Comply with the noncombatants processing plan	01-1-0357	5-220
Implement operations security measures	01-1-5135	5-56
Comply with requirements to keep an isolated personnel report database	01-1-5156	5-248
Comply with unit's established security measures	01-1-5162	5-140
Process captured documents and equipment	19-3-3105	5-19
Handle enemy prisoners of war	19-3-3106	5-347
Conduct intelligence preparation of the battlefield	34-1-2040	5-21
<b>Note.</b> Refer to plan aviation operations using the military decision making process	01-1-5134	5-378
<b>ASSAULT BATTALION AVIATION S3 SECTION</b>		
Plan aviation urban operations	01-1-0330	5-25
Direct the battalion/squadron staff	01-1-0344	5-358



<b>Assault Helicopter Battalion Tasks Listed by the Element</b>		
<b><i>ELEMENT AND TASK TITLE</i></b>	<b><i>T&amp;EO AND TASK NUMBER</i></b>	<b><i>PAGE NUMBER</i></b>
Direct deployment/redeployment operations	01-1-0345	5-37
Conduct quick reaction force planning operations	01-1-5125	5-41
Coordinate aviation psychological operations	01-1-5136	5-16
Plan fire mission in support of aviation operations	01-1-5142	5-132
Plan requirements to establish a forward arming and refueling point	01-1-5143	5-242
Coordinate aviation liaison officer operations	01-1-5146	5-391
Establish battalion/squadron tactical command post operations	01-1-5147	5-395
Coordinate procedures for establishing a tactical operations center operations	01-1-5149	5-398
Plan aviation air assault operations (UH-60)	01-1-5151	5-59
Plan aviation air movement operations (UH-60)	01-1-5152	5-63
Plan aviation combat service support operations	01-1-5153	5-67
Plan aerial casualty evacuation operations	01-1-5154	5-244
Plan aviation stability operations and support operations	01-1-5157	5-407
Supervise chemical, biological, radiological, and nuclear defense operations	03-1-C404	5-324
Prepare operations plan/operations order and annexes	63-1-4009	5-454
<b>Note.</b> Refer to plan aviation operations using the military decision making process	01-1-5134	5-378
<b>ASSAULT BATTALION AVIATION S3 SECTION TACOPS</b>		
Employ aircraft survivability measures	01-1-5163	5-142
Integrate the Army airspace command and control plan into aviation operations	01-1-5164	5-410
Coordinate personnel/self-recovery operations	01-1-5165	5-413
Employ automated mission planning systems	01-1-5166	5-416
Establish an aviation administrative and logistics operations center	01-1-5168	5-250
<b>ASSAULT BATTALION AVIATION S4 SECTION</b>		
Organize external transportation assets for movement of personnel, supplies, and equipment	01-1-5170	5-254
Perform logistics operations	01-1-5171	5-256
<b>Note.</b> Refer to plan aviation operations using the military decision making process	01-1-5134	5-378
<b>ASSAULT BATTALION AVIATION S6 SECTION (COMMUNICATION SECTION)</b>		
Establish battalion tactical communications	01-1-5174	5-437
Coordinate aviation tactical command, control, communications, computers, and intelligence systems planning	01-1-5175	5-441

<b>Assault Helicopter Battalion Tasks Listed by the Element</b>		
<b>ELEMENT AND TASK TITLE</b>	<b>T&amp;EO AND TASK NUMBER</b>	<b>PAGE NUMBER</b>
Establish an aviation frequency modulated radio retransmission station	01-4-5221	5-444
<b>Note.</b> Refer to plan aviation operations using the military decision making process	01-1-5134	5-378
<b>ASSAULT HELICOPTER COMPANY</b>		
Coordinate special patrol infiltration/exfiltration system mission (UH-60)	01-2-1034	5-86
Coordinate fast-rope insertion and extraction system mission (UH-60)	01-2-1035	5-91
Conduct casualty evacuation operations	01-2-1360	5-276
Perform air movement procedures (UH-60)	01-2-5103	5-95
Establish battalion tactical base operations	01-2-5118	5-420
Employ countermeasures against enemy air defense artillery	01-2-5180	5-149
Perform operations within established army airspace command and control measures	01-2-5181	5-153
Perform aerial passage of lines operations	01-2-5196	5-106
Conduct aviation mission planning/preparation	01-2-5198	5-109
Perform hasty assembly area displacement	01-2-5204	5-113
Maintain aviation life support equipment (also in ASC section)	01-2-5215	5-303
Perform Fat Hawk/Wet Hawk operations	01-2-5217	5-308
Perform air assault operations	01-2-5218	5-116
Conduct personnel recovery/self-recovery operations (UH-60)	01-2-5219	5-429
Perform air volcano operations	01-2-5222	5-156
Perform command, control, communications, computers, and intelligence operations	01-2-5223	5-433
Secure civilians during operations	07-2-4054	5-204
<b>HEADQUARTERS</b>		
Provide support to the tactical operations center	01-2-5208	5-284
<b>MEDICAL TREATMENT TEAM (HQ)</b>		
Provide health service support (aviation)	08-2-8101	5-336
<b>AVIATION SUPPORT COMPANY (ASC)</b>		
Perform production control in the maintenance and shop sections	01-2-5209	5-286
Provide quality control for unit programs and work completed by maintenance and shop sections	01-2-5210	5-289
Perform helicopter repairs and inspections of aircraft systems	01-2-5211	5-292
Perform helicopter repairs and required inspections of aircraft subsystems	01-2-5212	5-295
Perform helicopter battle damage assessment and repair / recovery operations	01-2-5213	5-298

<b>Assault Helicopter Battalion Tasks Listed by the Element</b>		
<b><i>ELEMENT AND TASK TITLE</i></b>	<b><i>T&amp;EO AND TASK NUMBER</i></b>	<b><i>PAGE NUMBER</i></b>
Maintain aviation life support equipment	01-2-5215	5-303
Coordinate operational readiness and aircraft availability for mission planning with the S3	01-2-5216	5-305
<b>FORWARD SUPPORT COMPANY (FSC) AUTOMOTIVE MAINTENANCE SECTION</b>		
Perform ground vehicle recovery operations	01-4-0361	5-314
Perform ground vehicle unit-level maintenance	01-4-0362	5-317
<b>FORWARD SUPPORT COMPANY (FSC) SUPPLY SECTION</b>		
Perform unit supply support operations	01-4-0359	5-311
<b>FORWARD SUPPORT COMPANY (FSC) FEEDING SECTION</b>		
Provide food service support operations	10-2-0056	5-271
<b>FORWARD SUPPORT COMPANY (FSC) CLASS III PLATOON SECTION (If applicable)</b>		
Perform forward area and refueling point operations	01-2-0339	5-268
<b>TASKS PERFORMED BY ALL COMPANIES</b>		
Perform deployment/redeployment activities	01-2-0327	5-70
Establish unit defense measures	01-2-0328	5-74
Conduct convoy operations	01-2-0333	5-78
Perform unit level unit operations	01-2-0334	5-260
Conduct personnel strength management procedures	01-2-0335	5-262
Conduct helicopter maintenance	01-2-0338	5-264
Perform advance/quartering party operations	01-2-0340	5-82
Perform composite risk management procedures	01-2-0341	5-418
Defend unit position	01-2-5113	5-98
Comply with mission-oriented protective posture gear exchange procedures	01-2-5120	5-279
Control an assembly area	01-2-5158	5-101
Employ fratricide prevention measures	01-2-5159	5-145
Perform troop-leading procedures	01-2-5160	5-425
Process casualty feeder reports and witness statements	01-2-5161	5-282
Prepare for operations under chemical, biological, radiological, and nuclear conditions	03-3-C201	5-164
Prepare for a chemical attack	03-3-C202	5-166
Respond to a chemical attack	03-3-C203	5-168
Prepare for a nuclear attack	03-3-C206	5-171
Cross a radiologically contaminated area	03-3-C208	5-173
Respond to the residual effects of a nuclear attack	03-3-C222	5-175
Conduct operational decontamination	03-3-C224	5-177
Conduct chemical reconnaissance	03-3-C225	5-181

<b>Assault Helicopter Battalion Tasks Listed by the Element</b>		
<b><i>ELEMENT AND TASK TITLE</i></b>	<b><i>T&amp;EO AND TASK NUMBER</i></b>	<b><i>PAGE NUMBER</i></b>
Cross a chemically contaminated area	03-3-C226	5-184
Conduct thorough decontamination operations	03-3-C312	5-159
React to an ambush	07-2-1112	5-187
React to indirect fire	07-2-1923	5-190
Conduct negotiations	07-2-5045	5-447
Employ camouflage, concealment, and deception techniques	07-2-6045	5-192
Provide first aid to casualties	08-2-0003	5-333
Evacuate casualties	08-2-0316	5-341
Perform field sanitation functions	08-2-R315	5-344
React to a terrorist or insurgent incident	31-2-1809	5-197
Employ passive air defense measures	44-2-0220	5-207
Employ active combined arms air defense measures	44-2-0221	5-209
Plan unit move	55-2-4001	5-129
<b>PATHFINDER PLATOON</b>		
Provide pathfinder support	01-3-1353	5-125

**Figure 5-1. List of T&EOs by element**

**ELEMENTS:** COMMAND SECTION  
S2 SECTION

**TASK: Process Information into Intelligence (01-1-0356)**  
(FM 2-0) (FM 1-100) (FM 3-0)  
(FM 3-04.111) (FM 5-0)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The battalion is conducting assigned missions in a simulated (live, virtual, or constructive) combat environment. The battalion tactical operations officer (TOC) is operational and the staff sections and digital systems are functional. The S2 has received mission requirements and the commander's guidance directing it to process information into intelligence. The S2 section is operational and is receiving intelligence information. The S2 is located at the main command post (CP). The unit's aviation mission planning system (AMPS) is available, operational and contains all enemy and friendly locations and graphic control measures provided by the higher headquarters. Some iterations of this task should be performed in mission-oriented protective posture level 4 (MOPP4).

**TASK STANDARDS:** The S2 section analyzed all available information to identify enemy dispositions and intentions. The S2 made recommendations to the commander concerning changes in the enemy situation and expedited the passing of pertinent intelligence to higher and subordinate headquarters.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>1. The battalion S2 section with assistance from the noncommissioned officer (NCO) determines the validity of incoming information by comparing it to the current database. The battalion's S2 and/or NCO also will determine the possibility or plausibility of the indicated activity based on:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Capabilities of the enemy.</li> <li>b. Analysis of the effects of weather on the operation.</li> <li>c. Analysis of the terrain.</li> <li>d. History of the enemy.</li> <li>e. Types of equipment present.</li> <li>f. Disposition of enemy forces.</li> <li>g. Personalities of key personnel.</li> <li>h. Consistency of the activity with previous indicators.</li> <li>i. Enemy perception of friendly capabilities and courses of action.</li> <li>j. Enemy capability to conduct deception operations.</li> </ul> <p>2. The battalion S2 section analyzes incoming intelligence and combat information. If deemed pertinent, the S2 determines its impact on friendly operations.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Identified time sensitive combat information.</li> <li>b. Compared information with the intelligence requirements (IR) and priority intelligence requirements (PIR).</li> <li>c. Compared information with the commander's list of high-priority targets.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>d. Compared the information with the situation map.</p> <p>e. Passed time sensitive data to the S2 of maneuver units immediately after receipt.</p> <p>f. Passed time sensitive and targeting-quality combat information to the S3 and higher headquarters for immediate action.</p> <p>g. Determined if the information is an indicator of a specific enemy course of action.</p> <p>h. Analyzed data based on predetermined key terrain, avenues of approach, trafficability data, and lines of communication to determine how recent activity affects the entire intelligence situation.</p> <p>i. Determined if incoming data met the criteria for a decision point, line, or event.</p> <p>j. Collated incoming information with existing intelligence to determine if new activities are in concert with expected enemy courses of action and current activities.</p> <p>k. Requested additional information from the G2 and subordinate units to fill gaps in intelligence.</p> <p>l. Updated the situation map.</p> <p>m. Projected future enemy dispositions based on the enemy analysis template.</p> <p>n. Made appropriate recommendations to the commander based on sound analytical procedures and judgment.</p> <p>3. Commander/leader performs or delegates performance of the steps in the risk management process for each step in troop-leading procedures (see appendix C).</p> <p>*indicates a leader task step</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
Total Task Steps Evaluated							
Total Task Steps GO							
Training Status GO/NO-GO							

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
011-510-0301	Participate in the military decision making process	STP 1-15 II
011-510-0311	Conduct military briefings	STP 1-15 II

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
01-1-5134	Plan aviation operations using the military decision making process	ARTEP 1-113-MTP
01-1-5136	Coordinate aviation psychological operations	ARTEP 1-118-MTP ARTEP 1-126-MTP ARTEP 1-113-MTP

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
19-3-3105	Process captured documents and equipment	ARTEP 1-113-MTP
		ARTEP 1-118-MTP
		ARTEP 1-126-MTP
34-1-2040	Conduct intelligence preparation of the battlefield (battalion)	ARTEP 1-113-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** COMMAND SECTION  
S3 SECTION

**TASK: Coordinate Aviation Psychological Operations (01-1-5136)**  
 (FM 3-05.30) (AR 95-1) (FM 1-100)  
 (FM 1-113) (FM 3-04.111) (FM 3-04.126)  
 (FM 3-05.301) (FM 3-06) (FM 3-100.12)  
 (FM 4-0) (FM 7-1) (FM 71-100-3)  
 (FM 90-4) (TC 1-237)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The battalion is in a simulated (live, virtual, or constructive) combat environment. The unit has received an operation order (OPORD)/fragmentary order (FRAGO) and the commander's guidance. The main command post (CP) is operational and the staff sections, with digital and or analog systems, are functioning. Reports are being received through normal channels. Intelligence support systems are operational. The battalion must prepare to fight and conduct multiple missions requiring pure or task-organized units. The assault helicopter battalion (AHB) coordinates the aviation psychological operations (PSYOP) missions (leaflet drop, speaker missions) as required. Some iterations of this task should be performed in mission-oriented protective posture level 4 (MOPP4).

**TASK STANDARDS:** The S3 section prepares the PSYOP missions. The S3 coordinates mission details with the S2 and staff. Mission accomplishment was not degraded by inadequate intelligence planning and analysis. Coordination with PSYOP teams for mission was successful completed without communication failure.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>*1. The commander and staff gained and/or maintained situational understanding using information gathered from Force XXI Battle Command Brigade and Below (FBCB2), frequency modulated (FM), digital and or analog communications systems, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources.</p> <p>*2. The battalion S3 coordinates with the S2 and staff. The S3 oversees the aviation PSYOP missions and PSYOP teams.</p> <hr/> <p><b>Note.</b> The operational conditions of stability operations and support operations frequently require the integration of specialty personnel PSYOP teams.</p> <hr/> <p>a. PSYOP teams provided commanders the ability to communicate information to large audiences via radio, television, leaflets, loudspeakers, and internet-based distribution particularly in stability operations and support operations.</p> <p>b. PSYOP teams sought to demoralize the enemy by causing dissension and unrest in their ranks, while at the same time persuaded the local population to support U.S. troops.</p> <p>c. Higher headquarters provided PSYOP teams opportunities to continuously analyze the enemy's attitudes and behavior so they can develop, produce, and employ information communication successfully.</p>		



TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p><b>*3.</b> Assault helicopter units transports PSYOP teams or fly missions whose intent is purely psychological to include dropping leaflets, a show of force, and a loud speaker platform.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. PSYOP teams used persuasion to influence perceptions and encourage desired behavior.</li> <li>b. The cornerstone of PSYOP is truth, credibly presented to convince a given audience to cease resistance or take actions favorable to friendly forces.</li> <li>c. PSYOP influenced enemy force behavior in support of U.S. national interests and other information related activities.</li> </ul> <p><b>4.</b> The PSYOP team planned operations to convey selected information and indicators to foreign audiences to influence their emotions, motives, objective reasoning, and ultimately the behavior of foreign governments, organizations, groups and individuals.</p> <p><b>5.</b> The purpose of psychological operations applies to:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Induced foreign attitudes favorable to the originator's objectives.</li> <li>b. Reinforced foreign behavior favorable to the originator's objectives.</li> </ul> <p><b>6.</b> For the PSYOP team to be successful, it should "convey information" that:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Influenced emotions.</li> <li>b. Influenced motives.</li> <li>c. Influenced objective reasoning.</li> <li>d. Influenced behavior.</li> </ul> <p><b>7.</b> Other PSYOP missions whose intent is purely tactical can produce residual psychological effects. An example is an air assault that destroys a communications site 100 kilometers behind the forward line of own troops (FLOT). The psychological effect would be to demoralize enemy leaders and other forces in the rear.</p> <p><b>*8.</b> Commander/leader performs or delegates performance of the steps in the risk management process for each step in troop-leading procedures (see appendix C).</p> <p>* Indicates a leader task step</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
Total Task Steps Evaluated							
Total Task Steps GO							
Training Status GO/NO-GO							

#### SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
011-237-2010	Perform multi-aircraft operations (UH-60)	TC 1-237 STP 1-TACOPS
011-237-2012	Perform tactical flight mission planning (UH-60)	TC 1-237
011-237-2026	Perform terrain flight (UH-60)	STP 1-TACOPS TC 1-237 STP 1-TACOPS

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
011-510-0303	Conduct operations missions briefing/ debriefing	STP 1-15 II
052-261-1220	Package printed leaflets for dissemination by aerial leaflet bomb	MOS E 21L 1
052-261-1221	Package printed leaflets for volume dissemination from aircraft at low altitude	MOS E 21L 1
052-261-1222	Package printed leaflets for volume dissemination from aircraft at high altitude	MOS E 21L 1

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
01-1-5131	Conduct battalion air movement operations	ARTEP 1-113-MTP
01-1-5134	Plan aviation operations using the military decision making process	ARTEP 1-113-MTP  ARTEP 1-118-MTP ARTEP 1-126-MTP ARTEP 1-113-MTP
01-1-5152	Plan aviation air movement operations (UH-60)	ARTEP 1-118-MTP ARTEP 1-113-MTP
01-1-5155	Direct civil-military operations	ARTEP 1-118-MTP ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-126-MTP ARTEP 1-113-MTP
01-1-5162	Comply with unit's established security measures	ARTEP 1-126-MTP ARTEP 1-113-MTP
01-2-0341	Perform composite risk management procedures	ARTEP 1-126-MTP ARTEP 1-113-MTP
01-2-5103	Perform air movement procedures (UH-60)	ARTEP 1-126-MTP ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-118-MTP ARTEP 1-113-MTP
01-2-5198	Conduct aviation mission planning/ preparation	ARTEP 1-113-MTP  ARTEP 1-126-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** COMMAND SECTION  
S2 SECTION

**TASK: Process Captured Documents and Equipment (19-3-3105)**

(FM 3-19.4)	(FM 1-100)	(FM 1-113)
(FM 2-0)	(FM 3-0)	(FM 3-04.111)
(FM 3-04.126)	(FM 3-100.12)	(FM 3-19.1)
(FM 3-19.40)		

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The battalion is in a simulated (live, virtual, or constructive) combat environment. The main command post (CP) is operational and the staff sections, digital and/or analog systems, are functioning. Reports are being received through normal channels. Enemy documents or materiel have been captured. The capturing unit has reported and requested instructions for disposition. Some iterations of this task should be performed in mission-oriented protective posture level 4 (MOPP4).

**TASK STANDARDS:** The element processes all captured documents and equipment based on disposition instructions within the time standards established by higher headquarters (HQ). The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in MOPP4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p><b>1.</b> The S2/leader tags all captured documents and equipment.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>a.</b> Annotated the type of document or equipment (for example, maps, photos, rifles, or radios).</li> <li><b>b.</b> Annotated the date and time of capture.</li> <li><b>c.</b> Annotated the place of capture (grid coordinates).</li> <li><b>d.</b> Annotated the capturing unit.</li> <li><b>e.</b> Annotated the circumstances of capture.</li> <li><b>f.</b> Annotated the prisoner's name, if taken from enemy prisoner of war.</li> </ul> <p><b>*2.</b> The S2/leader reports the capture of documents and equipment to higher HQ.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>a.</b> Described the type of document or equipment.</li> <li><b>b.</b> Identified the date and time of capture.</li> <li><b>c.</b> Identified the capturing unit.</li> <li><b>d.</b> Denoted the place of capture (grid coordinates).</li> </ul> <p><b>*3.</b> The S2/leader disposes of documents and equipment according to the guidance received from higher headquarters.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>a.</b> Destroyed, secured, evacuated, or abandoned the equipment.</li> <li><b>b.</b> Evacuated documents through the chain of command to intelligence personnel.</li> </ul> <p><b>*4.</b> Commanders/leaders identifies and controls hazards according to risk management procedures (see appendix C).</p> <p>* Indicates a leader task step</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
<i>ITERATION</i>	<i>1</i>	<i>2</i>	<i>3</i>	<i>4</i>	<i>5</i>	<i>M</i>	<i>TOTAL</i>
Total Task Steps Evaluated							
Total Task Steps GO							
Training Status GO/NO-GO							

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
011-510-0300	Coordinate staff duties/responsibilities in tactical units	STP 1-15 II
011-510-0301	Participate in the military decision making process	STP 1-15 II
011-510-0303	Conduct operations missions briefing/debriefing	STP 1-15 II

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
01-2-0341	Perform composite risk management procedures	ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-126-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** COMMAND SECTION  
S2 SECTION

**TASK: Conduct Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield (Battalion)** (34-1-2040)  
(FM 34-130) (FM 1-02) (FM 2-0)  
(FM 5-0) (FM 34-80)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** Given a deployed unit, incoming all source intelligence and information from higher, adjacent, and subordinate elements; enemy order of battle; knowledge of threat doctrine; commander's initial planning guidance; refined data from the terrain team and staff weather officer; a personal computer based tactical local area network and the all source analysis system-light (ASAS-L). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Performance of this task may occur in an asymmetric environment containing imbalanced ideological, cultural, technological and/or military threat capabilities. Some iterations of this task should be performed in mission-oriented protective posture level 4 (MOPP4).

**TASK STANDARDS:** Conducted intelligence preparation of the battlefield that accurately defined the battlefield area, described the effects of weather and terrain on the battlefield, and evaluated the threat. Provided supporting templates and reports that assisted the staff in determining courses of action and mission planning. The time required to perform this task in MOPP4 and/or blackout conditions is increased.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>*1. The S2 section establishes coordination with other staff elements according to the unit tactical standing operating procedures (SOPs).</p> <p>2. S2 section defines the battlefield area.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Coordinated with the division terrain team or attached engineer unit for engineer terrain analysis of the battlefield.</li> <li>b. Identified the amount of detail required and feasibility in the time available.</li> <li>c. Identified the limits of the unit's area of operations (AO) and battlespace.</li> <li>d. Established the limits of the unit's area of interest (AI).</li> <li>e. Evaluated existing databases to identify gaps in intelligence.</li> <li>f. Collected the required intelligence.</li> <li>g. Identified significant characteristics of the AO and AI.</li> </ul> <p>3. S2 section analyzes and describes terrain and weather effects on friendly and enemy courses of action (COA). Coordinate with the analysis and control element for initial collection requirements to fill database gaps.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Conducted terrain analysis of the battlefield area and identified military aspects of the terrain. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Determined observation and fields of fire in the AO and AI.</li> <li>(2) Identified areas of cover and concealment.</li> <li>(3) Identified obstacles.</li> <li>(4) Identified key terrain.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>(5) Identify and analyze enemy avenues of approach and mobility corridors in the AO and AI. (Attack/counterattack forces should be tailored to a specific unit type, such as heavy, light, airborne forces, and so forth)</p> <hr/> <p><b>Note.</b> In some units, the assistant engineer briefs terrain, while the S2 focuses on the effects of terrain on the enemy.</p> <hr/> <p>b. Determined the military aspects of weather on military operations.</p> <p>(1) Coordinated with the staff weather officer.</p> <p>(2) Evaluated the effects of visibility within the AO and AI.</p> <p>(3) Evaluated the effects of wind.</p> <p>(4) Evaluated the effects of precipitation.</p> <p>(5) Evaluated the effects of cloud cover.</p> <p>(6) Evaluated the effects of temperature and humidity.</p> <p>c. Determined other characteristics of the battlefield that could effect operations. This can be accomplished through identification of:</p> <p>(1) Identified demographic, political, and socioeconomic factors;</p> <p>(2) Identified Infrastructures (transportation and telecommunications, and so forth).</p> <p>4. S2 section prepare a modified combined obstacle overlay. (If not already prepared by the engineer terrain team.)</p> <p>5. The S2 section create or update threat doctrine or patterns of operation to doctrinal templates.</p> <p>a. The S2 described threat tactics and options.</p> <p>b. The S2 section identified those high value targets critical to the completion of the threat commander's mission.</p> <p>c. The S2 section identified threat capabilities, vulnerabilities, COA, supporting missions, and other actions that can influence friendly operations.</p> <p>d. Developed situation templates according to FM 34-130 that graphically depict doctrinal threat dispositions given terrain constraints in the AO and AI should the threat adopt a particular COA.</p> <p>e. Developed event templates according to FM 34-130, which depict where and when to collect information that would indicate which COA the threat had adopted.</p> <p>(1) Developed new named areas of interest at specific points, routes, or areas within the AO and AI that can match natural terrain features, arbitrary features such as time phase lines, or engagement areas. Also include collection targets that exist in the electromagnetic spectrum.</p> <p>(2) Developed an event matrix that provides details on the type of threat activity expected in each named area of interest, when the named area of interest is expected to be active, and its relationship to other battlefield events.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p><b>6.</b> The S2 section identify the threat's likely objectives and desired end state beginning with the threat command one level above and repeating the process through two levels below.</p> <p><b>a.</b> Identified and analyzed the full set of COA available to the threat according to FM 34-130.</p> <p>(1) Analyzed the feasibility of each threat COA in terms of time, space, resources, and the force ratios required to accomplish its objective(s).</p> <p>(2) Identified the uniqueness and suitability of each threat COA.</p> <p>(3) Determined the acceptability of risk to threat forces for each COA.</p> <p>(4) Determined whether the COA are consistent with threat doctrine.</p> <p>(5) Determined if the threat COA effectively supports the perceived objective and task/purpose of its higher echelons, two echelons up if possible (for example, Will a regiment's COA support its division and army's objectives?).</p> <p><b>b.</b> Developed each COA in the amount of detail time allows.</p> <p><b>c.</b> Evaluated and prioritize each COA.</p> <p>(1) Determined the most dangerous threat COA.</p> <p>(2) Determined the most likely threat COA.</p> <p><b>7.</b> The S2 section assist the battle staff in the production of the decision support template through the war-gaming process and other intelligence preparation of the battlefield products already developed.</p> <p><b>8.</b> The S2 section confirm or deny the existing estimate of the enemy's COA and update the estimate based on current intelligence, weather, and terrain data.</p> <p><b>9.</b> The S2 recommend changes to priority intelligence requirements and high payoff targets based on the most current assessment of threat.</p> <p><b>*10.</b> Commander/leader performs or delegates performance of the steps in the risk management process for each step in troop-leading procedures (see appendix C).</p> <p>* Indicates a leader task step</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
Total Task Steps Evaluated							
Total Task Steps GO							
Training Status GO/NO-GO							

### SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
011-510-0301	Participate in the military decision making process	STP 1-15 II
011-510-0303	Conduct operations missions briefing/debriefing	STP 1-15 II
011-510-0304	Conduct battalion/brigade rehearsal	STP 1-15 II
011-510-0305	Conduct battalion/brigade after-action review	STP 1-15 II
011-510-0306	Perform personnel/administration staff duties/responsibilities	STP 1-15 II
011-510-0311	Conduct military briefings	STP 1-15 II

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
01-2-0341	Perform composite risk management procedures	ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-126-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**



**ELEMENTS:** COMMAND SECTION  
S3 SECTION

**TASK: Plan Aviation Urban Operations (01-1-0330)**

(FM 3-04.111)	(AR 95-1)	(FM 1-113)
(FM 1-100)	(FM 3-04.126)	(FM 3-04.300)
(FM 3-06)	(FM 3-06.11)	(FM 3-100.4)
(FM 3-100.12)	(FM 4-01.011)	(FM 7-0)
(FM 7-1)	(TC 1-201)	(TC 1-237)

**ITERATION:**            1            2            3            4            5            M            (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:**    T            P            U            (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The battalion is planning the missions in a simulated (live, virtual, or constructive) combat environment. The battalion tactical operations center (TOC) is operational and the staff sections and digital systems are functional. The battalion has established communications, and digital connectivity via the Army Battle Command System (ABCS), when equipped, with subordinate, adjacent, and higher headquarters, and is passing information according to higher headquarters' and the unit's tactical standing operating procedures (TACSOP). The commander has received an operational order (OPORD) from higher headquarters and the commander's guidance directing it to plan aviation urban operations. The battalion S3 plans the coordination of the aviation mission planning system (AMPS). AMPS is operational and contains information pertaining to location of friendly and enemy units, boundary lines, phase lines, and engagement areas. Aviation urban engagement area operations may be conducted during day, at night using night vision devices (NVDs), under electronic warfare (EW) conditions and using terrain flight. Some iterations of this task should be performed in mission-oriented protective posture level 4 (MOPP4).

**TASK STANDARDS:** The battalion S3 planned the coordination involved with the intelligence, surveillance, and reconnaissance (ISR) operations to assess the urban area and answer the commander's priority intelligence requirements (PIR). The staff maintained the common operational picture (COP), enabling timely command decisions to influence operations. The battalion attacked or defended to defeat or destroy enemy forces. All operations adhered to the rules of engagement (ROE)/rules of interaction (ROI). The battalion destroyed or suppressed the threat element without incurring friendly losses.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p><b>Note.</b> The task steps below will be accomplished using ABCS when indicated in the performance measures. When preformatted message do not exist, free text messages may be substituted for other Force XXI Battle Command Brigade and Below (FBCB2) and Maneuver Control System (MCS) messages identified in task steps and performance measures below. attack reconnaissance/assault battalions without ABCS will substitute appropriate SOP procedures for task steps that require ABCS.</p> <p><b>Note.</b> These tasks and performance measures augment those associated with planning and executing offensive, defensive, security and stability, or support tasks.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>1. The commander, assisted by the S3 and staff, analyzes urban area characteristics during planning.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. The commander, S3, and staff continuously updated the COP and revised the plan based on information and intelligence from higher headquarters feeds and ISR operations.</li> <li>b. Commander/S3 envisioned the urban operation and provided guidance to the staff as necessary. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Prioritized the feasible enemy/threat courses of action (ECOA) and identified what circumstances may influence the enemy's adoption of any one course of action (COA). <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) Attempted to isolate the threat within the urban area.</li> <li>(b) Reacted to the threat isolating them within an urban area.</li> <li>(c) Used avenues of approach to attack or withdraw.</li> </ul> </li> </ul> </li> </ul> <hr/> <p><b>Note.</b> For attack reconnaissance operations, the commander may elect to allow the enemy/threat an avenue for escape, or portray an avenue as deception to complete destruction of the enemy as the commander withdraws thorough open terrain.</p> <hr/> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(d) Used the civilian populace and key facilities to their advantage.</li> <li>(e) Won the information war and public opinion.</li> <li>(f) Attacked rear areas, isolated elements, and individuals.</li> <li>(2) Determined threat-level shaping operations required to either isolate or prevent isolation of the urban area based on the shaping operations of the higher headquarters.</li> <li>(3) Determined decisive operations required to dominate the urban area and achieve success.</li> <li>(4) Identified the organization of forces required to— <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) Isolate the urban area.</li> <li>(b) Protect flanks outside of the urban area.</li> <li>(c) Dominate the urban area to achieve the mission.</li> </ul> </li> <li>(5) Considered effects of isolation on the civilian population to identify support or aid requirements.</li> <li>c. Considered urban related intelligence preparation of the battlefield (IPB) that included— <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Manmade terrain and supporting infrastructure to include the four physical dimensions. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) Airspace over the village to include potential landing zones (LZ) and obstructions to aviation.</li> <li>(b) Buildings and structures included their effects on observation, movement, cover, and concealment (identify those that serve as key terrain).</li> <li>(c) Mobility of main thoroughfares to include lateral and parallel streets that provides space to maneuver or alternate avenues of approach.</li> </ul> </li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>(d) Subterranean systems that could be used to conduct ambushes, counterattacks (CATK), infiltration, and sustainment operations.</p> <p>(2) Enemy/threat compositions and dispositions within the operational environment (OE).</p> <p>(a) Conventional and other forces including; unconventional forces, paramilitary forces, militia and special police organizations, organized criminal factions, and terrorists cells.</p> <p>(b) Methods and tactics to counter U.S. technological and/or numerical advantages to include; skill level and experience with urban operations, use of local population to provide protection, concealment, and/or deception for their operations, telecommunications, media reports, internet web sites, and/or cellular phones for information operations, target key facilities such as telecommunication sites, water treatment plants, and power generation/transmission sites to gain an advantage, physical dimensions, including rooftops, to impede and/or attack threat forces.</p> <p>(3) Noncombatants impact on operations.</p> <p>(a) Political affiliation and grievances.</p> <p>(b) Ethnicity, religious beliefs, and cultural distinctions.</p> <p>(c) Known belligerents and other organized factions.</p> <p>(d) Living conditions that affect and separate factions.</p> <p>(e) Recent activities and attitude toward U.S. forces.</p> <p>(4) Information requirements to assist preparation of the urban area map.</p> <p>(a) Identifies information requirements for routes, infrastructure, areas, and points key to operations.</p> <p>(b) Determines latest time information is valuable.</p> <p>(c) Identifies ISR assets best suited to provide information.</p> <p>(d) If necessary, submits requests for information (RFI) to higher headquarters.</p> <p>d. Considered urban unique fire support requirements to include—</p> <p>(1) Hazardous sites, such as below ground fuel storage, where missiles and rockets may cause extensive incendiary effects.</p> <p>(2) Impact of general construction and composition of buildings and road surfaces on munitions type.</p> <p>(3) Possible effects of building masking, power lines or towers on global positioning systems (GPS) and compasses.</p> <p>(4) Special equipment requirements for fire support personnel.</p> <p>e. Considered urban unique communications requirements to include—</p> <p>(1) Effects of terrain and infrastructure on line of sight (LOS) communications.</p> <p>(2) Retransmission sites to facilitate communications upon initial entry and during urban operations.</p> <p>(3) Redundant communications to compensate for urban area effects.</p> <p>(4) Cover and concealment provided by closed areas and structures for communications assets.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>(5) Commercial communications assets, facilities, and networks such as—</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) Standard and emergency power generation stations or systems.</li> <li>(b) Protected cables and central telephone exchanges.</li> <li>(c) Public service radio net antennas and retransmission stations.</li> </ul> <p>f. Developed an urban area map.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Used all available ISR assets to include human intelligence (HUMINT), image intelligence (IMINT), and signal intelligence (SIGINT) to develop the urban map.</li> <li>(2) Provided a reference system and naming conventions for orientation and navigation.</li> </ul> <hr/> <p><b>Note.</b> Street names should not be used as references. Conventions should be simple (such as odd numbers on left side, even on right).</p> <hr/> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(3) Used digital topographical support system (DTSS).</li> <li>(4) Identified key terrain to include— <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) Identified safe havens (such as hospitals and embassies).</li> <li>(b) Identified government and nongovernmental agencies and organizations (such as council halls, police stations, prisons, and relief distribution points).</li> <li>(c) Identified major terrain features and infrastructure (such as parks, industrial complexes, and airports).</li> <li>(d) Identified avenues of approach (such as main highways, improved roads, subterranean passages with entrances/exits).</li> <li>(e) Identified hazardous areas (such as construction sites, incendiary storage facilities, dangerous intersections, and criminal regions).</li> </ul> </li> <li>(5) Depicted population densities to include— <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) Political affiliations and grievances.</li> <li>(b) Ethnicity, religious beliefs, and cultural distinctions.</li> <li>(c) Known belligerents and other organized factions.</li> <li>(d) Recent activities and attitude towards U.S. forces.</li> </ul> </li> </ul> <p>2. The battalion operation order addresses—</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Addressed enemy/threat situation which included likely threat weapon systems and night vision capabilities.</li> <li>b. Addressed civilian situation which included as applicable— <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Locations of governmental and nongovernmental headquarters.</li> <li>(2) Composition and dispositions of regional and local military and/or law enforcement organizations.</li> <li>(3) Composition, disposition, and influence of known sympathizers and affiliated forces.</li> <li>(4) Factions, key leaders, locations, compositions, and dispositions of known belligerents. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) Recent trends in local public opinion.</li> </ul> </li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>(b) Intensity levels of past and/or current disturbances.</p> <p>(c) Immediate and long-term effects from use of lethal force, if required, against the crowd.</p> <p>(5) Description of uniforms, vehicles, insignia, markings, and equipment to include weapons, night observation devices (NOD), and their capabilities.</p> <p>(6) Current locations of weapon holding areas, staging areas, and/or encampments.</p> <p>(7) Locations of police stations, food distribution points, power generation/transformer facilities, governmental and political party headquarters.</p> <p>(8) Locations of media outlets and communications networks.</p> <p>c. Addressed terrain to include as applicable—</p> <p>(1) Effects on employment of attack reconnaissance aviation assets in a combat support role.</p> <p>(2) Effects on fields of fire and effective ranges of weapon systems.</p> <p>(3) Effects on use of unmanned aerial vehicles (UAV) and other aviation assets for ISR, transportation, resupply.</p> <p>(4) Use of rooftops for observation, ambushes, and other actions against forces.</p> <p>(5) Use of basements and subterranean systems for cover, concealment, infiltration, and sustainment activities.</p> <p>(6) Effects of construction and composition of the buildings and road surfaces.</p> <p>d. Addressed scheme of maneuver that described:</p> <p>(1) Shaping operations to isolate or prevent isolation of the urban area.</p> <p>(2) Decisive operations to defend or dominate the urban area.</p> <p>e. Addressed fires that employ all available assets to accomplish the essential fire support tasks (EFST) and support the scheme of maneuver.</p> <p>(1) Command and control (C2) for each fire support asset.</p> <p>(2) Buildings and other locations for observation posts (OP), laser designators, and overwatch of triggers.</p> <p>(3) Instructions for target acquisition which included as a minimum:</p> <p>(a) Criteria to change from surveillance to acquisition.</p> <p>(b) Target description and method for attack.</p> <p>(c) Desired target effect.</p> <p>(d) Purpose for desired effect.</p> <p>(4) Location of hazardous sites such as fuel and industrial storage facilities and gas distribution lines.</p> <p>(5) Critical friendly zones (CFZ) and other radar coverage requirements.</p> <p>f. Addressed ISR operations described as a minimum:</p> <p>(1) Reconnaissance focus, tempo, and engagement criteria.</p> <p>(2) HUMINT collection focuses on identifying reliable sources of information around the urban area.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>(3) Combination of techniques (stealthy or aggressive reconnaissance and convert surveillance) to establish the reconnaissance tempo and gather information on and in the urban area.</p> <p>(4) Reconnaissance tasks included infiltration and exfiltration routes.</p> <p>(5) Synchronization of aerial and ground reconnaissance assets.</p> <p>(a) Attack reconnaissance and UAV assets reconnoiter key/restrictive terrain outside the urban area, rooftops, local barracks, and/or assembly areas.</p> <p>(b) Ground surveillance radar (GSR) focuses surveillance along routes leading into or out of the urban area.</p> <p>(c) Remotely-monitored battlefield sensor system (REMBASS) are inserted along lateral and/or parallel routes that are not interfered with by maneuver.</p> <p>(d) Chemical, biological, radiological, and nuclear (CBRN) reconnaissance teams evaluate local water sources and treatment plants.</p> <p>g. Addressed electronic warfare (EW) that gathered information and, if necessary, attacked to disrupt and deceive enemy C2.</p> <p>(1) Monitored civilian communications to determine locations of specified civilian authorities, belligerent factions, and/or criminal organizations.</p> <p>(2) Identified and prioritizes artillery and/or C2 nets for attack during critical events such as withdrawal of the security force or disengagement of a battalion task force in contact.</p> <p>(3) Attacked support counter-battery and other fires to degrade or deny effective use of C2 structure and information systems.</p> <p>(4) If necessary, disrupted civilian cellular communications.</p> <p>(5) Protected friendly C2 systems from enemy EW attacks.</p> <p>h. Echeloned CS and CSS elements and assets provided flexible support to units operating both in and out of the urban area.</p> <p>(1) Designated supply caches for class I, IV, and VIII, batteries, and other mission-specific items.</p> <p>(2) Designated supply drop points away from hide and surveillance sites.</p> <p>(3) Ensured force is notified of supply point locations.</p> <p>i. Tasked and prioritized to transition urban area control to designated military of civilian authorities.</p> <p>j. Described effects of ROE/POI (program of instruction) on attack reconnaissance and assault operations.</p> <p>3. The battalion conduct ISR operations to assess the urban area.</p> <p>a. The S2 entered all information into the all source analysis system (ASAS) to become part of the COP.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p><b>Note.</b> The battalion TACSOP must dictate red situational awareness (SA) filter settings to all units under operational control to include display of FBCB2 generated SA, ASAS generated SA, or both. The ASAS SA correlates FBCB2 data with other intelligence. To ensure that all battalion platforms are displaying the same COP prior to the start of an operation, the S2 verifies that the ASAS operators have turned the embedded battle command (EBC) filters on when they are updating the red SA. Once the operation begins, the battalion should display the FBCB2 SA with the SOP dictating predefined times to display the ASAS feed for an updated correlated picture.</p> <p><b>b.</b> The staff answered the commander's PIR and provided information to facilitate decisionmaking, as necessary.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Provided information on terrain surrounding the urban area, to include bridges, fords, overpasses, underpasses, obstacles, and contaminated areas.</li> <li>(2) Located and identified enemy/threat forces around and within the urban area and notifies the force using FBCB2.</li> <li>(3) Disseminated correlated or uncorrelated enemy information, that is of immediate interest to battalion FBCB2 users in the close fight and that is not already posted on FBCB2.</li> <li>(4) Located urban area entry points or points of penetration and supporting positions for direct and indirect fire weapon systems.</li> <li>(5) Located potential LZ and pickup zone (PZ) sites.</li> <li>(6) Located or verifies key terrain, structures, and facilities.</li> <li>(7) Located or verified hazard areas such as fuel distribution lines, fuel storage, chemical production and other industrial facilities.</li> <li>(8) Located or verified communications and media facilities. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) The formal and informal power structure.</li> <li>(b) Police, secret police, and intelligence agencies.</li> <li>(c) Criminal organizations and leadership.</li> <li>(d) Terrorist organizations and leadership.</li> <li>(e) Military and paramilitary organizations and leadership.</li> <li>(f) Key terrain that provided a political and/or cultural advantage to the controlling faction.</li> <li>(g) Needs of society.</li> <li>(h) Intent of the local populace (stay or flee).</li> </ol> </li> </ol> <p><b>c.</b> The battalion commander adjusted attack reconnaissance tempo and engagement criteria as necessary.</p> <p><b>d.</b> Conducted progressive ISR operations from surrounding areas toward the village to limit chance contact.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Reconnoitered outlying urban areas and residences along avenues of approach to the village.</li> <li>(2) Coordinated SIGINT and IMINT to cue ground reconnaissance assets.</li> <li>(3) Conducted HUMINT collection to provide information of enemy, paramilitary, or belligerent forces.</li> </ol> <p><b>e.</b> Infiltrated surveillance teams into the village as necessary.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>f. Conducted urban patrolling, to include subterranean, as necessary.</p> <p>g. Shifted elements and assets according to the commander's guidance and priorities to offset losses, observe critical named areas of interest (NAI), and/or maintain contact with enemy/threat forces.</p> <p>h. Improved the urban sketch throughout the planning process based on the analysis of available intelligence, initial reconnaissance, and decisions made concerning the above considerations.</p> <p>4. If applicable, the battalion traverses the urban area.</p> <hr/> <p><b>Note.</b> The factors of mission, enemy, terrain and weather, troops and support available, time available, and civil considerations (METT-TC), along with the ROE/ROI, determine the need to bypass or move through an urban area.</p> <hr/> <p>a. Bypassed the urban area.</p> <p>(1) Identified axis of advance to avoid the urban area.</p> <p>(2) Established flank security (screen or guard) between the axis and the urban area during the bypass.</p> <p>(a) Subordinate battalion forces established internal moving flank security as they bypass the urban area, OR</p> <p>(b) Battalion designated a battalion task force to establish a stationary flank guard to protect the battalion's main body bypass.</p> <p>(3) Battalion's main body bypassed the urban area.</p> <p>(4) If necessary, left a security force to protect lines of communications (LOC) and service support assets after the main body completed the bypass.</p> <p>b. Moved through an urban area.</p> <p>(1) Used ingress, egress, and contingency routes to minimize the duration of flight over urban terrain.</p> <p>(2) Established control measures to support movement.</p> <p>(a) Identified primary and alternate lanes for movement through the urban area.</p> <p>(b) Identified lateral routes between primary and alternate lanes.</p> <hr/> <p><b>Note.</b> Each battalion element requires two primary lanes to support movement.</p> <hr/> <p>(c) Designated release lines (phase lines [PL]) prior to the entrance and at the exit of the lanes.</p> <p>(d) Designated near-side and far-side attack positions or holding areas for the battalion's main body before and beyond the release lines.</p> <p>(3) If necessary, positioned security forces to the flanks of the urban area and protected the entrance to the lanes.</p> <p>(4) If necessary, conducted shaping operations according to the ROE/ROI to include lethal and non-lethal fires to isolate the urban area during movement.</p> <hr/> <p><b>Note.</b> Shaping operations may also include feints, demonstrations, or limited attacks.</p> <hr/>		



TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>(5) Battalion's combined arms initial entry force established required lanes ahead of the battalion's main body.</p> <p>(a) If necessary, defeated enemy forces to secure a movement corridor through the urban area.</p> <hr/> <p><b>Note.</b> A movement corridor includes all passage lanes and the surrounding terrain and structures required to protect the lanes.</p> <hr/> <p>(b) Reconnoitered and marks primary and alternate lanes.</p> <p>(c) Secured and cleared buildings immediately adjacent to the lanes as necessary.</p> <p>(d) Cleared obstacles, obstructions, or debris from lanes.</p> <p>(e) Established traffic control points (TCP) and measures to restrict and control civilian movement.</p> <p>(f) Positioned military police (MP) and other traffic control elements, if attached.</p> <p>(g) Maintained security during movement of the brigade combat team (BCT) main body.</p> <p>(6) If necessary, committed follow and assumed or followed and supported elements behind the initial entry force.</p> <p>(7) If necessary, secured maneuver space on the far-side of the passage lanes.</p> <p>(8) Coordinated recovery and other CS and CSS assets along the passage lanes as necessary.</p> <p>(9) Battalion's main body completed movement through the urban area without loss of momentum.</p> <p>5. The battalion conducted shaping operations according to the ROE/ROI to isolate or prevent isolation of the urban area.</p> <p>a. Psychological operations (PSYOP) influenced enemy/threat and civilian actions without sacrificing surprise.</p> <p>(1) Broadcasted messages and used leaflets to undermine morale, warn of impending actions, and/or specify harbor (safe) zones.</p> <p>(2) Liaison and interacted with civilian populace to determine needs and influence public perceptions.</p> <p>(3) Monitored or controlled civilian communications to—</p> <p>(a) Prevented enemy/threat use for C2, intelligence dissemination, or psychological manipulation.</p> <p>(b) Disseminated U.S. point of view or reassure public opinion.</p> <p>b. ISR assets deployed along roads/routes, avenues of approach, and infiltration/exfiltration lanes to detect enemy/threat movement towards or out of the urban area.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>(1) Deployed layered and redundant ISR assets using sensors, attack reconnaissance aircraft, UAVs, and ground observers to gain and maintain contact with enemy/threat forces.</p> <p>(2) Coordinated indirect fires at choke points and/or situational obstacles to engage and disrupt enemy forces.</p> <p>c. Artillery units positioned to provide responsive fires and establish CFZs for shaping units.</p> <p>(1) Targeted choke points such as bridges and road junctions.</p> <p>(2) Used precision guided munitions to destroy high-payoff targets (HPT) while minimizing damage to infrastructure.</p> <p>(3) Allocated final protective fires (FPF) for reconnaissance and/or maneuver units.</p> <p>(4) Disrupted advancing enemy to separate forces and caused piecemeal commitment into the urban area.</p> <p>d. EW and non-lethal fires disrupted communications and control functions between enemy/threat forces.</p> <p>(1) Denied or impeded enemy collection efforts and situational understanding.</p> <p>(2) Impeded decisionmaking and disrupted C2 functions.</p> <p>e. For offensive operations, maneuver units protected the flanks and LOC into the urban area.</p> <p>(1) Occupied defensive positions that provided observation and fields of fire onto avenues of approach, roads/routes, and/or lanes.</p> <p>(2) Established operations and patrol subterranean routes to prevent infiltration/exfiltration.</p> <p>(3) Emplaced hasty obstacles and/or planned situational obstacles to disrupt surface and subterranean movement.</p> <p>(4) Maintained a reserve to react to or exploit enemy/threat actions such as an attempted breakout or envelopment.</p> <p>f. For defensive operations, maneuver units protected the flanks and LOC into the urban area.</p> <p>(1) Occupied defensive positions that provided observation and fields of fire onto avenues of approach and/or lanes.</p> <p>(2) Established operations and patrol subterranean routes to prevent infiltration/exfiltration.</p> <p>(3) Emplaced obstacles to disrupt or block surface and subterranean movement.</p> <p>(4) Maintained a reserve to react to or exploit enemy/threat actions such as envelopment.</p> <p>(5) Defeated enemy attempts to isolate the battalion within the urban area.</p> <p>6. The battalion conducted decisive operations according to the ROE/ROI to dominate the urban area.</p> <p>a. Attacked to defeat or destroy enemy forces.</p> <p>(1) Maneuvered to secure positions of tactical advantage and force the enemy to react and maneuver from his urban defensive positions.</p> <p>(a) Searched and attacked.</p> <p>(b) Attacked on single or multiple axis.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>(c) Cordoned and attacked.</p> <p>(d) Fixed and bypassed.</p> <p>(e) Attacked multiple nodals.</p> <p>(2) Executed lethal and non-lethal fires to accomplish EFSTs and disrupt the defense.</p> <p>(a) Used precision guided munitions (PGM) to destroy point or HPTs.</p> <p>(b) Used conventional munitions against enemy in the open.</p> <p>(c) Used non-lethal fires to disrupt communications and control functions.</p> <p>b. Defended to defeat or destroy enemy forces.</p> <p>(1) Conducted an all around area defense.</p> <p>(2) Employed measures to confine or control civilians supportive of enemy/threat forces.</p> <p>(3) Counterattacked to isolate enemy forces for destruction.</p> <p>c. Conducted stability and reconstruction operations to defeat threat efforts to control vital functions and critical infrastructure.</p> <p>7. The battalion transitioned urban area control to a civilian or military authority according to higher headquarters order.</p> <p>a. Conducted area security to protect critical infrastructure and facilities.</p> <p>b. Liaisons with civilian authorities, law enforcement agencies, and military organizations facilitated a mutual positive understanding of the transition.</p> <p>c. Deployed elements to maintain order with the civilian populace.</p> <p>d. Employed CS and CSS assets to repair critical infrastructure, performed essential services, and distributed supplies.</p> <p>e. Implemented plans to control, transport, or house refugees and displaced civilians.</p> <p>f. Liaisons integrated nongovernmental organizations into transition operations.</p> <p>g. Consolidated and reorganized for follow-on mission.</p> <p>8. Commander/leader performs or delegates performance of the steps in the risk management process for each step in troop-leading procedures (see appendix C).</p> <p>* Indicates a leader task step</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
Total Task Steps Evaluated							
Total Task Steps GO							
Training Status GO/NO-GO							

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
011-237-2012	Perform tactical flight mission planning (UH-60)	STP 1-15-219 STP 1-15-219-OS TC 1-237 STP 1-15II-500-MQS STP 1-TACOPS
011-237-2022	Transmit tactical reports (UH-60)	STP 1-15-219 STP 1-15-219-OS TC 1-237 STP 1-15II-500-MQS STP 1-TACOPS
011-510-0013	Employ air assault operations	STP 1-15 II
011-510-0020	Apply fundamentals of Army aviation in military operations in urban terrain (MOUT)	STP 1-15 II
011-510-0301	Participate in the military decision making process	STP 1-15 II

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
01-1-5134	Plan aviation operations using the military decision making process	ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-118-MTP ARTEP 1-126-MTP
01-2-0341	Perform composite risk management procedures	ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-126-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** COMMAND SECTION  
 BATTALION  
 EXECUTIVE OFFICER  
 S3 SECTION

**TASK: Direct Deployment/Redeployment Operations (01-1-0345)**  
 (FM 100-17) (FM 3-04.126) (FM 1-113)  
 (FM 1-100) (FM 3-04.111) (FM 3-100.12)  
 (FM 3-100.4) (FM 4-01.011) (FM 7-0)  
 (FM 7-1)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The battalion is conducting assigned missions in a simulated (live, virtual, or constructive) combat environment. The battalion's main command post is operational and the staff and digital systems are functional. The battalion is conducting operations independently or as part of a higher headquarters and has received an operation order (OPORD). Command deployment/redeployment activities have commenced. The command is located in the home station unit assembly area (UAA) or redeployment assembly area (RAA) and the emergency operations center (EOC)/command post (CP) is established. The gaining overseas command has provided a deployment on message indicating ultimate destination and deployability criteria. The redeployment standing operating procedures (RSOP), movement plan/order, and tactical standing operating procedures (TACSOPs) are available. The battalion headquarters communicates with the installation EOC, installation transportation officer (ITO), the appropriate headquarters supporting organizations, subordinate units, and rear detachment by radio, telephone, electronic means, and courier. This task should not be trained in mission-oriented protective posture level 4 (MOPP4).

**TASK STANDARDS:** The executive officer (XO) planned and implemented deployment/redeployment operations according to RSOP, movement plan/order, and commander's guidance.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>1. Commander directs deployment/redeployment operations.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Identified deployment/redeployment mission requirements by reviewing warning order (WARNO) and appropriate contingency plans (CONPLANS).</li> <li>b. Provided initial planning guidance to staff and subordinate units.</li> <li>c. Directed S1 to coordinate deployment/redeployment processing.</li> <li>d. Directed personnel and equipment cross-leveling actions.</li> <li>e. Submitted recommendations to appropriate headquarters commander that selected personnel attending formal school be allowed to complete course work, if appropriate (deployment only).</li> <li>f. Directed recall of personnel on temporary duty (TDY), attending school, or in authorized leave status, if appropriate (deployment only).</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>g. Directed S2/3 to issue deployment/redeployment WARNO and movement plan/order.</li> <li>h. Directed implementation of physical security and operations security (OPSEC) plans.</li> <li>i. Briefed staff and subordinate units on deployment/redeployment mission according to AR 200-1.</li> <li>j. Conducted overseas orientation.</li> <li>k. Verified subordinate commanders clear installation prior to deployment.</li> <li>l. Conducted periodic in-process reviews to monitor preparations for deployment, issue and exchange detailed guidance, refine movement plans, resolve issues, and coordinate support for the deployment.</li> <li>m. Identified liaison to higher headquarters, as required.</li> </ul> <p>2. XO supervised staff activities.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Implemented commander's directives in staff planning and policy making.</li> <li>b. Assigned staff responsibilities for updating movement plan/order.</li> <li>c. Directed staff sections to provide personnel for deployment/redeployment teams (for example advance party, maintenance support teams [MSTs], and rear detachment).</li> <li>d. Directed staff sections to provide input for movement plan/order update.</li> <li>e. Formulated staff operation policies.</li> <li>f. Monitored all staff actions for conformity to commander's guidance.</li> <li>g. Coordinated deployment/redeployment missing with subordinate unit commanders.</li> <li>h. Supervised the operations of the EOC/CP.</li> </ul> <p>3. Staff officers supervise staff sections.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Identified all specified and implied tasks that must be accomplished in order to deploy/redeploy by reviewing the movement directive, RSOP, movement plan/order, OPLAN/CONPLANS, and commander's guidance.</li> <li>b. Exchanged pertinent information that is relevant to the deployment/redeployment with other staff sections.</li> <li>c. Provided information update(s) to commander and EOC/CP on areas that are critical to the deployment/redeployment mission.</li> <li>d. Directed preparation of input to the S2/3 section for the update of plans, orders, and commander's overseas orientation, as required.</li> <li>e. Provided personnel for deployment/redeployment teams, as required.</li> <li>f. Forwarded deployment/redeployment status reports to appropriate headquarters and addressees, as required.</li> <li>g. Forwarded personnel and logistics reports according to higher headquarters guidance.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>4. Command section supervises activities of subordinate units.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Monitored performance of subordinate elements to ensure required level of proficiency a prescribed in RSOP, plans, directives, and the TACSOP.</li> <li>b. Monitored external support to determine overall effectiveness according to RSOP.</li> <li>c. Assigned specific tasks to subordinate units, as required.</li> <li>d. Monitored implementation of decisions, directives, and instructions to determine subordinate units' compliance.</li> <li>e. Issued fragmentary orders (FRAGOs) to implement changes to the movement plan/order and annexes, as required.</li> </ul> <p>5. Commander and/or XO supervise rear detachment activities.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Appointed rear detachment commander.</li> <li>b. Approved rear detachment staffing.</li> <li>c. Approved rear detachment plan.</li> <li>d. Monitored rear detachment activities for compliance with rear detachment plan.</li> </ul> <p>6. S1 section performs deployment activities.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Coordinated public affairs office (PAO) briefings for deploying units.</li> <li>b. Verified appropriate standard installation/division personnel system (SIDPERS) transactions are inputted for all deploying Soldiers once Soldiers have completed deployment/redeployment processing.</li> <li>c. Coordinated with legal representatives on pending legal actions for deploying Soldiers.</li> <li>d. Completed legal actions, as directed by commander.</li> </ul> <p>7. Staff sections perform readiness activities.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Identified readiness shortfalls of subordinate units based on current unit status reports (USRs).</li> <li>b. Evaluated subordinate unit's ability to perform mission requirements based on USRs and other status reports required by higher headquarters.</li> <li>c. Developed plan to correct deficiencies to bring subordinate units to deployment standards.</li> <li>d. Backed up all automated systems prior to systems being prepared for movement.</li> <li>e. Briefed commander on readiness activities and status of subordinate units.</li> </ul> <p>8. The XO supervises risk-management integration across the entire staff according to the responsibilities and standards in appendix C.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
<i>ITERATION</i>	<i>1</i>	<i>2</i>	<i>3</i>	<i>4</i>	<i>5</i>		<i>TOTAL</i>
Total Task Steps Evaluated							
Total Task Steps GO							
Training Status GO/NO-GO							

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
011-420-0028	Plan aviation deployment	MOS W 153D 3 MOS W 152H 3
011-501-0012	Coordinate aviation deployment	STP 1-15 I STP 1-15II-500-MQS
011-510-0301	Participate in the military decision making process	STP 1-15 II

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
01-1-5134	Plan aviation operations using the military decision making process	ARTEP 1-113-MTP  ARTEP 1-118-MTP ARTEP 1-126-MTP
01-2-0341	Perform composite risk management procedures	ARTEP 1-113-MTP  ARTEP 1-126-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**



**ELEMENTS:** COMMAND SECTION  
S3 SECTION

**TASK: Conduct Quick Reaction Force Planning Operations (01-1-5125)**  
 (FM 1-100) (FM 1-113) (FM 3-0)  
 (FM 3-04.111) (FM 3-04.126) (FM 3-06)  
 (FM 3-07) (FM 3-100.12) (FM 7-0)  
 (FM 7-1)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The battalion is conducting assigned missions in a simulated (live, virtual, or constructive) combat environment. The battalion tactical operations center (TOC) is operational and the staff sections and digital systems are functional. The staff and companies have received the commander’s guidance directing it to conduct quick reaction force (QRF) planning operations. The battalion is conducting operations as part of a higher headquarters and has received an operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) to defend its assigned sector. The order requires the battalion commander to designate a QRF. All necessary personnel and equipment are available. The battalion has vertical/horizontal communications with higher, adjacent, and subordinate elements. The battalion has been provided guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task should be conducted during limited visibility. Some iterations of this task should be performed in mission-oriented protective posture level 4 (MOPP4).

**TASK STANDARDS:** The battalion conducted QRF planning operations according to the tactical standing operating procedures (TACOP), the order, and or higher commander’s guidance. The unit integrated digital systems as appropriate and did not rely on conventional methods as the primary means of execution. The staff issued the OPORD/FRAGO in a timely manner. The QRF deployed within the specified time frame. The QRF maintained security at all times. Fratricide did not occur. The battalion commander designated the QRF, gave them a “be prepared” mission, and committed the QRF at the decisive place and time. The battalion complied with the ROE and ROI.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p><b>*1.</b> Commanders, S3 section, leaders and staff gain and or maintain situational understanding using information that is gathered from Force XXI Battle Command Brigade and Below (FBCB2) (if applicable), frequency modulated (FM) communications, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and or other available information sources.</p> <p><b>*2.</b> Commander receives an OPORD or FRAGO and issues warning order (WARNO) to the staff and subordinate companies using FBCB2, FM, or other tactical means.</p> <p><b>*3.</b> Commander and staff plan QRF operations using troop-leading procedures.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>a.</b> Conducted analysis based on factors of mission, enemy, terrain and weather, troops and support available, time available, and civil considerations (METT-TC).</li> <li><b>b.</b> Designated the main effort and supporting efforts.</li> <li><b>c.</b> Planned and coordinated indirect fire and or close air support, if available.</li> <li><b>d.</b> Identified direct fir responsibilities.</li> <li><b>e.</b> Planned and coordinated combat service support (CSS).</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>f. Organized the company as necessary to accomplish the mission and or compensated for combat losses.</p> <p>g. Addressed actions on chance contact with the enemy.</p> <p>h. Coordinated and synchronized activities within each warfighting function.</p> <p>i. Considered enemy capabilities, likely courses of action (COA), and specific weapons capabilities.</p> <p>*4. Staff disseminates digital reports (if applicable), overlays, and other pertinent information to each company and section to keep them abreast of the situation.</p> <p>*5. Commander issues orders and instructions to include ROE and ROI.</p> <p>*6. Battalion elements conduct a rehearsal.</p> <p>*7. S3 issues a FRAGO, as necessary, to address changes to the plan identified during the rehearsal.</p> <p>*8. Commander directs the executive officer (XO) and S3 to position QRF at a location where they can execute their mission in the priority that they were directed for planning.</p> <p>*9. Commander directs the XO and S3 to coordinate and or synchronize actions of the QRF force and other company elements.</p> <p>*10. Commander directs the XO and S3 to commit the QRF at the decisive place and time to:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Exploited success.</li> <li>b. Reinforce or maintain the momentum.</li> <li>c. Deal with enemy counterattacks.</li> <li>d. Provide security.</li> <li>e. Preserve the commander's flexibility.</li> <li>f. Conduct counterattack.</li> </ul> <hr/> <p><b>Note.</b> When the QRF conducts the counterattack, it normally becomes the main effort and is given priority of fires.</p> <hr/> <p>*11. Commander directs the XO and S3 to commit QRF for counterattack.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Notified higher headquarters commander immediately.</li> <li>b. Designated another QRF force.</li> </ul> <p>*12. QRF conducts counterattack.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Avoided friendly positions.</li> <li>b. Made a quick decisive assault.</li> <li>c. Cleared the penetrated area.</li> </ul> <p>*13. Battalion consolidates and reorganizes as necessary.</p> <p>*14. Battalion secures enemy prisoners of war (EPW), as required.</p> <p>*15. Battalion treats and evacuates casualties.</p> <p>*16. Battalion processes captured documents and or equipment as required.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
*17. Battalion continues operations as directed.		
*18. Commander/leader performs or delegates performance of the steps in the risk management process for each step in troop-leading procedures (see appendix C).		
* Indicates a leader task step		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
Total Task Steps Evaluated							
Total Task Steps GO							
Training Status GO/NO-GO							

### SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
011-237-2000	Perform FM radio homing (UH-60)	STP 1-15-219 STP 1-15-219-OS TC 1-237 STP 1-15II-500-MQS
011-237-2010	Perform multi-aircraft operations (UH-60)	STP 1-TACOPS STP 1-15-219 STP 1-15-219-OS TC 1-237 STP 1-15II-500-MQS
011-237-2012	Perform tactical flight mission planning (UH-60)	STP 1-TACOPS STP 1-15-219  STP 1-15-219-OS TC 1-237 STP 1-15II-500-MQS
011-510-0003	Employ mobility/counter-mobility/survivability	STP 1-TACOPS
011-510-0004	Employ combat service support	STP 1-15 II
011-510-0005	Employ air defense	STP 1-15 II
011-510-0007	Employ aviation in offensive operations	STP 1-15 II
011-510-0008	Employ aviation in defensive operations	STP 1-15 II
011-510-0013	Employ air assault operations	STP 1-15 II
011-510-0303	Conduct operations missions briefing/debriefing	STP 1-15 II

### SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
01-1-5134	Plan aviation operations using the military decision making process	ARTEP 1-113-MTP  ARTEP 1-118-MTP ARTEP 1-126-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** COMMAND SECTION  
 BATTALION  
 HHC, ASSAULT BATTALION  
 ASSAULT COMPANY

**TASK: Conduct Battalion Air Assault Operations (01-1-5130)**

(FM 1-113)	(FM 1-100)	(FM 3-0)
(FM 3-04.111)	(FM 3-04.126)	(FM 3-04.300)
(FM 3-100.12)	(FM 4-0)	(FM 7-0)
(FM 7-1)	(FM 71-100-3)	(FM 90-4)
(TC 1-201)	(TC 1-210)	(TC 1-237)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The battalion is in a simulated (live, virtual, or constructive) combat environment. The unit has received an operation order (OPORD)/fragmentary order (FRAGO) and the commander's guidance. The main command post (CP) is operational. The staff sections, digital and or analog systems, are functioning. Reports are being received through normal channels. The battalion is conducting a movement of friendly assault forces (combat, combat support [CS], and combat service support [CSS] ) by rotary-wing aircraft to engage and destroy enemy forces or to seize and hold key terrain. Some iterations of this task should be performed in mission-oriented protective posture level 4 (MOPP4).

**TASK STANDARDS:** The battalion conducted the air assault mission within the time constraints specified in the OPORD/FRAGO. Operation accomplishment was enhanced by careful planning involving the mission requirements received by the S3 section and the detailed CS and CSS planning conducted by the S4 section. Air assault planning began when the aviation unit received a warning order (WARNO) from higher headquarters for the upcoming air assault mission. The WARNO specified the air assault task force commander (AATFC) and task organization. The aviation commander dispatched an liaison officer (LNO) to the air assault task force (AATF) headquarters early in the planning phase. Other WARNOS and FRAGOs follow as the AATF staff and commander work through the reverse planning sequences. Proper tactics, techniques, and procedures were enforced.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p><b>Note.</b> Refer to tasks 01-2-5160, Perform troop-leading procedures; and 01-1-5134, Plan aviation operation using the military decision making process (MDMP), for more details.</p> <hr/> <p>*1. The commander and staff gained and/or maintained situational understanding using information gathered from Force XXI Battle Command Brigade and Below (FBCB2), frequency modulated (FM), digital and or analog communications systems, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources.</p> <p>*2. The warning order is received from the AATF. The commander conducts troop-leading procedures and the staff initiates the MDMP.</p> <p>*3. The battalion provided a LNO to the AATF.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p><b>*4.</b> The battalion conducted mission analysis and issues a warning order to the subordinate elements.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Conducted task organization (required number of aircraft and command and control [C2] relationships).</li> <li>b. Conducted fighter management cycles.</li> <li>c. Proposed timelines.</li> <li>d. Parallel planned responsibilities for subordinate companies [conducted terrain analysis on proposed flight routes and pickup zone (PZ)/landing zone (LZ)]. Analyzed route timing.</li> </ul> <p><b>*5.</b> The air mission commander and representatives attend the initial planning conference (IPC). Reviews the liaison officer's coordination to include—</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Coordinated with required attendees: Air mission commander/aviation S3, aviation S2, assault helicopter, attack reconnaissance commander, and flight leads.</li> <li>b. Coordinated the number of aircraft available, as well as passenger and cargo capabilities.</li> <li>c. Coordinated the staging, loading, air movement, landing plans, and ground tactical plans.</li> <li>d. Coordinated the air movement tables and load tables.</li> <li>e. Coordinated the LZ/PZ selection and preparation.</li> <li>f. Coordinated the primary/alternate flight routes.</li> <li>g. Conducted airspace coordination.</li> <li>h. Conducted a security plan.</li> <li>i. Coordinated a fire support plan.</li> <li>j. Coordinated a C2 plan.</li> </ul> <p><b>*6.</b> The staff analyzes the course of action (COA), war games, and finalizes the air movement plan.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Verified route times as submitted by the flight companies. Ensured AATF fire support officer (FSO) has accurate flight times for suppression of enemy air defense (SEAD) scheduling.</li> <li>b. Ensured suitability of all LZ/PZs.</li> <li>c. Determined refuel requirements and position forward arming and refueling point (FARP) assets as required.</li> <li>d. Submitted required graphics and army airspace command and control (A2C2) control measures to AATF.</li> </ul> <p><b>*7.</b> The air mission commander and representatives attends the air mission brief (AMB) and the AATF rehearsal.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Verified ground tactical plan.</li> <li>b. Finalized landing plan.</li> <li>c. Finalized air assault mission plan.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>d. Finalized loading plan.</p> <p>e. Finalized staging plan.</p> <p>*8. The air mission commander and representatives completes the plan and issue the aviation OPORD. Ensures OPORD is synchronized within subordinate company fighter management cycles.</p> <p>*9. Air mission commander and representatives conduct aviation rehearsal. Ensures rehearsal is synchronized within subordinate company fighter management cycles.</p> <p>*10. The air mission commander and representatives control the air assault operation.</p> <p>a. Designated a flight lead, serial commanders, if required.</p> <p>b. Interacted with the AATF commander directly on all aviation matters relating to the air assault.</p> <p>c. Provided information to the AATF LNO.</p> <p>*11. The air mission commander and representatives integrate the planning of air assault missions/operations.</p> <p>a. Coordinated night operations, multiple false insertions, and multiple LZs, and PZs.</p> <p>b. Planned extensively on the SEAD and route.</p> <p>c. Coordinated with the attack reconnaissance aircraft and close air support (CAS)/air interdictions that provided assault force security en route and at the objective.</p> <hr/> <p><b>Note.</b> FM 3-03.113 states that air assault operations are the movement of assault forces (combat, CS, and CSS) using the firepower, mobility, and total integration of helicopter assets, to engage and destroy enemy forces or to seize and hold key terrain. It allows friendly forces to strike over extended distances and terrain barriers to attack the enemy when and where the is most vulnerable using speed and surprise as its main weapon. Air assault missions/operations can include team insertion, fast rope insertion and extraction system (FRIES) and special patrol infiltration/exfiltration system (SPIES) operations, and artillery raids.</p> <hr/> <p>12. An air assault task force is formed with the combined arms elements conducting an air assault.</p> <p>a. The AATF commander was generally the ground battalion or brigade commander.</p> <p>b. The AATF commander's staff was responsible for planning much of the air assault in conjunction with the aviation LNO, aviation unit staff, and air mission commander.</p> <p>13. The AATFC commands assault elements and is responsible for assault planning and execution.</p> <p>a. The AATFC commanded the unit one echelon above the assaulting unit.</p> <p>b. The AATFC located in a C2 aircraft in order to maintain positive control.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p><b>14.</b> Air assault operations routinely involve night operations, multiple false insertions, and multiple LZs and PZs.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. SEAD and route planning were extensive.</li> <li>b. Attack reconnaissance aircraft and CAS/air interdiction often provided assault force security en route and at the objective.</li> </ul> <p><b>15.</b> Army aviation can be integrated with other members of the combined arms team to form powerful and flexible air assault task forces that can project combat power throughout the entire depth, width, and breadth of the modern battlefield with little regard for terrain barriers.</p> <p><b>16.</b> The versatility and strength of an air assault task force is achieved by combining the capabilities of modern rotary-wing aircraft (speed, agility, and firepower) with those of the infantry and other combat arms to form tactically tailored air assault task forces that can be employed in low-, mid-, and high-intensity environments.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Air assault operations, when properly planned and vigorously executed, allowed commanders to apply the four basic tenets and 10 combat imperatives of the airland battle doctrine (FM 3-0).</li> <li>b. An air assault task force extended the commander's area of operation, enabling him to execute airland battle doctrine in areas ranging beyond the capability of more conventional forces.</li> </ul> <p><b>*17.</b> Commander/leader performs or delegates performance of the steps in the risk management process for each step in troop-leading procedures (see appendix C).</p> <hr/> <p><b>Note.</b> FM 90-4 states that air assault operations are those in which assault forces (combat, combat support, and combat service support), using the firepower, mobility, and total integration of helicopter assets, maneuver on the battlefield under the control of the ground or air maneuver commander to engage and destroy enemy forces or to seize and hold key terrain. Air assault operations are not merely movements of Soldiers, weapons, and materiel by Army aviation units and must not be construed as such. They are deliberate, precisely planned, and vigorously executed combat operations designed to allow friendly forces to strike over extended distances and terrain barriers to attack the enemy when and where the enemy is most vulnerable.</p> <hr/> <p>* Indicates a leader task step</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
Total Task Steps Evaluated							
Total Task Steps GO							
Training Status GO/NO-GO							

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
011-237-2010	Perform multi-aircraft operations (UH-60)	TC 1-237 STP 1-TACOPS
011-237-2012	Perform tactical flight mission planning (UH-60)	TC 1-237
011-501-0003	Plan air assault operations	STP 1-TACOPS STP 1-15 I

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
011-510-0013	Employ air assault operations	STP 1-15II-500-MQS STP 1-15 II
011-510-0021	Employ fundamentals of army operations	STP 1-15 II

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
01-1-5131	Conduct battalion air movement operations	ARTEP 1-113-MTP
01-1-5134	Plan aviation operations using the military decision making process	ARTEP 1-113-MTP  ARTEP 1-118-MTP ARTEP 1-126-MTP
01-1-5151	Plan aviation air assault operations (UH-60)	ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-118-MTP
01-2-5218	Perform air assault operations	ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-118-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**



- ELEMENTS:** COMMAND SECTION  
 TACTICAL CP  
 BATTALION  
 HHC, ASSAULT BATTALION  
 ASSAULT COMPANY

**TASK: Conduct Battalion Air Movement Operations (01-1-5131)**

- |               |               |               |
|---------------|---------------|---------------|
| (TC 1-210)    | (FM 1-100)    | (FM 1-113)    |
| (FM 3-0)      | (FM 3-04.111) | (FM 3-04.300) |
| (FM 3-100.12) | (FM 4-0)      | (FM 7-0)      |
| (FM 7-1)      | (FM 90-4)     | (TC 1-201)    |
| (TC 1-237)    |               |               |

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The battalion is in a simulated (live, virtual, or constructive) combat environment. The staff has received an operation order (OPORD)/fragmentary order (FRAGO) and the commander's guidance. The main CP is operational and the staff sections, digital and or analog, are functioning. The unit has received a mission to move troops, equipment, personnel, supplies, command and control (C2) support, liaison officer (LNO) movement, visual information processor (VIP) support, aerial delivery of mines, aircraft recovery and casualty evacuation (CASEVAC). Necessary coordination for the type and number of aircraft has been accomplished. Other coordination may be necessary. Some iterations of this task should be performed in mission-oriented protective posture level 4 (MOPP4).

**TASK STANDARDS:** Properly equipped aircraft arrived at the pickup zone (PZ) within the time constraints specified in the OPORD/FRAGO. All equipment, supplies, and personnel were transported according to the commander's scheme of maneuver. This task is similar to the task Conduct air assault operations but requires less detailed planning since the operation is conducted not in contact with the enemy. It is planned using the 5 steps of the reverse planning sequence.

**Note.** Refer to tasks; Perform troop-leading procedures, 01-2-5160 and Plan aviation operation using the military decision making process (MDMP), 01-1-5134.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>*1. The commander and staff gained and/or maintained situational understanding using information gathered from Force XXI Battle Command Brigade and Below (FBCB2), frequency modulated (FM), digital and or analog communications systems, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources.</p> <p>*2. The warning order is received from the brigade combat team (BCT). The commander conducts troop-leading procedures and the staff initiates the MDMP.</p> <p>*3. The battalion provides a LNO to the supported unit.</p> <p>*4. The battalion conducts mission analysis and issues a warning order to the subordinate elements.</p> <p>a. Conducted task organization (required number of aircraft and C2 relationships).</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>b. Conducted fighter management cycles.</p> <p>c. Proposed timelines.</p> <p>d. Parallel planned responsibilities for subordinate companies (conducted terrain analysis on proposed flight routes and PZ/LZs).</p> <p>*5. The battalion conducts special coordination for air movements, as required.</p> <p>a. Attended briefings and rehearsals of the supported unit to understand the concept of the air movement mission/operation.</p> <p>b. Coordinated with necessary agencies regarding personnel, aircraft configuration, and equipment requirements for mission.</p> <p>c. The battalion conducts air movement to transport units, personnel, supplies, and equipment including airdrops and air landings. Air movement operations Include:</p> <p>(1) Conducted C2 support.</p> <p>(2) Conducted LNO movement.</p> <p>(3) Conducted message delivery.</p> <p>(4) Conducted VIP support.</p> <p>(5) Conducted aerial delivery of mines.</p> <p>(6) Conducted chemical, biological, radiological, and nuclear (CBRN) surveys.</p> <p>(7) Conducted Aerial sustainment.</p> <p>(8) Conducted aerial sustainment.</p> <p>(9) Conducted aircraft recovery.</p> <p>(10)Conducted CASEVAC.</p> <p>*6. Battalion air movement operations also pertains to operations designed to emplace artillery pieces and to transport ammunition and fuel. (Operations were not conducted in direct contact with the enemy, and did not include other members of the combined arms team.)</p> <hr/> <p><b>Note.</b> Air movement operations involve the use of army airlift assets for other than air assault.</p> <hr/> <p>*7. The staff analyzes the course of action (COA), war games, and develops the aviation plan using the 5 phases of air movement planning.</p> <p>a. Supported the unit ground tactical plan—staff ensured that the supported unit’s mission was understood and that the aviation’s scheme of maneuver accomplished that mission.</p> <p>b. Landing plan—staff coordinated for the grid location, landing direction, frequency, call sign, and marking of each LZ.</p> <p>c. Air movement plan—</p> <p>(1) Staff developed a series of primary and alternate air corridors, used the company’s route analysis that did not conflict with the BCT fire support plan and that avoided threat interdiction.</p> <p>(2) Staff submitted required graphics and Army airspace command and control (A2C2) control measures to the BCT.</p> <p>(3) Staff developed air movement table, if required.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>d. Loading plan—staff coordinated for the grid location, landing direction, frequency, call sign and proposed loads of each PZ.</p> <p>e. Staging plan—staff determined the number of aircraft required to accomplish mission, the aircraft configurations required, and the necessary timelines to accomplish the supported unit’s mission. Staff determined the refuel requirements and positions for the forward arming and refueling point (FARP).</p> <p>*8. The air mission commander and representatives attend supported unit OPORD brief and combat service support (CSS) rehearsals.</p> <p>a. Verified the supported unit’s concept of support.</p> <p>b. Finalized landing plan.</p> <p>c. Briefed the air movement plan to the supported unit.</p> <p>d. Finalized loading plan.</p> <p>e. Finalized staging plan.</p> <p>*9. The commander/team leader completes the plan and issues the aviation OPORD ensuring OPORDs are synchronized within subordinate company fighter management cycles.</p> <p>*10. The air mission commander and representatives conduct aviation rehearsals ensuring that rehearsals are synchronized within subordinate company fighter management cycles.</p> <p>*11. The commander controls the aircraft during execution of operation.</p> <p>a. Analyzed enemy situation and revised the air movement plan accordingly.</p> <p>b. Maintained situational awareness of all aircraft during their mission execution.</p> <p>c. Interacted with the supported unit commander directly on all aviation matters relating to the air movement.</p> <p>d. Activated and deactivated air corridors as required through the BCT to facilitate the air movement plan.</p> <p>*12. Commander/leader performs or delegates performance of the steps in the risk management process for each step in troop-leading procedures (see appendix C).</p> <p>* Indicates a leader task step</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
Total Task Steps Evaluated							
Total Task Steps GO							
Training Status GO/NO-GO							

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
011-237-2010	Perform multi-aircraft operations (UH-60)	TC 1-237
011-237-2012	Perform tactical flight mission planning (UH-60)	STP 1-TACOPS
		TC 1-237
		STP 1-TACOPS

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
011-237-2022	Transmit tactical reports (UH-60)	TC 1-237 STP 1-TACOPS
011-510-0011	Integrate fundamentals of air-ground operations	STP 1-15 II
011-510-0301	Participate in the military decision making process	STP 1-15 II

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
01-1-5130	Conduct battalion air assault operations	ARTEP 1-113-MTP
01-1-5132	Provide combat support and combat service support	ARTEP 1-113-MTP
01-1-5133	Conduct aerial reconnaissance and surveillance/observation operations	ARTEP 1-113-MTP
01-1-5134	Plan aviation operations using the military decision making process	ARTEP 1-113-MTP  ARTEP 1-118-MTP ARTEP 1-126-MTP ARTEP 1-113-MTP
01-1-5136	Coordinate aviation psychological operations	ARTEP 1-113-MTP
01-1-5152	Plan aviation air movement operations (UH-60)	ARTEP 1-113-MTP
01-1-5166	Employ automated mission planning systems	ARTEP 1-118-MTP ARTEP 1-113-MTP
01-2-5103	Perform air movement procedures (UH-60)	ARTEP 1-118-MTP ARTEP 1-126-MTP ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-118-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** COMMAND SECTION  
 TACTICAL CP  
 BATTALION

**TASK: Conduct Aerial Reconnaissance and Surveillance/Observation Operations (01-1-5133)**

(TC 1-210)	(AR 95-1)	(FM 1-113)
(FM 1-100)	(FM 3-04.111)	(FM 3-04.300)
(FM 3-100.12)	(FM 3-100.4)	(FM 7-1)
(FM 90-4)	(TC 1-201)	(TC 1-237)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The battalion is conducting assigned missions in a simulated (live, virtual, or constructive) combat environment. The battalion is operational and the staff sections, digital and/or analog systems, are functional. The unit has received mission requirements and the commander's guidance directing it to conduct reconnaissance and surveillance/observation operations. Reconnaissance and surveillance/observation operations could include zone, area, route, rear area reconnaissance and surveillance/observation operations. Battalion elements were employed to verify unit locations or even their existence. Some iterations of this task should be performed in mission-oriented protective posture level 4 (MOPP4).

**TASK STANDARDS:** The battalion conduct aerial reconnaissance and surveillance/observation measures according to the tactical standing operating procedures (TACSOP) and the commander's guidance. The unit conducts the mission, as briefed in the warning order (WARNO)/operation order (OPORD). Unit must use correct visual search techniques. Accurately identify the target. Accurately locate the position of the target. Without error, transmit tactical report.

---

**Note.** Security missions could include air assault, convoy/route and can be incorporated into rear area reconnaissance and surveillance/observation operations. Can refer to UH-60 ATM task 2040, Perform aerial observation.

---

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>*1. The commander and staff gained and/or maintained situational understanding using information gathered from Force XXI Battle Command Brigade and Below (FBCB2), frequency modulated (FM), digital and or analog communications systems, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources.</p> <p>*2. The unit receives mission requirements and the commander's guidance to perform aerial reconnaissance and surveillance/observation operations.</p> <hr/> <p><b>Note.</b> Aerial reconnaissance, as stated in FM 1-113, states that Battalion may be employed to verify unit locations or even their existence. (For example, if the higher headquarters commander loses communications with a subordinate unit, that commander may ask the battalion commander to verify the unit's location and status.)</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p><b>3.</b> The assault battalion conducts troop-leading procedures and the staff initiates the military decisionmaking process (MDMP).</p> <p><b>*4.</b> The assault battalion plans the mission.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Obtained special equipment if required.</li> <li>b. Prepared aircraft.</li> <li>c. Establish takeoff time to allow for arrival into operational area at specified time.</li> <li>d. Identified and located recommended routes.</li> <li>e. Selected and briefed personnel.</li> <li>f. Designated areas of operations for teams.</li> <li>g. Considered effects of enemy and weather.</li> <li>h. Conducted map reconnaissance of routes.</li> <li>i. Obtained airspace update prior to departure.</li> </ul> <p><b>*5.</b> The assault battalion must use proper flight movements and techniques.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Used covered and concealed routes when possible.</li> <li>b. Avoided known or suspected enemy locations except to observe.</li> </ul> <p><b>*6.</b> The assault battalion conducts reconnaissance/surveillance/observation.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Conducted reconnaissance of all routes in the area.</li> <li>b. Determined all natural features of the terrain.</li> <li>c. Determined all man made features of the terrain.</li> <li>d. Determined the enemy situation.</li> <li>e. Conducted surveillance of enemy locations. Used proper flight movements and techniques.</li> </ul> <p><b>*7.</b> The assault battalion reports critical information.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Reported information requested by the supported unit.</li> <li>b. Reported information as specified during mission briefing by radio, message drop, or prearranged signals.</li> </ul> <p><b>*8.</b> The commander or air mission commander conducts mission debriefing.</p> <p><b>*9.</b> Commander/leader performs or delegates performance of the steps in the risk management process for each step in troop-leading procedures (see appendix C).</p> <p>* Indicates a leader task step</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
Total Task Steps Evaluated							
Total Task Steps GO							
Training Status GO/NO-GO							

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
011-237-2000	Perform FM radio homing (UH-60)	TC 1-237 STP 1-TACOPS
011-237-2010	Perform multi-aircraft operations (UH-60)	TC 1-237 STP 1-TACOPS
011-237-2012	Perform tactical flight mission planning (UH-60)	TC 1-237
011-237-2022	Transmit tactical reports (UH-60)	STP 1-TACOPS TC 1-237
011-237-2026	Perform terrain flight (UH-60)	STP 1-TACOPS TC 1-237
011-237-2098	Perform aerial radio relay (UH-60)	STP 1-TACOPS TC 1-237
011-237-2116	Perform an aerial radiological survey (UH-60)	STP 1-TACOPS TC 1-237
011-510-0011	Integrate fundamentals of air-ground operations	STP 1-TACOPS STP 1-15 II
011-510-0013	Employ air assault operations	STP 1-15 II

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
01-1-5134	Plan aviation operations using the military decision making process	ARTEP 1-113-MTP
01-2-0341	Perform composite risk management procedures	ARTEP 1-118-MTP ARTEP 1-126-MTP ARTEP 1-113-MTP
01-2-5113	Defend unit position	ARTEP 1-126-MTP ARTEP 1-113-MTP
01-2-5160	Perform troop-leading procedures	ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-126-MTP
01-2-5198	Conduct aviation mission planning/preparation	ARTEP 1-113-MTP
01-3-1353	Provide pathfinder support	ARTEP 1-126-MTP ARTEP 1-113-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** COMMAND SECTION  
S2 SECTION

**TASK: Implement Operations Security Measures (01-1-5135)**

(FM 1-100)	(FM 2-0)	(FM 1-113)
(FM 3-0)	(FM 3-04.111)	(FM 3-04.126)
(FM 3-100.12)	(FM 3-100.4)	(FM 4-0)
(FM 7-0)	(FM 7-1)	(FM 90-4)
(TC 1-210)	(TC 1-237)	

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The battalion is conducting assigned missions in a simulated (live, virtual, or constructive) combat environment. The main command post (CP) is operational, the staff sections and digital systems are functional. The S2 has received an operation order (OPORD)/fragmentary order (FRAGO) and the commander's guidance directing it to implement operations security (OPSEC) measures. The battalion's assembly area has been established. The battalion is authorized automated systems and equipment. Implementation of the support plan is conducted through digital/analog, voice and/or written means. Threat forces have gathering capabilities to collect intelligence through electronic, visual, and audio means. Lasers may be used in the area. Battalion OPSEC plans and tactical standing operating procedure (TACSOP) are available. Some iterations of this task should be performed in mission-oriented protective posture level 4 (MOPP4).

**TASK STANDARDS:** The S2 provided guidance to implement OPSEC measures according to the battalions TACSOP and as result, the battalion's location was not compromised by the aggressor's usage of electronic, visual, or audio means. Tactical or operational mission accomplishment was not degraded as result of inadequate or poorly implemented OPSEC measures. The commander sent all interference reports in a timely manner and according to the TACSOP.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>*1. The S2 implements OPSEC measures.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Reviewed the S2 section's physical security plan.</li> <li>b. Formulated information security measures.</li> <li>c. Formulated signal security measures.</li> <li>d. Determined counter surveillance and counter-counter surveillance measures.</li> <li>e. Determined automated systems security.</li> </ul> <p>*2. The S2 section implements information security measures.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Controlled the distribution of all written OPORDs and annexes.</li> <li>b. Accounted for all signal operation instructions (SOI).</li> <li>c. Controlled all operational information on a need-to-know basis.</li> <li>d. Maintained all classified information and material in an authorized security container.</li> <li>e. Maintained emergency destruction instructions according to applicable regulations and the unit SOP.</li> </ul>		



TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>3. The S2 section implements signal security (SIGSEC) measures.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Transmitted mission-essential information by secure radio only.</li> <li>b. Used authentication and encryption codes specified in the SOI.</li> <li>c. Limited message transmissions to no more than 20 seconds.</li> <li>d. Reported all SIGSEC discrepancies/violations to next higher headquarters.</li> </ul> <p>4. The S2 section implements electronic protection measures.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Tuned equipment to assigned frequencies specified in the current SOI.</li> <li>b. Observed radio-silence periods, as directed.</li> <li>c. Employed anti-jamming procedures.</li> <li>d. Forwarded reports of electromagnetic interference to communications personnel within 10 minutes of the incident.</li> </ul> <p>5. The S2 section directs employment of counter-surveillance measures.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensured the employment of litter-prevention measures that kept areas free of trash, litter, or personal items.</li> <li>b. Ensured the employment of measures that prevented the creation of footpaths and vehicle tracks between elements.</li> <li>c. Ensured that radios were operated with volumes and squelches on lowest possible settings.</li> <li>d. Camouflaged vehicles, equipment, and tents.</li> <li>e. Buried cables and wires, as appropriate.</li> <li>f. Employed noise and light discipline.</li> </ul> <p>6. The S2 section implements automated systems security.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Positioned computers within an enclosure that provided controlled access.</li> <li>b. Secured all electrical facilities that supported the system.</li> <li>c. Restricted access to the computer by use of classified passwords.</li> <li>d. Controlled all logons and file access by using unique operator passwords.</li> <li>e. Changed passwords according to the unit SOP schedule or more frequently as the situation dictates.</li> <li>f. Destroyed all outdated printouts of reports and lists.</li> </ul> <p>*7. Commander/leader performs or delegates performance of the steps in the risk management process for each step in troop-leading procedures (see appendix C).</p> <p>* Indicates a leader task step</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
Total Task Steps Evaluated							
Total Task Steps GO							
Training Status GO/NO-GO							

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
011-237-2012	Perform tactical flight mission planning (UH-60)	STP 1-15-219  STP 1-15-219-OS TC 1-237 STP 1-15II-500-MQS STP 1-TACOPS
011-510-0011	Integrate fundamentals of air-ground operations	STP 1-15 II
011-510-0013	Employ air assault operations	STP 1-15 II
011-510-0018	Employ Army airspace command and control	STP 1-15 II

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
01-1-5134	Plan aviation operations using the military decision making process	ARTEP 1-113-MTP  ARTEP 1-118-MTP ARTEP 1-126-MTP
01-2-0341	Perform composite risk management procedures	ARTEP 1-113-MTP  ARTEP 1-126-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** COMMAND SECTION  
 S3 SECTION  
 HHC, ASSAULT BATTALION

**TASK: Plan Aviation Air Assault Operations (UH-60) (01-1-5151)**

(FM 90-4)	(FM 1-100)	(FM 1-113)
(FM 3-0)	(FM 3-04.111)	(FM 3-04.126)
(FM 3-04.300)	(FM 3-100.12)	(FM 71-100-3)
(TC 1-201)	(TC 1-210)	(TC 1-237)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The battalion is in a simulated (live, virtual, or constructive) combat environment. The unit has received an operation order (OPORD)/fragmentary order (FRAGO) and the commander's guidance. The battalion S3 plans all coordination of the air assault operations. The main command post (CP) is operational. The staff sections, digital and or analog systems, are functioning. Reports are being received through normal channels. Some iterations of this task should be performed in mission-oriented protective posture level 4 (MOPP4).

**TASK STANDARDS:** The battalion S3 section received the mission for the air assault with the S4 section conducting the detailed combat service support (CSS) planning. Coordination supported the planning of the air assault operations. Because proper planning was established, the air assault operations was successful within the time constraints specified in the OPORD/FRAGO. Mission accomplishment was enhanced by careful planning between the S3 and the S4 sections. The use of proper tactics, techniques, and procedures was applied.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p><b>Note.</b> Refer to tasks; Perform troop-leading procedures, 01-2-5160 and Plan aviation operation using the military decision making process (MDMP), 01-1-5134.</p> <p>*1. The commander and staff gained and/or maintained situational understanding using information gathered from Force XXI Battle Command Brigade and Below (FBCB2), frequency modulated (FM), digital and or analog communications systems, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources.</p> <p>*2. The warning order (WARNO) is received from the air assault task force (AATF). The S3 section plans the mission requirements such as conducting troop-leading procedures and the staff initiates the MDMP.</p> <p>*3. The battalion provides a liaison officer (LNO) to the AATF.</p> <p>*4. The battalion S3 section plans the operations concerning the mission analysis and issues a warning order to the subordinate elements (while the S4 section conducts the detailed planning and coordination for CSS support as needed).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. The battalion task organized (required number of aircraft and command and control [C2] relationships).</li> <li>b. The battalion determined the fighter management cycles.</li> <li>c. The battalion proposed timelines.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>d. The battalion conducted parallel planning responsibilities for subordinate companies (conducted terrain analysis on proposed flight routes and pickup zone (PZ)/landing zone (LZ). Analyzed route timing.</p> <p><b>*5.</b> Air mission commander and representatives attend the initial planning conference (IPC). This planning involves reviewing the liaison officer's responsibilities to include—</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Coordinated with required attendees: Air mission commander/aviation S3, aviation S2, assault helicopter company commander, attack helicopter company commander, cavalry troop commander, and flight leads.</li> <li>b. Coordinated the number of aircraft available, as well as passenger and cargo capabilities.</li> <li>c. Coordinated the staging, loading, air movement, landing plans, and ground tactical plans.</li> <li>d. Coordinated the air movement tables and load tables.</li> <li>e. Coordinated the LZ/PZ selection and preparation.</li> <li>f. Coordinated the primary/alternate flight routes.</li> <li>g. Conducted airspace coordination.</li> <li>h. Conducted a security plan.</li> <li>i. Coordinated a fire support plan.</li> <li>j. Coordinated a C2 plan.</li> </ul> <p><b>*6.</b> Planning of the staff involves proper analyzing of the course of action (COA), war games, and finalizes the air movement plan.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Verified route times as submitted by the flight companies. Ensured AATF fire support officer (FSO) has accurate flight times for suppression of enemy air defense (SEAD) scheduling.</li> <li>b. Ensured suitability of all LZ/PZs.</li> <li>c. Determined refuel requirements and position forward arming and refueling point (FARP) assets as required.</li> <li>d. Submitted required graphics and Army airspace command and control (A2C2) control measures to AATF.</li> </ul> <p><b>*7.</b> Planning coordination between the air mission commander, representatives attending the air mission brief (AMB), and the AATF rehearsal is of high importance.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Verified ground tactical plan.</li> <li>b. Finalized landing plan.</li> <li>c. Finalized air movement plan.</li> <li>d. Finalized loading plan.</li> <li>e. Finalized staging plan.</li> </ul> <p><b>*8.</b> The air mission commander and representatives complete the plan and issue the aviation OPORD. Ensures OPORD is synchronized within subordinate company fighter management cycles.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p><b>*9.</b> The air mission commander and representatives conduct aviation rehearsal. Ensures rehearsal is synchronized within subordinate company fighter management cycles.</p> <p><b>*10.</b> The air mission commander and representatives control the air mission.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Designated a flight lead, serial commanders, if required.</li> <li>b. Interacted with the AATF commander directly on all aviation matters relating to the air assault.</li> <li>c. Provided information to the AATF LNO.</li> </ul> <p><b>*11.</b> The air mission commander and representatives integrate the planning of aviation air assault operations.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Coordinated night operations, multiple false insertions, and multiple LZs, and PZs.</li> <li>b. Planned extensively on the SEAD and route.</li> <li>c. Coordinated with the attack reconnaissance aircraft and CAS/air interdictions that provided assault force security en route and at the objective.</li> </ul> <hr/> <p><b>Note.</b> FM 1-113 states that air assault operations are the movement of assault forces (combat, CS, and CSS) using the firepower, mobility, and total integration of helicopter assets, to engage and destroy enemy forces or to seize and hold key terrain. It allows friendly forces to strike over extended distances and terrain barriers to attack the enemy when and where the enemy is most vulnerable using speed and surprise as its main weapon. Air assault operations can include team insertion, FRIES and SPIES operations, and artillery raids.</p> <hr/> <p><b>*12.</b> Commander/leader performs or delegates performance of the steps in the risk management process for each step in troop-leading procedures (see appendix C).</p> <p>* Indicates a leader task step</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
Total Task Steps Evaluated							
Total Task Steps GO							
Training Status GO/NO-GO							

#### SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
011-237-2010	Perform multi-aircraft operations (UH-60)	TC 1-237 STP 1-TACOPS
011-237-2012	Perform tactical flight mission planning (UH-60)	TC 1-237
011-237-2026	Perform terrain flight (UH-60)	STP 1-TACOPS TC 1-237 STP 1-TACOPS
011-510-0007	Employ aviation in offensive operations	STP 1-15 II
011-510-0008	Employ aviation in defensive operations	STP 1-15 II
011-510-0013	Employ air assault operations	STP 1-15 II

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
011-510-0301	Participate in the military decision making process	STP 1-15 II

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
01-1-5134	Plan aviation operations using the military decision making process	ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-118-MTP ARTEP 1-126-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** COMMAND SECTION  
 S3 SECTION  
 TACTICAL CP  
 HHC, ASSAULT BATTALION

**TASK: Plan Aviation Air Movement Operations (UH-60) (01-1-5152)**  
 (FM 3-04.111) (FM 1-100) (FM 1-113)  
 (FM 3-04.126) (FM 3-04.300) (FM 3-100.12)  
 (FM 90-4) (TC 1-201) (TC 1-210)  
 (TC 1-237)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The battalion is in a simulated (live, virtual, or constructive) combat environment. The staff has received an operation order (OPORD)/fragmentary order (FRAGO) and the commander's guidance. The main command post (CP) is operational and the staff sections, digital and or analog, are functioning. The unit has received a mission to move troops and/or equipment. Necessary coordination for the type and number of aircraft has been accomplished. Other coordination may be necessary. Some iterations of this task should be performed in mission-oriented protective posture level 4 (MOPP4).

**TASK STANDARDS:** Properly equipped aircraft arrived at the pickup zone (PZ) within the time constraints specified in the OPORD/FRAGO. All equipment and personnel were transported according to the commander's scheme of maneuver. The S3 section successfully conducted the battalion planning of the air movement operations without major problems.

---

**Note.** Refer to tasks, perform troop-leading procedures, 01-2-5160 and Plan aviation operation using the military decision making process (MDMP), 01-1-5134.

---

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>*1. The commander and staff gained and/or maintained situational understanding using information gathered from Force XXI Battle Command Brigade and Below (FBCB2), frequency modulated (FM), digital and or analog communications systems, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources.</p> <p>*2. The warning order is received from the brigade combat team (BCT). The commander conducts troop-leading procedures and the staff initiates the MDMP. The S3 conducts planning for the air mission operation while the S4 supports detailed mission requirements involving combat service support (CSS).</p> <p>*3. The battalion provides a liaison officer (LNO) to the supported unit.</p> <p>*4. The battalion conducts mission analysis and issues a warning order to the subordinate elements.</p> <p>a. Conducted task organization (required number of aircraft and command and control [C2] relationships).</p> <p>b. Conducted fighter management cycles.</p> <p>c. Proposed timelines.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>d. Parallel planed responsibilities for subordinate companies (conducted terrain analysis on proposed flight routes and PZ/LZs [landing zones] ).</p> <p>*5. The battalion conducts special coordination, as required.</p> <p>a. Attended briefings and rehearsals of the supported unit to understand the concept of the operation.</p> <p>b. Coordinated with necessary agencies regarding personnel, aircraft configuration, and equipment requirements.</p> <p>*6. Battalion air movement operations pertain to those operations designed to move supplies, equipment, personnel, to emplace artillery pieces and to transport ammunition and fuel. (Operations were not conducted in direct contact with the enemy, and did not include other members of the combined arms team.)</p> <hr/> <p><b>Note.</b> Air movement operations are those operations involving the use of Army airlift assets for other than air assaults.</p> <hr/> <p>*7. The staff analyzes the course of action (COA), war games, and develops the aviation plan using the five phases of air movement planning.</p> <p>a. Supported unit ground tactical plan—staff ensured that the supported unit's mission was understood and that aviation's scheme of maneuver accomplished that mission.</p> <p>b. Landing plan—staff coordinated for the grid location, landing direction, frequency, call sign and marking of each LZ.</p> <p>c. Air movement plan—</p> <p>(1) Staff developed a series of primary and alternate air corridors, used the company's route analysis that did not conflict with the BCT fire support plan and that avoided threat interdiction.</p> <p>(2) Staff submitted required graphics and Army airspace command and control (A2C2) control measures to the BCT.</p> <p>(3) Staff developed air movement table, if required.</p> <p>d. Loading plan—staff coordinated for the grid location, landing direction, frequency, call sign and proposed loads of each PZ.</p> <p>e. Staging plan—staff determined the number of aircraft required to accomplish mission, the aircraft configurations required, and the necessary timelines to accomplish the supported unit's mission. Staff determined the refuel requirements and positions for the forward arming and refueling point (FARP).</p> <p>*8. The air mission commander and representatives attend the supported unit OPORD brief and CSS rehearsals.</p> <p>a. Verified the supported unit's concept of support.</p> <p>b. Finalized landing plan.</p> <p>c. Briefed the air movement plan to the supported unit.</p> <p>d. Finalized loading plan.</p> <p>e. Finalized staging plan.</p>		



TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p><b>*9.</b> The commander/team leader completes the plan and issues the aviation OPORD ensuring OPORDs are synchronized within subordinate company fighter management cycles.</p> <p><b>*10.</b> The air mission commander and representatives conduct aviation rehearsals ensuring that rehearsals are synchronized within subordinate company fighter management cycles.</p> <p><b>*11.</b> The commander controls the aircraft during execution.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>a.</b> Analyzed enemy situation and revised the air movement plan accordingly.</li> <li><b>b.</b> Maintained situational awareness of all aircraft during their mission execution.</li> <li><b>c.</b> Interacted with the supported unit commander directly on all aviation matters relating to the air movement.</li> <li><b>d.</b> Activated and deactivated air corridors as required through the BCT to facilitate the air movement plan.</li> </ul> <p><b>*12.</b> Commander/leader performs or delegates performance of the steps in the risk management process for each step in troop-leading procedures (see appendix C).</p> <p>* Indicates a leader task step</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
Total Task Steps Evaluated							
Total Task Steps GO							
Training Status GO/NO-GO							

#### SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
011-237-2010	Perform multi-aircraft operations (UH-60)	TC 1-237 STP 1-TACOPS
011-237-2012	Perform tactical flight mission planning (UH-60)	TC 1-237
011-237-2026	Perform terrain flight (UH-60)	STP 1-TACOPS TC 1-237
011-510-0004	Employ combat service support	STP 1-TACOPS
011-510-0005	Employ air defense	STP 1-15 II
011-510-0006	Employ fire support	STP 1-15 II
011-510-0007	Employ aviation in offensive operations	STP 1-15 II
011-510-0008	Employ aviation in defensive operations	STP 1-15 II
011-510-0011	Integrate fundamentals of air-ground operations	STP 1-15 II

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
01-1-5134	Plan aviation operations using the military decision making process	ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-118-MTP ARTEP 1-126-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** AVIATION SUPPORT COMPANY  
 COMMAND SECTION  
 S3 SECTION

**TASK: Plan Aviation Combat Service Support Operations (01-1-5153)**  
 (FM 3-04.111) (AR 710-2) (DA Pam 710-2-1)  
 (DA Pam 710-2-2) (FM 1-100) (FM 1-113)  
 (FM 3-0) (FM 3-04.500) (FM 3-100.12)  
 (FM 4-0) (FM 90-4) (TC 1-210)  
 (TC 1-237)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The battalion is in a simulated (live, virtual, or constructive) combat environment. The main command post (CP) is operational. The staff sections, digital and/or analog systems, are functioning. The battalion has published an operation order (OPORD)/fragmentary order (FRAGO). Combat service support (CSS) assets are available. Some iterations of this task should be performed in mission-oriented protective posture level 4 (MOPP4).

**TASK STANDARDS:** Combat operations planning and CSS planning must be done in conjunction with operational planning so that the CSS plan supports the operational plan. Mission accomplishment was enhanced by adequate coordination of the S4 section's logistics services. The S3 section plans the mission. The S3 coordinates with the S4 section, which provides logistic services that ensure continuous maneuver, combat support (CS), and CSS operations. Successful assault helicopter unit operations require timely reports that reflect the unit's CSS status.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>*1. The commander and staff gained and/or maintained situational understanding using information gathered from Force XXI Battle Command Brigade and Below (FBCB2), frequency modulated (FM), digital and or analog communications systems, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources.</p> <p>*2. The battalion S3 section plans the mission operations requirements received from higher headquarters of general support (GS) maintenance for ground systems, aviation intermediate maintenance, and supply and transport activities.</p> <p>*3. The battalion S3 section's mission and the S4 section's CSS support are inextricably linked. Sustaining the battle requires commanders and staffs to adhere to the CSS characteristics (discussed in detail in FM 3-0 and FM 4-0):</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Responsiveness. Battalion provided the right support in the right place at the right time, and met changing requirements on short notice.</li> <li>b. Simplicity. Complexity was avoided in both the planning and execution of maintenance and logistics operations. Mission orders, drills, rehearsals, and standing operating procedures (SOPs) contributed to simplicity.</li> <li>c. Economy. Battalion commander provided the most efficient support to accomplish the mission. Commander considered economy in prioritizing and allocating resources.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>d. Flexibility. Battalion commanded adapted available logistics structures and procedures to changing situations, missions, and concepts of operations.</p> <p>e. Sustainability. Sustainability was maintained continuous during all phases of campaigns and major operations.</p> <p>f. Survivability. Battalion protected support functions from destruction or degradation. Robust and redundant support contributed to survivability.</p> <p>g. Integration. Commanders and staff's integration consisted of synchronizing CSS operations with all aspects of tactical operations. Logistics units organized to execute fix forward doctrine while providing the commander the greatest possible freedom of action.</p> <p>*4. The battalion S3 plans the mission received from higher headquarters. The S4 supports this mission by providing sustainment combat forces, primarily in administrative and logistics support. The S4 planned the CSS for—</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Administrative services support.</li> <li>b. Chaplain services support.</li> <li>c. Civil affairs support.</li> <li>d. Food services support.</li> <li>e. Finance support.</li> <li>f. Legal services.</li> <li>g. Health/medical services.</li> <li>h. Explosive ordnance disposal support.</li> <li>i. Field services involving feeding, clothing, and providing personal services.</li> <li>j. Maintenance support.</li> <li>k. Supply services.</li> <li>l. Transportation.</li> </ul> <hr/> <p><b>Note.</b> The Army is currently transitioning from a supply-based CSS system, based on bulk supplies and redundancy, to a distribution-based CSS system based on speed and control. Supply procedures and policies are addressed in AR 710-2, DA Pam 710-2-1, and DA Pam 710-2-2.</p> <p>The division support command (DISCOM) and corps support command (COSCOM) provides CSS to brigades and battalions. CSS assets of the battalion normally operate in combat and field trains configurations during movement control and as determined by the factors of mission, enemy, terrain and weather, troops and support available, time available, and civil considerations (METT-TC) for smaller scale contingency (SSC), stability operations, and support operations.</p> <hr/> <p>*5. Commander/leader performs or delegates performance of the steps in the risk management process for each step in troop-leading procedures (see appendix C).</p> <p>* Indicates a leader task step</p>		

<b>TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK</b>							
<b>ITERATION</b>	<b>1</b>	<b>2</b>	<b>3</b>	<b>4</b>	<b>5</b>	<b>M</b>	<b>TOTAL</b>
Total Task Steps Evaluated							
Total Task Steps GO							
Training Status GO/NO-GO							

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
011-237-2010	Perform multi-aircraft operations (UH-60)	TC 1-237 STP 1-TACOPS
011-237-2012	Perform tactical flight mission planning (UH-60)	TC 1-237 STP 1-TACOPS
011-237-2026	Perform terrain flight (UH-60)	TC 1-237 STP 1-TACOPS
011-510-0004	Employ combat service support	STP 1-15 II
011-510-0021	Employ fundamentals of army operations	STP 1-15 II

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
01-1-5134	Plan aviation operations using the military decision making process	ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-118-MTP ARTEP 1-126-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** ASSAULT COMPANY  
COMPANY

**TASK: Perform Deployment/Redeployment Operations (01-2-0327)**

(FM 3-04.111)	(FM 1-100)	(FM 1-113)
(FM 3-04.126)	(FM 3-100.12)	(FM 3-100.4)
(FM 4-01.011)	(FM 7-0)	(FM 7-1)
(FM 71-100)	(FM 100-17)	

**ITERATION:** 1      2      3      4      5      (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T      P      U      (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The battalion is in a simulated (live, virtual, or constructive) combat environment. The battalion tactical operations center (TOC) is operational and the staff sections and digital systems are functional. The battalion is at a normal state of deployment/redeployment readiness or is conducting operations as part of a higher headquarters and receives a warning order (WARNO) to prepare for and execute a deployment/redeployment. The battalion initiates the deployment/redeployment plan according to the unit tactical standing operating procedure (TACSOP). The unit may be at home station or tactically deployed at the time of notification. The staff has received the deployment/redeployment plan and commander's guidance and is prepared to commence deployment/redeployment processing. The battalion has an approved early deployment/redeployment readiness exercise SOP. The mobilization plans (MOBPLAN), movement plans, recall plans, security plans, unit access roster, load plans, and current maps are available. A unit movement officer (UMO) from higher headquarters is available to assist. All necessary personnel and equipment are available. Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the contemporary operational environment. This task should not be trained in mission-oriented protective posture level 4 (MOPP4).

**TASK STANDARDS:** The company planned deployment or redeployment activities according to the TACSOP, the order, and or guidance from higher headquarters. The company was prepared to move to the port of embarkation (POE) at the time specified in the operation order.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>*1. The commander gained and/or maintained situational understanding using information gathered from Force XXI Battle Command Brigade and Below (FBCB2), frequency modulated (FM), digital and or analog communications systems, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources.</p> <p>*2. The company commander performs troop-leading procedures, if applicable.</p> <hr/> <p><b>Note.</b> Refer to task 01-02-5160, Perform troop-leading procedures.</p> <hr/> <p>*3. Company commander reviews company readiness status.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Reviewed automated unit equipment list (AUEL) and supporting ARTEP-MTPs.</li> <li>b. Reviewed status of company load plans and updated them, as necessary.</li> <li>c. Identified equipment shortages based on the table of organization and equipment (TOE), mobilization table of organization and equipment (MTOE), and common table of allowance (CTA).</li> <li>d. Supervised inventories of unit basic load (UBL) items.</li> <li>e. Identified required items by each class of supply.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>f. Identified company training status, requirements, and qualifications for deployment/redeployment.</p> <p>(1) Identified status of unit personnel individual weapons qualifications.</p> <p>(2) Identified status of unit's chemical, biological, radiological, and nuclear (CBRN) teams.</p> <p>(3) Identified status of driver certification.</p> <p>(4) Identified status of hazardous material (HAZMAT) certified personnel, if required.</p> <p>(5) Identified status of special equipment operation, if assigned.</p> <p>g. Reviewed personnel status (includes nondeployable personnel issues).</p> <p>h. Identified company maintenance problems affecting readiness and initiated actions to resolve them, as required.</p> <p>*4. Company commander or designated representative prepares unit for deployment/redeployment.</p> <p>a. Requested assistance from higher headquarters, as required.</p> <p>b. Updated the company's deployment/redeployment movement plan and or mobilization plan based on current mission guidance and timeline from higher headquarters.</p> <p>c. Supervised packing and loading of company equipment and supplies according to load plans.</p> <p>d. Updated his battle book, to include unit mission, organization, location of mobilization station (if required), redeployment ports information (if required), and extracts from applicable operation plan (OPLAN).</p> <p>e. Coordinated mission parameters and details with higher headquarters.</p> <p>f. Prepared, with the assistance of the company safety officer, a risk assessment of the deployment/redeployment operation.</p> <p>g. Prepared and delivered briefings to dependants and updated family assistance plans. May be completed by executive officer (XO).</p> <p>h. Requested assistance from higher headquarters to fill equipment shortages.</p> <p>i. Requested assistance from higher headquarters to fill personnel shortages.</p> <p>j. Submitted rear detachment requirements, if any.</p> <p>k. Submitted quartering party personnel requirements based on the commander's guidance.</p> <p>l. Planned for property transfer, turnover, and control procedures.</p> <p>m. Submitted names of company deployment/redeployment team members to higher headquarters, if required.</p> <p>n. Consolidated all TOE, MTOE, CTA equipment, and basic loads of supplies at loading sites based on the deployment/redeployment timelines.</p> <p>o. Ensured the company is prepared to meet deployment/redeployment validation criteria.</p> <p>p. Briefed personnel on media contact for deployment/redeployment.</p> <p>q. Briefed the company on deployment/redeployment and mission requirements.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>r. Briefed threat and rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction(ROI) for the gaining theater, if appropriate.</li> <li>s. Briefed force protection measures for each step of the deployment/redeployment process, including assembly areas (AAs) and marshalling areas (MAs), as applicable.</li> <li>t. Supervised the execution of the plan for storing equipment left behind; for example, personal property and personally owned vehicles, as appropriate.</li> <li>u. Supervised preparation and movement to the POE or port of debarkation (POD).</li> <li>v. Updated TACSOP.</li> </ul>		
<hr/> <p><b>Note.</b> Units will deploy/redeploy by rail, ground, ship, USAF aircraft, or self-deploy. Actual deployment procedures will be coordinated based upon mission and mode of deployment.</p> <hr/>		
<p><b>*5.</b> Company commander reports deployment or redeployment preparation progress according to SOP and guidance from higher headquarters.</p>		
<p><b>*6.</b> Company moves to POE or POD and conducts necessary activities.</p>		
<hr/> <p><b>Note.</b> Company may move to an assembly area or marshalling area that has been designated by higher headquarters.</p> <hr/>		
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Established security as required.</li> <li>b. Accounted for personnel and equipment.</li> <li>c. Performed preventative maintenance checks and services (PMCS) according to deployment or redeployment SOP and appropriate technical manuals (TMs), if applicable.</li> <li>d. Corrected deficiencies on vehicles, cargo, and personal gear.</li> <li>e. Cleaned vehicle and or equipment, if necessary and required.</li> <li>f. Conducted final preparation of vehicles and equipment.</li> <li>g. Adjusted vehicle and equipment fuel levels according to TMs and or guidance from unit movement officer and or higher headquarters.</li> <li>h. Corrected deficiencies on placement of placards, labels, and certification documents on hazardous material according to deployment or redeployment TACSOP, UMO, movement plan, TMs, customs, and U.S. Department of Agriculture (USDA) instructions, as required.</li> <li>i. Employed environmental stewardship procedures according to TACSOP, appropriate field manuals, and or appropriate regulations.</li> </ul>		
<p><b>*7.</b> Company commander or designated representative supervises POE or POD activities.</p>		
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensured accountability of personnel and equipment.</li> </ul>		



TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>b. Inspected shipping documents, markings, customs labels and decontamination tags on vehicles, equipment, cargo and personal gear for compliance with the deployment or redeployment movement plan and UMO's instructions.</p> <p>c. Coordinated with the UMO for assistance in correcting shipping documentation and maintenance deficiencies, as required.</p> <p>d. Monitored the inspections at customs to ensure deficiencies are corrected, as required.</p> <p>e. Inspected vehicles and cargo to ensure deficiencies noted during acceptance inspection have been corrected.</p> <p>f. Enforced safety procedures.</p> <p>g. Enforced environmental stewardship procedures.</p> <p>h. Ensured personnel report to the designated location for required briefings as appropriate.</p> <p>i. Ensured personnel embark or disembark at the designated time and in the proper order.</p> <p>*8. Company moves to designated location in the theater of operations or to home station, as appropriate.</p> <p>*9. Commander/leader performs or delegates performance of the steps in the risk management process for each step in troop-leading procedures (see appendix C).</p> <p>* Indicates a leader task step</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5		TOTAL
Total Task Steps Evaluated							
Total Task Steps GO							
Training Status GO/NO-GO							

#### SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
011-501-0012	Coordinate aviation deployment	STP 1-15 I STP 1-15II-500-MQS
011-510-0004	Employ combat service support	STP 1-15 II
011-510-0301	Participate in the military decision making process	STP 1-15 II

#### SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
01-2-0341	Perform composite risk management procedures	ARTEP 1-113-MTP
01-2-5160	Perform troop-leading procedures	ARTEP 1-126-MTP ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-126-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENT:** COMPANY

**TASK: Establish Unit Defense Measures (01-2-0328)**

(FM 3-04.111)	(FM 1-100)	(FM 1-113)
(FM 3-04.126)	(FM 3-100.4)	(FM 3-100.12)
(FM 7-0)	(FM 7-1)	(FM 71-100)

**ITERATION:** 1    2    3    4    5    M    (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T    P    U    (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The battalion is conducting assigned missions in a simulated (live, virtual, or constructive) combat environment. The main command post (CP) is operational and the staff sections and digital systems are functional. The unit has received an operation order (OPORD)/fragmentary order (FRAGO) and the commander's guidance directing it to establish unit defensive measures. The higher headquarter (HQ) OPORD with all annexes and overlays, the unit tactical standing operating procedure (TACSOP), and higher HQ TACSOP are available. Unit defense plan is available. All fighting positions, locations of obstacles, and early warning devices are selected. The battalion's forward assembly area has been established. The company is assigned to secure a sector of the battalion's assembly area. Some iterations of this task should be performed in mission-oriented protective posture level 4 (MOPP4).

**TASK STANDARDS:** The company established defensive measures and secured unit's assigned area of responsibility. Established defensive measures were in compliance with the commander's guidance and priorities disseminated in the OPORD/FRAGO. The company established security immediately and improved position during the entire period of occupation. At MOPP4, performance degradation factors increased response times.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>*1. First Sergeant (1SG) supervises set up of element defensive sector.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Assigned all personnel to primary fighting positions based on type weapon as prescribed in the defense plan.</li> <li>b. Assigned sectors of fire for each primary position as prescribed in the defense plan.</li> <li>c. Assigned alternate and supplementary positions for each primary position.</li> <li>d. Assigned sectors of fire for each supplementary position.</li> <li>e. Verified sectors of fire, range cards, aiming stakes, and possible dead space before authorizing construction of positions.</li> <li>f. Supervised construction of individual fighting positions within the element's sector.</li> <li>g. Supervised clearing of fields of fire.</li> <li>h. Supervised construction of obstacles according to the defense plan.</li> <li>i. Supervised construction of observation post/listening post (OP/LP).</li> <li>j. Supervised emplacement of expedient warning device and position barriers.</li> <li>k. Assigned personnel to unit's quick reaction force according to defense plan.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>l. Prepared defensive sector sketch showing the location and sector of fire for each weapon, all known dead space, and the location and estimated ranges to prominent terrain features within the assigned area.</li> <li>m. Submitted sector sketch to higher headquarters using analog and/or digital communications or messenger.</li> <li>n. Enforced safety procedures according to TACSOP and publications.</li> <li>o. Enforced environmental stewardship protection program procedures.</li> <li>2. Unit personnel construct primary fighting positions. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Identified position location and sector of fire as directed by unit leader.</li> <li>b. Dug an initial hasty fighting position at least ½ meter (18 to 20 inches) deep and with partially cleared fields of fire.</li> <li>c. Walked sector to determine ranges and dead space using buddy system.</li> <li>d. Improved hasty fighting position to a two-man position.</li> <li>e. Installed sector of fire stakes to identify area directed by unit leader.</li> <li>f. Prepared appropriate range card by sighting in automatic weapons, antiarmor weapons, and grenade launchers on the assigned engagement area.</li> <li>g. Dug position to fit the natural cover available at least armpit deep using dirt to build a parapet (front cover) at least 18 inches thick.</li> <li>h. Dug two trench grenade sumps, one at each end of the two-man position, and sloped toward the sumps.</li> <li>i. Completed clearing fields of fire, using foliage for camouflage.</li> <li>j. Constructed overhead and flank cover for fighting position as time permits.</li> <li>k. Camouflaged position to prevent easy detection from 35 meters.</li> <li>l. Reported completion of primary positions to the 1SG/platoon sergeant (PLT SGT).</li> <li>m. Marked alternate and supplementary positions as directed by 1SG/PLT SGT.</li> <li>n. Employed safety procedures according to TACSOP and publications.</li> <li>o. Employed environmental stewardship protection program procedures.</li> </ul> </li> <li>3. Unit personnel emplace obstacles and early warning devices. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Placed platoon early warning system (PEWS) into operation at location(s) directed by the 1SG/PLT SGT.</li> <li>b. Emplaced man-made barriers, concertina wire and field expedient devices in locations directed by 1SG/PLT SGT.</li> <li>c. Positioned trip flares and field-expedient noise devices in locations directed by the 1SG/PLT SGT.</li> <li>d. Camouflaged all obstacles and devices.</li> <li>e. Reported completion of barrier emplacements to the 1SG/PLT SGT using analog and/or digital communications or messenger.</li> <li>f. Employed safety procedures according to TACSOP and publications.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>g. Employed environmental stewardship protection program procedures.</p> <p>*4. 1SG supervises set up of defensive sector.</p> <p>a. Consolidated element defense sketches, after verification of compliance, into a unit defensive sector sketch.</p> <p>b. Briefed unit commander on unit's defensive sector sketches.</p> <p>c. Forwarded unit's defensive sector sketch to unit CP within one hour after arrival at the new site using analog and/or digital communications or messenger.</p> <p>d. Inspected unit positions to ensure structure, camouflage, and location comply with the unit defense plan and TACSOP.</p> <p>e. Verified interlocking fires, dead space, and sector of fire for key weapon positions.</p> <p>f. Inspected OP/LP and personnel for communications, camouflage, and knowledge of withdrawal route.</p> <p>g. Inspected obstacles to ensure compliance with unit defense plan and TACSOP.</p> <p>h. Reported completion of sector set up to CP using analog and/or digital communications or messenger.</p> <p>i. Enforced safety procedures according to TACSOP and publications.</p> <p>j. Enforced environmental stewardship protection program procedures.</p> <p>5. Unit personnel establish OP/LP.</p> <p>a. Positioned OP/LP within effective small arms range of unit elements.</p> <p>b. Established communications (analog and/or digital means) with nearest unit element and the CP.</p> <p>c. Camouflaged OP/LP to prevent it from being detected within 35 meters.</p> <p>d. Established withdrawal route that provides adequate cover and concealment.</p> <p>*6. Unit leaders supervise set up of the unit's defensive sector.</p> <p>a. Inspected defensive preparation to ensure compliance with the defense plan.</p> <p>b. Consolidated element sector defense sketches, after verification of compliance, into the unit sector sketch.</p> <p>c. Forwarded unit sector sketch to the battalion S2/S3 element using analog and/or digital communications or messenger.</p> <p>d. Maintained sector sketch in the CP using digital device and/or analog displays.</p> <p>e. Directed establishment of centrally located ammunition resupply and casualty collection point in the unit area.</p> <p>f. Enforced safety procedures according to TACSOP and publications.</p> <p>g. Enforced environmental stewardship protection program procedures.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p><b>*7.</b> Commander/leader performs or delegates performance of the steps in the risk management process for each step in troop-leading procedures (see appendix C).</p> <p>* Indicates a leader task step</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
Total Task Steps Evaluated							
Total Task Steps GO							
Training Status GO/NO-GO							

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
011-510-0003	Employ mobility/countermobility/survivability	STP 1-15 II
011-510-0007	Employ aviation in offensive operations	STP 1-15 II
011-510-0008	Employ aviation in defensive operations	STP 1-15 II
011-510-0013	Employ air assault operations	STP 1-15 II
011-510-0015	Employ attack helicopter operations	STP 1-15 II
011-510-0016	Employ Joint air attack team operations	STP 1-15 II
011-510-0018	Employ Army airspace command and control	STP 1-15 II
011-510-0020	Apply fundamentals of army aviation in military operations in urban terrain (MOUT)	STP 1-15 II

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
01-2-0341	Perform composite risk management procedures	ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-126-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENT:** COMPANY

**TASK: Conduct Convoy Operations (01-2-0333)**

(FM 3-04.111)

(FM 3-0)

(FM 3-100.4)

(FM 1-100)

(FM 3-04.126)

(FM 3-100.12)

(FM 1-113)

(FM 3-06)

(FM 55-30)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The battalion is conducting assigned missions in a simulated (live, virtual, or constructive) combat environment. The battalion tactical operations center (TOC) is operational and the staff sections and digital systems are functional. The unit has received mission requirements and the commander's guidance directing it to conduct movement of unit's ground assets. The organization has received the movement order. All equipment is uploaded and vehicles are positioned for departure. The route for convoy is identified. The companies have been organized and inspected for movement. The convoy may go through an urban area. The higher headquarters (HQ) operation order (OPORD) with annexes, including overlays with checkpoints, rally points (RP), and critical points are available. Digital and/or analog device, radio, and visual signals are to be used for convoy column control. Convoy column may conduct halts during movement. The unit can conduct the unit movement during the day or at night with night vision devices (NVDs), and in an chemical, biological, radiological, and nuclear (CBRN) environment subject to air or ground level 1 threat forces attack. Some iterations of this task should be performed in mission-oriented protective posture level 4 (MOPP4).

**TASK STANDARDS:** Start points (SP), checkpoints, and rally points (RP) were crossed at times specified in the movement order or at times adjusted on the road movement table by higher headquarters staff element. Maintained march discipline techniques for the tactical situation and road conditions encountered. At MOPP4, performance degradation factors increased travel time.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>1. Convoy commander initiates convoy.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Maintained situational awareness at all times (using analog and/or digital communications).</li> <li>b. Directed lead vehicle to cross SP at specified time.</li> <li>c. Verified vehicles have crossed the SP.</li> <li>d. Forwarded SP crossing report to higher headquarters staff element when unit elements have crossed the SP (using analog and/or digital communications).</li> </ul> <p>*2. Convoy commander reports convoy information to higher headquarters staff element.</p> <hr/> <p><b>Note.</b> All reports are made to higher headquarters staff element (using analog and/or digital communications).</p> <hr/> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Forwarded checkpoint(s) clearance report as checkpoints were crossed.</li> <li>b. Reported all ground sightings that conflicted with maps and map overlays.</li> <li>c. Forwarded en route CBRN information.</li> <li>d. Reported all threat sightings using SALUTE format.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>e. Employed correct signal operating instructions/signal supplemental instructions (SOI/SSI) codes in all transmissions.</p> <p>*3. Convoy commander enforces convoy discipline.</p> <p>a. Maintained situational awareness at all times using analog and/or digital communications.</p> <p>b. Assumed position(s) along march route that provides command presence at points of decision for reaction to changing tactical situation.</p> <p>c. Enforced all movement policies defined in the TACSOP and movement order, with emphasis on formation, distances, speeds, passing procedures, and halts.</p> <p>d. Adjusted formation distances and speed consistent with CBRN, terrain, and light conditions.</p> <p>e. Enforced security measures, with emphasis on air guard's surveillance, manning of automatic weapons, and concealment of critical cargo.</p> <p>f. Communicated violations of march discipline, security procedures, or changes to current orders to unit leaders and operators by analog, digital, or visual signal communications.</p> <p>g. Enforced communication security (COMSEC) measures, including radio silence periods according to the movement order and SOI/SSI.</p> <p>4. Unit employs convoy discipline.</p> <p>a. Maintained designated march speed specified in movement order or as prescribed by the convoy commander.</p> <p>b. Maintained proper vehicle interval as specified in movement order or as adjusted by the convoy commander.</p> <p>c. Adjusted formation distances and speed consistent with CBRN, terrain, and light conditions.</p> <p>d. Donned eye protection goggles if driver or passenger is in a vehicle without cover or when windshield is lowered.</p> <p>e. Crossed all check points as scheduled.</p> <p>f. Reacted correctly to convoy commander's arm/hand signals or instructions by analog and/or digital communications.</p> <p>g. Maintained ground and air surveillance that covers 360 degrees until movement is completed.</p> <p>h. Maintained communication security.</p> <p>5. Unit conducts scheduled halt(s) for rest, personal comfort, refueling, maintenance, and vehicle/load inspections.</p> <p>a. Stopped column at prescribed time and location.</p> <p>b. Avoided areas with restricted visibility (such as curves or grades).</p> <p>c. Moved vehicles off road to positions that provide overhead cover while maintaining the prescribed interval between vehicles.</p> <p>d. Occupied hasty defensive positions with 360-degree protective coverage (passengers).</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>e. Posted guards, maintained security.</li> <li>f. Kept unauthorized personnel away from vehicles.</li> <li>g. Reported scheduled halt to higher HQ staff element (using analog and/or digital communications).</li> <li>h. Performed during-operation preventive maintenance checks and services (PMCS) on vehicles (operators).</li> <li>i. Inspected vehicle loads for safety and security.</li> <li>j. Began departure at specified time in the movement order.</li> <li>k. Reported resumption of march to higher headquarters staff element using analog and/or digital communications.</li> </ul> <p>*6. Unit conducts unscheduled halt(s).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Alerted march column with prescribed arm/hand signal.</li> <li>b. Reported halt and circumstances immediately to higher headquarters staff element by analog and/or digital communications.</li> <li>c. Moved vehicles off the road while maintaining the prescribed interval between vehicles.</li> <li>d. Occupied hasty fighting position with 360-degree protective coverage.</li> <li>e. Resumed march as soon as reason for halt is rectified.</li> <li>f. Reported resumption of march to higher headquarters staff element using analog and/or digital communications.</li> </ul> <p>7. Trail party recovers disabled vehicle.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Posted guard to maintain surveillance until recovery operation is completed.</li> <li>b. Inspected disabled vehicle for repairability.</li> <li>c. Repaired disabled vehicle, when possible.</li> <li>d. Towed disabled vehicle to applicable maintenance activity.</li> <li>e. Reported vehicle status to convoy commander using analog and/or digital communications.</li> </ul> <hr/> <p><b>Note.</b> Local policies and procedures may preclude any and all of the above listed performance measures for vehicle recovery. These are recommended measures and may be modified to meet operating environment and TACSOP.</p> <hr/>		
<p>8. Unit conducts a night convoy.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Briefed drivers on night conditions.</li> <li>b. Provided visual adjustment period if march began during daylight.</li> <li>c. Prepared vehicles for blackout conditions according to the TACSOP.</li> <li>d. Maintained prescribed interval between vehicles.</li> <li>e. Used night vision goggles (selected personnel).</li> <li>f. Used regular eye protection goggles (all other personnel).</li> </ul>		



TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p><b>g.</b> Employed ground guides during poor visibility periods (if tactical situation allowed it).</p> <p><b>9.</b> Unit conducts convoy through an urban area.</p> <p><b>a.</b> Verified all weight, height, and width restrictions along route of march.</p> <p><b>b.</b> Employed close column formation.</p> <p><b>c.</b> Obeyed traffic control directions unless escorted by military or host nation (HN) police.</p> <p><b>d.</b> Employed directional guides at all critical intersections.</p> <p><b>10.</b> Convoy commander monitors unit crossing reference point.</p> <p><b>a.</b> Verified that lead vehicle has crossed reference point at specified time.</p> <p><b>b.</b> Verified that vehicles that have crossed reference point.</p> <p><b>c.</b> Forwarded situation template (SITREP) to higher headquarters staff element (using analog and/or digital communications).</p> <p><b>*11.</b> Commander/leader identifies and controls hazards according to risk management procedures (see appendix C).</p> <p>* Indicates a leader task step.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
Total Task Steps Evaluated							
Total Task Steps GO							
Training Status GO/NO-GO							

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
011-510-0001	Employ ground maneuver forces	STP 1-15 II
011-510-0021	Employ fundamentals of army operations	STP 1-15 II
011-510-1301	Supervise ground maintenance operations	STP 1-15 II

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
01-2-0341	Perform Composite Risk Management Procedures	ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-126-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENT:** COMPANY

**TASK: Perform Advance/Quartering Party Operations (01-2-0340)**

(FM 3-04.111)	(FM 1-100)	(FM 1-113)
(FM 3-0)	(FM 3-04.126)	(FM 3-04.513)
(FM 3-100.12)	(FM 7-0)	(FM 7-1)
(FM 71-100)		

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The battalion is conducting assigned missions in a simulated (live, virtual, or constructive) combat environment. The battalion's main command (CP) is operational and the staff sections and digital systems are functional. Departure time for the advance/quartering party has arrived. The party includes unit field surgical team (FST) personnel. The party is prepared to depart the assembly area. MOPP2 has been designated. All essential information, such as route, order of march, and estimated time of arrival (ETA) of main body has been provided by higher headquarter operations element. The party leader has been issued tentative unit layout, hasty defense, and traffic plans. Higher HQ movement order and tactical standing operating procedures (TACSOPs) are available. The party possesses all required equipment. Sufficient guides, markers, and other equipment are available. Upon arrival at the new area of operation (AO), the higher HQ party leader assigns specific unit setup areas. Main body arrives before completion of this task. Unit may be required to camouflage when directed by a commander of at least battalion level or equivalent. Some iterations of this task should be performed in mission-oriented protective posture level 4 (MOPP4).

**TASK STANDARDS:** The advance/quartering party leader and subordinates completed all preparation tasks in a timely manner. The new AO is functional and in compliance with higher headquarters operations element and commander. The main body repositions itself into the new AO.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Advance/quartering party moves to new operating site.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Wore uniform as prescribed by the TACSOP and movement order.</li> <li>b. Crossed start point (SP), checkpoints, and reference point as prescribed by movement order.</li> <li>c. Followed prescribed route from old to new area.</li> <li>d. Reported route changes and/or information to main body by messenger, route guides, route markers, or other non-electronic means.</li> </ol> </li> <li>2. Advance/quartering party prepares to secure the unit area.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Assumed designated mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) level before entering new area.</li> <li>b. Provided required number of personnel for initial security teams.</li> <li>c. Provides required personnel and equipment to conduct chemical, biological, radiological, and nuclear (CBRN) surveys of assigned area.</li> </ol> </li> <li>3. Advance/quartering party secures the unit's new AO.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Placed dismount points on probable avenues of approach consistent with available personnel.</li> </ol> </li> </ol>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>b. Parked vehicles and trailers in covered positions with mirrors turned toward the ground.</p> <p>c. Conducted CBRN survey of the entire assigned unit area.</p> <hr/> <p><b>Note.</b> If survey team(s) detects low or greater levels of contamination, evacuate the area immediately, decontaminate, and notify the commander.</p> <hr/> <p>d. Conducted sweep of unit area to locate all mines, booby traps, and other signs of threat presence.</p> <p>e. Coordinated with supporting explosive ordnance disposal (EOD) unit for EOD disposal, if required.</p> <p>f. Conducted preventive medicine (PVNTMED) pre-site survey of unit area.</p> <hr/> <p><b>Note.</b> Unit FST personnel assigned to the advance/quartering party conducts this survey.</p> <hr/> <p>g. Reported findings to higher headquarters operations element.</p>		
<p>*4. Advance/quartering party leader supervises area preparation tasks.</p> <p>a. Conducted unit area site reconnaissance with subelement leaders, pointing out assigned areas and traffic circulation according to layout and traffic plans.</p> <p>b. Verified movement of subelements into their respective areas to ensure compliance with layout plan.</p> <p>c. Established internal communications system using a runner until wire communications have been established.</p> <p>d. Enforced OPSEC measures during area preparation.</p> <p>e. Established unit area entrance and exit points with unit personnel as guards.</p> <p>f. Assigned to subelements the task of blocking all other possible entrance and exit points into the unit area.</p> <p>5. Advance/quartering party performs area preparation tasks.</p> <p>a. Marked location of CP according to the unit layout plan.</p> <p>b. Marked location of bivouac, administrative, and operational areas according to the layout plan.</p> <p>c. Established forward CP.</p> <p>d. Laid communication wire from CP to all subelements.</p> <p>e. Marked unit area traffic direction according to the traffic plan.</p> <p>f. Erected required tentage at locations according to the layout plan.</p> <p>g. Set up radio antenna(s) in locations as required by the layout plan.</p> <p>h. Marked vehicle positions allowing maximum dispersion consistent with size of area and tactical situation.</p> <p>i. Marked subelements' defensive boundaries according to the security plan.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>j. Erected man-made barriers to block all unauthorized entrances and exits into and out of the CP area.</li> <li>k. Employed camouflage (if directed) and concealment measures consistent with tactical situation according to the provisions of the Geneva Conventions and command directives.</li> <li>l. Employed noise and light discipline measures.</li> <li>m. Employed safety procedures according to AR 385-10 and TACSOP.</li> <li>n. Employed environmental protection procedures according to AR 200-1 and TACSOP.</li> </ul> <p><b>6.</b> Advance/quartering party prepares an urbanized area.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Selected buildings within assigned area that provide maximum cover, concealment, and protection.</li> <li>b. Selected building for CP that provides a line of sight for antenna(s).</li> <li>c. Coordinated with higher headquarters OPS element for EOD support to clear all assigned buildings of booby traps.</li> <li>d. Erected barriers to close off or channel personnel and vehicles into designated areas.</li> <li>e. Established defensive positions in upper stories of buildings.</li> <li>f. Designated reaction teams.</li> <li>g. Coordinated with unit FST for control or elimination of medical threats.</li> </ul> <p><b>*7.</b> Advance/quartering party leader supervises reception of main body.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Identified guide pickup points.</li> <li>b. Briefed ground guides on moving main body into their respective areas with emphasis on OPSEC.</li> <li>c. Monitored subelement guides' activities to ensure compliance with guidance by the party leader and TACSOP.</li> <li>d. Enforced counter-surveillance measures.</li> </ul> <p><b>8.</b> Advance/quartering party performs guide functions.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Guided elements into assigned positions without having vehicles stop in exposed areas.</li> <li>b. Employed prearranged signals according to the TACSOP.</li> <li>c. Parked one vehicle at a time during darkness or reduced visibility.</li> <li>d. Employed filtered flashlights during darkness or reduced visibility.</li> <li>e. Employed counter-surveillance measures during reception activities.</li> </ul> <p><b>*9.</b> Commander/leader performs or delegates performance of the steps in the risk-management process for each step in troop-leading procedures (see appendix C).</p> <p>* Indicates a leader task step</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
<i>ITERATION</i>	<i>1</i>	<i>2</i>	<i>3</i>	<i>4</i>	<i>5</i>	<i>M</i>	<i>TOTAL</i>
Total Task Steps Evaluated							
Total Task Steps GO							
Training Status GO/NO-GO							

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
011-510-0300	Coordinate staff duties/responsibilities in tactical units	STP 1-15 II
011-510-0303	Conduct operations missions briefing/debriefing	STP 1-15 II

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
01-2-0341	Perform composite risk management procedures	ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-126-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENT:** ASSAULT COMPANY

**TASK:** Coordinate Special Patrol Infiltration/Exfiltration System (SPIES) Missions (UH-60) (01-2-1034)

(TC 21-24)	(AR 95-1)	(FM 1-100)
(FM 1-113)	(FM 3-04.111)	(FM 3-05.60)
(FM 3-100.12)	(FM 71-100-3)	(FM 90-4)
(TC 1-201)	(TC 1-210)	(TC 1-237)

**ITERATION:** 1      2      3      4      5      M      (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T      P      U      (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The battalion is in a simulated (live, virtual, or constructive) combat environment. The requirement exists to perform special patrol infiltration/exfiltration (SPIES) mission(s). The company has received an operation order (OPORD)/fragmentary order (FRAGO) to conduct a mission in a H-60 helicopter with SPIES equipment installed. SPIES will be employed when rapid exit from a rotary wing aircraft into a small or restricted area is necessary. Usually it will be restricted to situations where the aircraft cannot land. Some iterations of this task should be performed in mission-oriented protective posture level 4 (MOPP4).

**TASK STANDARDS:** The company coordinated the SPIES mission within the time constraints given in the OPORD/FRAGO and performed SPIES according to TC 21-24 and TC 1-237.

**Note.** Ensure that SPIES rope remains secured to the cargo hook until the aircraft has landed. If recovery of SPIES rope is impossible, execute a roll-on landing to avoid entanglement in the rotor system. Ensure that the SPIES master and crew chief wear a safety harness secured to a tiedown ring anytime cabin doors are opened.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p><b>Note.</b> TC 21-24 requires a two star general's approval to perform a SPIES mission.</p> <hr/> <p><b>*1.</b> The commander gained and/or maintained situational understanding using information gathered from Force XXI Battle Command Brigade and Below (FBCB2), frequency modulated (FM), digital and or analog communications systems, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources.</p> <p><b>*2.</b> The air mission commander conducts required coordination for conducting SPIES operations:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>a.</b> AMC and/or representatives attended the initial planning conference (IPC). Reviewed the liaison officer's coordination which included— <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>(1)</b> Number of aircraft available and special equipment required.</li> <li><b>(2)</b> Ground tactical plans, landing plans, air movement, loading, and staging.</li> <li><b>(3)</b> Air movement tables if required for multiple insertions.</li> <li><b>(4)</b> Primary/alternate landing zone (LZ)/pickup zone (PZ) selection and preparation. LZ/PZs selected 5 to 10 km from mission objectives.</li> <li><b>(5)</b> Deception plan developed including multiple false insertions both before and after the insertion.</li> <li><b>(6)</b> Primary/alternate ingress and egress flight routes considered and planned. Ingress and egress routes should be different if possible.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>(7) Airspace coordination (Ingress and egress air corridors, no-fire areas (NFAs) on LZs, command and control (C2) aircraft restricted operations zones (ROZs).</p> <p>(8) Aerial security plan and the extraction plan; planned extraction points, emergency extraction plan, and lost communication extraction points. Should coordinate for escort and security with air cavalry, attack, and close air support (CAS) elements, if available.</p> <p>(9) Aerial fire support plan, if utilized.</p> <p>(10) C2 plan.</p> <p>b. Determined forward arming and refueling point (FARP) locations and capabilities.</p> <p>c. Coordinated control measures with air cavalry, attack, and CAS elements.</p> <p>d. The air mission commander and/or representatives attended the supported unit OPORD brief to finalize all coordination with supported unit.</p> <p>*3. The air mission commander conducts the aircrew brief and the SPIES operation rehearsal.</p> <p>a. Aviation unit conducted static load training with the supported unit rehearsing aircraft entry and fast rope exit procedures.</p> <p>b. Leaders performed precombat checks (PCC)/precombat inspections (PCI).</p> <p>*4. The air mission commander controls the air mission.</p> <p>a. Designated a flight lead, serial commanders, if required.</p> <p>b. Interacted with the supported unit commander directly on all matters relating to the insertion.</p> <p>5. Unit conducts staging operations.</p> <p>a. Aircraft configured correctly according to supported unit requirements.</p> <p>b. Moved along designated routes to the staging area.</p> <p>c. Arrived at staging area at time designated in air movement table.</p> <p>d. Contacted the PZ control officer to initiate loading operations.</p> <p>e. Contacted the supporting aviation elements, such as attack and air cavalry units, if employed.</p> <p>6. Aircrews conduct loading operations.</p> <p>a. Supervised loading of their assigned aircraft as specified in movement table.</p> <p>b. Exercised bump plan as directed by the PZ control officer.</p> <p>7. Unit conducts air movement operations.</p> <p>a. Departed PZs at times indicated in air movement table.</p> <p>b. Moved along preplanned routes.</p> <p>c. Employed appropriate movement techniques.</p> <p>d. Employed appropriate terrain flight techniques.</p> <p>e. Executed the fire support plan, if necessary.</p> <p>f. Conducted deception operations, such as false insertion, as necessary.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p><b>*8.</b> Unit conducts landing operations.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Arrived at LZs as specified in the air movement table.</li> <li>b. Established stabilized hover and ensured expeditious unloading of troops and equipment at the objective.</li> <li>c. Ropes either retrieved properly or released from the aircraft safely according to the plan established by the supported unit.</li> <li>d. Provided emergency extraction, as required.</li> </ul> <p><b>9.</b> Assault helicopter units perform team infiltration/extraction of—</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Long-range surveillance detachments (LRSD).</li> <li>b. Rangers.</li> <li>c. Special operations teams.</li> <li>d. Infantry patrols.</li> <li>e. Forward observers.</li> <li>f. Combat observation laser teams (COLT).</li> <li>g. Combat engineer demolition teams.</li> <li>h. Pathfinders.</li> </ul> <p><b>10.</b> An air assault is the movement of friendly assault forces (combat, combat support [CS], and combat service support [CSS] ) by rotary-wing aircraft to engage and destroy enemy forces or to seize and hold key terrain. Coordination in smaller air assault operations can include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Included team insertion.</li> <li>b. Included fast-rope insertion/extraction system (FRIES) and SPIES operations.</li> <li>c. Included artillery raids.</li> </ul> <p><b>11.</b> General.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. SPIES operations extracted personnel from areas where aircraft cannot land.</li> <li>b. Because high vulnerability may result from prolonged high hovering coupled with low flying speed and limited maneuverability, SPIES extractions were executed from secure areas. Ropers were then flown to secure landing sites to remove extraction harnesses, to jettison or retrieve SPIES ropes and to board the helicopter for further movement.</li> <li>c. Minimum crew for SPIES operations was pilot in command (PC), point of impact (PI), communication-electronics (CE) and SPIES Master (SM).</li> </ul> <p><b>12.</b> Other responsibilities.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. The PC was the final authority for all aspects of aircraft operation and was responsible for the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Ensured all crew members are familiar with this SOP, TC 21-24, and TC 1-212.</li> <li>(2) Briefed all crew members and SPIES master on aircrew duties, mission specific details and emergency procedures.</li> <li>(3) Ensured that the aircraft is configured properly for SPIES operations.</li> <li>(4) Ensured the aircraft has the required equipment for the mission.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		



TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>b. The SPIES master obeyed all commands from the PC and supervises all ropers.</p> <p>c. The CE was responsible for the following—</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Prepared the aircraft for SPIES operations.</li> <li>(2) Secured all non mission essential equipment.</li> <li>(3) Ensured all passengers were properly restrained.</li> <li>(4) Assisted the SPIES master.</li> <li>(5) Maintained airspace surveillance and observe drift.</li> <li>(6) Notified the PC of any unsafe act.</li> </ul> <p>d. Supported unit provided the following—</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Provided a qualified SPIES master for the operation.</li> <li>(2) Provided qualified and properly equipped ropers.</li> <li>(3) Provided all serviceable equipment for the operation.</li> <li>(4) Provided a medic or combat lifesaver with aid bag and emergency evacuation vehicle at the extraction site. The aircraft may be used as the evacuation vehicle in extreme conditions only.</li> <li>(5) Provided safety personnel with an operational FM radio at the extraction site.</li> </ul> <p>13. Communications.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. The air mission commander, PC/PI, CE and SPIES master maintained positive communications at all times.</li> <li>b. Positive frequency modulated communications was established and maintained with ground safety personnel prior to mission execution.</li> </ul> <p>*14. Commander/leader performs or delegates performance of the steps in the risk management process for each step in troop-leading procedures (appendix C).</p> <p>* Indicates a leader task step</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
Total Task Steps Evaluated							
Total Task Steps GO							
Training Status GO/NO-GO							

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
011-237-2012	Perform tactical flight mission planning (UH-60)	TC 1-237
011-237-2024	Perform terrain flight navigation (UH-60)	STP 1-TACOPS TC 1-237
011-237-2056	Perform rappelling procedures (UH-60)	STP 1-TACOPS TC 1-237
011-237-2058	Perform special patrol infiltration/exfiltration (SPIES) operations(UH-60)	STP 1-TACOPS STP 1-15-219
		STP 1-15-219-OS TC 1-237

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
011-240-2058	Perform special patrol infiltration/exfiltration (SPIES) operations (CH-47D)	STP 1-15II-500-MQS STP 1-TACOPS STP 1-150-155
011-501-0018	Perform survival, evasion, resistance, and escape (SERE) operations	STP 1-15-219 STP 1-15-219-OS STP 1-15-240-OS STP 1-15II-500-MQS STP 1-15 I
011-510-0020	Apply fundamentals of Army aviation in military operations in urban terrain (MOUT)	STP 1-15II-500-MQS STP 1-15 II
011-510-0021	Employ fundamentals of Army operations	STP 1-15 II

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
01-2-0341	Perform composite risk management procedures	ARTEP 1-113-MTP
01-2-1035	Coordinate fast-rope insertion and extraction system (FRIES) missions (UH-60)	ARTEP 1-126-MTP ARTEP 1-113-MTP
01-2-5103	Perform air movement procedures (UH-60)	ARTEP 1-118-MTP ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-118-MTP
01-2-5160	Perform troop-leading procedures	ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-126-MTP
01-2-5218	Perform air assault operations	ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-118-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENT:** ASSAULT COMPANY

**TASK:** Coordinate Fast-Rope Insertion and Extraction System (FRIES) Missions (UH-60) (01-2-1035)

(FM 3-04.111)	(AR 95-1)	(FM 1-100)
(FM 1-113)	(FM 3-04.126)	(FM 3-04.300)
(FM 3-05.60)	(FM 3-100.4)	(FM 3-100.12)
(FM 71-100-3)	(FM 90-4)	(TC 1-201)
(TC 1-210)	(TC 1-237)	

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The battalion is in a simulated (live, virtual, or constructive) combat environment. The requirement exists to perform fast-rope insertion and extraction (FRIES) missions. The company has received an operation order (OPORD)/fragmentary order (FRAGO) to coordinate a mission in a H-60 helicopter with FRIES equipment installed. FRIES will be employed when rapid exit from a rotary wing aircraft into a small or restricted area is necessary. Usually it will be restricted to situations where the aircraft cannot land. Some iterations of this task should be performed in mission-oriented protective posture level 4 (MOPP4).

**TASK STANDARDS:** The company coordinated the FRIES mission. They conducted the FRIES mission within the time constraints given in the OPORD/FRAGO and performed FRIES according to TC 21-24 and TC 1-237. FRIES operations successfully overcame the lack of landing areas.

**Note.** FRIES should always be done at the lowest altitude possible. There is no additional training value to higher altitudes, only increased chance of injury (40 feet is the recommended training altitude). The length of the rope should not dictate proficient training from aircraft.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>*1. The commander gained and/or maintained situational understanding using information gathered from force XXI battle command brigade and below (FBCB2), frequency modulated (FM), digital and or analog communications systems, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources.</p> <p>2. The air mission commander conducts required FRIES mission coordination. Reviewed the liaison officer's coordination to include—</p> <p>a. AMC and/or representatives attend the initial planning conference (IPC). Reviewed the liaison officer's coordination to include—</p> <p>(1) Reviewed the number of aircraft available and special equipment required.</p> <p>(2) Reviewed the ground tactical plans, landing plans, air movement, loading, and staging.</p> <p>(3) Reviewed the air movement tables if required for multiple insertions.</p> <p>(4) Reviewed the primary/alternate landing zone (LZ)/pickup zone (PZ) selection and preparation. LZ/PZs selected 5 to 10 km from mission objectives.</p> <p>(5) Reviewed the deception plan developed including multiple false insertions both before and after the insertion.</p> <p>(6) Reviewed the primary/alternate ingress and egress flight routes considered and planned. Ingress and egress routes should be different if possible.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>(7) Reviewed the airspace coordination (ingress and egress air corridors, no fire areas [NFAs] on LZs, command and control [C2] aircraft restricted operations zones [ROZs] ).</p> <p>(8) Reviewed the aerial security plan and the extraction plan; planned extraction points, emergency extraction plan, and lost communication extraction points. Should coordinate for escort and security with air cavalry, attack, and close air support (CAS) elements, if available.</p> <p>(9) Reviewed the aerial fire support plan, if utilized.</p> <p>(10) C2 plan.</p> <p>b. Determined and coordinated the forward arming and refueling point (FARP) locations and capabilities.</p> <p>c. Coordinated control measures with air cavalry, attack, and CAS elements.</p> <p>d. The air mission commander and/or representatives attended the supported unit OPORD brief that finalized all coordination with supported unit.</p> <p>3. The AMC conducts the aircrew brief and the FRIES insertion rehearsal.</p> <p>a. Aviation unit conducted static load training with the supported unit rehearsing aircraft entry and fast rope exit procedures.</p> <p>b. Leaders performed precombat checks (PCC)/precombat inspections (PCI).</p> <p>4. The air mission commander controls the FRIES air mission.</p> <p>a. Designated a flight lead, serial commanders, if required.</p> <p>b. Interacted with the supported unit commander directly on all matters relating to the insertion.</p> <p>5. Unit conducts staging operations.</p> <p>a. Coordinated on aircraft configured correctly according to supported unit requirements.</p> <p>b. Moved along designated routes to the staging area.</p> <p>c. Arrived at staging area at time designated in air movement table.</p> <p>d. Contacted the PZ control officer to initiate loading operations.</p> <p>e. Contacted the supporting aviation elements, such as attack and air cavalry units, if employed.</p> <p>6. Aircrews conduct loading operations.</p> <p>a. Supervised loading of their assigned aircraft as specified in movement table.</p> <p>b. Exercised bump plan as directed by the PZ control officer.</p> <p>c. Coordinated with unit and PZ control officer.</p> <p>7. Unit coordinates the FRIES air movement operations.</p> <p>a. Coordinated the departed PZs at times indicated in air movement table.</p> <p>b. Coordinated the move along preplanned routes.</p> <p>c. Employed appropriate movement techniques.</p> <p>d. Employed appropriate terrain flight techniques.</p> <p>e. Executed the fire support plan, if necessary.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>f. Conducted deception operations, such as false insertion as necessary</p> <p>8. Unit coordinates the landing operations. (LZs should be free of large rocks, debris, mud, ice, fine dust/snow, and brush, unless executing FRIES operations or allowing troops to safely jump to the ground from a low hover.)</p> <p>a. Arrived at LZs as specified in the air movement table.</p> <p>b. Established stabilized hover and ensured expeditious unloading of troops and equipment at the objective.</p> <p>c. Ropes either retrieved properly or released from the aircraft safely according to the plan established by the supported unit.</p> <p>d. Provided emergency extraction, as required.</p> <p>9. Assault and heavy helicopter units perform team insertions and extractions of:</p> <p>a. Performed insertion and extraction of long-range surveillance detachments (LRSD).</p> <p>b. Performed insertion and extraction of the rangers.</p> <p>c. Performed insertion and extraction of special operations teams.</p> <p>d. Performed insertion and extraction of infantry patrols.</p> <p>e. Performed insertion and extraction of forward observers.</p> <p>f. Performed insertion and extraction of combat observation laser teams (COLT).</p> <p>g. Performed insertion and extraction of combat engineer demolition teams.</p> <p>10. A unit's air assault is the movement of friendly assault forces (combat, CS, and CSS) by rotary-wing aircraft to engage and destroy enemy forces or to seize and hold key terrain. Smaller air assault operations include:</p> <p>a. Included team insertion.</p> <p>b. Included FRIES and SPIES (special patrol infiltration/exfiltration system) operations.</p> <p>c. Included artillery raids.</p> <p>*11. Commander/leader performs or delegates performance of the steps in the risk management process for each step in troop-leading procedures (appendix C).</p> <p>* Indicates a leader task step</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
Total Task Steps Evaluated							
Total Task Steps GO							
Training Status GO/NO-GO							

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
011-237-2012	Perform tactical flight mission planning (UH-60)	TC 1-237
011-237-2024	Perform terrain flight navigation (UH-60)	STP 1-TACOPS TC 1-237
011-237-2054	Perform fast-rope insertion and extraction (FRIES) operations(UH-60)	STP 1-TACOPS TC 1-237
011-501-0018	Perform survival, evasion, resistance, and escape (SERE) operations	STP 1-TACOPS STP 1-15 I
011-510-0020	Apply fundamentals of Army aviation in military operations in urban terrain (MOUT)	STP 1-15II-500-MQS STP 1-15 II
011-510-0021	Employ fundamentals of Army operations	STP 1-15 II

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
01-2-0341	Perform composite risk management procedures	ARTEP 1-113-MTP
01-2-1034	Coordinate special patrol infiltration/exfiltration system (SPIES) missions (UH-60)	ARTEP 1-126-MTP ARTEP 1-113-MTP
01-2-5103	Perform air movement procedures (UH-60)	ARTEP 1-118-MTP ARTEP 1-113-MTP
01-2-5160	Perform troop-leading procedures	ARTEP 1-118-MTP ARTEP 1-113-MTP
01-2-5198	Conduct aviation mission planning/preparation	ARTEP 1-126-MTP ARTEP 1-113-MTP
		ARTEP 1-126-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** ASSAULT COMPANY  
 ASSAULT PLATOON  
 HHC, ASSAULT BATTALION

**TASK: Perform Air Movement Procedures (UH-60) (01-2-5103)**

(FM 3-04.111)	(FM 1-100)	(FM 1-113)
(FM 3-100.4)	(FM 3-100.12)	(FM 3-04.300)
(FM 3-04.513)	(FM 4-01.011)	(FM 71-100-3)
(FM 90-4)	(TC 1-201)	(TC 1-210)
(TC 1-237)		

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The battalion is in a simulated (live, virtual, or constructive) combat environment. The staff has received an operation order (OPORD)/fragmentary order (FRAGO) and the commander's guidance. The main command post (CP) is operational and the staff sections, digital and/or analog, are functioning. The unit has received a mission to move troops and/or equipment. Necessary coordination for the type and number of aircraft has been accomplished. Other coordination may be necessary. Some iterations of this task should be performed in mission-oriented protective posture level 4 (MOPP4).

**TASK STANDARDS:** Properly equipped aircraft arrived at the pickup zone (PZ) within the time constraints specified in the OPORD/FRAGO. All equipment and personnel were transported according to the commander's scheme of maneuver. This task is similar to the task "Coordinate the Air Assault Operations" but requires less detailed planning since the operation is conducted not in contact with the enemy. It is planned using the 5 steps of the reverse planning sequence.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>*1. The warning order (WARNO) is received from the battalion. The commander gained and/or maintained situational understanding using information gathered from Force XXI Battle Command Brigade and Below (FBCB2), frequency modulated (FM), digital and or analog communications systems, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources.</p> <p>*2. The commander forms the planning cells to analyze and plan the detailed execution portion of the air movement plan.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Analyzed the primary and alternate landing zone (LZ)/PZs. Ensured they were suitable taking into consideration the size, obstacles, visibility obscurants, wind direction, and threat.</li> <li>b. Analyzed the primary and alternate routes. Ensured they are suitable taking into consideration the threat, terrain masking and other terrain flight considerations. Determined the flight times of each route.</li> <li>c. Submitted required graphics and flight times to battalion.</li> </ul> <p>*3. Commander and pilots-in-command conduct necessary coordination with the battalion staff or the supported unit for necessary mission details.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Performed parallel planning with the battalion.</li> <li>b. Coordinated with the battalion staff the air movement procedures.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p><b>*4.</b> If possible, pilots-in-command should attend the supported unit OPORD brief and combat service support (CSS) rehearsals.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Verified the supported unit's concept of support.</li> <li>b. Finalized landing plan.</li> <li>c. Briefed the air movement plan to the supported unit.</li> <li>d. Finalized loading plan.</li> <li>e. Finalized staging plan.</li> </ul> <p><b>*5.</b> Receive the aviation OPORD and complete the aircrew brief as required.</p> <p><b>*6.</b> Attend the battalion rehearsal and conduct company rehearsals.</p> <p><b>7.</b> Unit conducts staging operations.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Moved along designated routes to the staging area.</li> <li>b. Arrived at staging area at time designated in air movement table.</li> <li>c. Contacted the PZ control officer to initiate loading operations.</li> <li>d. Contacted the supporting aviation elements, such as attack and air cavalry units, if employed.</li> </ul> <p><b>8.</b> Aircrews conduct loading operations.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Supervised loading of their assigned aircraft as specified in movement table or operation order.</li> <li>b. Exercised bump plan as directed by the PZ control officer.</li> </ul> <p><b>9.</b> Unit conducts air movement operations.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Departed PZs at times indicated in air movement table or operation order.</li> <li>b. Moved along preplanned routes.</li> <li>c. Employed appropriate movement techniques.</li> <li>d. Employed appropriate terrain flight techniques.</li> </ul> <p><b>10.</b> Unit conducts landing operations.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Arrived at LZs as specified in the air movement table or operation order.</li> <li>b. Ensured expeditious unloading of troops and equipment immediately upon landing.</li> </ul> <p><b>*11.</b> Commander/leader performs or delegates performance of the steps in the risk management process for each step in troop-leading procedures (appendix C).</p> <p>* Indicates a leader task step</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
Total Task Steps Evaluated							
Total Task Steps GO							
Training Status GO/NO-GO							



**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
011-237-2010	Perform multi-aircraft operations (UH-60)	TC 1-237 STP 1-TACOPS
011-237-2012	Perform tactical flight mission planning (UH-60)	TC 1-237
011-237-2024	Perform terrain flight navigation (UH-60)	STP 1-TACOPS TC 1-237
011-237-2026	Perform terrain flight (UH-60)	STP 1-TACOPS TC 1-237
011-237-2036	Perform terrain flight deceleration (UH-60)	STP 1-TACOPS TC 1-237
011-237-2042	Perform actions on contact (UH-60)	STP 1-TACOPS TC 1-237
011-237-2054	Perform fast-rope insertion and extraction (FRIES) operations (UH-60)	STP 1-TACOPS TC 1-237
011-237-2058	Perform special patrol infiltration/exfiltration (SPIES) operations (UH-60)	STP 1-TACOPS TC 1-237
011-237-2086	Operate aviator's night vision imaging system (ANVIS) heads-up display (HUD) (UH-60)	STP 1-TACOPS TC 1-237
011-510-0013	Employ air assault operations	STP 1-TACOPS
011-510-0018	Employ Army airspace command and control	STP 1-15 II
011-510-0020	Apply fundamentals of Army aviation in military operations in urban terrain (MOUT)	STP 1-15 II
011-510-0021	Employ fundamentals of Army operations	STP 1-15 II
011-510-0309	Perform logistics staff duties/responsibilities	STP 1-15 II
011-510-1700	Implement the Army safety program	STP 1-15 II

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
01-2-0341	Perform composite risk management procedures	ARTEP 1-113-MTP
01-2-5198	Conduct aviation mission planning/preparation	ARTEP 1-126-MTP ARTEP 1-113-MTP
		ARTEP 1-126-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENT:** COMPANY

**TASK: Defend Unit Position (01-2-5113)**

(FM 3-04.111)	(AR 95-1)	(FM 1-100)
(FM 1-113)	(FM 3-04.126)	(FM 3-100.12)
(FM 7-0)	(FM 7-1)	(FM 90-4)
(TC 1-210)	(TC 1-237)	

**ITERATION:** 1    2    3    4    5    M    (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T    P    U    (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The battalion is in a simulated (live, virtual, or constructive) combat environment. The main command post (CP) is operational and the staff sections, digital and/or analog systems, are functioning. The battalion has occupied a forward assembly area (AA), and each company has been assigned a sector to defend. Some iterations of this task should be performed in mission-oriented protective posture level 4 (MOPP4).

**TASK STANDARDS:** The battalion established immediate 360 degree security. The AA was not breached as a result of poor security. The battalion prepared and implemented a security plan within 1 hour of occupation of the AA.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>1. The companies implement the battalion AA security plan.</p> <hr/> <p><i>Note.</i> Occasionally the tactical situation will require the establishment of a separate company AA. The same planning considerations will apply to the development of a company security plan. The battalion oversees the company security, defense fire plans, reaction force organization, opposing forces (OPFOR)/command post (CP) responsibilities, and risk management steps in troop-leading procedures.</p> <hr/> <p>2. The companies organize security.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Assigned sectors of responsibility to platoons.</li> <li>b. Searched the area for mines, booby traps, or enemy presence.</li> <li>c. Established observation posts (OPs)/listening posts (LPs).</li> <li>d. Prepared defensive fighting positions.</li> <li>e. Positioned chemical alarms for chemical, biological, radiological, and nuclear (CBRN) defense.</li> <li>f. Positioned crew served weapons on likely avenues of approach.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Established primary, alternate, and supplementary positions.</li> <li>(2) Ensured that interlocking fires were established, if possible.</li> <li>(3) Prepared range cards.</li> </ul> </li> <li>g. Continued to improve fighting positions.</li> <li>h. Established communication between OPs, companies, and the main CP headquarters.</li> <li>i. Established communication between OPs, companies, and the main CP.</li> <li>j. Prepared dismount points where necessary.</li> </ul> <p>3. The companies prepare defensive fire plans.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Identified the locations of all defensive positions and OP/LPs.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>b. Determined the principle direction of fire and final protective line for all machine guns.</p> <p>c. Ensured overlapping sectors of fire or coverage of dead space with grenade launchers and artillery fire.</p> <p>d. Submitted recommendations for target reference points.</p> <p>e. Forwarded fire plans to battalion.</p> <p>f. Forwarded fire plans to battalion.</p> <p>4. Headquarter company organizes a reaction force.</p> <p>a. Conducted periodic patrols to locate and neutralize reported OPFOR.</p> <p>b. Established communications with company headquarters.</p> <p>c. Counter-attacked intruding OPFOR.</p> <p>5. The companies react to an OPFOR ground attack.</p> <p>a. Alerted the main CP of OPFOR activity.</p> <p>b. Occupied fighting positions.</p> <p>c. Alerted aircraft to activate scatter plan according to the unit SOP.</p> <p>d. Engaged OPFOR according to rules of engagement (ROE), weapons control status, and the unit standing operating procedure (SOP).</p> <p>e. Formed the reaction force at the designated rally point.</p> <p>f. Reported actions to the main CP.</p> <p>*6. Commander/leader performs or delegates performance of the steps in the risk management process for each step in troop-leading procedures (see appendix C).</p> <p>* Indicates a leader task step</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
Total Task Steps Evaluated							
Total Task Steps GO							
Training Status GO/NO-GO							

#### SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
011-237-2012	Perform tactical flight mission planning (UH-60)	TC 1-237
011-510-0018	Employ Army airspace command and control	STP 1-TACOPS
011-510-0020	Apply fundamentals of Army aviation in military operations in urban terrain (MOUT)	STP 1-15 II
011-510-0303	Conduct operations missions briefing/debriefing	STP 1-15 II

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
01-2-0341	Perform composite risk management procedures	ARTEP 1-113-MTP
01-2-5160	Perform troop-leading procedures	ARTEP 1-126-MTP ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-126-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENT:** COMPANY

**TASK: Control an Assembly Area (01-2-5158)**

(FM 3-04.111)

(FM 1-100)

(FM 1-113)

(FM 3-04.126)

(FM 3-100.12)

(FM 7-0)

(FM 7-1)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The battalion is conducting assigned missions in a simulated (live, virtual, or constructive) combat environment. The battalion tactical operations center (TOC) is operational and the staff sections and digital systems are functional. The company is conducting operations as part of a higher headquarters and has received an operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) to occupy an assembly area (AA) at the location and time specified. All necessary personnel and equipment are available. The company has communications with higher, adjacent, and subordinate elements. The company has been provided guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task should be conducted during limited visibility conditions. Some iterations of this task should be performed in mission-oriented protective posture level 4 (MOPP4).

**TASK STANDARDS:** The company occupied the AA according to the order and or commander's guidance. The company enters the AA without stopping or blocking the route of march, moves all personnel and equipment to their assigned positions not later than (NLT) the time specified in the order, establishes priority of work, establishes local security, and maintains appropriate readiness condition (REDCON) levels. The company complies with the ROE and ROI.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>*1. The commander gained and/or maintained situational understanding using information gathered from Force XXI Battle Command Brigade and Below (FBCB2), frequency modulated (FM), digital and or analog communications systems, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources.</p> <p>*2. Company commander receives an OPORD or FRAGO and issues warning order (WARNO) to the company using FBCB2, FM, or other tactical means.</p> <p>*3. Company commander plans using troop-leading procedures.</p> <hr/> <p><b>Note.</b> Refer to task 01-2-5160, Perform troop-leading procedures.</p> <hr/> <p>a. Conducted analysis based on factors of mission, enemy, terrain and weather, troops and support available, time available, civil considerations (METT-TC).</p> <p>b. Considered the enemy's capabilities, likely courses of action (COA), and specific weapons capabilities.</p> <p>c. Conducted a digital and or conventional map reconnaissance.</p> <p>(1) Identified tentative rally points.</p> <p>(2) Identified likely enemy avenues of approach.</p> <p>(3) Marked tentative dismount points on digital and conventional maps, as appropriate.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>d. Planned and coordinated indirect fire support and or close air support, if available.</p> <p>e. Identified direct fire responsibilities.</p> <p>f. Addressed actions on chance contact with the enemy.</p> <p>*4. Company commander disseminates digital reports (if applicable), overlays, and other pertinent information to each platoon to keep them abreast of the situation.</p> <p>*5. Company commander assigns personnel to perform advance/quartering party duties according to guidance and or tactical standing operating procedure (TACSOP).</p> <hr/> <p><b>Note.</b> Refer to task 01-2-0340, Perform advance/quartering operations.</p> <hr/> <p>6. First Sergeant briefs personnel on company requirements for the quartering party.</p> <p>*7. Company commander issues orders and instructions to include ROE and ROI</p> <p>a. Briefed first sergeant (1SG) on ROE and ROI requirements.</p> <p>b. Issued clear and concise taskings to platoon sergeants and or elements.</p> <p>8. Company conducts a rehearsal.</p> <hr/> <p><b>Note.</b> Refer to task 01-1-5148, Conduct rehearsals.</p> <hr/> <p>9. Quartering party moves to and clears the release point (RP).</p> <p>a. Assisted in reconnaissance of the route and the proposed AA.</p> <p>b. Moved to and occupies AA.</p> <p>c. Assisted in improving and marking entrances, exits, and internal routes.</p> <p>d. Assisted in marking obstacles, mines, and contaminated areas.</p> <p>e. Selected and marks tentative company vehicle, weapons, and dismounted team positions according to OPORD, FRAGO, or TACSOP.</p> <p>f. Maintained surveillance and provides security of the area until the arrival of the company.</p> <p>g. Posted guides with local security to guide company to its initial position.</p> <p>10. Company elements move to and clear the RP.</p> <p>a. Moved to and occupies AA.</p> <p>b. Followed directions from guides and moves into marked positions.</p> <p>c. Oriented weapon systems to cover sectors of responsibility.</p> <p>d. Followed proper cool-down procedures, shuts down engines simultaneously, if applicable.</p> <p>*11. Company commander or designated representative initiates AA activities.</p> <p>a. Reviewed organization of the AA with quartering party personnel.</p> <p>b. Assigned each platoon a sector of the perimeter to ensure mutual support and to cover all gaps by observation and fire.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>c. Designated section direct fire responsibilities.</p> <p>d. Directed platoon leaders to prepare sector sketches.</p> <p>e. Kept higher headquarters informed of the status of the operation.</p> <p>(1) Reported company's arrival at the AA.</p> <p>(2) Reported completion of initial occupation of AA positions.</p> <p>(3) Prepared and forwards situation reports (SITREPs) to higher headquarters, as necessary, throughout the operation.</p> <p>f. Determined security procedures, REDCON level, and priorities of work.</p> <p>12. Company establishes and maintains local security under directions from the company commander.</p> <hr/> <p><b>Note.</b> Refer to task 01-2-0328, Establish unit defensive measures.</p> <hr/> <p>a. Established patrols to prevent infiltration and to clear possible enemy observation posts (OPs) within assigned sector (if applicable).</p> <p>b. Designated an OP and selects OP personnel.</p> <p>c. Ensured the OP has communications with the company.</p> <hr/> <p><b>Note.</b> Warns the company of any enemy approach before the company is attacked (OP).</p> <hr/> <p>d. Camouflaged equipment.</p> <p>e. Enforced noise, light, and litter discipline.</p> <p>f. Prepared primary fighting positions.</p> <p>13. Company elements conduct the following. (Based on the priority of work established by the company commander.) (Can vary by company TACSOP and METT-TC factors.)</p> <p>a. Positioned weapon systems and assigns sectors of fire.</p> <p>b. Positioned other assets attached to the company.</p> <p>c. Established wire communications.</p> <p>d. Designated final protective line (FPL) and final protective fires (FPFs).</p> <p>e. Cleared fields of fire and prepare range cards and sector sketches.</p> <p>f. Camouflaged the positions.</p> <p>g. Coordinated with adjacent elements left, right, forward, and to the rear, if applicable.</p> <p>(1) Ensured there are no gaps between elements.</p> <p>(2) Exchanged information on OP locations and company signals.</p> <p>h. Improved primary fighting positions by adding such things as overhead cover.</p> <p>i. Prepared alternate positions, then supplementary positions.</p> <p>j. Established a sleep and rest plan.</p> <p>k. Reconnoitered routes.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>l. Adjusted positions or control measures as required.</p> <p>m. Dug trenches to connect positions.</p> <p>n. Stockpiled ammunition, food, and water.</p> <p>o. Continued to improve positions.</p> <p>14. Platoons forward a sector sketch to the company commander and keeps one for platoon use.</p> <p>15. Company performs field sanitation operations.</p> <hr/> <p><b>Note.</b> Refer to task 08-2-R315, Perform field sanitation functions.</p> <hr/> <p>a. Maintained adequate supply of potable water.</p> <p>b. Established latrines and hand washing facilities.</p> <p>c. Performed personal hygiene activities.</p> <p>16. Company assumes specified REDCON level, taking one of the following steps:</p> <p>a. Assumed REDCON-1. (Be prepared to move immediately.)</p> <hr/> <p><b>Note.</b> A period of maximum preparedness, REDCON-1 ensures that all company personnel are alert and prepared for action immediately. Company elements, to include OPs, are recalled, and weapons are manned.</p> <hr/> <p>b. Assumed REDCON-2. (Be prepared to move in 15 minutes.)</p> <hr/> <p><b>Note.</b> Equipment is stowed except for wire and telephone equipment if used. Company weapons are manned. Company elements, OPs, and chemical alarms are still deployed.</p> <hr/> <p>c. Assumed REDCON-3. (Be prepared to move in 1 hour.)</p> <hr/> <p><b>Note.</b> Fifty percent of each element may stand down for feeding, rest, maintenance, or troop-leading procedures.</p> <hr/> <p>d. Assumed REDCON-4. (Be prepared to move in 2 hours.)</p> <hr/> <p><b>Note.</b> Seventy-five percent of each element may stand down for feeding, rest, maintenance, or troop-leading procedures. Crew-served weapons within each infantry platoon are manned. OPs are manned.</p> <hr/> <p>17. Company continued priority of work, including operations security (OPSEC), maintenance, resupply, and rest activities.</p> <p>a. Maintained security according to company commander's guidance, order and or TACSOP.</p> <p>b. Increased REDCON levels progressively as required based on company commander's guidance or unit TACSOP.</p>		



<b>TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES</b>	<b>GO</b>	<b>NO-GO</b>
<p><b>*18.</b> Company commander or designated representative conducts preparations for departing the AA (on receiving order).</p> <p><b>a.</b> Reconnoitered route and or calculates time distance for departing the AA, as directed.</p> <p><b>b.</b> Conducted police call to ensure no equipment, supplies, or other items of tactical or intelligence value is left behind.</p> <p><b>c.</b> Increased REDCON levels progressively as required based on higher headquarters' guidance or TACSOP.</p> <p><b>*19.</b> Commander/leader performs or delegates performance of the steps in the risk management process for each step in troop-leading procedures (see appendix C.)</p> <p>* Indicates a leader task step</p>		

<b>TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK</b>							
<b>ITERATION</b>	<b>1</b>	<b>2</b>	<b>3</b>	<b>4</b>	<b>5</b>	<b>M</b>	<b>TOTAL</b>
Total Task Steps Evaluated							
Total Task Steps GO							
Training Status GO/NO-GO							

#### **SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
011-510-0018	Employ Army airspace command and control	STP 1-15 II
011-510-0020	Apply fundamentals of army aviation in military operations in urban terrain (MOUT)	STP 1-15 II
011-510-0021	Employ fundamentals of Army operations	STP 1-15 II
011-510-0303	Conduct operations missions briefing/debriefing	STP 1-15 II

#### **SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
01-1-5134	Plan aviation operations using the military decision making process	ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-118-MTP ARTEP 1-126-MTP
01-2-0341	Perform composite risk management procedures	ARTEP 1-113-MTP
01-2-5160	Perform troop-leading procedures	ARTEP 1-126-MTP ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-126-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENT:** ASSAULT COMPANY

**TASK: Perform Aerial Passage of Lines Operations (01-2-5196)**

(FM 3-04.111)	(FM 1-100)	(FM 1-113)
(FM 3-04.126)	(FM 3-100.12)	(FM 3-20.98)
(FM 7-0)	(FM 7-1)	(FM 90-4)
(TC 1-201)	(TC 1-237)	

**ITERATION:** 1    2    3    4    5    M    (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T    P    U    (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The battalion is conducting assigned missions in a simulated (live, virtual, or constructive) combat environment. The main command post (CP), tactical command post (TAC CP) is operational, and staff sections and digital systems are functioning. The company has received mission requirements and the commander's guidance directing it to perform an aerial passage of lines. The tactical situation dictates that operations be conducted forward of friendly units. Elements are operating separately or as part of a larger force. The passage of lines is either forward or rearward. The element is assigned a lane or lanes through the passage point or points and passage point times or events. The passage of lines has been coordinated by higher headquarters. Aviation mission planning system (AMPS) is available, operational and contains all enemy and friendly locations and graphic control measures provided by the higher headquarters. The passage of lines may be conducted during day, at night using night vision devices (NVDs), under electronic warfare (EW) conditions and using terrain flight. Some iterations of this task should be performed in mission-oriented protective posture level 4 (MOPP4).

**TASK STANDARDS:** Unit elements moved through the passage point(s) not later than the time or event specified in the order. The unit is not surprised by the enemy during passage of friendly lines. The unit sustained no casualties from friendly obstacles or fire. All aircraft successfully made it through the passage point.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>*1. The company commander performs troop-leading procedures.</p> <hr/> <p><b>Note.</b> Refer to task 01-02-5160, Perform troop-leading procedures.</p> <hr/>		
<p>*2. The Commander receives the OPORD to conduct a mission requiring a passage of lines.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Conducted mission planning with information contained in the OPORD.</li> <li>b. Conducted reconnaissance (if possible).               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Briefed company personnel on actions to be taken in the absence of the commander while on reconnaissance.</li> <li>(2) Conducted a reconnaissance as far forward as the tactical situation permits in order to view the area forward of the forward line of troops (FLOT).</li> <li>(3) Ensured that reconnaissance and other activities did not reveal the operation to the enemy.</li> </ul> </li> <li>c. Risk management/risk reduction techniques were applied.</li> <li>d. Information was loaded into the AMPS and then loaded on to data transfer cartridges (DTC) for dissemination to aircrews.</li> </ul>		
<p>*3. Company commander conducts mission briefing.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p><b>*4.</b> Company commander conducts rehearsal.</p> <hr/> <p><b>Note.</b> Refer to task 01-1-5148, Conduct rehearsals.</p> <hr/> <p><b>a.</b> Rehearsed concept of the operation and scheme of maneuver.</p> <p><b>b.</b> Rehearsed fire support nets prior to the mission.</p> <p><b>c.</b> Conducted internal and external communications checks.</p> <p><b>5.</b> Company conducts forward passage of lines.</p> <p><b>a.</b> The elements located at the designated holding area coordinated their departure from the holding area and arrived at the start point, passage point and release point at the scheduled times coordinated earlier.</p> <p><b>b.</b> The security element cleared the area forward of the release point to subsequent zone or area of operations or the designated area of operations.</p> <p><b>c.</b> As the area was cleared, the main element moved through the release point on its way to the subsequent zone or area of operations or the designated area of operations.</p> <p><b>d.</b> Movement was continuous throughout the passage.</p> <p><b>e.</b> When unit used separate passage points, it reformed by aerial link-up as outlined in the mission brief and tactical standing operating procedure (TACSOP).</p> <p><b>f.</b> The element continued the mission.</p> <p><b>g.</b> Fratricide was not committed.</p> <p><b>6.</b> Company conducts a rearward passage of lines.</p> <hr/> <p><b>Note.</b> Refer to task 01-2-5196, Perform aerial passage of lines operations.</p> <hr/> <p><b>a.</b> The elements en route from the engagement area arrived at the start point, passage point and release point at the scheduled times coordinated earlier.</p> <p><b>b.</b> The passing aviation element displayed the proper visual signal when possible in regards to the enemy situation.</p> <p><b>c.</b> The passing aviation element moved through the passage point to the assembly area without stopping, minimizing exposure time.</p> <p><b>d.</b> When unit used separate passage points, it reformed by aerial link-up as outlined in the mission brief and TACSOP.</p> <p><b>e.</b> Fratricide was not committed.</p> <p><b>7.</b> Company returns to AA and prepares for future operations.</p> <p><b>a.</b> Aircrews used proper terrain flight techniques.</p> <p><b>b.</b> Commander debriefed missions, consolidated videocassette recorder (VCR) tapes, aircraft (A/C) maintenance status and submitted the appropriate closing reports to higher echelon headquarters.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p><b>*8.</b> Commander/leader performs or delegates performance of the steps in the risk management process for each step in troop-leading procedures (see appendix C).</p> <p>* Indicates a leader task step</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
Total Task Steps Evaluated							
Total Task Steps GO							
Training Status GO/NO-GO							

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
011-237-2010	Perform multi-aircraft operations (UH-60)	TC 1-237 STP 1-TACOPS
011-237-2012	Perform tactical flight mission planning (UH-60)	TC 1-237 STP 1-TACOPS
011-237-2026	Perform terrain flight (UH-60)	TC 1-237 STP 1-TACOPS
052-261-1220	Package printed leaflets for dissemination by aerial leaflet bomb	MOS E 21L 1

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
01-2-0341	Perform composite risk management procedures	ARTEP 1-113-MTP
01-2-5160	Perform troop-leading procedures	ARTEP 1-126-MTP ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-126-MTP
01-2-5198	Conduct aviation mission planning/preparation	ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-126-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** ASSAULT COMPANY  
 HHC, ASSAULT BATTALION  
 AVIATION LIAISON

**TASK: Conduct Aviation Mission Planning/Preparation (01-2-5198)**  
 (FM 3-04.111) (FM 1-100) (FM 1-113)  
 (FM 3-04.126) (FM 3-04.300) (FM 3-04.500)  
 (FM 3-100.12) (FM 7-1) (FM 90-4)  
 (JP 3-05.2) (TC 1-237)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The battalion is conducting assigned missions in a simulated (live, virtual, or constructive) combat environment. The battalion tactical operations center (TOC) is operational and the staff sections and digital systems are functional. The company has received a warning order (WARNO) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) and the commander's guidance to conduct aviation mission planning in preparation of tactical operations. The company planning sequence is initiated. Reports are being received through normal channels. The aviation mission planning system (AMPS) is operational and contains information pertaining to location of friendly and enemy units, boundary lines, phase lines, and engagement areas. Some iterations of this task should be performed in mission-oriented protective posture level 4 (MOPP4).

**TASK STANDARDS:** Company completed aviation mission planning/preparation according to higher headquarters commander's intent and is fully prepared for assigned mission. Mission aircraft was launched timely and per higher headquarters directives.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>*1. The commander gained and/or maintained situational understanding using information gathered from Force XXI Battle Command Brigade and Below (FBCB2), frequency modulated (FM), digital and or analog communications systems, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Determined assets required based on mission, enemy, terrain and weather, troops and support available, time available, and civil considerations (METT-TC).</li> <li>b. Identified supplies and equipment required.</li> <li>c. Identified personnel required.</li> <li>d. Conducted confirmation brief with battalion commander.</li> </ul> <p>*2. The company commander issues the warning order to subordinate leaders, first sergeant (1SG), and attached elements.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Designated an air mission commander, if required.</li> <li>b. Issued initial mission, intent and concept of the operation.</li> <li>c. Issued planning and rehearsal guidance.</li> <li>d. Established initial time line.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p><b>*3.</b> The company commander prepares plans and orders:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>a.</b> Developed the company concept of the operation.</li> <li><b>b.</b> Conducted fire distribution planning, integrated indirect fire support into plan.</li> <li><b>c.</b> Revised FRAGOs based on changes to the situation, mission, equipment or troops available.</li> </ul> <hr/> <p><b>Note.</b> Include only essential elements in the FRAGO.</p> <hr/> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>d.</b> Incorporated risk management procedures.</li> <li><b>e.</b> Incorporated fratricide prevention measures.</li> <li><b>f.</b> Updated aviation mission planning/preparation data in AMPS. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>(1)</b> Collected, disseminated, and processed battlefield information using AMPS and data transfer cartridges (DTCs). <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>(a)</b> Maintained AMPS and a situation map that graphically displayed enemy disposition, friendly unit locations, friendly operational graphics, boundaries, ground air routes, fire support coordination measures, and other operational measures.</li> </ul> </li> </ul> </li> </ul> <hr/> <p><b>Note.</b> Allow sufficient time for input of all mission essential information to AMPS for dissemination to DTCs (aircrews).</p> <hr/> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>(b)</b> Updated the situation map as changes are made.</li> <li><b>(c)</b> Provided all required information to unit elements.</li> </ul> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>g.</b> Task organized company into platoons or teams and determined the mix of Longbows (fire control radar (FCR)/radar frequency interferometer [RFI]) equipped AH-64D aircraft, AH-64D aircraft (without radar), UH-60 aircraft if applicable, and OH-58D.</li> <li><b>h.</b> Determined depth of sector and developed platoon or team rotation plans for continuous operations throughout the duration of the mission.</li> <li><b>i.</b> Supervised preparation and execution of operations.</li> <li><b>j.</b> Supervised the company and revised the OPORD.</li> <li><b>k.</b> Ensured all elements are prepared to conduct the operation.</li> </ul> <p><b>4.</b> Mission planning conducted according to unit standards and applicable field manuals.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>a.</b> All planning tools are available and command post (CP) was organized to optimize planning.</li> <li><b>b.</b> No critical items were overlooked in the planning phase.</li> <li><b>c.</b> Coordinated planning with higher, supported and supporting units.</li> <li><b>d.</b> Planning completed within timeline.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p><b>5.</b> Air mission brief (AMB) conducted according to unit tactical standing operating procedure (TACSOP).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Aircrew mission packets provided all relevant mission information.</li> <li>b. Aircrew graphics were complete and accurate.</li> <li>c. Mission, intent and concept of the operation, was supported by all aircrews.</li> </ul> <p><b>6.</b> Unit conducts company level rehearsal.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Rehearsal covered all key mission events.</li> <li>b. Crew and team specific responsibilities, sequence and timing of actions, and mission contingencies understood by all aircrews.</li> </ul> <p><b>7.</b> Unit completes mission preparation.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. All precombat inspection (PCI)/precombat checks (PCCs) conducted according to unit standards and AMB.</li> <li>b. Plan adapted to cope with changing friendly or enemy situation.</li> <li>c. Conducted aircrew final update.</li> <li>d. Required number of aircraft ready to launch.</li> </ul> <p><b>*8.</b> Commander/leader performs or delegates performance of the steps in the risk management process for each step in troop-leading procedures (see appendix C.)</p> <p>* Indicates a leader task step</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
Total Task Steps Evaluated							
Total Task Steps GO							
Training Status GO/NO-GO							

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
011-141-1059	Operate the aviation mission planning system (AMPS)	STP 1-15P1-SM
011-141-4414	Manage the aviation mission planning system (AMPS)	STP 1-15P24-SM-TG
011-237-2012	Perform tactical flight mission planning (UH-60)	STP 1-15-219
011-237-2054	Perform fast-rope insertion and extraction (FRIES) operations(UH-60)	STP 1-15-219-OS TC 1-237 STP 1-15II-500-MQS STP 1-TACOPS TC 1-237
011-237-2056	Perform rappelling procedures (UH-60)	STP 1-TACOPS TC 1-237 STP 1-TACOPS

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
011-237-2058	Perform special patrol infiltration/exfiltration (SPIES) operations(UH-60)	TC 1-237
011-237-2066	Perform extended range fuel system (ERFS) procedures (UH-60)	STP 1-TACOPS TC 1-237
011-237-2086	Operate aviator's night vision imaging system (ANVIS) heads-up display (HUD) (UH-60)	STP 1-TACOPS TC 1-237
011-237-4254	Perform Vh Check (UH-60)	STP 1-TACOPS TC 1-237
011-237-4274	Perform in-flight communication/navigation/ flight instruments checks (UH-60)	STP 1-TACOPS TC 1-237
011-237-4276	Perform special/detailed procedures (UH-60)	STP 1-TACOPS TC 1-237
011-420-0025	Integrate aircraft survivability equipment (ASE) in mission planning	STP 1-TACOPS MOS W 153D 3
011-510-0026	Operate aviation mission planning system (AMPS)	STP 1-15 I  STP 1-15II-500-MQS

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
01-1-5130	Conduct battalion air assault operations	ARTEP 1-113-MTP
01-1-5134	Plan aviation operations using the military decision making process	ARTEP 1-113-MTP  ARTEP 1-118-MTP ARTEP 1-126-MTP
01-1-5151	Plan aviation air assault operations (UH-60)	ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-118-MTP
01-2-0341	Perform composite risk management procedures	ARTEP 1-113-MTP
01-2-5218	Perform air assault operations	ARTEP 1-126-MTP ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-118-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**



**ELEMENT:** ASSAULT COMPANY

**TASK: Perform Hasty Assembly Area Displacement (01-2-5204)**

(FM 3-04.111)	(FM 1-100)	(FM 1-113)
(FM 3-0)	(FM 3-100.12)	(FM 71-100-3)
(TC 1-201)	(TC 1-237)	

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The battalion is in a simulated (live, virtual, or constructive) combat environment. The company has received an operation order (OPORD)/fragmentary order (FRAGO) and the commander's guidance. The main command post (CP) is operational. The staff sections, digital and/or analog systems, are functioning. Reports are being received through normal channels. The company is directed to conduct a hasty displacement when contact with threat forces has been broken. Indirect fire and smoke support will be provided to cover the move. Initial movement preparations have been made. Simulated destruction of supplies, documents, and equipment has been coordinated with the battalion CP. Simulated emergency burials have been authorized by the battalion commander. Some iterations of this task should be performed in mission-oriented protective posture level 4 (MOPP4).

**TASK STANDARDS:** The company relocated within the time specified in the OPORD/FRAGO. No serviceable supplies, equipment, or recognizable documents of military value were left behind.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>*1. The commander gained and/or maintained situational understanding using information gathered from Force XXI Battle Command Brigade and Below (FBCB2), frequency modulated (FM), digital and or analog communications systems, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources.</p> <p>*2. The commander or first sergeant (1SG) supervises hasty displacement.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Assembled Soldiers at designated area.</li> <li>b. Briefed troops on the hasty displacement plan.</li> <li>c. Assigned tasks to sections or platoons.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Burial of casualties.</li> <li>(2) Destruction of supplies, equipment, and documents.</li> <li>(3) Load out.</li> <li>(4) Security of the unit during evacuation of the assembly area (AA).</li> </ul> </li> <li>d. Designated vehicles to transport wounded Soldiers.</li> <li>e. Coordinated indirect fire and smoke support.</li> <li>f. Briefed stay-behind security force.</li> <li>g. Forwarded SITREP to the battalion CP.</li> </ul> <p>3. The company conducts emergency burials.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Placed personal effects in bags.</li> <li>b. Attached identification personal effects tags to remains.</li> <li>c. Forwarded casualty feeder reports and witness statements to S1.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>d. Buried remains in unmarked, mass grave.</p> <p>e. Placed casualty identification tags on a wire/chain in the same order the remains were buried.</p> <p>f. Included an index marker that showed the first or the last interred remains and the direction of succession through the gravesite, if identification tags are placed on a closed loop.</p> <p>g. Prepared strip map with grid coordinates and terrain features of burial site.</p> <p>4. The company destroys supplies, equipment, and documents left behind.</p> <p>a. Destroyed documents according to the unit standing operating procedure (SOP).</p> <p>b. Destroyed supplies according to the unit SOP.</p> <p>c. Rendered equipment inoperative according to the unit SOP.</p> <p>5. The company departs the area.</p> <p>a. Loaded equipment according to commander's guidance.</p> <p>b. Exited area without confusion and excessive noise.</p> <p>c. Assembled at predestinated area.</p> <p>6. Stay-behind security force covers company displacement.</p> <p>a. Occupied fighting positions.</p> <p>b. Engaged threat with all available weapons to delay or disrupt advance.</p> <p>c. Performed disengagement under fire.</p> <p>d. Exited area by available means.</p> <p>*7. Commander/leader performs or delegates performance of the steps in the risk management process for each step in troop-leading procedures (appendix C).</p> <p>* Indicates a leader task step</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
Total Task Steps Evaluated							
Total Task Steps GO							
Training Status GO/NO-GO							

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
011-237-2010	Perform multi-aircraft operations (UH-60)	TC 1-237
011-237-2012	Perform tactical flight mission planning (UH-60)	STP 1-TACOPS
011-237-2022	Transmit tactical reports (UH-60)	TC 1-237
011-237-2042	Perform actions on contact (UH-60)	STP 1-TACOPS
		TC 1-237
		STP 1-TACOPS
		TC 1-237
		STP 1-TACOPS

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
011-237-2086	Operate aviator's night vision imaging system (ANVIS) heads-up display (HUD) (UH-60)	TC 1-237
011-237-2098	Perform aerial radio relay (UH-60)	STP 1-TACOPS TC 1-237
011-510-0300	Coordinate staff duties/responsibilities in tactical units	STP 1-TACOPS STP 1-15 II
011-510-0303	Conduct operations missions briefing/debriefing	STP 1-15 II
011-510-0503	Perform company-level command post operations	STP 1-15 II
011-510-0505	Conduct company-level briefing/rehearsals/after-action reviews	STP 1-15 II

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
01-1-5134	Plan aviation operations using the military decision making process	ARTEP 1-113-MTP
01-2-0341	Perform composite risk management procedures	ARTEP 1-118-MTP ARTEP 1-126-MTP ARTEP 1-113-MTP
01-2-5158	Control an assembly area	ARTEP 1-126-MTP ARTEP 1-113-MTP
01-2-5160	Perform troop-leading procedures	ARTEP 1-126-MTP ARTEP 1-113-MTP
55-2-4001	Plan unit move	ARTEP 1-126-MTP ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-118-MTP ARTEP 1-126-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** ASSAULT COMPANY  
COMPANY

**TASK: Perform Air Assault Operations (01-2-5218)**

(FM 90-4)	(FM 1-100)	(FM 1-113)
(FM 3-04.111)	(FM 3-04.300)	(FM 3-04.513)
(FM 3-07)	(FM 3-100.4)	(FM 3-100.12)
(FM 4-0)	(FM 71-100-3)	(TC 1-201)
(TC 1-210)	(TC 1-237)	

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The battalion is in a simulated (live, virtual, or constructive) combat environment. The unit has received an operation order (OPORD)/fragmentary order (FRAGO) and the commander's guidance. The main command post (CP) is operational and the staff sections, digital and or analog systems, are functioning. Reports are being received through normal channels. Combat service support (CSS) and maintenance/logistics assets are available. The assault helicopter battalion (AHB) is conducting operations independently or as part of a higher headquarters. The unit has been provided guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and or rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task should be performed in mission-oriented protective posture level 4 (MOPP4).

**TASK STANDARDS:** The unit performed the air assault operations within the time constraints specified in the OPORD/FRAGO. Mission accomplishment was enhanced by careful planning and coordination. The use of proper tactics, techniques, and procedures was adopted. The unit may conduct an air assault artillery raid within the time constraints specified in the OPORD/FRAGO and according to tactical standing operating procedures, the order, and or higher commander's guidance. Mission accomplishment was enhanced by careful planning and the use of proper tactics, techniques, and procedures.

**Note.** Coordination of the air assault operation can involve the movement of friendly assault forces (combat, combat support [CS], and CSS) by rotary-wing aircraft to engage and destroy enemy forces or to seize and hold key terrain, smaller air assault operations include; team insertion, fast rope insertion and extraction system (FRIES) and special patrol infiltration/exfiltration system (SPIES) operations, and artillery raids. The air assault operations can involve air artillery raids which are a high-risk, short duration air assault operation. Air assault artillery raid is used to facilitate the attack of high payoff targets (HPTs) located beyond the range of current friendly artillery positions and/or targets tactically "out of reach" of other available fire support (FS) or maneuver systems. Detailed planning, accurate fires of sufficient volume, and speed in execution are key to its success. Minimal required equipment and personnel should be taken. The artillery raid is identical to an air assault in terms of planning and execution.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>*1. The commander conducts troop-leading procedures.</p> <hr/> <p><b>Note.</b> Unit leaders gain and or maintain situational understanding using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources.</p> <hr/>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>2. The air mission commander coordinates air assault requirements.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Air mission commander and/or representatives attend the initial planning conference (IPC). Reviewed the liaison officer's coordination to include— <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Reviewed the number of aircraft available, as well as passenger and cargo capabilities.</li> <li>(2) Reviewed the staging, loading, air movement, landing plans, ground tactical plans.</li> <li>(3) Reviewed the air movement tables.</li> <li>(4) Reviewed the landing zone (LZ)/pick up zone (PZ) selection and preparation.</li> <li>(5) Reviewed the primary/alternate flight routes.</li> <li>(6) Reviewed the airspace coordination.</li> <li>(7) Reviewed the security plan.</li> <li>(8) Reviewed the fire support plan.</li> <li>(9) Reviewed the command and control (C2) plan.</li> </ul> </li> <li>b. Determined forward arming and refueling point (FARP) locations and capabilities.</li> <li>c. Coordinated control measures with air cavalry, attack, and close air support (CAS) elements.</li> <li>d. Air mission commander and/or representatives attend the air mission brief to finalize all coordination with supported unit.</li> </ul> <p>3. The air mission commander conducts the aircrew brief and air assault rehearsal.</p> <p>4. The air mission commander controls the air mission.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Designated a flight lead, serial commanders, if required.</li> <li>b. Interacted with the air assault task force (AATF) commander directly on all matters relating to the air assault.</li> <li>c. Provided information to the AATF liaison officer.</li> </ul> <p>5. Unit conducts staging operations.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Moved along designated routes to the staging area.</li> <li>b. Arrived at staging area at time designated in air movement table.</li> <li>c. Contacted the PZ control officer to initiate loading operations.</li> <li>d. Contacted the supporting aviation elements (such as attack and air cavalry units), if employed.</li> </ul> <p>6. Aircrews conduct loading operations.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Supervised loading of their assigned aircraft as specified in movement table.</li> <li>b. Exercised bump plan as directed by the PZ control officer.</li> </ul> <p>7. Unit conducts air movement operations.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Departed PZs at times indicated in air movement table.</li> <li>b. Moved along preplanned routes.</li> <li>c. Employed appropriate movement techniques.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>d. Employed appropriate terrain flight techniques.</p> <p>e. Executed the fire support plan, if necessary.</p> <p>f. Conducted deception operations, such as false insertion as necessary.</p> <p>8. Unit conducts landing operations.</p> <p>a. Arrived at LZs as specified in the air movement table.</p> <p>b. Ensured expeditious unloading of troops and equipment immediately upon landing.</p> <p>c. Ensured proper landing alignment on subsequent lifts into an LZ in order to facilitate ground troop's rapid assembly.</p> <p>d. Provided casualty evacuation, as required.</p> <p>9. Unit conducts air assault artillery landing operations.</p> <p>a. Arrived at LZs as specified in the air movement table.</p> <p>b. Ensured expeditious unloading of troops and equipment immediately upon landing.</p> <p>c. Ensured proper landing alignment on subsequent lifts into an LZ in order to facilitate ground troops rapid assembly.</p> <p>d. Provided casualty evacuation, as required.</p> <p>10. The air assault artillery raid technique consists of—</p> <p>a. Air assaulted a firing element forwarded to fire a specific mission.</p> <p>b. Extracted the element via helicopter immediately after the mission was completed.</p> <p>c. Mission was separate from a maneuver air assault but was used as an alternative to the battery offset technique based on mission, enemy, terrain and weather, troops and support available, time available, and civil considerations (METT-TC).</p> <p>d. Used when a stationary, high value target required attack by indirect fires, the fires were needed for a short time only, and adequate observation of the target was provided.</p> <p>e. Quick and timely execution (in and out ) was of the essence. (Target analysis determined the number of howitzers and the amount of ammunition required for the raid.)</p> <p>*11. Commander/leader performs or delegates performance of the steps in the risk management process for each step in troop-leading procedures (appendix C).</p> <p>* Indicates a leader task step</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
Total Task Steps Evaluated							
Total Task Steps GO							
Training Status GO/NO-GO							

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
011-237-2010	Perform multi-aircraft operations (UH-60)	TC 1-237 STP 1-TACOPS
011-237-2012	Perform tactical flight mission planning (UH-60)	TC 1-237
011-237-2022	Transmit tactical reports (UH-60)	STP 1-TACOPS TC 1-237
011-237-2024	Perform terrain flight navigation (UH-60)	STP 1-TACOPS TC 1-237
011-237-2026	Perform terrain flight (UH-60)	STP 1-TACOPS TC 1-237
011-237-2036	Perform terrain flight deceleration (UH-60)	STP 1-TACOPS TC 1-237
011-237-2048	Perform external load operations (UH-60)	STP 1-TACOPS TC 1-237
011-501-0003	Plan air assault operations	STP 1-TACOPS STP 1-15 I
011-510-0013	Employ air assault operations	STP 1-15II-500-MQS STP 1-15 II

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
01-2-0341	Perform composite risk management procedures	ARTEP 1-113-MTP
01-2-5206	Perform air assault artillery raid operations	ARTEP 1-126-MTP ARTEP 1-113-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENT:** COMPANY

**TASK: Perform Aviation Urban Operations at Company Level (01-2-7759)**

(FM 3-06)	(FM 1-100)	(FM 3-04.126)
(FM 1-113)	(FM 3-0)	(FM 3-04.111)
(FM 3-04.126)	(FM 3-06.1)	(FM 3-06.11)
(FM 5-0)		

**ITERATION:** 1      2      3      4      5      M      (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T      P      U      (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The battalion is performing aviation urban operations in a simulated (live, virtual, or constructive) combat environment. The staff has received an operation order (OPORD)/fragmentary order (FRAGO) and the commander's guidance. The main command post (CP) is operational and the staff sections, with digital and or analog systems, are functioning. Reports are being received through normal channels. Offensive, defensive, stability, or support operations (ODSS) may be required. Some iterations of this task should be performed in mission-oriented protective posture level 4 (MOPP4).

**TASK STANDARDS:** The battalion supported the aviation operation with adequate resources to accomplish the mission. All missions were performed within the specified time frame. Collateral damage to facilities and noncombatants was minimized. There were no violations of the rules of engagement (ROE). Fratricide did not occur.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p><b>Note.</b> ODSS operations in urban terrain generally follow the same planning and execution concepts as in other terrain. These are addressed in other training and evaluation outlines. The requirement will exist for special planning and consideration of the characteristics unique to urban terrain.</p> <hr/> <p>1. The battalion S3 completed the planning of the coordination of aviation urban operations.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Analyzed urban area characteristics during planning.</li> <li>b. Provided guidance to staff.</li> <li>c. Considered urban related intelligence preparation of the battlefield (IPB) and urban unique fire support requirements.</li> <li>d. Considered urban unique communications requirements.</li> <li>e. Developed an urban area map.</li> </ul> <hr/> <p><b>Note.</b> See collective task 01-1-0330, Plan aviation urban operations for more details.</p> <hr/> <p>2. Companies continually perform aviation urban operations.</p>		



TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p><b>Note.</b> The task steps below will be accomplished using ABCS when indicated in the performance measures. When preformatted message do not exist, free text messages may be substituted for other Force XXI Battle Command Brigade and Below (FBCB2) and maneuver control system (MCS) messages identified in task steps and performance measures below. Battalions without ABCS will substitute appropriate SOP procedures for task steps that require ABCS. This task and performance measures augment those associated with planning and executing offensive, defensive, security and stability, or support tasks.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Perform reconnaissance, and or air assault, focusing on avenues of approach, surrounding urban terrain, and the terrain and situation within the urban area.</li> <li>b. Selected weapons to produce the desired effect on the target. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) The commander's intent.</li> <li>(2) Rules of engagement.</li> <li>(3) Day or night employment.</li> <li>(4) Target type.</li> <li>(5) Proximity of buildings (the objective's size, patterns, population density, structural density, and building construction).</li> <li>(6) Friendly/noncombatant positions.</li> <li>(7) Weather and visibility conditions.</li> <li>(8) Restrictions to weapons deployment and acquisition ranges.</li> <li>(9) Minimizing collateral damage.</li> </ol> </li> <li>c. Considered characteristics unique to urban terrain, including: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Effects of structural interference and line-of-sight disruption on radios, radar, sensors, and flight instruments.</li> <li>(2) Effects of city lights, higher surface temperatures, thermal crossover on sensors.</li> <li>(3) Unpredictability of wind turbulence and effects around buildings.</li> </ol> </li> <li>d. Used ingress, egress, and contingency routes to minimize the duration of flight over urban terrain.</li> <li>e. Used alternate routes to avoid predictability.</li> <li>f. Employed assets to block enemy resupply and/or reinforcement of, or withdrawal from the objective.</li> <li>g. Provided communications retransmission to reduce communications limitations, air/ground and ground/ground, as required.</li> <li>h. Followed established control measures and ROE to limit collateral damage and avoid fratricide.</li> <li>i. Used available sensors and other methods to distinguish between friend, foe, and noncombatants.</li> </ol> <p>3. Aviation companies performing urban operations—</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Assessed the urban area to determine decisive points.</li> <li>b. Shaped the operation to set the conditions for success.</li> <li>c. Precisely massed the effects of combat power to rapidly dominate the area.</li> </ol>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>d. Transitioned the urban area to the control of another agency or back to legitimate civilian control.</p> <p>4. For aviation companies to operate successfully in a complex urban environment requires rigorous, realistic unit order (UO) training. Training is performed by the complete combined arms team and covers the full range of Army operations. UO training should—</p> <p>a. Replicated the psychological impact of intense, close combat against a well-trained enemy.</p> <p>b. Replicated the effects of noncombatants in close proximity to Army forces.</p> <p>c. Replicated the medical and logistic problems associated with operations in an urban area.</p> <p>5. Aviation companies should support the urban environment that has an identifiable system of components that constantly change and interact. Terrain, the society, and the infrastructure that links the two together overlap and are interdependent.</p> <p>6. Aviation companies should analyzing the terrain, the society, and the infrastructure's elements, along with the other factors of—</p> <p>a. Thoroughly analyzed factors of the mission, enemy, weather, and troops.</p> <p>b. Thoroughly analyzed factors of support available, time, and civil considerations.</p> <p>(1) Factors contributed to commanders' situational understanding.</p> <p>(2) Factors potentially lessened the number and cost of close combat engagements.</p> <p>(3) Factors allowed company to develop courses of action that applied appropriate resources against decisive points.</p> <p>7. During an UO, aviation companies should have systems with means to transmit information from place to place.</p> <p>a. Transmitted information by telecommunications, such as telephones, telegraphs, radios, televisions, and computers.</p> <p>b. Transmitted information by police, fire, and rescue communications systems.</p> <p>c. Transmitted information by the postal system.</p> <p>d. Transmitted information by using newspapers, magazines, and other forms of print media.</p> <p>e. Transmitted information by human interaction that conveys information.</p> <p>8. During an UO, aviation companies use available transportation and distribution elements of the infrastructure consisting of—</p> <p>a. Used cableways and tramways.</p> <p>b. Used networked highways and railways to include bridges, subways and tunnels, underpasses and overpasses, ferries, and fords.</p> <p>c. Used airports, seaplane stations, and heliports.</p> <p>d. Used mass transit.</p> <p>e. Used trucking companies and delivery services that facilitated the movement of supplies, equipment, and people.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p><b>9.</b> Aviation urban operations involve companies being knowledgeable of the local economics and commerce systems.</p> <p><b>a.</b> Business and financial centers to include stores, shops, restaurants, hotels, marketplaces, banks, trading centers, and business offices.</p> <p><b>b.</b> Outlying industrial and agricultural features to include strip malls, farms, food storage centers, manufacturing plants, and mills.</p> <p><b>10.</b> Aviation companies are aware of the local administration and human services.</p> <p><b>a.</b> Was aware of the government services that include embassies and diplomatic organizations.</p> <p><b>b.</b> Was aware of the activities that manage vital records (such as birth certificates and deeds).</p> <p><b>c.</b> Was aware of the local judicial system.</p> <p><b>d.</b> Was aware of the local welfare systems.</p> <p><b>e.</b> Was aware of the schools and universities.</p> <p><b>f.</b> Was aware of the religious organizations and their churches and shrines.</p> <p><b>g.</b> Was aware of the historic monuments and other cultural resources.</p> <p><b>h.</b> Was aware of the water supply systems.</p> <p><b>i.</b> Was aware of the waste and hazardous material storage and processing facilities.</p> <p><b>j.</b> Was aware of the emergency services (such as police, fire, and rescue).</p> <p><b>*11.</b> Identify and control hazards according to risk management procedures in appendix C.</p> <p>* Indicates a leader task step</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
Total Task Steps Evaluated							
Total Task Steps GO							
Training Status GO/NO-GO							

### SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
011-143-3008	Coordinate aircraft movement and identification with local air defense units	MOS E 15Q 4
011-510-0004	Employ combat service support	STP 1-15 II
011-510-0007	Employ aviation in offensive operations	STP 1-15 II
011-510-0008	Employ aviation in defensive operations	STP 1-15 II
011-510-0020	Apply fundamentals of Army aviation in military operations in urban terrain (MOUT)	STP 1-15 II
011-510-0021	Employ fundamentals of Army operations	STP 1-15 II
011-510-0304	Conduct battalion/brigade rehearsal	STP 1-15 II
011-510-0306	Perform personnel/administration staff duties/responsibilities	STP 1-15 II

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
01-2-0341	Perform composite risk management procedures	ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-126-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** AVIATION SUPPORT COMPANY  
 COMPANY  
 ASSAULT PLATOON

**TASK: Provide Pathfinder Support (01-3-1353)**

(FM 3-21.38)	(FM 1-100)	(FM 3-100.4)
(FM 3-04.513)	(FM 3-100.12)	(FM 4-0)
(FM 10-450-3)	(FM 10-450-4)	(FM 24-1)
(FM 24-18)	(FM 21-60)	(FM 90-4)
(TC 1-237)		

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The battalion is in a simulated (live, virtual or constructive) combat environment. The main command post (CP) is operational. The staff sections, analog and or digital, are functioning. The pathfinder platoon/section receives an operation order (OPORD)/fragmentary order (FRAGO) to establish a landing zone (LZ), pickup zone (PZ), or drop zone (DZ). Some iterations of this task should be performed in mission-oriented protective posture level 4 (MOPP4).

**TASK STANDARDS:** As a result of proper reconnaissance techniques, the location of the LZ/PZ/DZ was not compromised. The pathfinders established the LZ/PZ/DZ within the specified time frame. All hazards to safe operations were detected and eliminated prior to commencing operations. Aircraft flow was safe and expeditious as a result of positive and effective air traffic control.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>*1. The commander gained and/or maintained situational understanding using information gathered from Force XXI Battle Command Brigade and Below (FBCB2), frequency modulated (FM), digital and or analog communications systems, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources.</p> <p>2. Pathfinders confirm site for the LZ/PZ, and/or DZ.</p> <p>a. Conducted a site reconnaissance.</p> <p>(1) Navigated to the LZ/PZ/DZ location.</p> <p>(2) Infiltrated the LZ/PZ/DZ.</p> <p>(3) Established concealed observation positions.</p> <p>(4) Determined opposing forces (OPFOR) activity.</p> <p>(5) Reported to headquarters using FBCB2.</p> <p>b. Analyzed site suitability.</p> <p>(1) Determined the length and width of the selected site.</p> <p>(2) Determined the soil/surface conditions.</p> <p>(3) Calculated ground slope within the site.</p> <p>(4) Determined trafficability within the area for ground support.</p> <p>(5) Measured/observed prevailing winds.</p> <p>(6) Identified obstacles within and surrounding the site.</p> <p>(7) Determined approach and departure directions.</p> <p>(8) Measured obstacles affecting approach and departure routes.</p> <p>(9) Analyzed alternate site suitability as directed.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>(10) Reported information to headquarters using FBCB2.</p> <p>3. Pathfinders prepare the LZ/PZ/DZ.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Established local security.</li> <li>b. Established communications.</li> <li>c. Coordinated the arrival of the supported unit.</li> <li>d. Marked and/or removed obstacles.</li> <li>e. Camouflaged positions.</li> </ul> <p>4. Pathfinders perform LZ/PZ operations.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Controlled the LZ/PZ. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Established the LZ/PZ control center (CC) <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) Selected a control site along the axis of flight but displaced from the landing site.</li> <li>(b) Prepared a supplementary position for the CC to serve as a manual release point or final approach fix in reduced visibility conditions.</li> <li>(c) Coordinated all aircraft movement into, out of, and around the LZ/PZ.</li> </ul> </li> <li>(2) Provided air traffic advisories to aircraft. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) Established air traffic patterns (if tactically feasible).</li> <li>(b) Established air control points to control ingress and egress of aircraft.</li> <li>(c) Maintained aircraft or unit separation.</li> <li>(d) Issued landing, takeoff, and equipment drop clearances.</li> </ul> </li> <li>(3) Established the landing site (site party has already been established). <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) Determined landing sites.</li> <li>(b) Marked landing sites with marker panels and/or lights as required.</li> <li>(c) Determined the intercept heading from the release point to the landing sites.</li> <li>(d) Determined landing formations best suited for the LZ/PZ.</li> <li>(e) Designated slingload points</li> <li>(f) Cleared slingload and touchdown points.</li> <li>(g) Arranged personnel and loads for air movement.</li> </ul> </li> <li>(4) Established communications. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) Operated a ground-to air (GTA) radio net.</li> <li>(b) Operated an internal pathfinder net as required.</li> </ul> </li> </ul> </li> <li>b. Conducted LZ/PZ operations for an air assault. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Assisted with aircraft landing.</li> <li>(2) Directed air assault ground elements to landing sites.</li> <li>(3) Assisted with loading personnel into aircraft.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>c. Conducted LZ/PZ operations for an air movement operation.</p> <p>(1) Organized load and slingload points.</p> <p>(a) Determined appropriate landing point for slingloads.</p> <p>(b) Checked the weight, rigging, and positioning of loads.</p> <p>(2) Provided advice and technical assistance to the supported unit.</p> <p>(3) Supervised the rigging and inspection of loads.</p> <p>d. Maintained records of aircraft arrivals, departures, and type loads.</p> <p>e. Reported information to headquarters using FBCB2.</p> <p>5. Pathfinders perform DZ operations.</p> <p>a. Established a DZ.</p> <p>(1) Organized a DZ support team.</p> <p>(2) Checked equipment for current calibration.</p> <p>(3) Selected the location of the CC.</p> <p>(4) Selected the point of impact (PI) location.</p> <p>(5) Selected the release point (RP) location.</p> <p>(6) Conducted the final ground and aerial reconnaissance at least 1 hour before drop time.</p> <p>(7) Provided visual acquisition aids.</p> <p>b. Maintained positive control of drop operations.</p> <p>c. Maintained records of aircraft arrivals, departures, and type loads.</p> <p>d. Reported information to headquarters using FBCB2.</p> <p>*6. Commander/leader performs or delegates the performance of the steps in the risk management process for each step in troop-leading procedures (see appendix C).</p> <p>* Indicates a leader task step</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
Total Task Steps Evaluated							
Total Task Steps GO							
Training Status GO/NO-GO							

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
011-141-1052	Operate SINCGARS equipment	STP 1-15P1-SM
011-143-0008	Conduct landing zone/pick up zone (LZ/PZ) operations	MOS E 15Q 1
011-237-2012	Perform tactical flight mission planning (UH-60)	TC 1-237
011-237-2026	Perform terrain flight (UH-60)	STP 1-TACOPS TC 1-237
011-420-0018	Integrate Army airspace command and control (A2C2)	STP 1-TACOPS MOS W 153D 3
		STP 1-150-155

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
01-2-2036.01-0111	Report information	ARTEP 1-111-MTP ARTEP 1-111-MTP
01-2-2051.01-0111	Employ passive air defense measures	ARTEP 1-111-MTP ARTEP 1-111-MTP
01-2-2052.01-0111	Employ active air defense measures	ARTEP 1-111-MTP ARTEP 1-111-MTP
44-2-0220	Employ passive air defense measures	ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-126-MTP
44-2-0221	Employ active combined arms air defense measures	ARTEP 1-113-MTP  ARTEP 1-126-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**



**ELEMENT:** COMPANY

**TASK: Plan Unit Move (55-2-4001)**

- |               |               |               |
|---------------|---------------|---------------|
| (FM 3-04.111) | (FM 1-100)    | (FM 1-113)    |
| (FM 3-04.126) | (FM 3-100.12) | (FM 4-01.011) |
| (FM 4-01.30)  | (FM 55-30)    | (FM 7-0)      |
| (FM 7-1)      | (FM 100-17)   |               |

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The unit receives a warning notice from higher headquarters of a tentative relocation and must plan a unit move. More details are received prior to completion of this task. The unit has analog and digital communications with higher headquarters. The higher headquarters operation order (OPORD), the unit tactical standing operating procedure (TACSOP), and higher headquarters TACSOP are available. Higher headquarters staff element coordinates external support requirements. Tentative new areas forward and rear have been designated by higher headquarters staff element in the contingency plans. Movement can occur in a field or urban environment. After movement analysis, the commander assembles key leaders who provide current personnel and equipment status reports. The TACSOP with movement readiness levels and current loading plans are available. Higher headquarters staff element issues maps with tentative locations. Situation changes may cause the unit to echelon its displacement. Support is required at the old site until the new site is operational. This task is performed under all environmental conditions, both day and night. The unit is subject to air, chemical, biological, radiological, and nuclear (CBRN) and ground level 1 threat forces attack. Some iterations of this task should be performed in mission-oriented protective posture level 4 (MOPP4). Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The displacement plan is completed based on movement procedures and policies in the TACSOP, warning order, and movement order. At MOPP4, performance degradation factors increase planning completion time.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>*1. Commander conducts analysis of the movement.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Identified all specified and implied movement tasks in the warning notice.</li> <li>b. Identified all documented relocation policies and procedures required from the higher headquarters TACSOP and movement order, and the unit TACSOP.</li> <li>c. Listed all essential tasks required to relocate the unit in one or more lifts.</li> <li>d. Identified all movement constraints that could be identified by hard copy or digital tactical map or a map reconnaissance of possible routes from old to new site.</li> <li>e. Issued warning notice to all the unit's subordinate elements using analog or digital communications or messenger.</li> <li>f. Applied risk management processes as an integrated feature of task performance according to FM 100-14.</li> </ul> <p>2. Unit headquarters coordinates for additional support requirements.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Coordinated convoy marking equipment, vehicles, and other equipment requirements with higher headquarters staff element using analog and digital communications.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>b. Coordinated tactical information and security requirements with higher headquarters staff element using analog and digital communications or messenger.</li> <li>c. Coordinated combat health support (CHS) requirements with higher headquarters staff element using analog and digital communications or messenger.</li> </ul> <p>3. Unit headquarters prepares and briefs the stay behind party plan.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Coordinated stay-behind party requirements with higher headquarters staff element using analog and digital communications.</li> <li>b. Identified stay-behind party leader and composition based on higher headquarters staff element requirements.</li> <li>c. Identified all operational limitations and security requirements in coordination with higher headquarters staff element using analog and digital communications.</li> <li>d. Designated assembly area location for stay-behind party that provided cover and concealment and did not interfere with departure of the main body from the area.</li> <li>e. Briefed party leader on the commander's intent, operational and security requirements, communications, and site close-down procedures.</li> <li>f. Forwarded location(s) of stay behind facilities to higher headquarters staff element using analog and digital communications or messenger.</li> </ul> <p>*4. Commander and unit leaders prepare a displacement plan.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Calculated unit's operational readiness level by using all vehicle, equipment, and personnel status reports.</li> <li>b. Coordinated repair of inoperable vehicles and equipment and repair time restrictions with the unit's maintenance element.</li> </ul>		
<hr/> <p><b>Note.</b> This measure only applies to those units with a maintenance element.</p> <hr/>		
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>c. Listed sequentially all tasks required to relocate the unit.</li> <li>d. Listed all equipment required to relocate the unit.</li> <li>e. Assigned time limitations for the completion of each relocation task.</li> <li>f. Adjusted load plans to accommodate current operational readiness levels.</li> <li>g. Designated personnel and equipment for advance/quartering and reconnaissance parties.</li> <li>h. Assigned all relocation tasks to specific elements.</li> <li>i. Designated uniform, weapons and equipment requirements for road march.</li> <li>j. Designated the convoy commander to control unit elements from start point (SP) to release point (RP).</li> <li>k. Briefed relocation plan to higher headquarters staff element.</li> <li>l. Briefed all unit personnel on relocation plan.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>m. Applied risk management processes as an integrated feature of task performance according to FM 100-14.</p> <p>*5. Commander/leader performs or delegates performance of the steps in the risk management process for each step in troop-leading procedures (appendix C).</p> <p>* Indicates a leader task step</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
Total Task Steps Evaluated							
Total Task Steps GO							
Training Status GO/NO-GO							

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
011-501-0012	Coordinate aviation deployment	STP 1-15 I STP 1-15II-500-MQS
011-501-0015	Plan stability and support operations (SASO)	STP 1-15 I STP 1-15II-500-MQS
011-501-0017	Conduct aviation command, control, and communication (C3) operations at unit level	STP 1-15 I  STP 1-15II-500-MQS

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
01-2-0341	Perform composite risk management procedures	ARTEP 1-113-MTP
01-2-5160	Perform troop-leading procedures	ARTEP 1-126-MTP ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-126-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** COMMAND SECTION  
 S3 SECTION  
 BATTALION

**TASK: Plan Fire Mission in Support of Aviation Operations (01-1-5142)**  
 (FM 3-04.111) (FM 1-100) (FM 1-113)  
 (FM 3-0) (FM 3-04.126) (FM 3-09.31)  
 (FM 3-100.12) (FM 3-20.98) (FM 7-1)  
 (TC 1-237)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The battalion is conducting assigned missions in a simulated (live, virtual, or constructive) combat environment. The battalion's main command post (CP) is operational, staff and digital systems are functional. The battalion staff has received an operation order (OPORD)/fragmentary order (FRAGO) and the commander's guidance to coordinate fire support. The S3 section is making coordination for fire support of an assigned and/or attached unit that has been ordered to conduct a movement to contact, attack, and conduct reconnaissance or security operations. Both enemy and friendly forces have indirect fire and close air support (CAS) available. The unit's aviation mission planning system (AMPS) is available, operational and contains all enemy and friendly locations and graphic control measures provided by the higher headquarters. Some iterations of this task should be performed in mission-oriented protective posture level 4 (MOPP4).

**TASK STANDARDS:** Fire support element (FSE) with guidance from the battalion commander and input from the S3 and company commanders, coordinated fires that supported the commander's scheme of maneuver, cover likely enemy counter attack routes, and key terrain. There were no casualties from friendly fires caused by improper coordination.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>1. The S3 section, with the S2 assistance, develops direct and indirect fire plan.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Discussed levels of target effect (delay, disrupt, and destroy).</li> <li>b. Determined who was the main effort and received priority of fires.</li> <li>c. Determined whether priority targets be given to companies or teams.</li> <li>d. Discussed how many pre-planned and immediate sorties are available.</li> <li>e. Used the corps and division artillery commander's attack guidance matrix to determine available fires, including multiple launch rocket system (MLRS) and Army tactical missile system (ATACM) when conducting attack reconnaissance operations.</li> <li>f. Determined whether the use of smoke or dual purpose improved conventional munitions (DPICM) is restricted.</li> <li>g. Determined fire support coordination measures (fire support coordination line [FSCL], restrictive fire line [RFL], restricted fire area [RFA], no-fire area [NFA]).</li> <li>h. Determine who controls release of DPICM smoke. (brigade or battalion commander?)</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p><b>*2.</b> The fire support officer (FSO) develops and coordinates fir support.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>a.</b> Developed a fire support plan in concert with the battalion's commander's plans, guidance, and intent.</li> <li><b>b.</b> Integrated battalion's fire plan into company operations.</li> <li><b>c.</b> Augmented the fires of the battalion commander's guidance to ensure that fires are planned from the line of departure (LD)/line of contact (LC) to the objective, on the objective and beyond the objective.</li> <li><b>d.</b> Coordinated a plan for the use of priority targets (if allocated by higher headquarters) addressing targets in depth, timing, commencement and control of those fires.</li> <li><b>e.</b> Coordinated fires which included— <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>(1)</b> Planned suppression of enemy air defense (SEAD) and suppression fires on routes used by the battalion.</li> <li><b>(2)</b> Enemy withdrawal routes.</li> <li><b>(3)</b> Likely enemy remaining in the area of operation.</li> <li><b>(4)</b> Targets that would support resuming the offense.</li> <li><b>(5)</b> Electronic warfare assets available for the mission.</li> </ul> </li> <li><b>f.</b> Coordinated fires with scheme of maneuver a plan that included— <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>(1)</b> Task, propose and methods of fires.</li> <li><b>(2)</b> Effects desired.</li> <li><b>(3)</b> Restrictions and allocation of fires.</li> <li><b>(4)</b> Priority of fires.</li> <li><b>(5)</b> Graphical fir support measures.</li> </ul> </li> </ul> <p><b>*3.</b> The FSO in conjunction with the battalion commander, S3, and company commanders finalizes the coordinated fires plan.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>a.</b> Located enemy known or possible positions.</li> <li><b>b.</b> Identified key terrain.</li> <li><b>c.</b> Targeted enemy avenues of approach.</li> <li><b>d.</b> Established targets of concern.</li> <li><b>e.</b> Identified possible enemy counterattack routes.</li> <li><b>f.</b> Approved fire support execution matrix and distributed to leaders as part of the OPORD.</li> </ul> <p><b>*4.</b> The FSO conducts the fire support rehearsal.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>a.</b> Established digital and voice communications link with available fire support units.</li> <li><b>b.</b> Established digital and voice communications link with aircraft executing the mission.</li> <li><b>c.</b> Ensured synchronization of planned fires meets commander's intent for the mission.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>d. Ensured methods for calls for fire and immediate suppression requests are exercised prior to commencement of the mission; to encompass digital and voice methods and unforeseen changes that could occur during the execution.</p> <p>*5. The FSO executes the fire support plan.</p> <p>a. Friendly fires suppressed enemy air defense systems as planned in the SEAD plan.</p> <p>b. Friendly fires stopped or slowed enemy movement to accomplishment of the mission.</p> <p>c. Fires suppressed/neutralized enemy weapons fires to allow accomplishment of the unit mission.</p> <p>d. Fires met the commander's intent for mission success.</p> <p>e. Friendly fires did not cause friendly casualties or fratricide.</p> <p>*6. Commander/leader performs or delegates performance of the steps in the risk management process for each step in troop-leading procedures (see appendix C).</p> <p>* Indicates a leader task step</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
Total Task Steps Evaluated							
Total Task Steps GO							
Training Status GO/NO-GO							

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
011-237-2010	Perform multi-aircraft operations (UH-60)	STP 1-15-219 STP 1-15-219-OS TC 1-237 STP 1-15II-500-MQS STP 1-TACOPS
011-237-2012	Perform tactical flight mission planning (UH-60)	STP 1-15-219 STP 1-15-219-OS TC 1-237 STP 1-15II-500-MQS STP 1-TACOPS
011-510-0006	Employ fire support	STP 1-15 II

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
01-1-5134	Plan aviation operations using the military decision making process	ARTEP 1-113-MTP  ARTEP 1-118-MTP ARTEP 1-126-MTP
01-2-0341	Perform composite risk management procedures	ARTEP 1-113-MTP  ARTEP 1-126-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** COMMAND SECTION  
BATTALION

**TASK: Conduct Force Protection Operations (01-1-5128)**

(FM 1-100)	(FM 1-113)	(FM 3-04.126)
(FM 3-0)	(FM 3-04.111)	(FM 3-06)
(FM 3-100.4)	(FM 3-100.12)	(FM 3-20.98)
(FM 4-0)	(FM 7-0)	(FM 7-1)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The battalion is conducting assigned missions in a simulated (live, virtual, or constructive) combat environment. The commander has received an operation order (OPORD)/fragmentary order (FRAGO), tasking order, or plan of execution directing him to conduct force protection and security operations. The commander issues guidance to the staff to employ force protection and security measures. The battalion's tactical operations center (TOC) is functional and the staff sections and digital systems are operational. Reports are being received through normal channels. The battalion has been provided guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. The tactical standing operating procedure, pertinent maps, overlays, and documents are available. A threat force of unknown size and composition is active in the area of operation. Some iterations of this task should be performed in mission-oriented protective posture level 4 (MOPP4).

**TASK STANDARDS:** The battalion conducted force protection and security measures according to the tactical standing operating procedures (TACSOPs) and the commander's guidance. The battalion established a force presence throughout the area of operations (AO). The battalion established an information-gathering network and secured routes. There were no losses of personnel or damage to assigned equipment. The unit maintained security on a 24-hour basis. Battalion access routes were kept clear and freedom of movement was ensured at all times. There were no unauthorized entries into zones of separation or other restricted areas. There were no violations of the ROE or the ROI. The unit responded as trained to force protection threats. Fratricide did not occur.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>*1. The commander gained and/or maintained situational understanding using information gathered from Force XXI Battle Command Brigade and Below (FBCB2), frequency modulated (FM), digital and or analog communications systems, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources.</p> <p>*2. Attack reconnaissance battalion (ARB)/assault battalion commander receives an OPORD or FRAGO and issues a warning order (WARNO) using FBCB2, FM, or other tactical means.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Clarified priority intelligence requirement (PIR) requirements.</li> <li>b. Confirmed any changes to the higher headquarters.</li> <li>c. Reviewed higher headquarters S2 intelligence preparation of the battlefield (IPB) data.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Determined the natural defensive characteristics of the terrain.</li> <li>(2) Identified known locations of mines and unexploded ordnance.</li> <li>(3) Determined proximity of enemy to the AO.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		



TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p><b>*3.</b> ARB/assault battalion commander and staff plan for the mission.</p> <hr/> <p><b>Note.</b> Refer to task 01-2-5198, Conduct aviation mission planning/preparation.</p> <hr/> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Conducted a digital and/or conventional map reconnaissance of the AO. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Identified and marked boundaries for the AO.</li> <li>(2) Identify locations for possible observation posts and checkpoints.</li> </ul> </li> <li>b. Developed task organization required to accomplish the mission.</li> <li>c. Determined reporting requirements to higher headquarters.</li> <li>d. Developed casualty evacuation (CASEVAC) procedures.</li> <li>e. Identified force protection requirements.</li> <li>f. Established security measures.</li> </ul> <p><b>*4.</b> ARB/assault battalion conducts force protection and security measures.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Secured tactical areas while conducting assigned missions.</li> <li>b. Secured assembly areas (AA), while concurrently conducting operations and performing aircraft maintenance.</li> <li>c. The commander and staff considered security force requirements and requested required support, as needed.</li> <li>d. Forces were allocated to protect critical assets against conventional unconventional, criminal, and terrorist attacks.</li> <li>e. Coordinated support and assistance from higher headquarters to reduce the amount of dedicated security needed by aviation forces.</li> </ul> <p><b>*5.</b> ARB/assault battalion maintains force protection throughout the conduct of assigned missions.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Coordinated for an external security force to augment battalion personnel prior to deployment to the AO.</li> <li>b. S2 maintained a continuous updated intelligence picture to insure optimum protection and security to the force.</li> <li>c. Established aggressive patrolling procedures to secure and protect battalion personnel.</li> <li>d. Implemented plans to protect ARB personnel, assigned equipment and key terrain.</li> </ul> <p><b>*6.</b> The ARB/assault battalion establishes a quick reaction force (QRF).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Designated the QRF element.</li> <li>b. Selected primary and alternate positions for the QRF.</li> <li>c. Selected routes to projected places of employment.</li> <li>d. Designated control measures.</li> <li>e. Defined linkup procedures.</li> <li>f. Identified conditions for employment.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p><b>*7.</b> The ARB/assault battalion conducts a zone/area/route reconnaissance.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Performed detailed reconnaissance of proposed AO and/or base camps.</li> <li>b. Established performance criteria for continuous reconnaissance.</li> <li>c. Established route clearance and control.</li> <li>d. Established checkpoints.</li> <li>e. Established zones of separation, if necessary.</li> </ul> <p><b>*8.</b> Commander/leader performs or delegates performance of the steps in the risk management process for each step in troop-leading procedures (see appendix C).</p> <p>* Indicates a leader task step</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
Total Task Steps Evaluated							
Total Task Steps GO							
Training Status GO/NO-GO							

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
011-237-2000	Perform FM radio homing (UH-60)	STP 1-15-219 STP 1-15-219-OS TC 1-237 STP 1-15II-500-MQS
011-237-2010	Perform multi-aircraft operations (UH-60)	STP 1-TACOPS STP 1-15-219 STP 1-15-219-OS TC 1-237 STP 1-15II-500-MQS STP 1-TACOPS
011-237-2012	Perform tactical flight mission planning (UH-60)	STP 1-15-219
011-510-0301	Participate in the military decision making process	STP 1-15-219-OS TC 1-237 STP 1-15II-500-MQS STP 1-TACOPS
011-510-0309	Perform logistics staff duties/responsibilities	STP 1-15 II
011-510-1700	Implement the Army safety program	STP 1-15 II

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
01-1-5134	Plan aviation operations using the military decision making process	ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-118-MTP ARTEP 1-126-MTP
01-2-0341	Perform composite risk management procedures	ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-126-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** COMMAND SECTION  
S2 SECTION

**TASK: Comply With Unit's Established Security Measures (01-1-5162)**  
 (FM 3-04.111) (FM 1-100) (FM 1-113)  
 (FM 3-04.126) (FM 3-100.12) (FM 3-19.30)  
 (FM 90-4) (JP 3-54)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The battalion is conducting assigned missions in a simulated (live, virtual, or constructive) combat environment. The battalion tactical operations center (TOC) is operational and the staff sections and digital systems are functional. The S2 has received mission requirements and the commander's guidance to comply with unit's established security measures in the assembly area (AA). Physical security measures are needed to guard vulnerable information and operations. The quartering party has completed reconnaissance of the AA and is prepared to guide the unit into the AA. An OPFOR patrol may attempt reconnaissance or intrusion into the command post (CP) perimeter. Some iterations of this task should be performed in mission-oriented protective posture level 4 (MOPP4).

**TASK STANDARDS:** The headquarters with S2 guidance established a physical security plan within one hour of occupation of the AA. The opposing forces (OPFOR) were not allowed to penetrate the unit or CP perimeter as result of an inadequate security plan. The headquarters maintained 24-hour security in its assigned area of operations.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>*1. The S2, in coordination with the commander or S3, develops and implements a unit physical security plan.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Coordinated the battalion security plan and posted it in the TOC.</li> <li>b. Prepared and implemented a security plan for each area and location within one hour of occupation.</li> <li>c. Specified in the security plan the prevention of vehicle entry into the CP.</li> <li>d. Designated company sectors prior to occupation.</li> <li>e. Made provisions in the plan for selecting and maintaining perimeter positions that allow detection and reporting of OPFOR intrusion or observation. Included alternate and subsequent positions and a rally point for reactionary forces.</li> <li>f. Included in the plan—                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) A means to prevent civilian access to unit security areas.</li> <li>(2) A method of communication between the perimeter observation posts and the reactionary force.</li> <li>(3) An initial response to a ground attack.</li> <li>(4) A primary and an alternate means of communications from the security headquarters to the dismount point and perimeter posts.</li> </ul> </li> <li>g. Designated company sectors prior to occupation.</li> </ul> <p>2. The headquarters and headquarters company (HHC) operates a guard force.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Established communications between the guard commander and sentry posts.</li> <li>b. Posted sentries to stop unauthorized entry into restricted areas.</li> </ul>		

<b>TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES</b>	<b>GO</b>	<b>NO-GO</b>
<p>c. Conducted random exterior patrols to locate, report, and neutralize OPFOR intruders before they breach the CP perimeter.</p> <p>3. The unit reacts to an enemy ground attack.</p> <p>a. Occupied preplanned positions; quick reaction force reported to the rally point.</p> <p>b. Reported the attack to higher headquarters.</p> <p>c. Executed the planned response.</p> <p>d. Established security measures denied intrusion into the CP perimeter.</p> <p>*4. Commander/leader performs or delegates performance of the steps in the risk management process for each step in troop-leading procedures (see appendix C).</p> <p>* Indicates a leader task step</p>		

<b>TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK</b>							
<b>ITERATION</b>	<b>1</b>	<b>2</b>	<b>3</b>	<b>4</b>	<b>5</b>	<b>M</b>	<b>TOTAL</b>
Total Task Steps Evaluated							
Total Task Steps GO							
Training Status GO/NO-GO							

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
011-501-0009	Plan risk management in unit operations	STP 1-15 I STP 1-15II-500-MQS
011-510-0004	Employ combat service support	STP 1-15 II
011-510-0300	Coordinate staff duties/responsibilities in tactical units	STP 1-15 II

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
01-1-5134	Plan aviation operations using the military decision making process	ARTEP 1-113-MTP  ARTEP 1-118-MTP ARTEP 1-126-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** COMMAND SECTION  
S3 SECTION

**TASK: Employ Aircraft Survivability Measures (01-1-5163)**

(FM 3-04.111)	(AR 95-1)	(FM 1-100)
(FM 1-113)	(FM 3-04.126)	(FM 3-04.300)
(FM 3-100.12)	(FM 90-4)	(TC 1-210)
(TC 1-237)		

**ITERATION:** 1      2      3      4      5      M      (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T      P      U      (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The battalion is conducting assigned missions in a simulated (live, virtual, or constructive) combat environment. The main command post (CP) is operational and the S3 section and digital systems are functional. The battalion has received an operation order (OPORD)/fragmentary order (FRAGO) directing it to conduct combat/combat support operations. The battalion will operate in a medium-to-high intensity enemy air defense artillery (ADA) area. The S3 has received the commander's guidance directing it to employ aircraft survivability measures. Friendly tactical air (TACAIR) or artillery units will be on call through mission completion. The battalion can conduct the operations during the day, at night with night vision devices (NVDs), under electronic warfare (EW) conditions, using terrain flight. The unit's aviation mission planning system (AMPS) is available, operational and contains all enemy and friendly locations and graphic control measures provided by the higher headquarters. Aircraft survivability equipment (ASE) is on hand and operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in mission-oriented protective posture level 4 (MOPP4).

**TASK STANDARDS:** The S3 section met the commander's intent and employed aircraft survivability measures according to the battalion's tactical standing operating procedure (TACSOP). The unit maneuvered in the area of planned operations using positive and procedural control measures thus preventing engagement by friendly and enemy assets.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p><b>*1.</b> The S2 uses available intelligence resources to locate possible enemy ADA positions.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Determined the tactical posture of the threat (defensive or offensive).</li> <li>b. Determined enemy strength, size, unit types, and locations in the area of planned operations.</li> <li>c. Provided the battalion tactical operations officer with threat data necessary to determine which threats can be detected and (for example, frequency and guidance types).</li> </ul> <p><b>*2.</b> The battalion tactical operations (TACOPS) officer determines friendly EW capabilities assessment risks. (Battalion electronic warfare officers assist, as necessary, during the planning process).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. The battalion TACOPS officer determined the EW capability that will affect ASE aboard aircraft.</li> <li>b. The battalion TACOPS officer included friendly units in the planning process for support and information on aviation movements.</li> <li>c. The battalion TACOPS officer compared threats to onboard ASE to determine which threats can be detected and counter-measured.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>d. The battalion TACOPS officer selected optimum ASE configuration settings based on mission area threats.</p> <p>e. The battalion TACOPS officer assessed mission risk based on capabilities and limitations of onboard ASE.</p> <p>f. The battalion TACOPS officer applied ASE risk reduction techniques to minimize the mission risk of threats.</p> <p>g. The battalion TACOPS officer reported non-counter-measured threat to the S2 for inclusion in the prioritized intelligence requirements (PIR) requesting location of threats and avoidance.</p> <p>*3. The battalion TACOPS officer develops a plan to avoid detection of friendly aircraft by enemy ADA through optimum selection of flight routes and maximizing the use of terrain flight masking techniques.</p> <p>a. Prepared a good terrain analysis (utilizing AMPS and map reconnaissance) with minimum requirements, such as—</p> <p>(1) Primary flight routes.</p> <p>(2) Alternate flight routes.</p> <p>(3) Hazards.</p> <p>(4) Control points for a complete mission.</p> <p>b. Planned with higher headquarters for artillery or TACAIR support to suppress enemy ADA sites with smoke or fire (joint suppression of enemy air defenses [J-SEAD] ).</p> <p>c. Integrated air tasking order (ATO), air control order, and special instructions (SPINS) into mission planning and briefing to include—</p> <p>(1) Identification, friend, or foe (IFF) procedures, mode activation/deactivation lines.</p> <p>(2) Search and rescue procedures, frequencies, pickup points and times.</p> <p>(3) Air control procedures.</p> <p>*4. The S2 submits request for intelligence information to higher headquarters to answer prioritized intelligence requirements.</p> <p>a. The S2 received non-counter-measured threat PIR from the battalion TACOPS.</p> <p>b. The S2 prepared and submitted request for intelligence information (RII) to higher headquarters.</p> <p>c. The S2 continued intelligence preparation of the battlefield.</p> <p>*5. Commander/leader performs or delegates performance of the steps in the risk management process for each step in troop-leading procedures (see appendix C).</p> <p>* Indicates a leader task step</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
Total Task Steps Evaluated							
Total Task Steps GO							
Training Status GO/NO-GO							

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
011-237-2010	Perform multi-aircraft operations (UH-60)	TC 1-237 STP 1-TACOPS
011-237-2012	Perform tactical flight mission planning (UH-60)	TC 1-237  STP 1-TACOPS
011-237-2026	Perform terrain flight (UH-60)	TC 1-237 STP 1-TACOPS
011-420-0025	Integrate aircraft survivability equipment (ASE) in mission planning	MOS W 153D 3
011-510-0004	Employ combat service support	STP 1-15 II
011-510-0021	Employ fundamentals of Army operations	STP 1-15 II
011-510-0025	Defeat enemy threat using aircraft survivability equipment (ASE)	STP 1-15 II
011-510-1700	Implement the Army safety program	STP 1-15 II

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
01-1-5134	Plan aviation operations using the military decision making process	ARTEP 1-113-MTP  ARTEP 1-118-MTP ARTEP 1-126-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**



**ELEMENTS:** ASSAULT COMPANY  
COMPANY

**TASK: Employ Fratricide Prevention Measures (01-2-5159)**

(FM 3-04.111)	(FM 1-100)	(FM 1-113)
(FM 3-0)	(FM 3-04.126)	(FM 3-100.12)
(FM 7-0)	(FM 7-1)	(TRADOC NEWSLETTER 92-4)

**ITERATION:** 1      2      3      4      5      M      (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T      P      U      (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The battalion is conducting assigned missions in a simulated (live, virtual, or constructive) combat environment. The battalion tactical operations center (TOC) is operational and the staff sections and digital systems are functional. The company has received mission requirements and the commander’s guidance to employ fratricide prevention measures. The company is conducting combat operations within a sector. Other friendly units are conducting operations in or near the assigned sector. Intelligence reports indicate opposing forces (OPFOR) elements have been sighted in the operational area. OPFOR operations have increased in the sector. The advanced mission planning system (AMPS) is operational and contains information pertaining to location of friendly and enemy units, boundary lines, phase lines, and engagement areas. Some iterations of this task should be performed in mission-oriented protective posture level 4 (MOPP4).

**TASK STANDARDS:** Company commanders have anticipated the possible circumstances, assessed the relative impact of each contributing factor, and employed risk reducing measures to prevent fratricide. Leaders continue to conduct risk assessments and implement fratricide prevention measures during the execution of the mission. There were no casualties or equipment damage as result of poor or inadequate fratricide prevention planning.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>*1. Commander reviews the operation order (OPORD) and ensures data is in the AMPS.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Identified friendly unit locations, frequencies and areas of operations boundaries.</li> <li>b. Identified locations/placements of enemy forces.</li> </ul> <p>*2. Commander reviews the order for commander’s intent, acceptable risk level, fratricide risk level, and ensures that risk reduction/fratricide prevention measures are in place.</p> <p>*3. Commander integrates blue force tracker (BFT), if applicable, into his execution plan to track friendly combat maneuver units in near real time.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. BFT allowed the commander to track the locations of his aircraft and provided an alternative means of over-the-horizon communications.</li> <li>b. BFT enhanced C2 by enabling the common operational picture (COP) to be readily shared between headquarters and among aircraft.</li> </ul> <hr/> <p><b>Note.</b> Depending on availability, the blue force tracker, or other digital devices, may be used.</p> <hr/>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p><b>*4.</b> Commander, platoon leaders and safety officer conduct a risk assessment to determine if additional risk reduction measures and fratricide prevention measures can be applied.</p> <p><b>*5.</b> Commander/leader conducts assessment of unit's situational awareness and fratricide risk reduction measures.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>a.</b> Assessed situational awareness. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>(1)</b> Evaluated fire and maneuver control by assessing density of friendly and OPFOR forces in area of operations (AO).</li> <li><b>(2)</b> Evaluated the fire distribution plan by comparing available rehearsal versus collective proficiency and navigation difficulty.</li> <li><b>(3)</b> Evaluated potential navigation problems by assessing reconnaissance versus visibility and navigation difficulty.</li> </ul> </li> <li><b>b.</b> Assessed personnel and leadership preparedness. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>(1)</b> Evaluated mission related experience and competence.</li> <li><b>(2)</b> Considered Soldier and leader fatigue and stress factors.</li> </ul> </li> </ul> <p><b>*6.</b> Commander briefs mission and addresses fratricide risk level and reduction measures.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>a.</b> Briefed fires control and discipline.</li> <li><b>b.</b> Briefed rules of engagement.</li> <li><b>c.</b> Briefed fire control radar (FCR)/radio frequency interference (RFI) acquisition and engagement criteria.</li> <li><b>d.</b> Briefed target identification.</li> </ul> <p><b>*7.</b> Commander conducts rehearsals.</p> <p><b>*8.</b> Commander and platoon leaders ensure all personnel:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>a.</b> Practiced fire control and fires discipline.</li> <li><b>b.</b> Knew their exact location at all times.</li> <li><b>c.</b> Employed FCR/RFI acquisition and engagement criteria according to mission, enemy, terrain and weather, troops and support available, time available, and civil considerations (METT-TC) for the mission.</li> <li><b>d.</b> Used target hand-over procedures that ensured positive identification of targets.</li> <li><b>e.</b> Recognized friendly and threat armored vehicles and aircraft.</li> <li><b>f.</b> Reported critical information to higher echelon headquarters.</li> <li><b>g.</b> Prepared range cards for perimeter defenses in the assembly area.</li> <li><b>h.</b> Marked, recorded and reported minefields, booby traps, or unexploded ordnance to higher echelon headquarters.</li> </ul> <p><b>9.</b> Risk reduction techniques/measures for fratricide prevention.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>a.</b> Fire and maneuver control. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>(1)</b> Conducted brief backs to ensure all main points were covered.</li> <li><b>(2)</b> Supervised all combat preparations.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>(3) Inspected preventative maintenance checks and services and combat checks.</p> <p>b. Fire distribution plan.</p> <p>(1) Rehearsed the plan extensively.</p> <p>(2) Ensured unit TACSOP covers how fires are distributed and controlled.</p> <p>(3) Ensured all training matrices are synchronized.</p> <p>c. Navigation.</p> <p>(1) Constructed a detailed navigation plan using AMPS and data transfer controller/cartridge (DTC).</p> <p>(2) Ensured that reconnaissance confirms the impact of terrain, weather, and enemy.</p> <p>(3) Conducted route reconnaissance whenever possible.</p> <p>d. Fire control and battle tracking.</p> <p>(1) Coordinated a positive clearance of fires.</p> <p>(2) Made communication checks.</p> <p>(3) Rehearsed fire support.</p> <p>e. Combat battlefield hazards.</p> <p>(1) Instilled safety discipline.</p> <p>(2) Ensured all known hazards were identified.</p> <p>(3) Considered contingency plans, actions on contact and equipment limitations</p> <p>(4) Established intermediate objectives and/or control points.</p> <p>(5) Considered special logistics and/or maintenance support.</p> <p>f. Fire control discipline.</p> <p>(1) Reviewed applicable rules of engagement (ROEs).</p> <p>(2) Enforced the challenge or password discipline.</p> <p>g. Vehicle and aircraft identification.</p> <p>*10. Commander/leader take appropriate common sense measures to reduce the risk of fratricide.</p> <p>a. Ensured all training was conducted to Army standards.</p> <p>b. Built confidence into leaders</p> <p>c. Developed and enforced a specific fighter management work-rest-sleep plan.</p> <p>d. Cross trained Soldiers on critical tasks.</p> <p>*11. Commander/leader performs or delegates performance of the steps in the risk-management process for each step in troop-leading procedures (see appendix C).</p> <p>* Indicates a leader task step</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
Total Task Steps Evaluated							
Total Task Steps GO							
Training Status GO/NO-GO							

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
011-501-0011	Recognize friendly and threat vehicles and aircraft	STP 1-15 I STP 1-15II-500-MQS

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
01-1-5134	Plan aviation operations using the military decision making process	ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-118-MTP ARTEP 1-126-MTP
01-2-0341	Perform composite risk management procedures	ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-126-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENT:** ASSAULT COMPANY

**TASK: Employ Countermeasures Against Enemy Air Defense Artillery (ADA)**  
**(01-2-5180)**

(FM 3-04.111)	(FM 1-100)	(FM 1-113)
(FM 3-04.126)	(FM 3-100.12)	(FM 44-8)
(FM 44-100)	(FM 71-100-3)	(TC 1-237)

**ITERATION:** 1      2      3      4      5      M      (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T      P      U      (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The battalion is conducting assigned missions in a simulated (live, virtual, or constructive) combat environment. The battalion command post (CP) is operational and corresponding staff sections and digital systems are functional. The company has received mission requirements and the commander's guidance directing it to employ countermeasures against air defense artillery (ADA). The company is operating in a medium-to-high intensity opposing forces (OPFOR) ADA area. Some iterations of this task should be performed in mission-oriented protective posture level 4 (MOPP4).

**TASK STANDARDS:** The unit employed countermeasures against enemy ADA according to the tactical standing operating procedure (TACSOP) and the commander's guidance. The unit was not engaged as direct result of using prescribed positive and procedural control measures.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p><b>*1.</b> The commander gained and/or maintained situational understanding using information gathered from Force XXI Battle Command Brigade and Below (FBCB2), frequency modulated (FM), digital and or analog communications systems, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources.</p> <p><b>*2.</b> The commander coordinates with the S2 for OPFOR ADA information and:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Evaluated the tactical posture of the threat (defensive or offensive).</li> <li>b. Determined OPFOR strength, size, unit types and locations in the planned area of operations.</li> <li>c. Determined the types of suspected ADA sites in the area of operations.</li> <li>d. Evaluated the electronic warfare capability that will affect aircraft survivability equipment (ASE).</li> <li>e. Determined enemy ADA high value targets (HVTs) and considered what the enemy ADA priorities were.</li> </ul> <p><b>3.</b> The air mission commander diverts mission essential aircraft around OPFOR ADA areas.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Prepared a terrain analysis with minimum requirements.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Primary flight routes.</li> <li>(2) Alternate flight routes.</li> <li>(3) Hazards.</li> <li>(4) Control points to assess mission completion.</li> </ul> </li> <li>b. Planned with higher headquarters for artillery or tactical air (TACAIR) support to suppress OPFOR ADA sites.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>c. Planned with friendly ADA and air traffic control for early warning of hostile aircraft in the area of operations.</p> <p>d. AMC ensured all aircrews have all OPFOR ADA templated and confirmed positions accurately plotted on their flight maps.</p> <p>4. Aircrews use terrain flight techniques and passive ADA countermeasures based on mission, enemy, terrain and weather, troops and support available, time available, and civil considerations (METT-TC).</p> <p>a. Used terrain to mask aircraft from OPFOR detection and fire.</p> <p>b. Used terrain or vegetation as a backdrop to avoid being sky-lined if required to unmask.</p> <p>c. Minimized flights in open areas that provided little cover or concealment.</p> <p>d. Crossed open terrain quickly to reach cover and concealment.</p> <p>e. Minimized aircraft firing and rotor wash signatures when operating at nap-of-the-earth (NOE).</p> <p>f. Employed armed aircraft at maximum standoff range.</p> <p>g. Took action on contact with the OPFOR and proceeded as directed by the mission briefing and SOP.</p> <p>5. Aircrews ensure ASE on board mission aircraft is operational and with correct program settings to include the following (when available)—</p> <p>a. Radar detector set.</p> <p>b. Radar jammer set.</p> <p>c. Infrared (IR) countermeasures set.</p> <p>d. Laser detector set.</p> <p>e. Missile detector set.</p> <p>f. Chaff/flare dispenser kit.</p> <p>g. Identification, friend or foe charged with proper, up-to-date code.</p> <p>h. Others (as deemed necessary).</p> <p>6. Aircrews use available ASE to degrade enemy ADA.</p> <p>a. Used the radar detector set to detect and provide early warning against enemy radar.</p> <p>b. Used the IR jammer to divert IR missiles from aircraft.</p> <p>c. Used the chaff dispenser and deployed to cover in response to appropriate radar threat (if equipped).</p> <p>d. Used the flare dispenser and deployed to cover when an incoming missile was detected (if equipped).</p> <p>e. Used the radar jammer to jam appropriate radar threat.</p> <p>7. Aircrews take measures to suppress enemy ADA.</p> <p>a. Suppressed and/or destroyed suspected ADA sites with preplanned joint fires, TACAIR fires, organic fires or friendly artillery.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>b. Used smoke from artillery or organic fires to degrade the enemy ADA capability to optically track friendly aircraft.</p> <p>c. Used sensors and position location equipment to locate the enemy, called for immediate artillery suppression, or used organic fires.</p> <p>d. Continued the mission as briefed or according to prescribed SOP.</p> <p>*8. Commander/leader identifies and controls hazards according to risk management procedures (see appendix C).</p> <p>* Indicates a leader task step</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
Total Task Steps Evaluated							
Total Task Steps GO							
Training Status GO/NO-GO							

#### SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
011-237-2010	Perform multi-aircraft operations (UH-60)	TC 1-237 STP 1-TACOPS
011-237-2012	Perform tactical flight mission planning (UH-60)	TC 1-237 STP 1-TACOPS
011-237-2014	Perform electronic counter measures (ECM)/ electronic counter-counter measures (ECCM) procedures (UH-60)	TC 1-237 STP 1-TACOPS
011-237-2022	Transmit tactical reports (UH-60)	TC 1-237 STP 1-TACOPS
011-237-2024	Perform terrain flight navigation (UH-60)	TC 1-237 STP 1-TACOPS
011-237-2042	Perform actions on contact (UH-60)	TC 1-237 STP 1-TACOPS
011-420-0005	Determine the fundamentals of air defense	MOS W 153D 3
011-510-0005	Employ air defense	STP 1-15 II

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
01-2-0341	Perform composite risk management procedures	ARTEP 1-113-MTP
01-2-5160	Perform troop-leading procedures	ARTEP 1-126-MTP ARTEP 1-113-MTP
44-2-0220	Employ passive air defense measures	ARTEP 1-126-MTP ARTEP 1-113-MTP
44-2-0221	Employ active combined arms air defense measures	ARTEP 1-126-MTP ARTEP 1-113-MTP
		ARTEP 1-126-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**



**ELEMENTS:** ASSAULT COMPANY  
COMPANY

**TASK: Perform Operations Within Established Army Airspace Command and Control (A2C2) Measures (01-2-5181)**

(FM 3-52)	(FM 1-100)	(FM 1-113)
(FM 3-0)	(FM 3-04.126)	(FM 3-04.111)
(FM 3-100.12)	(FM 7-0)	(FM 7-1)
(FM 71-100-3)	(FM3-100.2)	

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The battalion is conducting assigned missions in a simulated (live, virtual, or constructive) combat environment. The unit has received mission requirements and the commander's guidance to perform operations within established Army airspace command and control (A2C2) measures. The battalion's command post (CP) is operational and corresponding staff sections and digital systems are functional. The battalion headquarters has implemented A2C2 measures and incorporated these procedures into mission planning data for the companies. The unit's aviation mission planning system (AMPS) is available, operational and contains all enemy and friendly locations and graphic control measures provided by the higher headquarters. Operations may be conducted during day, at night using night vision devices (NVDs), under electronic warfare (EW) conditions, and using terrain flight. Some iterations of this task should be performed in mission-oriented protective posture level 4 (MOPP4).

**TASK STANDARDS:** The A2C2 measures are observed throughout the operations. Actions were taken to preclude any airspace conflicts among friendly forces. There were no violations of airspace control measures while conducting assigned missions.

---

**Note.** Due to the intricacies of the modern battlefield and the number of airspace users in the contemporary operating environments (COE), it is imperative that all aircrews are trained in, and habitually use, established A2C2 procedures.

---

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p><b>Note.</b> The battalion creates a system that ensures that the airspace coordination order and air tasking order (ATO) are sent to the battalion headquarters, and that the airspace coordination order and ATO are read for all information/instructions that apply to assigned/attached operational aviation units.</p> <hr/> <p><b>*1.</b> The commander gained and/or maintained situational understanding using information gathered from Force XXI Battle Command Brigade and Below (FBCB2), frequency modulated (FM), digital and or analog communications systems, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources.</p> <p><b>2.</b> The company plans and briefs A2C2 measures to successfully meet mission requirements and higher commander's intent.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>a.</b> Defined enemy air defense and electronic warfare capabilities.</li> <li><b>b.</b> Outlined vertical and horizontal unit's A2C2 plans which included the locations, radio frequencies, and call signs of supporting air defense assets.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>c. Provided information concerning joint, interagency and multinational (JIM) aviation resources.</p> <p>d. Described the air traffic services plan (frequencies, airspace user priorities, authority to be exercised by the maneuver commander) and the A2C2 overlay if required.</p> <p>e. Reviewed flight rules concerning instrument meteorological condition/visual meteorological condition (IMC/VMC) and applicable IMC and tactical IMC procedures.</p> <p>f. Provided instructions on positive and procedural airspace control requirements and establishment of control measures and restrictions.</p> <p>g. Reviewed air defense instructions/information (for example, ADA warning systems, weapons control statuses, and hostile criteria).</p> <p>h. Provided Army aviation instructions/information (for example, forward arming and refueling point [FARP] locations and diagrams, airfield locations and diagrams when available, operating times, and in-flight reporting procedures).</p> <p>i. Reviewed fire support instructions/information (for example, fire support coordination line, restricted fire areas, and locations of artillery batteries affecting operations).</p> <p>j. Identified A2C2 control measures.</p> <p>(1) Low-level transit routes.</p> <p>(2) Minimum risk routes.</p> <p>(3) Standard Army aircraft flight routes.</p> <p>(4) High density airspace control zones.</p> <p>(5) Restricted operations areas/zones.</p> <p>(6) Coordinating altitudes. High density airspace control zones.</p> <p>(7) Identification, friend, or foe (IFF) and transponder code settings (Modes 2, 3A, and 4 transponder codes).</p> <p>(8) IFF operating procedures (for example, IFF on and standby points).</p> <p>(9) Any alternate identification procedures easily executed by the pilot and identified by the air defense system.</p> <p>k. Reviewed hostile and friendly aircraft data.</p> <p>3. Aircrews conduct preparation.</p> <p>a. Updated tactical maps with applicable A2C2 information.</p> <p>b. Verified that IFF and aircraft survivability equipment were operational and with proper settings.</p> <p>c. Reviewed A2C2 procedures.</p> <p>d. Conducted special instructions (SPINS), airspace coordination order, and air tasking order (ATO) briefings.</p> <p>4. The unit conducts operations within A2C2 control specifications.</p> <p>*5. Commander/leader identifies and controls hazards according to risk management procedures (see appendix C).</p> <p>* Indicates a leader task step</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
<i>ITERATION</i>	<i>1</i>	<i>2</i>	<i>3</i>	<i>4</i>	<i>5</i>	<i>M</i>	<i>TOTAL</i>
Total Task Steps Evaluated							
Total Task Steps GO							
Training Status GO/NO-GO							

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
011-237-2010	Perform multi-aircraft operations (UH-60)	TC 1-237 STP 1-TACOPS
011-237-2012	Perform tactical flight mission planning (UH-60)	TC 1-237 STP 1-TACOPS
011-237-2014	Perform electronic counter measures (ECM)/ electronic counter-counter measures (ECCM) procedures (UH-60)	TC 1-237 STP 1-TACOPS
011-237-2022	Transmit tactical reports (UH-60)	TC 1-237 STP 1-TACOPS
011-237-2024	Perform terrain flight navigation (UH-60)	TC 1-237 STP 1-TACOPS
011-237-2026	Perform terrain flight (UH-60)	TC 1-237 STP 1-TACOPS
011-420-0018	Integrate Army airspace command and control (A2C2)	MOS W 153D 3
011-425-0011	Develop the Army airspace command and control (A2C2) annex to operations plans and orders	MOS W 153D 3

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
01-1-0343	Conduct command and control battalion/squadron operations	ARTEP 1-113-MTP
01-2-0341	Perform composite risk management procedures	ARTEP 1-126-MTP ARTEP 1-113-MTP
01-2-5160	Perform troop-leading procedures	ARTEP 1-126-MTP ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-126-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENT: ASSAULT COMPANY**

**TASK: Perform Air Volcano Operations (01-2-5222)**

(FM 1-113)	(FM 1-100)	(FM 3-04.111)
(FM 3-04.300)	(FM 3-100.12)	(FM 3-100.4)
(FM 4-0)	(FM 71-100-3)	(FM 90-4)
(TC 1-201)	(TC 1-210)	(TC 1-237)

**ITERATION:** 1    2    3    4    5    M    (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T    P    U    (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The battalion is in a simulated (live, virtual, or constructive) combat environment. The main command post (CP) is operational. The staff sections, digital and/or analog systems, are functioning. The division commander has approved the emplacement of an aerial delivered minefield. The battalion has issued a warning order (WARNO) to the company. The battalion forward arming and refueling equipment (FARP) is operational. All special tools, equipment, personnel, and technical manuals are available.

**Note.** A hard surface will not be available in the majority of tactical situations. Some iterations of this task should be performed in mission-oriented protective posture level 4 (MOPP4).

**TASK STANDARDS:** Company personnel install the M139 mine dispenser system in 4 hours or less. The minefield is installed within the time constraints of the order, at the correct location, orientation, and density.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>*1. The commander gained and/or maintained situational understanding using information gathered from Force XXI Battle Command Brigade and Below (FBCB2), frequency modulated (FM), digital and or analog communications systems, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources.</p> <p>*2. The air mission commander conducts special aerial mine delivery (volcano-equipped UH-60) mission coordination.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Coordinated for volcano systems and munitions to be either received at the battalion FARP or other designated upload point.</li> <li>b. Coordinated with brigade/division/battalion engineer.</li> <li>c. Determined engineer concept of the operation.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Determined emplacement conditions and triggers for mission execution.</li> <li>(2) Verified minefield size, composition and duration.</li> <li>(3) Verified minefield location.</li> <li>(4) Verified Volcano control points/markers.</li> <li>(5) Determined positive control techniques.                                     <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) Visual identification (ID).</li> <li>(b) Time lapse.</li> <li>(c) Canister countdown.</li> <li>(d) Doppler/global positioning system (GPS) guidance.</li> </ul> </li> </ul> </li> <li>d. Coordinated for artillery fires, attack helicopters, or tactical air (TACAIR).</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>e. Coordinated with the engineers to dig the volcano FARP to standard.</p> <p>3. Company personnel install the volcano system on mission aircraft.</p> <p>a. Installed the system.</p> <p>b. Ensured the surface danger zones (SDZs) of the loaded aircraft are complied with according to FM 3-24.32, appendix D and the appropriate terms are constructed to protect personnel in the aviation tactical assembly area (TAA).</p> <p>c. Loaded mine canisters into the M139 dispenser.</p> <p>d. Entered minefield start and stop points, and grid coordinates into the doppler/GPS.</p> <p>e. Ensured company personnel are trained on installing mine canisters before they attach them to the aircraft.</p> <p>4. The unit emplaces the volcano minefield.</p> <p>a. Confirmed suppression of enemy air defense (AD).</p> <p>b. Arrived at the initial point.</p> <p>c. Conducted preemplacement checklist procedures according to unit standing operating procedure (SOP).</p> <p>d. Identified the release point.</p> <p>e. Initiated the emplacement operation using positive control techniques.</p> <p>f. Confirmed actual minefield start and stop points—positive visual confirmation.</p> <p>5. The system can emplace four minefield types:</p> <p>a. Disrupt-low lethality and density. The commander's intent was confusion in the enemy formation through near randomness or denial of high-speed reads, bridge approaches, or masking terrain.</p> <p>b. Fix-placed permitted synchronized ground force fires once encountered.</p> <p>c. Turn-density and lethality were sufficient to influence the maneuver of enemy formations in another direction.</p> <p>d. Block-density and lethality were sufficient to deny enemy use of terrain when emplaced with other natural and man-made obstacles.</p> <p>6. Air volcano operation involved preparing the scatterable minefield warning (SCATMINWARN) report and record.</p> <hr/> <p><b>Note.</b> Report format is in FM 3-24.32.</p> <hr/> <p>7. Air volcano operation involves sending scatterable minefield warning to division/brigade/battalion as soon as possible.</p> <p>*8. Commander/leader performs or delegates performance of the steps in the risk management process for each step in troop-leading procedures (see appendix C).</p> <p>* Indicates a leader task step</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
<i>ITERATION</i>	<i>1</i>	<i>2</i>	<i>3</i>	<i>4</i>	<i>5</i>	<i>M</i>	<i>TOTAL</i>
Total Task Steps Evaluated							
Total Task Steps GO							
Training Status GO/NO-GO							

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
011-237-2070	Perform M139 volcano operations (UH-60)	TC 1-237
011-501-0009	Plan risk management in unit operations	STP 1-TACOPS STP 1-15 I
011-510-0021	Employ fundamentals of Army operations	STP 1-15II-500-MQS
011-510-0303	Conduct operations missions briefing/ debriefing	STP 1-15 II

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
01-2-0341	Perform composite risk management procedures	ARTEP 1-113-MTP
01-2-5160	Perform troop-leading procedures	ARTEP 1-126-MTP ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-126-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENT:** COMPANY

**TASK: Conduct Thorough Decontamination Operations (03-3-C312)**

- |             |               |               |
|-------------|---------------|---------------|
| (FM 3-11.4) | (FM 1-100)    | (FM 1-113)    |
| (FM 3-3)    | (FM 3-04.111) | (FM 3-04.126) |
| (FM 3-5)    | (FM 3-100.12) | (FM 7-0)      |
| (FM 7-1)    |               |               |

**ITERATION:** 1M 2M 3M 4M 5M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** A unit is contaminated during combat operations. Time is available to conduct reconstitution, to include thorough decontamination. A supporting chemical unit (smoke/decontamination or decontamination) is tasked to conduct the thorough decontamination mission. This task is always performed in mission-oriented protective posture level 4 (MOPP4).

**TASK STANDARDS:** The chemical unit (smoke/decontamination or decontamination) sets up the detailed equipment decontamination site and removes all contamination from the equipment and vehicles. The contaminated unit sets up the detailed troop decontamination (with technical advice from the chemical unit) and processes all personnel. The chemical unit properly closes the site and reports the location to higher headquarters.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p><b>*1.</b> The leader of the contaminated unit determines the extent of the contamination and establishes decontamination priorities.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Received input from subordinate leaders and staff.</li> <li>b. Established decontamination priorities.</li> </ul> <p><b>2.</b> The contaminated unit submits the request for decontamination to higher headquarters. The request should, as a minimum, include the following—</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. The designation of the contaminated unit.</li> <li>b. The location of the contaminated unit.</li> <li>c. The frequency and call sign of the contaminated unit.</li> <li>d. The time the unit became contaminated.</li> <li>e. The number and type of vehicles and equipment that were contaminated.</li> <li>f. That type of contamination.</li> <li>g. The earliest possible time the unit can move or begin decontamination.</li> <li>h. Special requirements, such as a patient decontamination station, recovery assets, and a unit decontamination team.</li> </ul> <p><b>3.</b> The contaminated unit higher headquarters chemical staff coordinates with supporting elements.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Issued a warning order to the supporting chemical unit.</li> <li>b. Coordinated the contaminated unit movement to the linkup point.</li> <li>c. Coordinated with supporting elements, such as medical, engineer, air defense, military police, smoke support and water resupply.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p><b>Note.</b> The contaminated unit is responsible for providing security for the decontamination site. Security support must be coordinated before arriving at the linkup point.</p> <hr/> <p>4. Decontamination operations supporting elements linkup with the chemical unit prior to contaminated unit arrival.</p> <p>*5. The contaminated unit and the chemical unit leader arrive at the linkup point.</p> <p>*6. The chemical unit leader briefs the site layout and procedures.</p> <p>7. The contaminated unit moves to the predecontamination staging areas and conducts predecontamination actions.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Segregated the contaminated vehicles and equipment from the uncontaminated, if possible.</li> <li>b. Crews, except drivers, dismounted the vehicles, ensuring that they— <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Removed all contaminated equipment from the top and sides of the vehicles.</li> <li>(2) Did not reenter the vehicles once they had exited (to prevent further contamination of the interior of the vehicles).</li> </ul> </li> <li>c. Prepared vehicles and equipment for detailed equipment decontamination. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Removed all heavy mud and debris from the vehicle using pioneer tools.</li> <li>(2) Removed and disposed of seat covers, canvas items, camouflage netting, and other materials that could absorb liquid contamination.</li> <li>(3) Removed and disposed of chemical, biological, radiological, and nuclear (CBRN) covers as contaminated waste.</li> </ul> </li> <li>d. Moved contaminated personnel, vehicles, and equipment to the detailed troop decontamination and equipment decontamination lines in coordination with the chemical unit leader.</li> </ul> <p>8. Designated personnel set up and maintain communications within the decontamination site. They coordinate with supported units for additional communications support.</p> <p>9. The chemical unit sets up detailed equipment decontamination site stations.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Station 1. Initial wash.</li> <li>b. Station 2. Decontaminating solution #2 (DS2) application.</li> <li>c. Station 3. Wait/interior decontamination.</li> <li>d. Station 4. Rinse.</li> <li>e. Station 5. Check.</li> </ul> <hr/> <p><b>Note.</b> The chemical unit sets up the detailed equipment decontamination site prior to contaminated unit arrival when possible.</p> <hr/> <p>10. The contaminated unit sets up the detailed troop decontamination.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Station 1. Individual gear decontamination.</li> <li>b. Station 2. Overboot and hood decontamination.</li> </ul>		



TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>c. Station 3. Overgarment removal.</p> <p>d. Station 4. Overboot and glove removal.</p> <p>e. Station 5. Monitor.</p> <p>f. Station 6. Mask removal.</p> <p>g. Station 7. Mask decontamination point.</p> <p>h. Station 8. Reissue point.</p> <hr/> <p><b>Note.</b> The chemical unit leader determines the general location of the detailed troop decontamination site and established a route to move vehicle operators from Station 3 of the detailed equipment decontamination site to Station 1 of the detailed troop decontamination.</p> <hr/> <p><b>*11.</b> The chemical unit leader, in conjunction with the leader or control cell from the contaminated unit, supervises the overall thorough decontamination site operations.</p> <p><b>12.</b> The chemical unit processes vehicles and equipment through the detailed equipment decontamination stations.</p> <p>a. The contaminated unit provided guides to control vehicle traffic through the site.</p> <p>b. The drivers moved vehicles and equipment through the stations.</p> <p>c. The assistant drivers who had processed through the detailed troop decontamination stations replaced the primary drivers at Station 3, once the interior decontamination was completed.</p> <p>d. The primary drivers proceeded to the detailed troop decontamination site to process through the stations.</p> <p><b>13.</b> The contaminated unit processes personnel through the detailed troop decontamination stations.</p> <p><b>14.</b> The contaminated unit assembles in the postdecontamination assembly area after completing the detailed equipment decontamination and detailed troop decontamination before moving to a reconstitution location.</p> <p><b>15.</b> The chemical unit Soldiers close the detailed equipment decontamination site.</p> <p>a. Station 1.</p> <p>(1) Decontaminated all equipment used at the station, to include the power-driven decontamination equipment (PDDE) hoses and nozzles.</p> <p>(2) Checked all equipment for contamination and decontaminated again, if necessary.</p> <p>(3) Drained the water from the blivets or fabric tanks.</p> <p>(4) Loaded the equipment onto vehicles.</p> <p>(5) Spread a can of supertropical bleach (STB) dry mix in each sump and covered the sumps.</p> <p>(6) Marked the sumps.</p> <p>b. Station 2 (chemical/biological only).</p> <p>(1) Applied DS2 to the PDDE, mops, handles, decontamination apparatus, and containers.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>(2) Discarded mop heads, brushes, and the station sign into the sump at Station 4 and then pulled the PDDE forward and washed the entire application point.</p> <p>(3) Loaded unused decontaminants onto the vehicles.</p> <p>(4) Marked the area and moved all reusable equipment from Station 2 to Station 3.</p> <p>c. Station 3.</p> <p>(1) Inspected the unused supplies for contamination; if uncontaminated, loaded the supplies onto the vehicles.</p> <p>(2) Threw the contaminated supplies into the sump at Station 4.</p> <p>d. Station 4.</p> <p>(1) Decontaminated all equipment used at the station, to include the PDDE hoses and nozzles.</p> <p>(2) Checked all equipment for contamination and decontaminated again, if necessary.</p> <p>(3) Drained the water from the blivets or fabric tanks.</p> <p>(4) Loaded the equipment onto vehicles.</p> <p>(5) Spread a can of STB dry mix in each sump and covered the sumps (after the residue from Station 5 had been placed in the sump).</p> <p>(6) Marked the sumps.</p> <p>e. Station 5.</p> <p>(1) Decontaminated all equipment that was used at the station.</p> <p>(2) Loaded all reusable equipment onto the vehicles.</p> <p>(3) Discarded the unusable items into the sump at Station 4.</p> <p>16. The chemical unit moves to the detailed troop decontamination site for decontamination.</p> <p>17. The station operators clean up the detailed troop decontamination site.</p> <p>a. Placed all used supplies from Station 7 into the sump at Station 7.</p> <p>b. Moved all usable equipment and supplies from all stations to Station 1.</p> <p>c. Discarded the unusable supplies from Stations 3, 4, and 5 into the sump at Station 1.</p> <p>d. Decontaminated all supplies and equipment collected at Station 1.</p> <p>e. Emptied and rinsed the decontaminant containers from Station 1 into the sump at that station.</p> <p>f. Marked the area.</p> <p>g. Removed the overgarments using the MOPP-gear exchange technique.</p> <p>h. Disposed of the used overgarments into the sump at Station 1.</p> <p>i. Moved all equipment used to fill the sump upwind of the decontamination area.</p> <p>j. Decontaminated the rubber gloves and moved all the equipment from Station 1 upwind of the decontamination area. Kept this equipment separate from the equipment used to fill the sump.</p> <p>k. Spread a can of STB dry mix in each sump and covered the sumps.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>I. Marked the sumps.</p> <p><b>18.</b> The chemical unit marks the area as a contaminated area and reports its exact location to the supported unit, using an CBRN-5 report.</p> <p><b>*19.</b> The contaminated unit leader conducts reconstitution activities.</p> <p><b>a.</b> Coordinated with the supported battalions for assessment and recovery teams.</p> <p><b>b.</b> Coordinated and requested maintenance support.</p> <p><b>c.</b> Coordinated and requested medical support.</p> <p><b>d.</b> Coordinated and established logistical support for resupply activities.</p> <p><b>*20.</b> Commander/leader performs or delegates performance of the steps in the risk management process for each step in troop-leading procedures (appendix C).</p> <p>* Indicates a leader task step</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1M	2M	3M	4M	5M		TOTAL
Total Task Steps Evaluated							
Total Task Steps GO							
Training Status GO/NO-GO							

#### SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
011-510-1100	Determine aircraft decontamination levels and procedures	STP 1-15 II
011-510-1101	Employ NBC protection for aviation operations	STP 1-15 II
011-510-1102	Employ the NBC warning and reporting system	STP 1-15 II
011-510-1103	Plan aviation operations in an NBC environment	STP 1-15 II
031-503-1013	Decontaminate yourself and individual equipment using chemical decontaminating kits	MOS E COM 9
031-503-1035	Protect yourself from chemical/biological contamination using your assigned protective mask	STP 21-1-SMCT

#### SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
01-2-0341	Perform composite risk management procedures	ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-126-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENT:** COMPANY

**TASK: Prepare for Operations Under Chemical, Biological, Radiological, and Nuclear (CBRN) Conditions (03-3-C201)**

(FM 3-11.4)	(FM 1-100)	(FM 1-113)
(FM 3-0)	(FM 3-3)	(FM 3-04.111)
(FM 3-04.126)	(FM 3-100.12)	(FM 7-0)
(FM 7-1)	(TC 1-237)	

**ITERATION:** 1      2      3      4      5      M      (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T      P      U      (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** In an active chemical, biological, radiological, and nuclear (CBRN) threat environment, the unit is preparing for operations in a nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) environment. All necessary personnel and protective equipment are available. The unit has communications with higher and adjacent elements using frequency modulated (FM) and/or digital communications or other tactical means. Some iterations of this task should be performed in mission-oriented protective posture level 4 (MOPP4).

**TASK STANDARDS:** The unit prepared for operations under CBRN conditions by implementing all protective measures required by the conditions and the CBRN situation according to the tactical standing operating procedure (TACSOP) and the guidance from higher headquarter.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p><b>*1.</b> The unit leader checks the accountability and serviceability of the CBRN defense equipment.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensured that the CBRN detection equipment was issued to trained operators.</li> <li>b. Ensured that the CBRN detection equipment was employed and operating within 15 minutes.</li> <li>c. Identified equipment shortages.</li> <li>d. Took action to obtain replacement equipment.</li> </ul> <p><b>2.</b> The unit assumes MOPP levels as directed by higher headquarters or as the CBRN situation dictates and is prepared to operate at the time specified in the operation order (OPORD). The Soldiers—</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Donned their masks within 9 seconds.</li> <li>b. Assumed MOPP4 within 8 minutes.</li> </ul> <p><b>3.</b> The unit takes action to protect against an CBRN attack.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Set up and used collective protective shelters, if available.</li> <li>b. Prepared protective shelters (such as foxholes) with overhead cover.</li> </ul> <p><b>*4.</b> The unit leader adjusts the MOPP level using MOPP analysis.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Received and analyzed the enemy CBRN threat capability.</li> </ul> <hr/> <p><i>Note.</i> Some considerations are: Is the unit targeted or can it be targeted? Does the enemy have the capability to deliver chemical or nuclear weapons? When or where would the enemy most likely deliver the chemical or nuclear weapons?</p> <hr/> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>b. Collected and analyzed weather data.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p><b>Note.</b> Some considerations are: Is it day or night? What are the current weather conditions (see the chemical downwind message [CDM] or the weather report)? What are weather conditions 2, 4, and 6 hours in the future (see the CDM or the weather report)?</p> <hr/> <p><b>c.</b> Analyzed the unit status and mission.</p> <hr/> <p><b>Note.</b> Some considerations are: What is the mission? What is the work rate? How long will the work take? What is the training and physical level of the unit? How long will it take to warn all Soldiers of an CBRN attack?</p> <hr/> <p><b>*5.</b> Commander/leader performs or delegates performance of the steps in the risk management process for each step in troop-leading procedures (appendix C).</p> <p>* Indicates a leader task step</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
Total Task Steps Evaluated							
Total Task Steps GO							
Training Status GO/NO-GO							

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
011-510-1100	Determine aircraft decontamination levels and procedures	STP 1-15 II
011-510-1101	Employ NBC protection for aviation operations	STP 1-15 II
011-510-1102	Employ the NBC warning and reporting system	STP 1-15 II
011-510-1103	Plan aviation operations in an NBC environment	STP 1-15 II

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
01-2-0341	Perform composite risk management procedures	ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-126-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENT:** COMPANY

**TASK: Prepare for a Chemical Attack (03-3-C202)**

(FM 3-11.4)	(FM 1-100)	(FM 1-113)
(FM 3-0)	(FM 3-04.111)	(FM 3-04.126)
(FM 3-11)	(FM 3-100.12)	(FM 7-0)
(FM 7-1)	(FM 71-100)	

**ITERATION:** 1      2      3      4      5      M      (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T      P      U      (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) are conducting chemical warfare or intelligence indicates that its use is imminent. Higher headquarters directs the implementation of actions to minimize casualties and limit contamination. Some iterations of this task should be performed in mission-oriented protective posture level 4 (MOPP4).

**TASK STANDARDS:** The unit prepares for a chemical attack by assuming MOPP4 within 8 minutes and completes their preparation efforts before the attack or its effects reach their location. The unit protects personnel, equipment, food, and water and continues the mission.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>*1. The unit leader issues a warning order (WARNO).</p> <p>2. The unit personnel start defensive preparations for a chemical attack.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Assumed MOPP4 within 8 minutes after notification.</li> <li>b. Attached M9 detector paper to their right arms, left wrists, right or left ankles, and the vehicles.</li> <li>c. Conducted field sanitation procedures.</li> <li>d. Placed chemical agent alarms upwind of their position.</li> </ul> <p>3. The unit personnel prepare fighting positions and shelters.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Used existing, natural, or man-made facilities (such as caves, ditches, culverts, and tunnels) as fighting positions and shelters.</li> <li>b. Dug fighting positions and bunkers with overhead cover.</li> </ul> <hr/> <p><b>Note.</b> Fighting positions should have overhead cover consisting of a minimum of 18 inches of soil, if time permits.</p> <hr/> <p>*4. The noncommissioned officers (NCOs) check personnel and fighting positions.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensured that personnel were at MOPP4.</li> <li>b. Ensured that individual and platoon fighting positions were hardened with sandbags and overhead cover.</li> </ul> <p>*5. The unit leader takes additional actions consistent with the tactical situation by increasing, decreasing, or modifying the MOPP level.</p> <p>*6. Commander/leader performs or delegates performance of the steps in the risk management process for each step in troop-leading procedures (appendix C).</p> <p>* Indicates a leader task step</p>		

<b>TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK</b>							
<b>ITERATION</b>	<b>1</b>	<b>2</b>	<b>3</b>	<b>4</b>	<b>5</b>	<b>M</b>	<b>TOTAL</b>
Total Task Steps Evaluated							
Total Task Steps GO							
Training Status GO/NO-GO							

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
011-510-1100	Determine aircraft decontamination levels and procedures	STP 1-15 II
011-510-1101	Employ NBC protection for aviation operations	STP 1-15 II
011-510-1102	Employ the NBC warning and reporting system	STP 1-15 II
011-510-1103	Plan aviation operations in an NBC environment	STP 1-15 II
031-503-1013	Decontaminate yourself and individual equipment using chemical decontaminating kits	MOS E 74D 1

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
01-2-0341	Perform composite risk management procedures	ARTEP 1-113-MTP
03-3-C203	Respond to a chemical attack	ARTEP 1-126-MTP ARTEP 1-113-MTP
03-3-C225	Conduct chemical reconnaissance	ARTEP 1-126-MTP ARTEP 1-113-MTP
03-3-C226	Cross a chemically contaminated area	ARTEP 1-126-MTP ARTEP 1-113-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENT:** COMPANY

**TASK: Respond to a Chemical Attack (03-3-C203)**

(FM 3-11.4)	(FM 1-100)	(FM 1-113)
(FM 3-0)	(FM 3-3)	(FM 3-04.111)
(FM 3-04.126)	(FM 3-5)	(FM 3-11)
(FM 3-100.12)	(FM 7-0)	(FM 7-1)
(FM 71-100)		

**ITERATION:** 1M 2M 3M 4M 5M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The unit is deployed in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 2. Intelligence indicates that the opposing forces (OPFOR) have initiated chemical warfare. The automatic alarm sounds or the detector paper changes color, causing the unit to react. This task is always performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The unit responds to a chemical attack by sounding the alarm (vocally or nonvocally), immediately assuming MOPP4, and immediately using available shelter preventing further exposure to contamination. The unit reacted to the chemical alarm within 9 seconds.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p><b>*1.</b> The unit leaders ensure that the Soldiers react to the sound of the chemical agent alarm or recognize the indicators of chemical or biological attack.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensured that the Soldiers put on protective masks within 9 seconds.</li> <li>b. Gave a vocal or nonvocal alarm.</li> <li>c. Assumed MOPP4 as soon as possible.</li> <li>d. Sought additional shelter, if available.</li> <li>e. Administered a nerve agent antidote (buddy aid) to other Soldiers with symptoms of nerve-agent poisoning, if applicable.</li> <li>f. Self administered nerve agent antidotes, if applicable.</li> <li>g. Checked Soldiers to ensure that the protective measures were followed.</li> </ul> <p><b>2.</b> The Soldiers take additional protective measures.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Protected exposed equipment and supplies.</li> <li>b. Monitored the area by testing it with detector kits.</li> <li>c. Used prevention procedures, such as marking contaminated areas.</li> </ul> <p><b>3.</b> The Soldiers conduct immediate decontamination.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Conducted skin decontamination.</li> <li>b. Wiped down personal equipment with the M291 skin decontaminating kit (SDK) or the M295 decontamination kit, individual equipment (DKIE).</li> <li>c. Conducted the operator's spray down with M11/M13 decontamination apparatus (portable) or the operator's wipe down using the M100 decontamination system.</li> </ul> <p><b>*4.</b> The unit leaders initiate the unmasking procedures and report to higher headquarters.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensured that casualties were given medical care.</li> </ul>		



<b>TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES</b>	<b>GO</b>	<b>NO-GO</b>
<p><b>b.</b> Reported casualties.</p> <p><b>c.</b> Submitted a chemical, biological, radiological, and nuclear (CBRN) 1 report to higher headquarters immediately.</p> <p><b>d.</b> Continued the mission, or requested movement to an alternate location.</p> <p><b>*5.</b> Commander/leader performs or delegates performance of the steps in the risk management process for each step in troop-leading procedures (appendix C).</p> <p>* Indicates a leader task step</p>		

<b>TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK</b>							
<b>ITERATION</b>	<b>1M</b>	<b>2M</b>	<b>3M</b>	<b>4M</b>	<b>5M</b>		<b>TOTAL</b>
Total Task Steps Evaluated							
Total Task Steps GO							
Training Status GO/NO-GO							

#### **SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
011-510-1100	Determine aircraft decontamination levels and procedures	STP 1-15 II
011-510-1101	Employ NBC protection for aviation operations	STP 1-15 II
011-510-1102	Employ the NBC warning and reporting system	STP 1-15 II
031-503-1013	Decontaminate yourself and individual equipment using chemical decontaminating kits	MOS E 74D 1
031-503-1015	Protect yourself from NBC injury/contamination with mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) gear	MOS E 74D 1
031-503-1019	React to chemical or biological hazard/attack	STP 21-1-SMCT MOS E 74D 1
031-503-1035	Protect yourself from chemical/biological contamination using your assigned protective mask	STP 21-1-SMCT MOS E 74D 1

#### **SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
01-2-0341	Perform composite risk management procedures	ARTEP 1-113-MTP
03-3-C201	Prepare for operations under chemical, biological, radiological, and nuclear conditions	ARTEP 1-126-MTP ARTEP 1-113-MTP
03-3-C202	Prepare for a chemical attack	ARTEP 1-126-MTP ARTEP 1-113-MTP
03-3-C203	Respond to a chemical attack	ARTEP 1-126-MTP ARTEP 1-113-MTP

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
03-3-C225	Conduct chemical reconnaissance	ARTEP 1-126-MTP ARTEP 1-113-MTP
03-3-C226	Cross a chemically contaminated area	ARTEP 1-126-MTP ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-126-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENT: COMPANY**

**TASK: Prepare for a Nuclear Attack (03-3-C206)**

(FM 3-11.4)	(FM 1-100)	(FM 1-113)
(FM 3-0)	(FM 3-3)	(FM 3-04.111)
(FM 3-04.126)	(FM 3-11)	(FM 3-100.12)
(FM 7-0)	(FM 7-1)	(FM 71-100)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The unit receives notice that a nuclear attack is probable and they must initiate actions to minimize casualties and damage. Some iterations of this task should be performed in mission-oriented protective posture level 4 (MOPP4).

**TASK STANDARDS:** The unit prepared for a nuclear attack by implementing all precautions specified in the tactical operating procedures and leaders guidance. Unit hardened and shielded positions and equipment, and initiated continuous monitoring.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>*1. The unit leader issues a warning order (WARNO) to subordinate units, ensuring that all Soldiers understand the order.</p> <p>2. The unit begins the defensive preparation for a nuclear attack.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Placed vehicles and equipment for the best terrain shielding (hill masses, slopes, culverts, depressions).</li> <li>b. Turned off and disconnected nonessential electronic equipment according to the unit standing operating procedure (SOP).</li> <li>c. Tied down essential antennas.</li> <li>d. Took down nonessential antennas and antenna leads according to the unit SOP or other guidance.</li> <li>e. Improved shelters with consideration for blast, thermal, and radiation effects.</li> <li>f. Zeroed dosimeters.</li> <li>g. Secured loose, flammable (or explosive) items and food and water containers to protect them from nuclear weapons effects.</li> <li>h. Took cover in hardened shelters, if available.</li> <li>i. Used field-expedient shelters.</li> </ul> <p>3. The unit takes additional actions consistent with the tactical situation.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Continued periodic monitoring.</li> <li>b. Reported all dose rate and dosimeter readings to higher headquarters.</li> </ul> <p>*4. Commander/leader performs or delegates performance of the steps in the risk management process for each step in troop-leading procedures (appendix C).</p> <p>* Indicates a leader task step</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
<i>ITERATION</i>	<i>1</i>	<i>2</i>	<i>3</i>	<i>4</i>	<i>5</i>	<i>M</i>	<i>TOTAL</i>
Total Task Steps Evaluated							
Total Task Steps GO							
Training Status GO/NO-GO							

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
011-510-1100	Determine aircraft decontamination levels and procedures	STP 1-15 II
011-510-1101	Employ NBC protection for aviation operations	STP 1-15 II
011-510-1102	Employ the NBC warning and reporting system	STP 1-15 II
011-510-1103	Plan aviation operations in an NBC environment	STP 1-15 II
031-503-1015	Protect yourself from NBC injury/contamination with mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) gear	MOS E 74D 1  STP 21-1-SMCT
031-503-1018	React to nuclear hazard/attack	MOS E 74D 1
031-503-3006	Supervise radiation monitoring procedures	MOS E 54B 1
031-503-4002	Prepare a unit for NBC attack	MOS E 54B 4

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
01-2-0341	Perform composite risk management procedures	ARTEP 1-113-MTP
03-3-C201	Prepare for operations under chemical, biological, radiological, and nuclear conditions	ARTEP 1-126-MTP ARTEP 1-113-MTP
03-3-C222	Respond to the residual effects of a nuclear attack	ARTEP 1-126-MTP ARTEP 1-113-MTP  ARTEP 1-126-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENT:** COMPANY

**TASK: Cross a Radiologically Contaminated Area (03-3-C208)**

(FM 3-3)	(FM 1-100)	(FM 1-113)
(FM 3-0)	(FM 3-04.111)	(FM 3-04.126)
(FM 3-11)	(FM 3-11.4)	(FM 3-100.12)
(FM 7-0)	(FM 7-1)	(FM 71-100)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The unit receives orders to cross a radiologically contaminated area. The approximate boundaries of the area are known or marked. Some iterations of this task should be performed in mission-oriented protective posture level 4 (MOPP4).

**TASK STANDARDS:** The unit crosses the contaminated area by the shortest, fastest route available without incurring radiation casualties or spreading contamination.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>*1. The unit leaders prepare for the crossing.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Directed individuals to cover their noses and mouths with handkerchiefs or clean rags, roll their sleeves down, and wore gloves.</li> <li>b. Received operational exposure guidance (OEG) from the commander (turn-back dose or turn-back dose rate).</li> <li>c. Ensured that radiac equipment operators checked their instruments.</li> </ul> <p>2. The unit prepares for the crossing.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Identified extra shielding requirements (for example, used sandbags on the floor of vehicles).</li> <li>b. Placed externally stored equipment inside, or covered it with available material.</li> <li>c. Started continuous monitoring.</li> </ul> <p>3. The unit crosses the area.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Avoided stirring up dust.</li> <li>b. Kept out of dust clouds by increasing intervals and/or distance between vehicles.</li> <li>c. Conducted the movement as rapidly as possible (tracked vehicles were buttoned up).</li> </ul> <p>4. The unit performs immediate decontamination of personnel and equipment.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Checked for casualties.</li> <li>b. Reported casualties, if applicable.</li> <li>c. Conducted the necessary decontamination.</li> <li>d. Evacuated casualties.</li> <li>e. Continued the mission.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p><b>*5.</b> Commander/leader performs or delegates performance of the steps in the risk management process for each step in troop-leading procedures (appendix C).</p> <p>* Indicates a leader task step</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
Total Task Steps Evaluated							
Total Task Steps GO							
Training Status GO/NO-GO							

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
011-510-1100	Determine aircraft decontamination levels and procedures	STP 1-15 II
011-510-1101	Employ NBC protection for aviation operations	STP 1-15 II
011-510-1102	Employ the NBC warning and reporting system	STP 1-15 II
011-510-1103	Plan aviation operations in an NBC environment	STP 1-15 II
031-503-1015	Protect yourself from NBC injury/contamination with mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) gear	MOS E 74D 1
031-503-3004	Supervise crossing of a contaminated area	STP 21-1-SMCT MOS E 54B 1
031-503-3006	Supervise radiation monitoring procedures	MOS E 54B 1

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
01-2-0341	Perform composite risk management procedures	ARTEP 1-113-MTP  ARTEP 1-126-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENT: COMPANY**

**TASK: Respond to the Residual Effects of a Nuclear Attack (03-3-C222)**

(FM 3-11.4)	(FM 1-100)	(FM 1-113)
(FM 3-0)	(FM 3-3)	(FM 3-04.111)
(FM 3-04.126)	(FM 3-11)	(FM 3-100.12)
(FM 7-0)	(FM 7-1)	

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The unit is located within a predicted fallout area. The mission does not allow movement from the predicted fallout area. Some iterations of this task should be performed in mission-oriented protective posture level 4 (MOPP4).

**TASK STANDARDS:** The unit responds to the residual effects of a nuclear attack by taking actions to minimize personnel exposure to residual radiation, protecting equipment, material, and supplies and monitoring the radiation exposure of personnel.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>*1. The unit leaders prepare the unit for fallout.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensured that individuals covered their noses and mouths with handkerchiefs or clean rags, rolled their sleeves down, and wore gloves.</li> <li>b. Covered the equipment; munitions; petroleum, oils, and lubricants (POL) supplies; and food and water containers or placed them inside shelters or vehicles.</li> <li>c. Used shelters, closed vehicles, or available shielding to protect personnel from fallout.</li> <li>d. Ensured that continuous monitoring was maintained using available chemical, biological, radiological, and nuclear (CBRN) detection and identification equipment.</li> </ul> <p>2. The designated personnel monitor the fallout.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Maintained total dose information with available total dose instruments.</li> <li>b. Ensured that exposure was minimized while the commander determined if relocation to a clean area was necessary or possible.</li> <li>c. Calculated the optimum time of exit.</li> <li>d. Sent CBRN 4 reports to higher headquarters as required via secure means when possible.</li> </ul> <p>*3. The unit leader develops a contingency plan.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Used guidance from higher headquarters based on the mission and previous radiation exposure.</li> <li>b. Planned for the rotation of individuals to minimize their exposure.</li> </ul> <p>*4. Commander/leader performs or delegates performance of the steps in the risk management process for each step in troop-leading procedures (appendix C).</p> <p>* Indicates a leader task step</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
<i>ITERATION</i>	<i>1</i>	<i>2</i>	<i>3</i>	<i>4</i>	<i>5</i>	<i>M</i>	<i>TOTAL</i>
Total Task Steps Evaluated							
Total Task Steps GO							
Training Status GO/NO-GO							

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
011-510-1100	Determine aircraft decontamination levels and procedures	STP 1-15 II
011-510-1101	Employ NBC protection for aviation operations	STP 1-15 II
011-510-1102	Employ the NBC warning and reporting system	STP 1-15 II
011-510-1103	Plan aviation operations in an NBC environment	STP 1-15 II
031-503-1015	Protect yourself from NBC injury/contamination with mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) gear	MOS E 74D 1  STP 21-1-SMCT

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
01-2-0341	Perform composite risk management procedures	ARTEP 1-113-MTP  ARTEP 1-126-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**



**ELEMENT:** COMPANY

**TASK: Conduct Operational Decontamination (03-3-C224)**

(FM 3-5)	(FM 1-100)	(FM 1-113)
(FM 3-0)	(FM 3-04.111)	(FM 3-04.126)
(FM 3-100.12)	(FM 7-0)	(FM 7-1)

**ITERATION:** 1M 2M 3M 4M 5M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The unit is operating in a contaminated environment. Performance degradation from mission-oriented protection posture level 4 (MOPP4) is increasing, and protective gear is in danger of penetration by contamination. The time and the tactical situation permit the unit to conduct operational decontamination. Replacement protective gear is available for each Soldier. or a nonsupported decontamination, decontamination equipment and supplies are available and operational. For a supported decontamination, a decontamination unit is available, and it is operational and tasked to provide decontamination support. This task is always performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The unit decontaminates its individual gear and conducts MOPP gear exchange (using the buddy system) without sustaining additional casualties from chemical, biological, radiological, and nuclear (CBRN) contamination. The unit limits the contamination transfer hazard by removing gross chemical contamination on equipment and minimizes contamination on Soldiers according to Army field manuals (FMs). The unit reduces radiological contamination to negligible risk levels according to unit tactical standing operating procedure (TACSOP) and Army field manuals and/or reduces chemical and biological (CB) contamination to accelerate the weathering process and eventually provides temporary relief from MOPP4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>*1. The unit leader determines the extent of the contamination and establishes decontamination priorities.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Received input from his subordinate leaders.</li> <li>b. Established decontamination priorities.</li> </ul> <p>2. The unit submits a request for decontamination to higher headquarters. The request should include, as a minimum, the following—</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. The designation of the contaminated unit.</li> <li>b. The location of the contaminated unit.</li> <li>c. The frequency and call sign of the contaminated unit.</li> <li>d. The time that the unit became contaminated.</li> <li>e. The number of personnel for a MOPP gear exchange.</li> <li>f. The Number of vehicles and equipment (by type) that were contaminated.</li> <li>g. The type of contamination.</li> <li>h. Special requirements (such as a patient decontamination station, recovery assets, and a unit decontamination team).</li> </ul> <p>3. The unit coordinates with higher headquarters.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Obtained permission to conduct decontamination and obtained the necessary support.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>b. Selected the linkup point to meet supporting units (a company supply section, a company or battalion power-driven decontamination equipment [PDDE] crew, or a decontamination squad or platoon).</p> <p>c. Coordinated with supporting elements.</p> <p>d. Requested replacement MOPP gear.</p> <p>e. Coordinated with supporting units to determine if they would also conduct a MOPP gear exchange.</p> <p>*4. The unit leader and CBRN specialists select a site to conduct the operation. Ensured that the selected site provided—</p> <p>a. Adequate overhead concealment.</p> <p>b. Good drainage.</p> <p>c. Easy access and exit routes (but off the main routes).</p> <p>d. Proximity to a water source large enough to support vehicle wash-down (planned for 100 gallons per vehicle).</p> <p>e. An area large enough to accommodate units involved in operational decontamination (110 square meters for both the vehicle wash-down site and the MOPP gear exchange site).</p> <p>5. The unit coordinates for operational decontamination support (a company or battalion PDDE crew or a decontamination unit).</p> <p>a. Notified higher headquarters of the area for the operational decontamination.</p> <p>b. Established communications with the decontamination unit.</p> <p>c. Ensured that the decontamination unit knew the locations of the linkup and the selected decontamination site.</p> <p>6. The unit and supporting units move to the decontamination site.</p> <p>a. Met at the linkup point as coordinated.</p> <p>b. Provided security at both the linkup point and the decontamination site.</p> <p>7. The units prepare for operational decontamination.</p> <p>a. Set up the decontamination site.</p> <p>(1) The supporting decontamination unit crew sets up the vehicle washdown site.</p> <p>(2) The unit sets up a MOPP gear exchange site not less than 50 meters upwind of the vehicle wash-down site.</p> <p>(3) The remainder of the unit prepared its equipment for decontamination.</p> <p>b. Conducted preparatory actions in the predecontamination area.</p> <p>(1) Vehicle crews (except operators) dismounted unless they had an operational overpressure system and an uncontaminated interior.</p> <p>(2) Dismounted crews removed mud and camouflage from vehicles.</p> <hr/> <p><b>Note.</b> The contaminated unit provides personnel to do this when crews do not dismount.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>(3) Separated vehicles and dismounted crews.</p> <p>(a) Ensured that vehicle operators were briefed (included the use of overhead cover and concealment and proper intervals).</p> <p>(b) Ensured that vehicles were buttoned up, for example, all doors, hatches, and other openings were closed or covered.</p> <p>(4) Moved vehicles (with operators) to the vehicle wash-down site.</p> <p>(5) Moved dismounted crews and all other Soldiers in the contaminated unit to the MOPP gear exchange site.</p> <p>*8. The noncommissioned officer in charge (NCOIC) of the decontamination unit supervises the operation of the vehicle wash-down site. Ensured that vehicle operators—</p> <p>a. Maintained proper intervals between vehicles while processing through the wash-down station.</p> <p>b. Washed vehicles properly.</p> <p>(1) Started at the top and worked down.</p> <p>(2) Sprayed hot soapy water for 2 to 3 minutes per vehicle.</p> <p>(3) Monitored water consumption.</p> <p>c. Moved to the MOPP gear exchange site and conducted MOPP gear exchange.</p> <p>d. Moved to the assembly area (AA).</p> <p>9. The contaminated unit conducted MOPP gear exchange.</p> <p>a. Prepared the equipment decontamination station (with supertropical bleach [STB] dry mix).</p> <p>b. Briefed MOPP gear exchange participants on procedures to be followed.</p> <p>c. Placed the decontaminated individual equipment on a clean surface (such as plastic, a poncho, or similar material).</p> <p>d. Exchanged MOPP gear using the buddy system.</p> <p>e. Moved the Soldiers to the AA after they completed the MOPP gear exchange.</p> <hr/> <p><b>Note.</b> Ensure that supporting units have the opportunity to use the MOPP gear exchange site before proceeding. Ensure that the supporting decontamination unit cleans and marks the site and reports the area of contamination (using an CBRN 5 report) to higher headquarters.</p> <hr/> <p>*10. The unit leaders account for all personnel and equipment after completing the operational decontamination.</p> <p>*11. The unit leader reports to higher headquarters.</p> <p>a. Reported the completion and the location of the vehicle wash-down and MOPP gear exchange decontamination sites.</p> <p>b. Requested permission to perform unmasking procedures, if no hazards were detected through testing.</p> <p>c. Determined the adequacy of the decontamination and adjusted the MOPP level as required (after obtaining approval from higher headquarters).</p> <p>12. The unit continues its mission.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p><b>*13.</b> Commander/leader performs or delegates performance of the steps in the risk management process for each step in troop-leading procedures (appendix C).</p> <p>* Indicates a leader task step</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1M	2M	3M	4M	5M		TOTAL
Total Task Steps Evaluated							
Total Task Steps GO							
Training Status GO/NO-GO							

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
011-510-1100	Determine aircraft decontamination levels and procedures	STP 1-15 II
011-510-1101	Employ NBC protection for aviation operations	STP 1-15 II
011-510-1102	Employ the NBC warning and reporting system	STP 1-15 II
011-510-1103	Plan aviation operations in an NBC environment	STP 1-15 II
031-503-1013	Decontaminate yourself and individual equipment using chemical decontaminating kits	MOS E 74D 1
031-503-1015	Protect yourself from NBC injury/contamination with mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) gear	MOS E 74D 1
031-503-1035	Protect yourself from chemical/biological contamination using your assigned protective mask	STP 21-1-SMCT MOS E 74D 1  STP 21-1-SMCT

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
01-2-0341	Perform composite risk management procedures	ARTEP 1-113-MTP
03-3-C312	Conduct thorough decontamination operations	ARTEP 1-126-MTP ARTEP 1-113-MTP
03-3-C201	Prepare for operations under chemical, biological, radiological, and nuclear conditions	ARTEP 1-126-MTP ARTEP 1-113-MTP  ARTEP 1-126-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENT:** COMPANY

**TASK: Conduct Chemical Reconnaissance (03-3-C225)**

(FM 3-11.19)	(FM 1-100)	(FM 1-113)
(FM 3-0)	(FM 3-04.111)	(FM 3-04.126)
(FM 3-100.12)	(FM 7-0)	(FM 7-1)

**ITERATION:** 1M 2M 3M 4M 5M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The unit is operating in an active chemical environment and the unit leader has received a warning order (WARNO), operation order (OPORD), or fragmentary order (FRAGO) for an chemical reconnaissance mission. The unit needs to determine if chemical agent hazards exist in a particular location. The unit has operational chemical detection equipment and supplies available. Time is available to conduct troop-leading procedures (TLP). The unit has frequency modulated (FM) and/or digital communications with higher, adjacent, and subordinate elements. This task is always performed in mission-oriented protective posture level 4 (MOPP4).

**TASK STANDARDS:** The unit leader conducts TLP. The unit detected, identified, marked, and reported the location of all chemical agents in the assigned reconnaissance area to its higher headquarters using FM and/or digital communications. The unit marked and recorded the location of contamination within 100 meters accuracy of actual location without taking casualties to chemical, biological, radiological, and nuclear (CBRN) agents.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>*1. The unit leader issues guidance to subordinate leaders from an OPORD, FRAGO, or WARNO by either FM, and/or digital communications, or other tactical means.</p> <p>*2. The unit leader begins preparations for the chemical reconnaissance.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Conducted a map reconnaissance of the route and the specific area for reconnaissance or the situational awareness on the digital display.</li> <li>b. Determined the reconnaissance or search technique(s) to use.</li> <li>c. Determined the survey technique(s) to use, if required.</li> <li>d. Established actions on contact.</li> <li>e. Planned for decontamination (decon) following the reconnaissance operation, if necessary.</li> <li>f. Coordinated for fire support.</li> <li>g. Issued an OPORD or FRAGO to subordinate leaders.</li> <li>h. Briefed personnel on proper reporting and recording procedures.</li> </ul> <p>3. The unit prepares for the chemical reconnaissance mission.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Prepared vehicles and equipment for chemical reconnaissance.</li> <li>b. Performed precombat checks (PCC) on vehicles and equipment.</li> <li>c. Loaded chemical agent detection equipment.</li> <li>d. Removed all external gear and equipment not needed or required for the mission.</li> <li>e. Attached M9 paper to troops and vehicles.</li> <li>f. Covered exposed equipment with plastic or canvas.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>g. Covered the internal area of vehicle for team members who dismount vehicle.</p> <p>h. Assumed the appropriate mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) level for the reconnaissance mission.</p> <hr/> <p><b>Note.</b> In order to limit performance degradation, the unit leader should conduct a MOPP analysis to determine the MOPP level appropriate for movement to the reconnaissance start point and to determine the point when the unit assumes MOPP4.</p> <hr/> <p>4. The unit conducts the chemical reconnaissance.</p> <p>a. Used proper movement techniques, according to mission, enemy, terrain and weather, troops and support available, time available, and civil considerations (METT-TC).</p> <p>b. Used chemical agent detection equipment and chemical agent detection paper to locate contamination around and within the designated area.</p> <p>c. Maintained 25 to 100 meter spacing between vehicles across the axis of advance, depending on the terrain.</p> <p>d. Stopped vehicles at selected intervals or in areas with visual indications of a chemical attack to check for contamination.</p> <p>e. Checked the area for visual indications of chemical contamination such as—</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Dead or discolored vegetation.</li> <li>(2) Discolored soil.</li> <li>(3) Unusual liquid droplets.</li> <li>(4) Oily film on water.</li> <li>(5) Craters caused by bursting munitions.</li> <li>(6) Absence of insect life.</li> <li>(7) Dead animals and birds.</li> </ul> <p>f. Marked the contaminated area according to the OPORD and/or tactical standing operating procedure (TACSOP).</p> <p>*5. The unit leader ensures higher headquarters receives pre-formatted CBRN 4 (chemical) report digitally and/or the appropriate data by FM voice net.</p> <p>6. The unit conducts recovery operations.</p> <p>a. Checked Soldiers and vehicles for contamination.</p> <p>b. Segregated contaminated Soldiers and equipment, if necessary.</p> <p>c. Coordinated for operational decon, if necessary.</p> <p>d. Moved to the pre-selected decon site, if necessary.</p> <p>e. Conducted operational decon, if necessary.</p> <p>f. Coordinated for reconstitution to include thorough decon, if applicable.</p> <p>*7. Commander/leader performs or delegates performance of the steps in the risk management process for each step in troop-leading procedures (appendix C).</p> <p>* Indicates a leader task step</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
<i>ITERATION</i>	<i>1M</i>	<i>2M</i>	<i>3M</i>	<i>4M</i>	<i>5M</i>		<i>TOTAL</i>
Total Task Steps Evaluated							
Total Task Steps GO							
Training Status GO/NO-GO							

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
011-510-1100	Determine aircraft decontamination levels and procedures	STP 1-15 II
011-510-1101	Employ NBC protection for aviation operations	STP 1-15 II
011-510-1102	Employ the NBC warning and reporting system	STP 1-15 II
011-510-1103	Plan aviation operations in an NBC environment	STP 1-15 II
031-503-1015	Protect yourself from NBC injury/contamination with mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) gear	MOS E 74D 1
031-503-1035	Protect yourself from chemical/biological contamination using your assigned protective mask	STP 21-1-SMCT MOS E 74D 1  STP 21-1-SMCT

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
01-2-0341	Perform composite risk management procedures	ARTEP 1-113-MTP
03-3-C201	Prepare for operations under chemical, biological, radiological, and nuclear conditions	ARTEP 1-126-MTP ARTEP 1-113-MTP
03-3-C208	Cross a radiologically contaminated area	ARTEP 1-126-MTP ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-126-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENT:** COMPANY

**TASK: Cross a Chemically Contaminated Area (03-3-C226)**

(FM 3-3)	(FM 1-100)	(FM 1-113)
(FM 3-0)	(FM 3-04.111)	(FM 3-04.126)
(FM 3-100.12)	(FM 7-0)	(FM 7-1)

**ITERATION:** 1M 2M 3M 4M 5M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The unit is moving to a new location on a designated route and cannot move off that route and still complete its assigned mission. All necessary personnel and equipment are available. The unit has communications with higher and adjacent elements using digital and/or frequency modulated (FM) communications. The unit discovers contamination on the route and is directed to cross the contaminated area. This task is always performed in mission-oriented protective posture level 4 (MOPP4).

**TASK STANDARDS:** The unit crossed the chemically contaminated area using the best route possible based on contamination avoidance principles. The unit implemented all measures required by standing operating procedures (SOP) to minimize personnel and equipment contamination. The unit conducted needed decontamination of personnel and equipment after crossing.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p><b>*1.</b> The unit leader uses a contamination overlay to select a route across the contaminated area.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>a.</b> Used a chemical, biological, radiological, and nuclear (CBRN) 5 (chemical) report or reconnaissance reports.</li> <li><b>b.</b> Selected a route by map minimizing exposure consistent with the mission.</li> <li><b>c.</b> Obtained route clearance and approval.</li> </ul> <p><b>2.</b> The unit prepares to cross the area.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>a.</b> Assumed mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4 for crossing the area.</li> <li><b>b.</b> Ensured that all drivers, vehicle commanders, and leaders knew the march route and/or had strip maps.</li> <li><b>c.</b> Ensured that all vehicles were buttoned up (mounted movement).</li> <li><b>d.</b> Placed externally stored equipment inside or covered it with available material.</li> <li><b>e.</b> Attached M9 detector paper to Soldiers and vehicles to provide warning of contamination.</li> <li><b>f.</b> Ensured that M13 decontaminating apparatus, portables (DAPs) and/or M11 decontamination apparatus were serviced, filled, and mounted on vehicles.</li> <li><b>g.</b> Ensured that all chemical alarms and detection equipment were serviced and mounted.</li> </ul> <p><b>3.</b> The unit crosses the area.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>a.</b> Crossed the contaminated area using contamination avoidance techniques.</li> <li><b>b.</b> Avoided low ground, overhanging branches, and brush to the extent allowed by the tactical situation.</li> <li><b>c.</b> Conducted a dismounted movement, if necessary, as rapidly as possible.</li> </ul>		



TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>d. Crossed the area as quickly and as carefully as possible.</p> <p>e. Notified higher headquarters when the crossing was completed.</p> <p>4. The unit performs immediate decontamination of personnel and equipment.</p> <p>a. Checked for casualties.</p> <p>b. Reported casualties, if applicable.</p> <hr/> <p><b>Note.</b> FM radio is recommended as the primary means of communication for requesting "urgent" MEDEVAC support.</p> <hr/> <p>c. Conducted the necessary decontamination.</p> <p>d. Evacuated casualties.</p> <p>e. Continued the mission.</p> <p>5. The unit requires additional decontamination support, if applicable.</p> <p>a. Identified decontamination support requirements.</p> <p>b. Identified the type of decontamination operations required.</p> <p>c. Notified higher headquarters when decontamination operations are complete.</p> <p>*6. Commander/leader performs or delegates performance of the steps in the risk management process for each step in troop-leading procedures (appendix C).</p> <p>* Indicates a leader task step</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1M	2M	3M	4M	5M		TOTAL
Total Task Steps Evaluated							
Total Task Steps GO							
Training Status GO/NO-GO							

#### SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
011-510-1100	Determine aircraft decontamination levels and procedures	STP 1-15 II
011-510-1101	Employ NBC protection for aviation operations	STP 1-15 II
011-510-1102	Employ the NBC warning and reporting system	STP 1-15 II
011-510-1103	Plan aviation operations in an NBC environment	STP 1-15 II
031-503-1013	Decontaminate yourself and individual equipment using chemical decontaminating kits	MOS E 74D 1
031-503-1015	Protect yourself from NBC injury/contamination with mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) gear	MOS E 74D 1
031-503-1019	React to chemical or biological hazard/attack	MOS E 74D 1 STP 21-1-SMCT

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
031-503-1035	Protect yourself from chemical/biological contamination using your assigned protective mask	MOS E 74D 1  STP 21-1-SMCT

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
01-2-0341	Perform composite risk management procedures	ARTEP 1-113-MTP
03-3-C312	Conduct thorough decontamination operations	ARTEP 1-126-MTP ARTEP 1-113-MTP
03-3-C201	Prepare for operations under chemical, biological, radiological, and nuclear conditions	ARTEP 1-126-MTP ARTEP 1-113-MTP
03-3-C202	Prepare for a chemical attack	ARTEP 1-126-MTP ARTEP 1-113-MTP
03-3-C203	Respond to a chemical attack	ARTEP 1-126-MTP ARTEP 1-113-MTP
03-3-C225	Conduct chemical reconnaissance	ARTEP 1-126-MTP ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-126-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENT:** COMPANY

**TASK: React To Ambush (07-2-1112)**

(FM 3-04.111)	(FM 1-100)	(FM 1-113)
(FM 3-0)	(FM 3-04.126)	(FM 3-100.12)
(FM 7-0)	(FM 7-1)	(FM 71-100)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The battalion is conducting assigned missions in a simulated (live, virtual, or constructive) combat environment. The unit has received an operation order (OPORD)/ fragmentary order (FRAGO) and the commander’s guidance. The main command post (CP) is operational and the staff sections and digital systems are functional. The element is in a prepared kill zone. The enemy initiates the ambush with a casualty-producing device and/or a high volume of fire. The unit has guidance provided by the rules of engagement (ROE) and from mission instructions (such as the peace mandate terms of reference) the status of forces agreement (SOFA), and the rules of interaction (ROI). Civilians, government organizations, nongovernmental organizations, private voluntary organizations, and the international press may be present on the battlefield. The presence of civilians can restrict the use of fires and reduce the combat power available to the commander. Some iterations of this task should be performed in mission-oriented protective posture level 4 (MOPP4).

**TASK STANDARDS:** The unit reacted immediately to the ambush based on the type (such as near, far). The unit disengaged the element in the kill zone or forces the enemy to withdraw. The unit continued follow-on operations. The unit complied with the ROE, mission instruction, and higher headquarters and other special orders. The time required to prepare is increased when conducting this task in MOPP4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p><b>Note.</b> Leaders ensure that the ROE and the ROI are disseminated to subordinate personnel.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Personnel in the kill zone reacted to a near ambush (within hand grenade range).                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Returned fire immediately; assumed covered positions; and threw fragmentation, concussion, and smoke grenades.</li> <li>b. Immediately after the grenades detonated, assaulted individually through the ambush using individual fire and movement.</li> </ol> </li> <li>2. Personnel not in the kill zone reacted to a near ambush.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Identified enemy positions.</li> <li>b. Initiated immediate suppressive fires against the enemy.</li> <li>c. Took up covered positions.</li> <li>d. Shifted fires as personnel in the kill zone assaulted through the ambush.</li> </ol> </li> <li>3. Personnel receiving fire in a far ambush (beyond hand grenade range) immediately returned fire and take up covered positions.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Suppressed or destroyed enemy crew-served weapons first.</li> <li>b. Obscured the enemy position with smoke (M203).</li> </ol> </li> </ol>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>c. Sustained suppressive fires and shifted them as the assaulting squads fought through the enemy position.</p> <p>4. Personnel not receiving fire reacted to a far ambush.</p> <p>a. Moved by a covered and concealed route to a vulnerable flank of the enemy's position.</p> <p>b. Assaulted using fire and movement techniques.</p> <p>5. The element forward observer (FO) calls for and adjusts indirect fires as directed by the element leader.</p> <p>a. Used indirect fires to isolate the enemy's position.</p> <p>b. Adjusted fires on any retreating enemy.</p> <p>6. The platoon leader accounts for all personnel and equipment after the enemy has withdrawn.</p> <p>a. Reported the situation to higher headquarters.</p> <p>b. Consolidated and reorganized as necessary.</p> <p>c. Continued the mission.</p> <p>*7. Commander/leader performs or delegates performance of the steps in the risk management process for each step in troop-leading procedures (see appendix C).</p> <p>* Indicates a leader task step</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
Total Task Steps Evaluated							
Total Task Steps GO							
Training Status GO/NO-GO							

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
011-510-0011	Integrate fundamentals of air-ground operations	STP 1-15 II
011-510-0020	Apply fundamentals of Army aviation in military operations in urban terrain (MOUT)	STP 1-15 II
011-510-0021	Employ fundamentals of Army operations	STP 1-15 II
011-510-0022	Determine characteristics of U.S. Army organization and capabilities	STP 1-15 II
011-510-0300	Coordinate staff duties/responsibilities in tactical units	STP 1-15 II

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
01-2-0341	Perform composite risk management procedures	ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-126-MTP

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
07-2-1923	React to indirect fire	ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-126-MTP
07-2-5045	Conduct negotiations	ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-126-MTP
07-2-6045	Employ camouflage, concealment, and deception techniques (infantry and aviation)	ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-126-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENT:** COMPANY

**TASK: React to Indirect Fire (07-2-1923)**

(FM 3-04.111)  
(FM 3-04.126)  
(FM 7-1)

(FM 1-100)  
(FM 3-100.12)

(FM 1-113)  
(FM 6-20)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The battalion is conducting assigned missions in a simulated (live, virtual, or constructive) combat environment. The main command post (CP) is operational and the staff sections and digital systems are functional. The unit has received an operation order (OPORD)/ fragmentary order (FRAGO) and commander's guidance. The element is moving, halted, or occupying a defensive position. Any member of the platoon gives the alert, "Incoming!" or a round impacts on or near their location. Some iterations of this task should be performed in mission-oriented protective posture level 4 (MOPP4).

**TASK STANDARDS:** Within 2 seconds of the alert, the leader designated the direction and the distance to move. The platoon moved to the specified location. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The company reacts to indirect fire while moving mounted.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. The company leader gave the direction and distance to move (for example, "3 o'clock, 200 meters").</li> <li>b. Vehicle commanders repeated the "Incoming!" alert to squad personnel.                                     <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Personnel closed all hatches.</li> <li>(2) Drivers moved rapidly out of the impact area in the direction ordered by the leader.</li> </ol> </li> </ol> </li> <li>2. The company reacts to indirect fire while moving dismounted.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensured that if vehicles with mounted weapons were available, the vehicles—                                     <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Halted as close as possible to the dismounted team, allowing personnel to mount.</li> <li>(2) Moved rapidly out of the impact area in the direction ordered by the squad leader.</li> </ol> </li> <li>b. Ensured that if vehicles were not available, dismounted personnel kept low and ran out of the impact area in the direction and at the distance ordered by the squad leader.</li> </ol> </li> <li>3. The company reacts to indirect fire when in a defensive position.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Moved the vehicles immediately out of the impact area to alternate positions.</li> <li>b. Protected personnel by having each one go under the overhead cover of their fighting positions, if dismounted.</li> </ol> </li> <li>4. Company members move to designated rally points according to the company's OPORD.</li> <li>5. The company establishes immediate security at the designated rally point.</li> <li>6. The company consolidates and reorganizes.</li> </ol>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p><b>*7.</b> The company leader submits a shelling report (SHELREP) or a mortar bombing report (MORTREP) to higher headquarters.</p> <hr/> <p><b>Note.</b> Digital units send the SHELREP using frequency modulated (FM) or digital means or the Force XXI Battle Command Brigade and Below (FBCB2) System according to the unit's tactical standing operating procedure (TACSOP).</p> <hr/> <p><b>*8.</b> Commander/leader performs or delegates performance of the steps in the risk management process for each step in troop-leading procedures (see appendix C).</p> <p>* Indicates a leader task step</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
Total Task Steps Evaluated							
Total Task Steps GO							
Training Status GO/NO-GO							

#### SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
011-510-0021	Employ fundamentals of Army operations	STP 1-15 II
011-510-0025	Defeat enemy threat using aircraft survivability equipment (ASE)	STP 1-15 II
011-510-0300	Coordinate staff duties/responsibilities in tactical units	STP 1-15 II

#### SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
01-2-0341	Perform composite risk management procedures	ARTEP 1-113-MTP
07-2-1112	React to ambush	ARTEP 1-126-MTP ARTEP 1-113-MTP
07-2-5045	Conduct negotiations	ARTEP 1-126-MTP ARTEP 1-113-MTP
07-2-6045	Employ camouflage, concealment, and deception techniques (infantry and aviation)	ARTEP 1-126-MTP ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-126-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENT:** COMPANY

**TASK: Employ Camouflage, Concealment, and Deception Techniques (Infantry and Aviation) (07-2-6045)**

(FM 20-3)	(FM 1-02)	(FM 1-100)
(FM 1-113)	(FM 3-04.111)	(FM 3-04.126)
(FM 3-100.12)	(FM 21-60)	(FM 24-35)
(FM 101-5-2)		

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The company is conducting operations as part of a higher headquarters and has received an operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) to conduct a mission at the location and time specified. The situation dictates that the company employ camouflage, concealment, and deception (CCD) techniques to deny selected information to the enemy. All necessary personnel and equipment are available. The company has communications with higher, adjacent, and subordinate elements. The company has been provided guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task should be conducted during limited visibility conditions. Some iterations of this task should be performed in mission-oriented protective posture level 4 (MOPP4).

**TASK STANDARDS:** The company employs CCD techniques according to the tactical standing operating procedures (TACSOP), the order, and or higher commander's guidance and or intent. Company commander ensures subordinate elements use proper CCD techniques. The company denies critical information to the enemy. The company complies with the ROE and ROI.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>*1. Company leaders gain and or maintain situational understanding using information that is gathered from Force XXI Battle Command Brigade and Below (FBCB2) (if applicable), frequency modulated (FM) communications, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and or other available information sources.</p> <p>*2. Company commander receives an OPORD or FRAGO and issues warning order (WARNO) to the company using FBCB2, FM, or other tactical means.</p> <p>*3. Company commander plans using troop-leading procedures.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">a. Conducted analysis based on factors of mission, enemy, terrain and weather, troops and support available, time available, civil considerations (METT-TC).                      Considered the enemy's capabilities, likely courses of action (COA), and specific weapons capabilities.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">b. Conferred with the staff engineer (if available) to determine appropriate CCD employment techniques.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">c. Determined CCD priorities based on factors of METT-TC.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">d. Set CCD goals and or intent, based of higher headquarters OPORD, and relayed goals and or intent to command.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">e. Considered CCD's effects on unit recognition by friendly troops, to help prevent fratricide.</p> <p>*4. Company commander or designated representative ensures subordinate elements use proper CCD techniques.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">a. Used natural conditions and materials before using man made materials.</p>		



TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>b. Employed deception to help mask the real intent of primary combat operations and aid in achieving surprise according to headquarters deception plan.</li> <li>c. Observed noise discipline.</li> <li>d. Observed light discipline with respect to smoking, fires, and lights.</li> <li>e. Concealed highly visible equipment.</li> <li>f. Covered shiny surfaces.</li> <li>g. Kept exposed activity to a minimum.</li> <li>h. Used cut vegetation properly.</li> <li>i. Used and concealed dismount points properly.</li> <li>j. Placed and dispersed vehicles and equipment.</li> <li>k. Dispersed the command post (CP).</li> <li>l. Employed camouflage nets (lightweight camouflage screen system [LCSS]).</li> <li>m. Used (or minimizes) shadows.</li> <li>n. Minimized movement.</li> <li>o. Blended operations and equipment with backgrounds.</li> <li>p. Employed pattern-painting techniques.</li> <li>q. Employed decoys.</li> <li>r. Integrated smoke operations with company movement.</li> <li>s. Wore the correct uniform.</li> <li>t. Controlled litter and spoil.</li> </ul> <p>*5. Company commander coordinates and or synchronizes actions of subordinate elements.</p> <p>6. Company elements employ CCD on fighting positions by—</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Eliminated or minimized target silhouettes.</li> <li>b. Practiced spoil control.</li> <li>c. Eliminated or minimized regular or geometric shapes and layouts.</li> <li>d. Maintained overhead concealment.</li> <li>e. Practiced dust control.</li> </ul> <p>7. Company elements employ CCD on tactical vehicles by—</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Minimized and concealed track marks.</li> <li>b. Minimized or eliminated the shine on vehicles and equipment.</li> <li>c. Reduced or used shadows to the unit's advantage.</li> <li>d. Employed camouflage nets (LCSS).</li> <li>e. Painted vehicles to match their surroundings.</li> <li>f. Dispersed vehicles and equipment.</li> <li>g. Concealed vehicles and supply routes.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>h. Controlled litter and spoil.</li> <li>i. Stored and concealed ammunition.</li> <li>8. Company elements employ CCD on assembly areas (AAs) by—               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Facilitated mission planning for access and egress concealment.</li> <li>b. Marked guideposts for route junctions.</li> <li>c. Ensured that turn-ins are not widened by improper use.</li> <li>d. Dispersed dismount, mess, and maintenance areas.</li> <li>e. Dispersed the CP.</li> <li>f. Maintained CCD by—                   <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Inspected CCD frequently.</li> <li>(2) Controlled litter and garbage.</li> <li>(3) Observed blackout procedures.</li> </ul> </li> <li>g. Observed evaluation procedures by—                   <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Policed the area.</li> <li>(2) Covered or eliminating tracks.</li> <li>(3) Prevented traffic congestion.</li> <li>(4) Concealed spoil.</li> </ul> </li> </ul> </li> <li>9. Company elements employ CCD on the CP by—               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensured that lines of communications (LOCs) are not converged.</li> <li>b. Dispersed vehicles.</li> <li>c. Ensured that turn-ins are not widened through improper use.</li> <li>d. Ensured that protective barriers follow terrain features.</li> <li>e. Concealed defensive weapons.</li> <li>f. Ensured that existing poles are used for LOCs.</li> <li>g. Dug in the CP (when in open areas).</li> <li>h. Maintained camouflage nets (LCSS).</li> <li>i. Used civilian buildings properly by—                   <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Controlled access and egress.</li> <li>(2) Observed blackout procedures.</li> <li>(3) Avoided obvious locations.</li> </ul> </li> </ul> </li> <li>10. Company elements employ CCD on supply points by—               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Dispersed operations.</li> <li>b. Concealed access and egress routes.</li> <li>c. Used the track plan.</li> <li>d. Provided concealed loading areas.</li> <li>e. Developed and implementing a schedule for the units being serviced.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p><b>11.</b> Company elements employ CCD on water points by—</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Concealed access and egress routes.</li> <li>b. Ensured that the track plan is used.</li> <li>c. Controlled spillage.</li> <li>d. Controlled shine and reflections.</li> <li>e. Developed and implementing a schedule for the units being serviced.</li> </ul> <p><b>12.</b> Company subordinate leaders enforce individual CCD.</p> <p><b>*13.</b> Commander/leader performs or delegates performance of the steps in the risk management process for each step in troop-leading procedures (appendix C).</p> <p>* Indicates a leader task step</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
Total Task Steps Evaluated							
Total Task Steps GO							
Training Status GO/NO-GO							

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
011-510-1100	Determine aircraft decontamination levels and procedures	STP 1-15 II
011-510-1101	Employ NBC protection for aviation operations	STP 1-15 II
011-510-1102	Employ the NBC warning and reporting system	STP 1-15 II
011-510-1103	Plan aviation operations in an NBC environment	STP 1-15 II

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
01-2-0341	Perform composite risk management procedures	ARTEP 1-113-MTP
07-2-1112	React to ambush	ARTEP 1-126-MTP ARTEP 1-113-MTP
07-2-1923	React to indirect fire	ARTEP 1-126-MTP ARTEP 1-113-MTP
07-2-5045	Conduct negotiations	ARTEP 1-126-MTP ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-126-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS:**

**TASK: Conduct Reconnaissance (07-OPFOR-0010)**

**CONDITION:** The OPFOR is conducting operations independently or as part of a larger force. The OPFOR is directed to obtain tactical information about the enemy's location, disposition, intent, and activities. All assigned OPFOR equipment and personnel as well as engineer support are available.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR conducted the reconnaissance mission by penetrating the enemy's outposts with mounted or dismounted patrols, and then obtaining and reporting required information according to the OPORD or the commander's guidance. The OPFOR maintained focus; continuity; aggressiveness; timeliness; camouflage, concealment, and deception; accuracy; and reliability. The OPFOR reconnaissance elements completed the reconnaissance mission undetected.

---

**Note.** During training exercises, the enemy unit commander or leader selected the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

---

**ELEMENT:** COMPANY

**TASK: React to a Terrorist or Insurgent Incident (31-2-1809)**

(FM 3-04.111)	(FM 1-100)	(FM 1-113)
(FM 3-04.126)	(FM 3-05.30)	(FM 3-05.301)
(FM 3-19.40)	(FM 3-100.12)	

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The battalion is conducting assigned missions in a simulated (live, virtual, or constructive) combat environment. The unit has received an operation order (OPORD)/ fragmentary order (FRAGO) and the commander’s guidance. The main command post (CP) is operational and the staff sections and digital systems are functional. The element is in a prepared kill zone. The terrorists or insurgents initiate the attack with a casualty-producing device and/or a high volume of fire. The type of incident is according to the capabilities of the terrorists or insurgents specified in the higher OPORD. The incident may also represent a logical escalation of their capabilities as based on a reasonable estimate of their potential. The unit has guidance provided by the rules of engagement (ROE) and from mission instructions, such as the peace mandate terms of reference, the status of forces agreement (SOFA), and the rules of interaction (ROI). Civilians, government organizations, nongovernmental organizations, private voluntary organizations, and the international press may be present on the battlefield. The presence of civilians can restrict the use of fires and reduce the combat power available to the commander. Some iterations of this task should be performed in mission-oriented protective posture level 4 (MOPP4).

**TASK STANDARDS:** The unit reacted immediately to the terrorist or insurgent attack. The unit sustained no more than the minimum number of casualties that will still allow for mission execution after the incident’s initiating act, and the unit did not violate operations security as specified in the OPORD. The unit disengaged the terrorists/insurgents in the kill zone or forced them to withdraw. The unit continued follow-on operations. The unit complied with the ROE and mission instructions. The time required to prepare is increased when conducting this task in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The unit defends against a terrorist or insurgent attack.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Detected the infiltration or enemy action.</li> <li>b. Assessed the situation.</li> <li>c. Alerted unit personnel of impending or ongoing attack (centers and/or slice elements assume designated alert status).</li> <li>d. Ensured the quick reaction force responds to the attack.</li> <li>e. Ensured the base defense force and base center occupy defensive positions.</li> <li>f. Complied with the rules of engagement in controlling actions.</li> <li>g. Maintained continuous internal communications with all perimeter defense elements and patrols.</li> <li>h. Ensured communications are maintained with the higher headquarters and deployed subunits.</li> <li>i. Ensured command, control, communications, and intelligence are maintained with deployed subunits.</li> </ol> </li> </ol>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p><b>*2.</b> The unit commander supports recovery operations after a terrorist or insurgent attack.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Accounted for all personnel and equipment.</li> <li>b. Provided first aid to injured persons according to capabilities.</li> <li>c. Secured the incident scene to preserve evidence until the arrival of local authorities according to the mission parameters (travel schedules or other parameters) specified in the OPORD.</li> </ul> <p><b>3.</b> The battalion staff assists the local authorities as requested and authorized.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Notified the local authorities of the incident by the quickest means available.</li> <li>b. Requested support (medical evacuation, security, transportation) from local or U.S. resources as necessary and available.</li> <li>c. Provided local authorities the unit members' witness statements.</li> </ul> <p><b>4.</b> The S3 reports the terrorist or insurgent incident.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Recorded the details of the incident in the operational journal including, if possible, local witnesses' names, the degree of news media coverage, and all information obtained from personnel through debriefings.</li> <li>b. Reported the incident and the unit's mission status to local U.S. authorities and the next higher headquarters by the fastest means available.</li> <li>c. Submitted written followup reports, as required.</li> </ul> <p><b>*5.</b> The unit commander reorganizes as necessary.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensured wounded personnel are evacuated.</li> <li>b. Assigned personnel to fill key positions reestablishing the chain of command.</li> <li>c. Requested personnel and equipment replacements.</li> <li>d. Prepared an estimate of the situation to determine the next best course of action (COA) that will allow for mission execution according to the OPORD.</li> <li>e. Issued a fragmentary order based on the selected or revised COA.</li> <li>f. Continued the mission.</li> </ul> <p><b>*6.</b> Commander/leader performs or delegates performance of the steps in the risk management process for each step in troop-leading procedures (see appendix C).</p> <p>* Indicates a leader task step</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
Total Task Steps Evaluated							
Total Task Steps GO							
Training Status GO/NO-GO							

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
011-510-0001	Employ ground maneuver forces	STP 1-15 II
011-510-0003	Employ mobility/countermobility/survivability	STP 1-15 II
011-510-0022	Determine characteristics of U.S. Army organization and capabilities	STP 1-15 II
011-510-0025	Defeat enemy threat using aircraft survivability equipment (ASE)	STP 1-15 II
011-510-0303	Conduct operations missions briefing/debriefing	STP 1-15 II

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
01-2-0341	Perform composite risk management procedures	ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-126-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** COMMAND SECTION  
BATTALION

**TASK: Plan Base Cluster Operations (63-1-4014)**  
(FM 3-04.111) (FM 3-04.513) (FM 34-130)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The commander has approved the supporting commander's operation estimate and provided his decision and concept of operations. The battalion headquarters has analog and/or digital communications with higher and lower headquarters. The higher headquarters operation plan (OPLAN)/operation order (OPORD) with all annexes, status reports, maps, overlays, and other required documents has been forwarded to the commander. The unit, higher, and lower tactical standing operating procedures (TACSOPs) are available. The executive officer (XO) assigns responsibilities for the preparation of base cluster operations annex to S3. The S3 has staff responsibility for consolidation, publication, and distribution of the base cluster operations annex. The responsible base cluster operations command and control element has provided input for the battalion's participation and integration into rear operations. The S2 and the S3 section continuously receives messages from higher, adjacent, and lower echelons. This task is performed under all day and night environmental conditions. The unit is subject to air, chemical, biological, radiological, and nuclear (CBRN), and level I ground threat forces attack.

---

**Note.** The S3 requests updates on intelligence information from the S1 when establishing a base cluster operations. Some iterations of this task should be performed in mission-oriented protective posture level 4 (MOPP4).

---

**TASK STANDARDS:** The base cluster operations annex is prepared according to regulations and TACSOP, and conforms to the commander's and supporting rear operation element's guidance. At MOPP4, performance degradation factors increase base cluster operations annex completion time.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p><b>1.</b> The S3 section, with intelligence input from the S2, develops the direct and indirect fire plan.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>a.</b> Identified boundaries as assigned by the higher headquarters and/or supporting base cluster operations command and control element.</li> <li><b>b.</b> Identified probable enemy avenues of approach and their effects on the battalion's area of responsibility.</li> <li><b>c.</b> Assigned boundaries to all subordinate units and separate elements.</li> </ul> <hr/> <p><b>Note.</b> Boundaries should be based on number of personnel assigned, type of weapons systems, mission of unit and mission, enemy, terrain and weather, troops and support available, time available, and civil considerations (METT-TC).</p> <hr/> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>d.</b> Identified weapon systems that are available to the battalion in coordination with the supporting base cluster operations element.</li> <li><b>e.</b> Identified probable engagement areas.</li> </ul>		



TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>f. Selected target reference points in coordination with designated fire support element.</li> <li>g. Prioritized defense of sustainment bases and facilities in coordination with the support operations section and supporting base cluster operations element.</li> <li>h. Developed fire support request and coordination measures in coordination with designated fire support element.</li> </ul> <p>2. S3 section, while coordinating with the S2 section, develops mobility and countermobility plan.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Identified all obstacle constraints and restrictions in the higher headquarters and/or supporting base cluster operations element's plan.</li> <li>b. Identified all possible obstacles by location and type.</li> <li>c. Identified all available obstacle assets.</li> <li>d. Coordinated additional support requirements with the S4 and supporting engineer element.</li> </ul> <p>3. S3 section, with assistance from the S2 section, develops air defense plan.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Identified all established air defense policies and procedures in the higher headquarters OPLAN/OPORD and the battalion TACSOP.</li> <li>b. Identified probable air avenues of approach.</li> <li>c. Established air defense priorities for designated areas and facilities in coordination with supporting base cluster operations and air defense elements.</li> <li>d. Established air defense assistance coordination measures.</li> <li>e. Established air defense warning signals, if different than those set forth in TACSOP.</li> </ul> <p>4. S3 section, with assistance from the S2 section, develops battalion internal response force plan.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Identified response force composition and requirements in the TACSOP.</li> <li>b. Revised response force structure and subordinate units' taskings as dictated by current tactical situation.</li> <li>c. Identified battalion assembly point location(s).</li> <li>d. Coordinated additional equipment/supply requirements with the S4 section.</li> <li>e. Developed response force training plan.</li> <li>f. Tasked subordinate elements to provide required personnel and equipment for battalion response force based on present for duty strength and current mission.</li> </ul> <p>5. S6 section develops communications plan.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Developed intra-base cluster analog and/or digital communications plan that encompasses all units located within the battalion's area of responsibility.</li> <li>b. Developed external analog and digital communications plan that interfaces with higher headquarters, supporting base cluster operations element, fire support, and air support elements.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>c. Designated base cluster operations passwords, call signs, frequencies, and procedures.</li> <li>d. Coordinated overall analog and/or digital communications plan with supporting signal element and supporting base cluster operations element.</li> <li>e. Established a messenger system with runner as a backup communications system.</li> </ul> <p>6. S4 section develops logistics plan in coordination with S1 section.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Calculated tentative logistics requirements for response force and external reaction forces.</li> <li>b. Designated responsibility for resupply of equipment and supplies to specific subordinate units.</li> <li>c. Coordinated medical treatment and evacuation plan with the supporting medical element.</li> </ul> <p>7. S3 section coordinates base cluster operations for battalion elements in other areas of responsibility.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Coordinated subordinate units' responsibilities with the base cluster operations element responsible for that area.</li> <li>b. Established base cluster operations policies, procedures, and reports for units outside battalion's area of responsibility.</li> </ul> <p>8. S4 section develops area damage control (ADC) plan in coordination with the S2/S3 section.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Identified all established policies and procedures in higher headquarters OPLAN and the battalion TACSOP.</li> <li>b. Calculated probable ADC requirements in the battalion's area of responsibility.</li> <li>c. Identified current ADC assets within the battalion.</li> <li>d. Coordinated additional support requirements with the higher headquarters S4 section.</li> <li>e. Assigned specific functions to all subordinate units according to battalion TACSOP.</li> <li>f. Coordinated ADC plans and procedures with the supporting military police (MP) element.</li> <li>g. Coordinated ADC priorities with support operations and S2/S3 sections.</li> <li>h. Identified alternate operational sites or alert sites in coordination with support operations section and supporting base cluster operations element.</li> <li>i. Established warning or alert system, if different from battalion TACSOP.</li> <li>j. Developed ADC training and rehearsal plan.</li> </ul> <p>9. S3 section prepares base cluster operations annex.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Consolidated input into appropriate format.</li> <li>b. Coordinated draft base cluster operations annex with all other battalion staff sections.</li> </ul>		

<b>TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES</b>	<b>GO</b>	<b>NO-GO</b>
<p>c. Forwarded draft base cluster operations annex to both the S2 and the S3 for approval or modification.</p> <p>d. Distributes annex to all appropriate battalion staff sections, subordinate units, and supporting base cluster operations element using appropriate analog and/or digital communications.</p> <p><b>*10.</b> Commander/leader performs or delegates performance of the steps in the risk management process for each step in troop-leading procedures (see appendix C).</p> <p>* Indicates a leader task step</p>		

<b>TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK</b>							
<b>ITERATION</b>	<b>1</b>	<b>2</b>	<b>3</b>	<b>4</b>	<b>5</b>	<b>M</b>	<b>TOTAL</b>
Total Task Steps Evaluated							
Total Task Steps GO							
Training Status GO/NO-GO							

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
011-510-0300	Coordinate staff duties/responsibilities in tactical units	STP 1-15 II
011-510-0301	Participate in the military decision making process	STP 1-15 II

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
01-2-0341	Perform composite risk management procedures	ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-126-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** ASSAULT COMPANY

**TASK: Secure Civilians During Operations (07-2-4054)**

(FM 3-04.111)

(FM 1-100)

(FM 1-113)

(FM 3-19.40)

(FM 3-100.12)

(FM 7-0)

(FM 7-1)

(FM 24-35)

(FM 100-14)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The company is conducting operations as part of a higher headquarters has received an operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) to secure civilians to protect them from injury of combat. Some may be refugees and some may be inhabitants of the area in which the company is operating. Some may be openly hostile. All necessary personnel and equipment are available. The company has communications with higher, adjacent, and subordinate elements. The company has been provided guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task should be conducted during limited visibility conditions. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The company secures civilians during operations according to the tactical standing operating procedures (TSOPs), the order, and or higher commander's guidance. The company identifies and segregates combatants and noncombatants, searches them, safeguards them, and moves them out of the immediate area of operations. The company complies with the ROE and ROI.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>*1. Company commanders/leaders gain and or maintain situational understanding using information that is gathered from Force XXI Battle Command Brigade and Below (FBCB2) (if applicable), frequency modulated (FM) communications, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and or other available information sources.</p> <p>*2. Company commander receives an OPORD or FRAGO and issues warning order (WARNO) to the company using FBCB2, FM, or other tactical means.</p> <p>*3. Company commander conducts troop-leading procedures with emphasis on the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Interpreters to help interface with the local populace, if necessary.</li> <li>b. Control measures for expected or unexpected situations.</li> <li>c. Organization of the company to accomplish the mission and or compensate for combat losses.</li> </ul> <p>4. Company commander disseminates digital reports (if applicable) and overlays to each subordinate element to keep them abreast of the situation.</p> <p>*5. Company commander issues orders and instructions to include ROE and ROI.</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">Issues clear and concise taskings to platoons and or elements.</p> <p>6. Company conducts a rehearsal.</p> <p>7. Company commander or designated representative supervises operation.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensures civilians are treated with respect.</li> <li>b. Ensures elements understand ROE and ROI.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>c. Ensures elements/Soldiers understand procedures for dealing with news media.</p> <p>d. Uses FRAGOs as necessary to redirect actions of subordinate elements.</p> <p>8. Designated platoons/elements secure civilians.</p> <p>a. Maintain 360-degree and three-dimensional security in the area of operations (AO) in which civilians are gathered.</p> <p>b. Segregate civilians identified as being combatants or suspected war criminals and treat them like enemy prisoners of war (EPWs).</p> <p>c. Report this situation and status in a timely manner to higher headquarters using FBCB2, FM, or other tactical means.</p> <p>d. Assign personnel to search civilians. Keep identification papers with civilians under all circumstances, regardless of status.</p> <p>e. Restrain and detains noncombatants who do not follow instructions. (1) Safeguard noncombatants and provides humane but firm treatment at all times. (2) Move noncombatants away from firefights and the immediate combat area.</p> <p>f. Provide food, water, and medical attention based upon the medical ROE for civilian medical treatment.</p> <p>g. Assign guards to escort the civilians. (1) Evacuate civilians to a processing and or reception station or to an intermediate collection point run by higher headquarters. (2) Guards escorting the civilians are prepared to give concise information to the processing/reception station or intermediate collection point about the original location of the civilians and their actions since being encountered (for example, reluctant, totally uncooperative, hostile, and so forth).</p> <p>9. Company elements give proper consideration to the situation of the press and local officials. Follows ROE and ROI guidance as to whether the local civilians and officials are to be considered friendly, hostile, or uncertain.</p> <p>10. Company continues operations as directed.</p> <p>*11. Commander/leader performs or delegates performance of the steps in the risk management process for each step in troop-leading procedures (see appendix C).</p> <p>* Indicates a leader task step</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
Total Task Steps Evaluated							
Total Task Steps GO							
Training Status GO/NO-GO							

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
011-426-0013	Perform risk management procedures	MOS W 152D 3 MOS W 152H 3 TC 1-237 ATM

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
01-2-0328	Establish unit defense measures	ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-126-MTP
01-2-0341	Perform composite risk management procedures	ARTEP 1-113-MTP
01-2-5115	Comply with operational security measures	ARTEP 1-126-MTP
01-2-5160	Perform troop-leading procedures	ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-126-MTP
07-2-5045	Conduct negotiations	ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-126-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENT:** COMPANY

**TASK: Employ Passive Air Defense Measures (44-2-0220)**

(FM 3-04.111) (FM 1-100) (FM 1-113)  
 (FM 3-04.126) (FM 3-04.300) (FM 3-100.12)  
 (FM 44-8) (FM 90-4)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The battalion is conducting assigned missions in a simulated (live, virtual, or constructive) combat environment. The battalion tactical operations center (TOC) is operational and the staff sections and digital systems are functional. Company is in a tactical position. Hostile aerial platforms (rotary-wing, fixed-wing, unmanned aerial vehicles [UAVs]) have been operating in the general area. Platoon weapon control status is WEAPONS HOLD. Some iterations of this task should be performed in mission-oriented protective posture level 4 (MOPP4).

**TASK STANDARDS:** OPFOR aerial platforms (rotary-wing, fixed-wing, UAVs) did not detect the unit. The time required to perform this task in MOPP4 and or blackout conditions is increased.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p><b>*1.</b> Commander/leader uses passive air defense measures in a tactical position.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Used all available resources (camouflage, cover, concealment, dispersion, and so forth) to hide personnel and equipment to limit its vulnerability. Air situational awareness was achieved by unit monitoring the simplified handheld terminal units (SHTUs).</li> <li>b. Covered or shaded shiny items, particularly windshields and optics.</li> <li>c. Established and rehearsed air attack alarms.</li> <li>d. Dispersed vehicles, tents, and supplies to reduce vulnerability to air attack.</li> <li>e. Constructed field fortifications with organic equipment as necessary to protect personnel and vulnerable mission-essential equipment.</li> <li>f. Manned observation points (daytime or nighttime) to provide warning of approaching aerial platforms (rotary-wing, fixed-wing, UAVs).</li> <li>g. Established a listening watch on the air defense early warning net, if equipment is available and operational.</li> </ul> <p><b>*2.</b> Commander/leader uses passive air defense measures in a convoy.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Convoy commander briefed all unit personnel.</li> <li>b. Camouflaged vehicles and equipment before moving out.</li> <li>c. Selected column interval based on instructions, mission, and terrain.</li> <li>d. Placed crew-served weapons throughout the convoy to cover front, rear, and flanks (avenues of approach).</li> <li>e. Assigned Soldiers to air guard duties with specific search sectors covering 360 degrees.</li> <li>f. Visually identified threat aerial platforms (rotary-wing, fixed-wing, UAVs).</li> <li>g. Reported all aircraft actions to higher headquarters.</li> <li>h. Established and rehearsed air attack alarms.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>3. Unit personnel use passive air defense measures when occupying or displacing.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Maintained vehicle interval specified in the movement order.</li> <li>b. Staggered vehicles to avoid linear patterns.</li> <li>c. Assigned air guards to sectors of search that cover 360 degrees and maintained coverage until convoy completes the movement.</li> <li>d. Visually identified threat aerial platforms (rotary-wing, fixed-wing, UAVs).</li> <li>e. Reported all aircraft actions to higher headquarters.</li> <li>f. Established vehicle order of precedence.</li> </ul> <p>*4. Commander/leader performs or delegates performance of the steps in the risk management process for each step in troop-leading procedures (see appendix C).</p> <p>* Indicates a leader task step</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
Total Task Steps Evaluated							
Total Task Steps GO							
Training Status GO/NO-GO							

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
011-143-3008	Coordinate aircraft movement and identification with local air defense units	MOS E 15Q 4
011-510-0005	Employ air defense	STP 1-15 II

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
01-2-0341	Perform composite risk management procedures	ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-126-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**



**ELEMENT:** COMPANY

**TASK: Employ Active Combined Arms Air Defense (AD) Measures (44-2-0221)**

(FM 3-04.111)	(FM 1-100)	(FM 1-113)
(FM 3-04.126)	(FM 3-100.12)	(FM 7-0)
(FM 7-1)	(FM 90-4)	(TC 1-237)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The battalion is conducting assigned missions in a simulated (live, virtual, or constructive) combat environment. The battalion tactical operations center (TOC) is operational and the staff sections and digital systems are functional. Company receives early warning of aerial platforms (rotary-wing, fixed-wing, unmanned aerial vehicles [UAVs]) in the area. Unit personnel detect unknown or hostile aerial platforms (rotary-wing, fixed-wing, UAVs). Unit is in a tactical position. Weapon control status (WCS) is "WEAPONS TIGHT." Some iterations of this task should be performed in mission-oriented protective posture level 4 (MOPP4). Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** Company destroyed or forced the attacking aerial platforms (rotary-wing, fixed-wing, UAVs) away from friendly positions. The time required to perform this task in MOPP4 and or blackout conditions is increased.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p><b>*1.</b> Commander/leader direct combined arms air defense measures against hostile aerial platforms not attacking a stationary unit.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Gave air attack alarm.</li> <li>b. Occupied defensive positions.</li> <li>c. Searched assigned sectors for aerial platforms.</li> <li>d. Identified and report presence of aerial platforms in the area and sent priority intelligence requirements (PIRs) to higher headquarters.</li> </ul> <hr/> <p><b>Note.</b> When making the decision of whether or not to fire at non-attacking hostile aerial platforms with small arms, take into consideration the assigned mission and tactical situation. Unit must positively and visually identify aerial platforms prior to engaging with small arms unless the aircraft is committing a hostile act.</p> <hr/> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>e. Leader made engagement decision.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<div style="text-align: center; background-color: black; color: white; padding: 10px; margin-bottom: 10px;"> <p><b>DANGER</b></p> </div> <div style="text-align: center; background-color: black; color: white; padding: 10px; margin-bottom: 10px;"> <p><b>MUNITIONS CANNOT DISTINGUISH BETWEEN FRIEND AND FOE. REVIEW ALL AIRSPACE CONTROL MEASURES. YOU MUST PERFORM ALL PRECAUTIONARY MEASURES TO ENSURE THAT THE MUNITIONS YOU FIRE DOES NOT CAUSE INJURY OR DEATH TO FRIENDLY FORCES OR DAMAGE TO ALLIED EQUIPMENT. EVEN COMPUTERIZED SYSTEMS REQUIRE CLOSE OBSERVATION.</b></p> </div> <p>f. Unit engaged the aerial platforms with all available small arms (rifles and machine guns).</p> <hr/> <p><i>Note.</i> Expect the firing signature from small arms to disclose the unit's position.</p> <hr/> <p>g. Engagement caused no fratricide.</p> <p>h. Reloaded weapons following engagement.</p> <p>i. Sent PIRs to higher headquarters.</p> <p>j. Evaluated situation and moved unit position as directed by the unit commander.</p> <p>*2. Commander/leader direct small arms air defense measures against hostile aerial platforms not attacking a moving target.</p> <p>a. Gave air attack alarm.</p> <p>b. Dispersed vehicles laterally and in-depth or vehicle operators continued to move unit.</p> <p>c. Moved vehicles to covered, concealed positions. All personnel not assigned crew-served weapons dismounted and prepared to engage the aircraft or increased dispersion.</p> <p>d. Engaged non-attacking aircraft only as directed.</p> <p>e. Visually identified threat aerial platforms.</p> <p>f. Reported all aerial platforms actions to higher headquarters.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>g. Senior leader ordered the unit to engage.</p> <p>h. Engaged the aerial platforms with all available small arms.</p> <p>i. Reloaded weapons following engagement of aircraft.</p> <p><b>*3.</b> Commander/leader directs combined arms air defense measures against aerial platforms attacking stationary unit.</p> <p>a. Gave air attack alarm.</p> <p>b. All available personnel immediately engaged attacking aerial platforms per TACSOP.</p> <p>c. Reloaded weapons following the engagement.</p> <p>d. Personnel assigned operations continued to scan their assigned sectors.</p> <p>e. Reported any aircraft action to higher headquarters.</p> <p>f. Reported casualties to higher headquarters.</p> <p>g. Evaluated situation and moved unit position as directed by tactical situation or TACSOP.</p> <p><b>*4.</b> Commander/leader or noncommissioned officers (NCOs) directs small air defense measures during convoy movement.</p> <p>a. Alerted vehicle commanders of impending attack.</p> <p>b. Dispersed vehicles alternately to shoulders of the road (off road, if possible). Turned to covered, concealed position if terrain permits.</p> <p>c. Maintained vehicle intervals or increases interval or dispersion. Used evasion driving techniques.</p> <p>d. Dismounted and took up firing positions.</p> <p>e. Prepared personnel to fire on orders of the senior individual present or automatically returned fire (per engagement procedures) if an aircraft was attacking.</p> <p>f. Identified the aerial platforms.</p> <p>g. Engaged the aerial platforms with all available small arms (rifles and machine guns).</p> <p>h. Reloaded weapons following the attack.</p> <p>i. Reported the attack and submitted PIRs to higher headquarters.</p> <p>j. Reported casualties to higher headquarters.</p> <p><b>*5.</b> Commander/leader performs or delegates performance of the steps in the risk management process for each step in troop-leading procedures (see appendix C).</p> <p>* Indicates a leader task step</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
Total Task Steps Evaluated							
Total Task Steps GO							
Training Status GO/NO-GO							

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
011-143-3008	Coordinate aircraft movement and identification with local air defense units	MOS E 15Q 4
011-237-2012	Perform tactical flight mission planning (UH-60)	TC 1-237
011-420-0005	Determine the fundamentals of air defense	STP 1-TACOPS MOS W 153D 3
011-510-0005	Employ air defense	STP 1-15 II

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
01-2-0341	Perform composite risk management procedures	ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-126-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** COMMAND SECTION  
S1 SECTION

**TASK: Perform Personnel Strength Management Operations (01-1-0336)**  
(FM 5-0) (FM 1-100) (FM 1-113)  
(FM 3-04.111) (FM 3-100.12) (FM 3-100.4)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The battalion is in a simulated (live, virtual, or constructive) combat environment. The main command post (CP) is operational, and staff sections and digital systems are functioning. The S1 section is operational and is located at the administrative and logistics operations center (ALOC) and has received commander’s guidance directing it to perform personnel strength management operations. The command and control strength reporting system is in effect. Reports are received daily from subordinate units. Some iterations of this task should be performed using adequate protective measures for the corresponding simulated chemical, biological, radiological, and nuclear (CBRN) environment. Some iterations of this task should be performed in mission-oriented protective posture level 4 (MOPP4).

**TASK STANDARDS:** S1 forwarded personnel strength reports within the prescribed time limits specified in the unit standing operating procedures (SOPs). There were no discrepancies between reported personnel strength and actual numbers of personnel present for duty or accounted for.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The S1 section performs unit strength accounting.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Received unit strength reports from subordinate units.</li> <li>b. Verified accuracy of reports using practical reports, battalion aid-station reports, and other sources of information.</li> <li>c. Determined critical shortages by military occupational specialty (MOS) and grade.</li> <li>d. Determined critical MOS replacement requirements and priorities.</li> <li>e. Coordinated with the S1s of units providing attachments.</li> <li>f. Prepared a consolidated battalion personnel status report.</li> <li>g. Forwarded the consolidated report to the brigade S1 strength-management section, as required by the SOP.</li> <li>h. Briefed the commander and staff daily.</li> </ol> </li> <li>2. The S1 section prepares the periodic personnel report (PPR).                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensured the timely receipt of accurate personnel report input for all assigned, attached, and reporting units.</li> <li>b. Prepared the PPR.</li> <li>c. Assigned the appropriate security classification to the report.</li> <li>d. Prepared additional annexes to the report, as necessary.</li> <li>e. Submitted the PPR to higher headquarters according to the unit SOP.</li> </ol> </li> </ol>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>3. The S1 maintains unit strength.</p> <p>a. Requested, received, and assigned replacement personnel.</p> <p>b. Recommended cross-leveling actions to the commander.</p> <p>4. Commander/leader performs or delegates performance of the steps in the risk management process for each step in troop-leading procedures (see appendix C).</p> <p>* Indicates a leader task step</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
Total Task Steps Evaluated							
Total Task Steps GO							
Training Status GO/NO-GO							

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
011-510-0306	Perform personnel/administration staff duties/responsibilities	STP 1-15 II

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
01-1-5134	Plan aviation operations using the military decision making process	ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-118-MTP ARTEP 1-126-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** COMMAND SECTION  
 S1 SECTION  
 HHC, ASSAULT BATTALION

**TASK: Organize Predeployment Activities (01-1-0352)**

(FM 12-6)	(AR 200-1)	(AR 25-400-2)
(FM 1-100)	(FM 3-0)	(FM 3-04.111)
(FM 4-01.011)	(FM 5-0)	(FM 7-0)
(FM 7-1)	(FM 55-1)	(FM 100-17)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The battalion is conducting assigned missions in a simulated (live, virtual, or constructive) combat environment. The battalion’s main command post (CP) is operational and the staff sections and digital systems are functional. The battalion is at a high state of deployment readiness. Higher headquarters issues the battalion a warning order (WARNO) to prepare for imminent deployment. The unit may be at home station or tactically deployed at the time of notification. The staff has received the deployment plan and commander’s guidance and is prepared to commence the deployment process. The battalion begins predeployment coordination activities according to the unit’s tactical standing operating procedure (TACSOP). The mobilization plans (MOBPLAN), movement plans, recall plans, security plans, unit access roster, load plans, and current maps are available. A unit movement officer (UMO) from higher headquarters is available to assist. All necessary personnel and equipment are available. This task should not be trained in mission-oriented protective posture level 4 (MOPP4).

**TASK STANDARDS:** The battalion coordinated predeployment activities according to the TACSOP, the WARNO, and/or guidance from higher headquarters. All assigned personnel were administratively prepared for deployment within the time frame specified by the commander.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. S1 supervises personnel readiness actions.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Directed personnel screening.</li> <li>b. Certified personnel qualified for deployment.</li> <li>c. Recommended the disposition of personnel on temporary duty, attending schools, or in authorized leave status according to commander’s guidance.</li> <li>d. Recommended cross-leveling actions to the commander.</li> <li>e. Coordinated personnel replacement and disposition of excess and nondeployable personnel.</li> <li>f. Identified and reported shortages in critical military occupational specialties.</li> <li>g. Redistributed personnel based on the commander’s guidance.</li> <li>h. Briefed rear-detachment personnel.</li> </ol> </li> <li>2. The S1 plans the preparation for overseas movement (POM).                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Reviewed the movement directive, movement plan/order, POM information message, and standing operation procedures to identify processing and personnel service requirements.</li> <li>b. Established support requirements.</li> </ol> </li> </ol>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>c. Published the POM plan.</p> <p>d. Briefed the command group.</p> <p>e. Coordinated the POM with brigade's S1.</p> <p>3. The S1 coordinates POM requirements.</p> <p>a. Coordinated personnel service company support.</p> <p>b. Coordinated legal support.</p> <p>c. Coordinated medical and dental support.</p> <p>d. Coordinated Red Cross support.</p> <p>e. Coordinated religious support.</p> <p>f. Coordinated with the provost marshal for privately owned vehicle storage.</p> <p>4. The S1 section participates in the POM process.</p> <p>a. Briefed Soldiers on the POM process.</p> <p>b. Issued the POM process.</p> <p>c. Reviewed family-care plans.</p> <p>d. Reviewed pay elections.</p> <p>e. Assisted Soldiers in the completion of postal forms.</p> <p>f. Reviewed the POM checklist for completeness.</p> <p>5. The S1 briefs family members.</p> <p>a. Coordinated installation support.</p> <p>b. Established briefing site and schedules.</p> <p>c. Published a family-support package.</p> <p>d. Provided rear-detachment points of contact.</p> <p>6. Personnel service noncommissioned officer (PSNCO) provides records management.</p> <p>a. Identified personnel records to accompany units.</p> <p>b. Identified records to be transferred to records holding area.</p> <p>c. Provided the S3 with records-management input to the rear-detachment plan.</p> <p>7. Commander/leader performs or delegates performance of the steps in the risk management process for each step in troop-leading procedures (see appendix C).</p> <p>* Indicates a leader task step</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5		TOTAL
Total Task Steps Evaluated							
Total Task Steps GO							
Training Status GO/NO-GO							



**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
011-501-0012	Coordinate aviation deployment	STP 1-15 I STP 1-15II-500-MQS
011-510-0300	Coordinate staff duties/responsibilities in tactical units	STP 1-15 II
011-510-0306	Perform personnel/administration staff duties/responsibilities	STP 1-15 II
011-510-0311	Conduct military briefings	STP 1-15 II

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
01-1-5134	Plan aviation operations using the military decision making process	ARTEP 1-113-MTP  ARTEP 1-118-MTP ARTEP 1-126-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** COMMAND SECTION  
S1 SECTION

**TASK: Conduct Casualty Reporting Activities (01-1-0354)**

(FM 4-0) (FM 1-100) (FM 5-0)  
(FM 3-04.111) (FM 3-04.513) (FM 3-100.12)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The battalion is conducting assigned missions in a simulated (live, virtual, or constructive) combat environment. The main command post (CP) and administrative, logistics operations center, staff sections and digital systems are functional. The S1 is located at the administrative and logistics operations center (ALOC). Assigned and attached units have incurred casualties and are reporting by-name casualties and standard installation/division personnel system (SIDPERS) line numbers. The S1 section is operational and is receiving unit casualty reports. The S1 has received requirements and the commander’s guidance directing it to conduct casualty reporting activities. Some iterations of this task should be performed in mission-oriented protective posture level 4 (MOPP4).

**TASK STANDARDS:** The S1 section reported casualties with 100 percent accuracy to the supporting personnel service company or equivalent agency within 36 hours after the incident. The S1 provided the commander comprehensive by-name lists of casualties of assigned and/or attached battalion personnel according to unit SOP.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The S1 or personnel service noncommissioned officer in charge (PSNCOIC) monitors the by name casualty reporting system.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Reviewed subordinate unit by name casualty reports for completeness and accuracy.</li> <li>b. Received data from multiple sources to verify the status of Soldiers.</li> </ol> </li> <li>2. The S1 section reports casualty information.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Received all casualty supporting documents, DA Form 1155 (<i>Witness Statement on Individual</i>) and DA Form 1156 (<i>Casualty Feeder Report</i>) form reporting units.</li> <li>b. Compared actual casualty data with casualty projections.</li> <li>c. Prepared the consolidated casualty report.</li> <li>d. Forwarded consolidated casualty data to supporting G1/adjutant general (AG) personnel service company.</li> <li>e. Posted information to the battalion master casualty log.</li> <li>f. Briefed S1 or PSNCO on the status of subordinate units’ casualty reports.</li> <li>g. Managed the casualty care file for all missing and evacuated Soldiers.</li> </ol> </li> <li>3. The S1 section maintains interface with other agencies.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Conducted liaison with medical, law enforcement, intelligence, and graves registration activities.</li> <li>b. Provided update to post locator.</li> </ol> </li> </ol>		

<b>TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES</b>	<b>GO</b>	<b>NO-GO</b>
<b>4.</b> Commander/leader performs or delegates performance of the steps in the risk management process for each step in troop-leading procedures (see appendix C). * Indicates a leader task step		

<b>TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK</b>							
<b>ITERATION</b>	<b>1</b>	<b>2</b>	<b>3</b>	<b>4</b>	<b>5</b>	<b>M</b>	<b>TOTAL</b>
Total Task Steps Evaluated							
Total Task Steps GO							
Training Status GO/NO-GO							

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
011-510-0301	Participate in the military decision making process	STP 1-15 II
011-510-0900	Implement the principles of medical evacuation	STP 1-15 II
031-503-1015	Protect yourself from NBC injury/contamination with mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) gear	STP 21-1-SMCT

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
01-1-5134	Plan aviation operations using the military decision making process	ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-118-MTP ARTEP 1-126-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** COMMAND SECTION  
S2 SECTION

**TASK: Comply With the Noncombatants Processing Plan (01-1-0357)**  
(FM 3-0) (FM 1-100) (FM 2-0)  
(FM 3-04.111) (FM 3-07) (FM 5-0)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The battalion is conducting assigned missions in a simulated (live, virtual, or constructive) combat environment. The battalion tactical operations center (TOC) is operational and the staff sections and digital systems are functional. The S2 section has received mission requirements and the commander's guidance directing it to comply with noncombatants processing plan. Noncombatants have surrendered or have been captured. Noncombatant collection points have been set up in support of the battalion. An S5 and/or a civil operations team have been attached to assist. Higher headquarters and the host nation are operating a noncombatant collection point in the area. Some iterations of this task should be performed in mission-oriented protective posture level 4 (MOPP4).

**TASK STANDARDS:** The S2 with assistance from the S3 complied with the noncombatants processing plan according to tactical standing operating procedures (TACSOPs) and the commander's guidance. The unit used the five S's to process surrendered noncombatants. They evacuated noncombatants to a holding area within 12 hours after capture. Operations are monitored to ensure noncombatants are properly processed and treated humanely. Noncombatants did not interfere with military operations.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>1. The S2 with assistance from the S3 section develops the noncombatant's processing plan.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Obtained pertinent information and guidance from higher headquarters.</li> <li>b. Assessed the overall needs of the noncombatant population.</li> <li>c. Coordinated with support elements and agencies tasked to assist in screening, controlling, housing, and caring for the noncombatant population.</li> <li>d. Assessed the impact of the noncombatant population control on other/future missions.</li> <li>e. Coordinated with other staff elements to ensure proper planning in terms of personnel, administrative, intelligence, logistics, legal, and civil affairs.</li> <li>f. Briefed the commander and staff on the noncombatant processing plan.</li> <li>g. Issued an operations order (OPORD)/fragmentary order (FRAGO) to subordinate units via the maneuver control system of Force XXI Battle Command Brigade and Below (FBCB2).</li> </ul> <p>2. The battalion conducts noncombatant processing.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Established a noncombatant collection point.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Coordinated assistance from local authorities to identify and categorize the noncombatant population.</li> <li>(2) Performed the initial screen of noncombatants.</li> <li>(3) Identified and processed enemy prisoner of war (EPW) and allied Soldiers.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>(4) Processed and segregated the noncombatant population by gender, family structure, and health.</p> <p>(5) Obtained military police (MP) support to assist in crowd and traffic control.</p> <p>b. Established the noncombatant assembly area (AA).</p> <p>(1) Constructed or obtained shelter for noncombatants.</p> <p>(2) Provided food and water.</p> <p>(3) Provided medical care.</p> <p>(4) Isolated sick and wounded noncombatants.</p> <p>(5) Constructed sanitary facilities.</p> <p>(6) Continued the screening and administrative processes.</p> <p>(7) Coordinated host-nation support of the AA.</p> <p>c. Controlled noncombatant movement.</p> <p>(1) Coordinated MP support for traffic control and convoy security during the movement of noncombatant.</p> <p>(2) Coordinated logistics support for the movement.</p> <p>(3) Coordinated host-nation support.</p> <p>(4) Accounted for all noncombatant upon arrival at the new AA.</p> <p>3. The battalion maintains command and control (C2).</p> <p>a. Conducted periodic inspections of all facilities/AAs.</p> <p>b. Monitored AA operations.</p> <p>c. Directed the activities of subordinate units.</p> <p>d. Developed contingency plans.</p> <p>e. Provided regular status briefings to higher headquarters via the appropriate Army tactical command and control systems (ATCCS).</p> <p>4. Commander/leader performs or delegates performance of the steps in the risk management process for each step in troop-leading procedures (see appendix C).</p> <p>* Indicates a leader task step</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
Total Task Steps Evaluated							
Total Task Steps GO							
Training Status GO/NO-GO							

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
011-510-0301	Participate in the military decision making process	STP 1-15 II
011-510-0306	Perform personnel/administration staff duties/responsibilities	STP 1-15 II
011-510-0309	Perform logistics staff duties/responsibilities	STP 1-15 II
011-510-0900	Implement the principles of medical evacuation	STP 1-15 II

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
01-1-1105	Provide other personnel and administrative services	ARTEP 1-113-MTP
01-1-5134	Plan aviation operations using the military decision making process	ARTEP 1-118-MTP ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-118-MTP ARTEP 1-126-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** COMMAND SECTION  
S1 SECTION

**TASK: Conduct Replacement Operations (01-1-1103)**

(FM 12-6)	(FM 1-100)	(FM 1-113)
(FM 3-0)	(FM 3-04.111)	(FM 3-100.12)
(FM 5-0)	(FM 7-0)	(FM 7-1)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The battalion is in a simulated (live, virtual, or constructive) combat environment. The main command post (CP) is operational and the staff sections, with digital and or analog systems, are functioning. The S1 section is located at the administrative and logistics operations center (ALOC). The S1 section is operational. The command and control (C2) strength reporting system is in effect. The unit is equipped with the tactical Army combat service support computer system (TACCS). Replacements arrive with a full issue of equipment. Some iterations of this task should be performed in mission-oriented protective posture level 4 (MOPP4).

**TASK STANDARDS:** Replacements are processed and transported to assigned units within 6 hours of their arrival and according to the unit SOP.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p><b>1.</b> The personnel administration center (PAC) conducts administrative processing.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Reviewed assignment orders.</li> <li>b. Welcomed Soldiers to the unit.</li> <li>c. Assigned Soldiers to units according to commander's priorities.</li> <li>d. Signed Soldiers in on DA Form 647 (<i>Personnel Register</i>).</li> <li>e. Collected medical and dental records.</li> <li>f. Turned in medical and dental records to the battalion/squadron/supporting aid station.</li> <li>g. Added names to the battle roster.</li> <li>h. Prepared the standard installation/division personnel system (SIDPERS) input.</li> <li>i. Prepared DA Form 3955 (<i>Change of Address and Directory Card</i>).</li> <li>j. Forwarded DA Form 3955 to servicing postal activity.</li> </ul> <p><b>2.</b> The S1 conducts replacement coordination with supporting and supported units.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Notified subordinate units.</li> <li>b. Coordinated with the S4 for transportation support.</li> <li>c. Coordinated with the S4 for personnel and weapons systems replacement.</li> <li>d. Coordinated with the S4 regarding equipment issue, feeding, and rest areas.</li> </ul> <p><b>*3.</b> Identify and control hazards according to risk management procedures in appendix C.</p> <p>* Indicates a leader task step</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
<i>ITERATION</i>	<i>1</i>	<i>2</i>	<i>3</i>	<i>4</i>	<i>5</i>	<i>M</i>	<i>TOTAL</i>
Total Task Steps Evaluated							
Total Task Steps GO							
Training Status GO/NO-GO							

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
011-510-0306	Perform personnel/administration staff duties/ responsibilities	STP 1-15 II
011-510-0311	Conduct military briefings	STP 1-15 II

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
01-1-5134	Plan aviation operations using the military decision making process	ARTEP 1-113-MTP  ARTEP 1-118-MTP ARTEP 1-126-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**



**ELEMENTS:** COMMAND SECTION  
S1 SECTION

**TASK: Provide Other Personnel and Administrative Services (01-1-1105)**  
 (FM 12-6) (AR 27-10) (DA Pam 600-8)  
 (FM 1-100) (FM 1-113) (FM 3-0)  
 (FM 3-04.111) (FM 4-0) (FM 5-0)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The battalion is in a simulated (live, virtual, or constructive) combat environment. The main command post (CP) is operational and the staff sections, digital and/or analog systems, are functioning. The S1 section is located at administrative and logistics operations center (ALOC). Combat service support (CSS) facilities and personnel are available to provide health, religious, recreational, and personal affairs support. Some iterations of this task should be performed in mission-oriented protective posture level 4 (MOPP4).

**TASK STANDARDS:** Good order, discipline, and morale were not adversely affected by inadequate services. Assigned and attached Soldiers were promoted, received awards, and were provided other services within required time frames as a result of proper administrative services.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The S1 section processes recommendations for promotion.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Verified the Soldier's time in grade and service requirements.</li> <li>b. Forwarded a list of eligible Soldiers to subordinate units.</li> <li>c. Processed approved promotions according to unit standing operating procedures (SOPs).</li> <li>d. Verified proper distribution of promotion orders (individual, personnel, and finance).</li> </ol> </li> <li>2. The S1 section administers the awards program.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Solicited recommendations for awards and reviewed recommendations.</li> <li>b. Reviewed and authenticated DA Form 638 (<i>Recommendation for Award</i>).</li> <li>c. Processed approved awards according to the unit SOP.</li> <li>d. Verified proper distribution of orders for awards.</li> </ol> </li> <li>3. The S1 section processes other personnel and finance actions and standard installation/division personnel system (SIDPERS) transactions.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Reviewed changes for accuracy and completeness.</li> <li>b. Prepared SIDPERS input.</li> <li>c. Obtained required signatures for personnel actions.</li> <li>d. Forwarded actions according to the unit SOP.</li> <li>e. Notified the service member upon approval or disapproval.</li> <li>f. Initiated further command actions when required.</li> </ol> </li> <li>4. The S1 section processes evaluation reports.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Requested evaluation report shells from the S1/G1.</li> </ol> </li> </ol>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>b. Processed officer and enlisted efficiency reports according to the unit SOP.</p> <p>5. The S1 section provides mail services.</p> <p>a. Picked up mail from the direct support postal activity or consolidated mailroom.</p> <p>b. Provided appropriate security for all mail until delivered to Soldiers or returned to supporting postal facility.</p> <p>c. Delivered mail to addressees as soon as the tactical situation permitted; returned undeliverable mail.</p> <p>6. The S1 section legal specialist provides legal support.</p> <p>a. Coordinated with the staff judge advocate (SJA) for personal legal assistance to unit personnel.</p> <p>b. Prepared judicial and nonjudicial proceedings documents.</p> <p>c. Processed all appeals.</p> <p>7. The S1 section performs common administrative functions.</p> <p>a. Processed DA Form 31 (<i>Request Authority for Leave</i>) and annotated DA Form 4179 (<i>Leave Control Log</i>).</p> <p>b. Maintained duty rosters.</p> <p>c. Prepared military correspondence.</p> <p>d. Maintained required functional files.</p> <p>e. Prepared and submitted recurring reports outlined in the unit SOP.</p> <p>f. Maintained required regulations and SOPs.</p> <p>g. Maintained blank forms and references required to perform administrative functions.</p> <p>*8. The S1 coordinates with the brigade/regimental S1 for medical and dental support.</p> <p>a. Identified specific support requirements.</p> <p>b. Determined the number of personnel to be supported.</p> <p>c. Identified special equipment requirements.</p> <p>*9. The S1 coordinates with chaplain for support.</p> <p>a. Specified location of unit requesting services.</p> <p>b. Determined the type of services needed.</p> <p>c. Determined the time available to the unit for services and counseling.</p> <p>d. Identified casualties requiring special ministering.</p> <p>e. Identified refugees and detainees requiring ministering.</p> <p>*10. The S1 provides morale support or coordinates for support from division G1 or brigade/regimental S1.</p> <p>a. Requested satellite phone link in combat zone to facilitate Soldiers' communication with home and families.</p> <p>b. Arranged for USO-related attractions that could be attended by unit Soldiers.</p> <p>c. Coordinated with the division G1 for audiovisual entertainment.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>d. Obtained recreational equipment.</p> <p>e. Coordinated rest and relaxation (R&amp;R), leave, and other morale activities when the unit left combat.</p> <p>f. Coordinated for mobile post exchange (PX) support in the unit assembly areas.</p> <p>*11. The S1 provides morale and welfare report to the commander.</p> <p>a. Coordinated with the SJA and legal clerk for uniform code of military justice (UCMJ) status.</p> <p>b. Reviewed absent without leave (AWOL) and desertion rates for each subordinate unit.</p> <p>c. Obtained crime and straggler rates from division G1 or brigade/regimental S1.</p> <p>d. Reviewed sick call and stress casualty rate from battalion/squadron surgeon.</p> <p>e. Reported on awards and promotions.</p> <p>f. Reported on morale enhancing activities.</p> <p>g. Determined the overall status of unit morale.</p> <p>*12. Identify and control hazards according to risk management procedures in appendix C.</p> <p>* Indicates a leader task step</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
Total Task Steps Evaluated							
Total Task Steps GO							
Training Status GO/NO-GO							

#### SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
011-510-0306	Perform personnel/administration staff duties/responsibilities	STP 1-15 II
011-510-0311	Conduct military briefings	STP 1-15 II
011-510-1500	Prepare military correspondence	STP 1-15 II

#### SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
01-1-5134	Plan aviation operations using the military decision making process	ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-118-MTP ARTEP 1-126-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** COMMAND SECTION  
S4 SECTION

**TASK: Coordinate the Requisition, Acquisition, and Distribution of Supplies and Equipment (01-1-1402)**

(FM 4-0) (AR 710-2) (DA Pam 710-2-1)  
(DA Pam 710-2-2) (FM 1-100) (FM 3-04.500)  
(FM 4-30.3)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The battalion is in a simulated (live, virtual, or constructive) combat environment. The unit has received an operation order (OPFORD)/fragmentary order (FRAGO) and the commander's guidance. The main command post (CP) and the administrative and logistics operations center (ALOC) are operational. Staff sections, with digital and or analog systems, are functioning. Reports are being received through normal channels. Communications have been established. Combat service support (CSS) assets are available. Some iterations of this task should be performed in mission-oriented protective posture level 4 (MOPP4).

**TASK STANDARDS:** The S4 coordinated logistics actions for all assigned units. Equipment status and availability of supplies on hand or on order were verified by S4 personnel. The S4 section determines the status of supplies and establishes requisition, acquisition, and distribution procedures that support the concept of the operation. Fully mission capabilities for all assigned reportable equipment did not fall below Department of the Army (DA) mission readiness rates.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The S4 section maintains a current status of supplies.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Received and maintained status reports from subordinate units of supplies on hand.</li> <li>b. Verified the accuracy of reports and records.</li> </ol> </li> <li>2. The S4 section determines supply requirements.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Coordinated current and future operations with other staff sections.</li> <li>b. Identified and allocated resources on hand.</li> </ol> </li> <li>3. The S4 section coordinates requisition procedures.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Reviewed higher headquarters OPORD/FRAGO and unit standing operating procedures (SOPs) that describe requisition procedures.</li> <li>b. Identified the disposition and location of CSS assets.</li> <li>c. Disseminated and monitored subordinate unit requisition procedures.</li> </ol> </li> <li>4. The S4 section coordinates the acquisition, distribution, and accountability of supplies and equipment.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Implemented acquisition and distribution procedures according to unit SOP.</li> <li>b. Maintained property accountability documentation.</li> <li>c. Identified priority of resupply and support.</li> </ol> </li> </ol>		

<b>TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES</b>	<b>GO</b>	<b>NO-GO</b>
<p>d. Reviewed logistics estimate to determine if appropriate quantities of critical supplies were available to support the tactical mission.</p> <p>e. Assisted the S3 with logistical site selection in support of the tactical plan.</p> <p>f. Maintained situational awareness of maintenance and field service operations.</p> <p>g. Coordinated the procurement of supplies from local civilians (host nation).</p> <p>h. Ensured the turn-in of equipment/end items rendered unusable due to battle damage.</p> <p>*5. Identify and control hazards according to risk management procedures in appendix C.</p> <p>* Indicates a leader task step</p>		

<b>TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK</b>							
<b>ITERATION</b>	<b>1</b>	<b>2</b>	<b>3</b>	<b>4</b>	<b>5</b>	<b>M</b>	<b>TOTAL</b>
Total Task Steps Evaluated							
Total Task Steps GO							
Training Status GO/NO-GO							

#### **SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
011-420-0004	Plan for aviation and ground combat service support	STP 1-150-155
011-510-0004	Employ combat service support	STP 1-15 II
011-510-0309	Perform logistics staff duties/responsibilities	STP 1-15 II
011-510-0311	Conduct military briefings	STP 1-15 II
011-510-1300	Supervise aviation maintenance operations	STP 1-15 II
011-540-0005	Supervise aviation property accountability	STP 1-150-155
011-540-0008	Supervise the unit level logistics system-aviation (ULLS-A)	STP 1-150-155

#### **SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
01-1-5134	Plan aviation operations using the military decision making process	ARTEP 1-113-MTP
01-4-0320.01-0111	Provide unit supply support	ARTEP 1-118-MTP ARTEP 1-126-MTP ARTEP 1-111-MTP ARTEP 1-111-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** COMMAND SECTION  
 BATTALION  
 HHC, ASSAULT BATTALION

**TASK: Conduct Deployment/Redeployment Operations (01-1-5124)**  
 (FM 100-17) (FM 1-100) (FM 1-113)  
 (FM 3-0) (FM 3-04.111) (FM 3-04.126)  
 (FM 3-20.98) (FM 3-100.12) (FM 4-01.011)  
 (FM 7-0) (FM 7-1)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The battalion is in a simulated (live, virtual, or constructive) combat environment. The battalion tactical operations center (TOC) is operational and the staff sections and digital systems are functional. The battalion is at a normal state of deployment/redeployment readiness or is conducting operations as part of a higher headquarters and receives a warning order (WARNO) to prepare for and execute a deployment/redeployment. The battalion initiates the deployment or redeployment plan according to the unit tactical standing operating procedure (TACSOP). The unit may be at home station or tactically deployed at the time of notification. The staff has received the deployment/redeployment plan and commander's guidance and is prepared to commence deployment/redeployment processing. The battalion has an approved early deployment/redeployment readiness exercise SOP. The mobilization plans (MOBPLAN), movement plans, recall plans, security plans, unit access roster, load plans, and current maps are available. A unit movement officer (UMO) from higher headquarters is available to assist. All necessary personnel and equipment are available. Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the contemporary operational environment. This task should not be trained in mission-oriented protective posture level 4 (MOPP4).

**TASK STANDARDS:** The battalion performed deployment or redeployment activities according to the TACSOP, WARNO, and or guidance from higher headquarters. Units are prepared to move to the port of embarkation (POE) at the time specified in the operation order.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>1. The battalion commander directs the staff to deploy or redeploy personnel and equipment from designated staging areas and/or POE to a designated location.</p> <hr/> <p><b>Note.</b> Units will deploy/redeploy by rail, ground, ship USAF aircraft, or self-deploy. Actual deployment procedures will be planned based upon mission and mode of deployment.</p> <hr/> <p>2. The staff deploys or redeploys personnel and equipment from designated staging areas and/or POE to a designated location.</p> <p>a. Directed subordinate units and sections to assume control of their respective personnel and equipment.</p> <p>b. Conducted the final inspection and manifest call for each unit at the designated time(s).</p> <p>c. Moved to the load site according to the movement order.</p> <p>d. Coordinated with the loadmaster for the final load times and instructions.</p> <p>e. Ensured all manifested personnel met the load time.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>f. Adjusted the onward movement of personnel, equipment, and supplies through coordination with the arrival airfield control group, primary support agency, host nation, and movement control agency.</p> <p>g. Reported the deployment or redeployment data to higher headquarters as required.</p> <p>3. The battalion unit movement officer (UMO) monitors the movement of the equipment from a designated staging area and/or POE to a designated location.</p> <p>a. Ensured the equipment was packed and loaded according to the load plans.</p> <p>b. Ensured the preparation for movement and the marking of equipment and logistic items were according to the load plan and regulatory guidance.</p> <p>c. Ensured the shipping documents are complete.</p> <p>4. Battalion S1— Battalion moves to designated location in the assigned theater of operations or to home station, as appropriate.</p> <p>5. Commander/leader performs or delegates performance of the steps in the risk management process for each step in troop-leading procedures (see appendix C).</p> <p>a. Identified unit's personnel shortages.</p> <p>b. Identified unit's training status, requirements, and qualifications for deployment'/redeployment execution.</p> <p>c. Verified status of assigned and/or attached personnel training and personal records.</p> <p>d. Reviewed personnel status (included nondeployable personnel).</p> <p>6. Battalion S3—</p> <p>a. Identified tasks in the deployment or redeployment WARNO.</p> <p>b. Identified all documented deployment or redeployment policies and procedures from the TACSOP, deployment/redeployment plan, movement order, operation plan (OPLAN), and operation order (OPORD).</p> <p>c. Provided operational information to be included in the battalion's WARNO.</p> <p>d. Coordinated mission parameters and details with higher headquarters.</p> <p>e. Identified deployment/redeployment criteria required for battalion validation.</p> <p>f. Verified unit follow-on mission, if appropriate.</p> <p>g. Requested assistance from the higher headquarters' UMO, if required.</p> <p>h. Briefed unit leaders on deployment/redeployment and mission requirements.</p> <p>i. Reported deployment/redeployment preparation progress according to SOP and higher headquarters guidance.</p> <p>7. Battalion S4—</p> <p>a. Reviewed automated unit equipment list (AUEL).</p> <p>b. Reviewed status of company load plans and recommended updates, as necessary.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>c. Identified equipment shortages based on the table of organization and equipment (TOE), mobilization table of organization and equipment (MTOE), and common table of allowance (CTA).</p> <p>d. Supervised inventories of unit basic load (UBL) items.</p> <p>e. Identified required items by each class of supply.</p> <p>f. Verified status of driver's certification.</p> <p>g. Identified status of hazardous material (HAZMAT) certified personnel, if required.</p> <p>h. Verified status of special equipment operation.</p> <p>i. Identified company maintenance problems affecting readiness and initiated actions to resolve them, as required.</p> <p>8. Commander/leader performs or delegates performance of the steps in the risk management process for each step in troop-leading procedures (see appendix C).</p> <p>* Indicates a leader task step</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5		TOTAL
Total Task Steps Evaluated							
Total Task Steps GO							
Training Status GO/NO-GO							

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
011-501-0012	Coordinate aviation deployment	STP 1-15 I STP 1-15II-500-MQS
011-510-0301	Participate in the military decision making process	STP 1-15 II

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
01-1-5134	Plan aviation operations using the military decision making process	ARTEP 1-113-MTP  ARTEP 1-118-MTP ARTEP 1-126-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**



**ELEMENTS:** COMMAND SECTION  
BATTALION

**TASK: Provide Sustainment to the Force (01-1-5129)**

(FM 1-100)	(FM 1-113)	(FM 3-0)
(FM 3-04.111)	(FM 3-04.126)	(FM 3-04.500)
(FM 3-100.4)	(FM 3-100.12)	(FM 4-0)
(FM 7-0)	(FM 7-1)	

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The battalion is conducting assigned missions in a simulated (live, virtual, or constructive) combat environment. The battalion main command post (CP) and tactical operations center (TOC) are operational and the staff sections and digital systems are functional. The commander has directed the staff to provide continuous sustainment (personnel and logistics) to the force. The battalion has established communications, and digital connectivity via the Army battle command system (ABCS), when equipped, with subordinate, adjacent, and higher headquarters, and is passing information according to higher headquarters' and the unit's tactical standing operating procedures (TACSOPs). The battalion is conducting maneuver, combat service (CS), and combat service support (CSS) operations. Logistics and the personnel status of the unit are available. Casualties have occurred, and replacements are arriving. Some iterations of this task should be performed in mission-oriented protective posture level 4 (MOPP4).

**TASK STANDARDS:** The battalion's staff provided continuous sustainment (personnel and logistics) to the force according to the commander's guidance and TACSOP. The battalion's assigned mission was not degraded due to a shortage of personnel, equipment or repair parts.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>*1. The commander directs the staff to provide continuous sustainment (personnel and logistics) to the battalion.</p> <p>*2. The S1 section coordinates replacement operations.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensured the personnel replacement requisitions were accurate.</li> <li>b. Ensured the requisitions were submitted within 24 hours of identification of need.</li> <li>c. Briefed the commander on replacement status and unit requirements.</li> <li>d. Recommended replacement priorities.</li> <li>e. Disseminated the commander's replacement priorities.</li> <li>f. Monitored the replacement in-processing system.</li> <li>g. Monitored the reconstitution of subordinate units.</li> </ul> <p>*3. The S1 section conducts administrative processing.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Consolidated personnel status reports and personnel replacement requirements from the subordinate and attached units.</li> <li>b. Identified critical military occupational specialty shortages.</li> <li>c. Recommended replacement priorities to the S1.</li> <li>d. Forwarded the replacement requisitions.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>e. Assigned the replacements according to the commander's priorities.</p> <p>f. Updated the unit-manning roster as required.</p> <p>*4. The S1 section coordinates replacements and/or reconstitution with the supporting and supported units.</p> <p>a. Notified the subordinate unit commanders of personnel assignments.</p> <p>b. Coordinated transportation for replacements with the S4.</p> <p>c. Coordinated equipment issue, food service, and billeting with the S4.</p> <p>*5. The S4 analyzes the restated mission and the commander's initial planning guidance for logistics (equipment, petroleum, oils, and lubricants [POL], ammunition, repair parts, maintenance, and transportation) support and sustainment.</p> <p>a. Confirmed the type of operation, units involved, and support requirements.</p> <p>b. Determined the area of operation's (AOs) physical characteristics and probable weather conditions.</p> <p>c. Determined maintenance and logistics support requirements.</p> <p>d. Determined the availability, characteristics, capabilities, and limitations of host nation and the supported unit's logistics support.</p> <p>*6. The S4 section evaluates its current situation by days of supply and services.</p> <p>a. Determined its own maintenance assets.</p> <p>b. Determined the state of training of maintenance and supply elements.</p> <p>c. Determined the status, capability, and any enhanced or reduced capability caused by attached, detached, or supporting units.</p> <p>d. Determined the status of maintenance units, the status of class VII and the end items, and the current prescribed load list status.</p> <p>e. Determined the overall status of controlled items and petroleum, oils, and lubricants allocations.</p> <p>f. Determined the present status of transportation assets, to include capabilities, problems, unusual transport distances, and highway and traffic ability conditions.</p> <p>g. Determined class I, II, III (packaged), IV, V, VII, and IX supply requirements.</p> <p>*7. The S4 section develops courses of action (COA) based on a tentative logistics plan and previous assessments.</p> <p>a. Managed the resupply and maintenance capabilities to prevent degradation of unit capability.</p> <p>b. Planned for supply and maintenance facilities to provide continuous operation.</p> <p>c. Planned for special supply and maintenance requirements that arose during critical phases of the operation.</p> <p>d. Determined supply and maintenance support requirements.</p> <p>e. Determined current fuel status.</p> <p>f. Determined current ammunition status.</p> <p>g. Determined equipment replacement priorities.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>h. Determined how replacement equipment will be provided.</p> <p>*8. The S4 selects the most appropriate COA considering the impact on supply and maintenance sustainment operations.</p> <p>a. Determined the logistics advantages and disadvantages of each COA.</p> <p>b. Analyzed each COA against enemy capabilities.</p> <p>c. Analyzed the methods for overcoming problems and the disadvantages of each COA.</p> <p>d. Selected the COA that offered the best chance of success considering logistics operations.</p> <p>e. Determined if the selected COA supports the restated mission.</p> <p>*9. The S4 section provides the unit's basic load.</p> <p>a. Received statement of requirements from the unit and subunit commanders.</p> <p>b. Crossed levels of supplies as directed by the commander within the unit.</p> <p>c. Met supported unit commander needs for classes of supply I, III, and V.</p> <p>d. Submitted statement of requirement to higher headquarters for unresolved supply requirements.</p> <p>e. Coordinated additional supply requirements with the supported commander.</p> <p>f. Stored all classes of supplies.</p> <p>*10. The S4 coordinates with the supported unit for potable and nonpotable water.</p> <p>a. Determined the mission requirements for water.</p> <p>b. Coordinated with supported unit for necessary water.</p> <p>c. Obtained water from a supply point established by a supporting direct support (DS) supply and service company, if possible.</p> <p>d. Employed point distribution to draw water from a water supply point.</p> <p>*11. The S4 supports local transportation requirements.</p> <p>a. Provided vehicles and drivers as tasked.</p> <p>b. Coordinated with DS unit or contracted for additional transportation support when organic assets are insufficient.</p> <p>*12. Commander/leader performs or delegates performance of the steps in the risk management process for each step in troop-leading procedures (see appendix C).</p> <p>* Indicates a leader task step</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
Total Task Steps Evaluated							
Total Task Steps GO							
Training Status GO/NO-GO							

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
011-237-2000	Perform FM radio homing (UH-60)	STP 1-15-219 STP 1-15-219-OS TC 1-237 STP 1-15II-500-MQS
011-237-2010	Perform multi-aircraft operations (UH-60)	STP 1-TACOPS STP 1-15-219 STP 1-15-219-OS TC 1-237 STP 1-15II-500-MQS
011-237-2012	Perform tactical flight mission planning (UH-60)	STP 1-TACOPS STP 1-15-219  STP 1-15-219-OS TC 1-237 STP 1-15II-500-MQS
011-510-0004	Employ combat service support	STP 1-TACOPS
011-510-0301	Participate in the military decision making process	STP 1-15 II STP 1-15 II

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
01-1-5134	Plan aviation operations using the military decision making process	ARTEP 1-113-MTP  ARTEP 1-118-MTP ARTEP 1-126-MTP
01-2-0341	Perform composite risk management procedures	ARTEP 1-113-MTP  ARTEP 1-126-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** AVIATION SUPPORT COMPANY  
 COMMAND SECTION  
 BATTALION  
 COMPANY HEADQUARTERS  
 QUALITY ASSURANCE SECTION  
 PRODUCTION CONTROL SECTION  
 QUALITY ASSURANCE TEAM

**TASK: Provide Combat Support and Combat Service Support (01-1-5132)**

(FM 4-0)	(FM 1-100)	(FM 1-113)
(FM 3-0)	(FM 3-04.126)	(FM 3-04.500)
(FM 3-04.513)	(FM 3-100.4)	(FM 3-100.12)
(FM 7-0)	(FM 7-1)	(FM 10-27-4)
(FM 71-100-3)	(FM 90-4)	(TC 1-210)
(TC 1-237)		

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The battalion is in a simulated (live, virtual, or constructive) combat environment. In this tactical or garrison environment, the battalion plans and coordinates the aviation and ground combat support (CS) and combat service support (CSS). Reports are being received through normal channels. An operation order (OPORD), the unit standing operating procedure (SOP), guidance from higher authority, and applicable publications are provided. The main command post (CP) is operational and the staff sections, digital and/or analog systems, are functioning. The requirement exists to refuel and/or rearm operational aircraft at other than an established forward arming and refueling point (FARP). Some iterations of this task should be performed in mission-oriented protective posture level 4 (MOPP4).

**TASK STANDARDS:** The Battalion identified CSS sustainment imperatives, fundamentals of support and CSS functions. Identify methods of distribution and material management centers (MMC). Identify ground and air maintenance support structure, recovery operations and battlefield management. Identify the aviation life support system (ALSS) maintenance management and training program consideration. Identify the standard Army management information systems (STAMIS) architecture. There were no accidents or fires as a result of negligent safety.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>*1. The commander and staff gains and/or maintains situational understanding using information gathered from Force XXI Battle Command Brigade and Below (FBCB2), frequency modulated (FM), digital and or analog communications systems, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources.</p> <p>*2. The battalion conducts mission analysis and issues a warning order (WARNO) to the subordinate elements.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Determined task organization (required number of aircraft, and command and control [C2] relationships).</li> <li>b. Determined fighter management cycles.</li> <li>c. Proposed timelines.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>d. Parallel planned responsibilities for subordinate companies.</p> <p>e. Conducted terrain analysis on proposed flight routes and FARP sites.</p> <hr/> <p><b>Note.</b> Operations and CSS are inextricably linked.</p> <hr/>		
<p><b>*3.</b> The battalion monitors CS and CSS functions.</p> <p>a. Integrated into operation CSS sustainment imperatives—</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Monitored responsiveness during operation.</li> <li>(2) Integrated simplicity in planning and procedures.</li> <li>(3) Integrated economic factors.</li> <li>(4) Integrated flexibility in operation.</li> <li>(5) Integrated attainability of CS and CSS activities.</li> <li>(6) Monitored sustainability factors.</li> <li>(7) Identified survivability factors.</li> <li>(8) Monitored the integration of CS and CSS provided.</li> </ul> <p>b. Identified CSS fundamentals of support—</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Identified the combat mission.</li> <li>(2) Identified the offensive operations.</li> <li>(3) Identified the defensive operations.</li> <li>(4) Identified support operations on the nonlinear battlefield.</li> </ul> <p>c. Integrated into operation the CSS functions—</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Integrated supply functions.</li> <li>(2) Integrated maintenance functions.</li> <li>(3) Integrated transportation functions.</li> <li>(4) Integrated health service support.</li> <li>(5) Integrated field services available.</li> <li>(6) Integrated explosive ordnance disposal support.</li> <li>(7) Integrated personnel support procedures.</li> <li>(8) Integrated financial management operations.</li> <li>(9) Integrated legal support functions.</li> <li>(10) Integrated religious support activities.</li> </ul>		
<p><b>*4.</b> Commander plans and monitors the CSS supply and material operations.</p> <p>a. Established methods of distribution—</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Monitored push system distribution.</li> <li>(2) Monitored supply point distribution.</li> <li>(3) Monitored unit distribution.</li> </ul> <p>b. Monitored requisition and distribution of supplies—</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Monitored classes of supply available for CS/CSS operation.</li> <li>(2) Monitored the support by host nation to CS/CSS operation.</li> </ul>		
<p><b>*5.</b> Commander monitors the vehicle and equipment maintenance and recovery procedures.</p> <p>a. Monitored maintenance support structure—</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Monitored unit maintenance operations.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>(2) Monitored the direct support operations.</p> <p>(3) Monitored the general support provided.</p> <p>b. Monitored vehicle and equipment recovery procedures.</p> <p>*6. Commander oversees the aviation maintenance operations.</p> <p>a. Determined the management balance on—</p> <p>(1) Managed the balance of scheduled maintenance provided.</p> <p>(2) Managed the balance of unscheduled maintenance.</p> <p>(3) Conducted other CS/CSS measures.</p> <p>b. Identified support system structure on—</p> <p>(1) Identified aviation support company (ASC).</p> <p>(2) Identified phase and progressive phase maintenance.</p> <p>*7. Battalion directs the aircraft recovery, evacuation, and battle damage assessment and repair operations (BDAR).</p> <p>a. Integrated into operations the battlefield management of damaged aircraft to include—</p> <p>(1) Directed responsibilities.</p> <p>(2) Identified recovery teams.</p> <p>(3) Identified factors that affected recovery operations.</p> <p>(4) Integrated course of action.</p> <p>(5) Identified aerial recovery.</p> <p>b. Integrated into operations the aircraft commander and crew's responsibilities.</p> <p>*8. In determining the needs for CS/CSS; the staff analyzes the course of action (COA), war games, and develops the aviation plan using the five phases of air movement planning.</p> <p>a. Supported unit ground tactical plan – staff ensures that the supported unit's mission is understood and that the refuel concept of support accomplishes that mission.</p> <p>b. Supported landing plan – staff conducted terrain analysis of the primary/alternate FARP sites.</p> <p>(1) Ensured it is suitable for aviation use.</p> <p>(2) Published FARP sketches.</p> <p>c. Supported air movement plan.</p> <p>(1) Staff developed a series of primary and alternate air corridors, using the company's route analysis that did not conflict with the brigade combat team (BCT) fire support plan and that avoided threat interdiction.</p> <p>(2) Staff submitted required graphics and Army airspace command and control (A2C2) control measures to the BCT.</p> <p>d. Supported loading plan—staff coordinated for III/V section to link-up with aviation unit with all the required equipment and ammunition.</p> <p>e. Supported staging plan—staff determined the number of aircraft required to accomplish mission, the aircraft configurations required, and the necessary timelines to accomplish the supported unit's CS/CSS mission.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p><b>*9.</b> The commander controls the aircraft during execution of CS/CSS operations.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Analyzed enemy situation and revised the air movement plan accordingly.</li> <li>b. Maintained situational awareness of all aircraft during their mission execution.</li> <li>c. Integrated with the supported unit commander directly on all matters relating to the air movement and establishment of the Fat Hawk/Wet Hawk/Wet Wing FARP site.</li> <li>d. Activated and deactivated air corridors as required through the BCT to facilitate the air movement plan.</li> <li>e. Conducted survivability moves of the Fat Hawk/Wet Hawk FARP as required preventing enemy interdiction.</li> </ul> <hr/> <p><b>Note.</b> A UH-60 Wet Hawk provides fuel to another aircraft from its internal or external fuel tanks via a micro-forward area refueling equipment (FARE) system. A UH-60 Fat Hawk provides both fuel and ammunition.</p> <hr/> <p><b>*10.</b> Battalion monitors the aviation life support system (ALSS) program by identifying ALSS maintenance management and training considerations to include—</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Integrated into operations the ALSS facility.</li> <li>b. Integrated into operation the ALSS maintenance responsibilities.</li> </ul> <p><b>*11.</b> Commander insures the standard Army management information systems (STAMIS) architecture is operating.</p> <p><b>*12.</b> Battalion supervises the safety program.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Identified accident causes.</li> <li>b. Identified safety regulations.</li> <li>c. Identified responsibilities to include—                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Unit commander.</li> <li>(2) Supervisors.</li> <li>(3) Individuals.</li> </ul> </li> </ul> <p><b>*13.</b> Commander/leader performs or delegates performance of the steps in the risk management process for each step in troop-leading procedures (see appendix C).</p> <p>* Indicates a leader task step</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
Total Task Steps Evaluated							
Total Task Steps GO							
Training Status GO/NO-GO							



**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
011-237-2026	Perform terrain flight (UH-60)	TC 1-237 STP 1-TACOPS
011-237-2048	Perform external load operations (UH-60)	TC 1-237 STP 1-TACOPS
011-237-2054	Perform fast-rope insertion and extraction (FRIES) operations(UH-60)	TC 1-237 STP 1-TACOPS
011-237-2056	Perform rappelling procedures (UH-60)	TC 1-237 STP 1-TACOPS
011-237-2058	Perform special patrol infiltration/exfiltration (SPIES) operations(UH-60)	TC 1-237 STP 1-TACOPS
011-237-2070	Perform M139 volcano operations (UH-60)	TC 1-237 STP 1-TACOPS
011-237-2076	Perform troop-ladder operations (UH-60)	TC 1-237 STP 1-TACOPS
011-237-2078	Perform helocast operations (UH-60)	TC 1-237 STP 1-TACOPS
011-510-0004	Employ combat service support	STP 1-15 II
011-510-1300	Supervise aviation maintenance operations	STP 1-15 II

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
01-1-5134	Plan aviation operations using the military decision making process	ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-118-MTP ARTEP 1-126-MTP
01-1-5153	Plan aviation combat service support operations	ARTEP 1-113-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** COMMAND SECTION  
S3 SECTION

**TASK: Plan Requirements to Establish a Forward Arming and Refueling Point (01-1-5143)**

(FM 3-04.111)	(FM 1-100)	(FM 1-113)
(FM 3-0)	(FM 3-04.126)	(FM 3-100.12)
(FM 7-1)	(FM 10-67)	(FM 90-4)
(TC 1-237)		

**ITERATION:** 1      2      3      4      5      M      (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T      P      U      (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The battalion is in a simulated (live, virtual, or constructive) combat environment. The battalion tactical operations center (TOC) is operational. Staff sections, digital and/or analog systems, are functional. The staff has received an operation order (OPORD) from higher headquarters and the commander's guidance directing it to coordinate requirements to establish a forward arming and refueling point (FARP). The battalion when conducting tactical operations requires the refueling, rearming and immediate maintenance of assigned and attached aircraft to sustain operational tempo and battle rhythm. Some iterations of this task should be performed in mission-oriented protective posture level 4 (MOPP4).

**TASK STANDARDS:** The battalion staff identified and coordinated requirements to establish FARP operations that included class III/V support and aircraft maintenance requirements in support of unit's assigned missions.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>*1. The battalion identifies FARP requirements for tactical operations.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. The S3 developed paragraph 3 of the OPORD.</li> <li>b. The S3 identified FARP location(s) to support mission.</li> <li>c. The S3 identified run-on landing area(s) to facilitate landing of damaged aircraft.</li> <li>d. The S3, with assistance from the S4, analyzed the mission according to the risk assessment and identified if the battle damage assessment team (BDAR) team is necessary, and then allocated support equipment as necessary.</li> <li>e. The S4 developed paragraph 4 of the OPORD and identified class III/V and class IX requirements to accomplish the mission.</li> <li>f. The S3, with assistance from the S4, forecasted consumption statistics for a 24-hour mission period.</li> </ul> <p>*2. The battalion coordinates FARP operations.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Battalion coordinated and implemented a flight rotation plan to refuel and rearm aircraft in a timely manner in order to meet that needs of the tactical operation.</li> <li>b. The S3, with assistance from the S4, coordinated with the aviation maintenance company (AMC) commander to forecast and front-load essential to flight and armament repair parts and their availability.</li> <li>c. The S3/special operations coordinated aircraft traffic (ingress and egress routes) according to battalion standing operating procedure (SOP).</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>d. The S4 coordinated for resupply of FARP with class III/V and armament platoon.</p> <p>*3. The battalion executive officer coordinates the planning and establishment of FARP location and operations.</p> <p>*4. Battalion safety officer or battalion commander's designated representative ensures all safety precautions are implemented before and during establishment of FARP location and operations.</p> <p>*5. Commander/leader performs or delegates performance of the steps in the risk management process for each step in troop-leading procedures (see appendix C).</p> <p>* Indicates a leader task step</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
Total Task Steps Evaluated							
Total Task Steps GO							
Training Status GO/NO-GO							

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
011-237-2012	Perform tactical flight mission planning (UH-60)	STP 1-15-219  STP 1-15-219-OS TC 1-237 STP 1-15II-500-MQS
011-510-0004	Employ combat service support	STP 1-TACOPS STP 1-15 II

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
01-1-5134	Plan aviation operations using the military decision making process	ARTEP 1-113-MTP  ARTEP 1-118-MTP ARTEP 1-126-MTP
01-2-0341	Perform composite risk management procedures	ARTEP 1-113-MTP  ARTEP 1-126-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** COMMAND SECTION  
S3 SECTION

**TASK: Plan Aerial Casualty Evacuation (CASEVAC) Operations (01-1-5154)**

(TC 1-210)	(FM 1-100)	(FM 1-113)
(FM 3-04.111)	(FM 3-04.126)	(FM 3-04.300)
(FM 3-100.4)	(FM 3-100.12)	(FM 8-35)
(FM 90-4)	(TC 1-237)	

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The battalion is in a simulated (live, virtual, or constructive) combat environment. The unit has received an operation order (OPORD)/fragmentary order (FRAGO) and the unit commander's guidance. The main command post (CP) is operational. The staff sections, digital and/or analog, are functioning. Reports are being received through normal channels. The battalion S3, the air assault task force (AATF) staff, and air mission commander plan the combined use of aerial medical evacuation (MEDEVAC) and casualty evacuation (CASEVAC). Some iterations of this task should be performed in mission-oriented protective posture level 4 (MOPP4).

**TASK STANDARDS:** The aviation unit provided timely, efficient aerial casualty evacuation. The unit performed operations according to OPORD/FRAGO, SOP, applicable technical manuals, regulations, directives, safety procedures, and commander's guidance. The unit provided properly equipped aircraft to the specified location at the specified time. Combat service support (CSS) missions include CASEVAC, when medical aircraft are inadequate or not readily available.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>*1. The commander and staff gains and/or maintains situational understanding using information gathered from Force XXI Battle Command Brigade and Below (FBCB2), frequency modulated (FM), digital and or analog communications systems, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources.</p> <p>*2. The warning order is received from the brigade combat team (BCT). The commander conducts troop-leading procedures and the staff initiates the military decisionmaking process (MDMP).</p> <p>*3. The battalion S3 section provides a liaison officer (LNO) to the supported medical unit.</p> <p>*4. The battalion plans details involving the mission analysis and issues a warning order to the subordinate elements.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Battalion conducted task organization (required number of aircraft and command and control [C2] relationships).</li> <li>b. Battalion monitored fighter management cycles.</li> <li>c. Battalion proposed timelines.</li> <li>d. Battalion parallel planned responsibilities for subordinate companies (conduct terrain analysis on proposed flight routes and pickup zone [PZ]/landing zones [LZs]).</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p><b>*5.</b> The commander conducts special coordination, as required.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>a.</b> Obtained locations of PZs, LZs, and medical treatment facilities and understands the phases of the operation each will be active.</li> <li><b>b.</b> Coordinated the frequencies, callings, markings and landing directions of all LZs and PZs.</li> <li><b>c.</b> Briefed the readiness condition (REDCON) levels, response times and communications plan to the aircrew according to the mission requirements.</li> <li><b>d.</b> Determined special equipment or aircraft configuration requirements.</li> <li><b>e.</b> Determined the command relationships for the aircraft including launch authority and mission tasking authority. UH-60 aircraft must be integrated into the ground commander's scheme of maneuver; examples include the following— <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>(1)</b> Integrated air assault.</li> <li><b>(2)</b> Integrated team insertions.</li> <li><b>(3)</b> Integrated CASEVAC.</li> <li><b>(4)</b> Integrated volcano employment.</li> </ul> </li> </ul> <p><b>*6.</b> The staff analyzes the course of action (COA), war games, and develops the aviation plan using the 5 phases of air movement planning.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>a.</b> Supported unit medical evacuation plan—staff ensures that the supported unit's mission is understood and that aviation's scheme of maneuver accomplishes that mission.</li> <li><b>b.</b> Supported landing plan—staff coordinates for the grid location, landing direction, frequency, call sign and marking of each LZ.</li> <li><b>c.</b> Supported air movement plan— <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>(1)</b> Staff developed a series of primary and alternate air corridors, using the company's route analysis that did not conflict with the BCT fire support plan and that avoided threat interdiction.</li> <li><b>(2)</b> Staff submitted required graphics and Army airspace command and control (A2C2) control measures to the BCT.</li> </ul> </li> <li><b>d.</b> Supported loading plan—staff coordinated for the grid location, landing direction, frequency, and call sign of each ambulance exchange point (AXP). Determined what phase of the operation each AXP was active.</li> <li><b>e.</b> Supported staging plan—staff determines the number of aircraft required to accomplish mission, the aircraft configurations required, the REDCON levels for each aircrews, the staging location for each aircraft, and the necessary timelines to accomplish the supported unit's mission. Staff determined the refuel requirements and positions FARP.</li> </ul> <p><b>*7.</b> The staff attends the supported unit OPORD brief and CSS rehearsals.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>a.</b> Verified the supported unit's medical concept of support.</li> <li><b>b.</b> Finalized landing plan.</li> <li><b>c.</b> Briefed the air movement plan to the supported unit.</li> <li><b>d.</b> Finalized loading plan.</li> <li><b>e.</b> Finalized staging plan.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p><b>*8.</b> The commander and staff complete the plan and issue the aviation OPORD. (Ensured OPORD is synchronized within subordinate company fighter management cycles.)</p> <p><b>*9.</b> The commander and staff conduct aviation rehearsal. (Ensured rehearsal is synchronized within subordinate company fighter management cycles.)</p> <p><b>*10.</b> The commander controls the aircraft during execution.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Received the 9-line CASEVAC request and launched the appropriate number of aircraft.</li> <li>b. Analyzed enemy situation and revise the air movement plan accordingly.</li> <li>c. Maintained situational awareness of all aircraft during their mission execution.</li> <li>d. Interacted with the supported unit commander directly on all aviation matters relating to the CASEVAC operation.</li> <li>e. Activated and deactivated air corridors as required through the BCT to facilitate the air movement plan.</li> </ul> <p>The UH-60 A/L can carry three or four litter patients depending on seating configuration. Supported units should ensure that aircrews know the locations of their battalion and brigade treatment facility LZs or casualty collection points (CCP) where ground ambulances can meet and treat casualties.</p> <p><b>11.</b> During air assault planning, the AATF staff and air mission commander plans the combined use of aerial MEDEVAC and CASEVAC. While assaulting aircraft may evacuate wounded from the PZ, the time required to load and unload casualties could desynchronize the air movement table. If possible, separate CASEVAC aircraft should be used. (See FM 1-113 for more detailed clarification.)</p> <p><b>*12.</b> Commander/leader performs or delegates performance of the steps in the risk management process for each step in troop-leading procedures (see appendix C).</p> <p>* Indicates a leader task step</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
Total Task Steps Evaluated							
Total Task Steps GO							
Training Status GO/NO-GO							

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
011-237-2012	Perform tactical flight mission planning (UH-60)	TC 1-237
011-510-0004	Employ combat service support	STP 1-TACOPS
011-510-0021	Employ fundamentals of Army operations	STP 1-15 II
011-510-0300	Coordinate staff duties/responsibilities in tactical units	STP 1-15 II
011-510-1700	Implement the Army safety program	STP 1-15 II

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
01-1-5134	Plan aviation operations using the military decision making process	ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-118-MTP ARTEP 1-126-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** COMMAND SECTION  
S2 SECTION

**TASK: Comply With Requirements to Keep an Isolated Personnel Report (ISOPREP) Database Current (01-1-5156)**

(AR 600-8)	(AR 600-8-24)	(AR 600-8-104)
(AR 635-200)	(FM 1-100)	(FM 1-113)
(FM 3-04.111)	(FM 3-04.126)	

**ITERATION:** 1      2      3      4      5      M      (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T      P      U      (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The battalion is in a simulated (live, virtual, or constructive) combat environment. The staff has received an operation order (OPORD)/fragmentary order (FRAGO) and the commander's guidance. The main command post (CP) is operational and the staff sections, with digital and or analog systems, are functioning. Reports are being received through normal channels. Isolated personnel report (ISOPREP) databases have been completed by unit personnel and forwarded to the intelligence officer (S2). Some iterations of this task should be performed in mission-oriented protective posture level 4 (MOPP4).

**TASK STANDARDS:** The S2 maintained current ISOPREP data on 100 percent of assigned and attached personnel. The ISOPREP database was authenticated prior to every mission. ISOPREP data was transmitted, using secure means, to the rescue coordination center (RCC) within the time frame prescribed by the unit standing operating procedures (SOP).

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>1. Unit personnel complete information (DD Form 1833, <i>Isolated Personnel Report</i>) to be entered into ISOPREP database.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Personnel completed DD Form 1833 in ink, except for items 3, 13, 14, 20 through 23, and 26 which will be completed in pencil.</li> <li>b. Item 1 through 13, self-explanatory.</li> <li>c. Entered a four-digit number in item 14; that can be easily remembered.</li> <li>d. Item 15, self-explanatory.</li> <li>e. Items 16 through 19, completed by CP personnel.</li> <li>f. Entered required declarative statements in items 20 through 23, not questions and answers.</li> </ul> <hr/> <p><b>Note.</b> They should involve details of friends, relatives (other than immediate family) pets, vehicles, vacations, and so forth, would be appropriate.</p> <hr/> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>g. Additional data is for local use only.</li> <li>h. Fingerprints and appropriate codes are recorded in blocks 1 through 10 on the reverse of DD Form 1833.</li> <li>i. Provided current and front profile view photographs of the individual.</li> </ul> <p>2. The S2 reviews the ISOPREP database (DD Form 1833).</p> <p>3. S2 transmits ISOPREP data using secure voice or fax to the RCC.</p>		



TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>4. S2 coordinates authentication procedures.</p> <p>a. Ensured isolated personnel are not asked to provide their full authentication number in the clear.</p> <p>b. Provided only one statement per mission when using survivor authentication statement from the ISOPREP database.</p> <p>5. S2 compiles list of personnel assigned to each mission.</p> <p>6. S2 section officer in charge (OIC) performs or delegates performance of the steps in the risk management process for each step in troop-leading procedures (see appendix C).</p> <p>* Indicates a leader task step</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
Total Task Steps Evaluated							
Total Task Steps GO							
Training Status GO/NO-GO							

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
011-510-0306	Perform personnel/administration staff duties/responsibilities	STP 1-15 II

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
01-1-5134	Plan aviation operations using the military decision making process	ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-118-MTP ARTEP 1-126-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** COMMAND SECTION  
S4 SECTION

**TASK: Establish an Aviation Administrative and Logistics Operations Center (ALOC) (01-1-5168)**

(FM 3-04.111)	(FM 1-100)	(FM 1-113)
(FM 3-04.126)	(FM 3-04.500)	(FM 3-04.513)
(FM 3-100.12)	(FM 4-0)	

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The battalion is conducting assigned missions in a simulated (live, virtual, or constructive) combat environment. The battalion tactical operations center (TOC) is operational and the staff sections and digital systems are functional. The S4 has received mission requirements and the commander's guidance directing it to establish an ALOC. The main body of the battalion headquarters has arrived at the new location. The higher headquarters OPORD with all annexes, status reports, maps, overlays, and other required documents has been forwarded to the commander's digital or analog devices. The unit, higher, and lower tactical standing operating procedures (TACSOPs) are available. The commander or executive officer (XO) have selected the general location of the ALOC. Advance/quartering command post (CP) personnel have identified specific locations and initial preparations are completed. All required personnel and equipment are available. The CP (forward) maintains operational control of the battalion until the new ALOC is established. This task is performed under all environmental conditions, both day and night. The unit is subject to air, chemical, biological, radiological, and nuclear (CBRN) and level 1 ground threat forces attack. Some iterations of this task should be performed in mission-oriented protective posture level 4 (MOPP4).

**TASK STANDARDS:** The S4 established an ALOC according to the TACSOP and the commander's guidance. ALOC was capable of communicating with and controlling support assets and survival measure assets within the time specified in the TACSOP. At MOPP4 performance degradation factors increases time required to establish logistics center and administrative areas.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p><b>*1.</b> The S4, with assistance from the battalion staff, coordinates requirements to establish an ALOC.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>a.</b> Coordinated requirements to establish ALOC on defensible terrain. Also, location was suitable for battalion to provide continuous administrative and logistical support to all assigned/attached units.</li> <li><b>b.</b> Identified staff working areas that facilitated immediate staff access to all required information.</li> <li><b>c.</b> Set up maps and status boards displaying status of internal logistics, personnel, and equipment.</li> <li><b>d.</b> Established communications nets in the order of priority specified by the S6/S2/S3.</li> <li><b>e.</b> Established policy files, records, staff journals, and section workbooks.</li> <li><b>f.</b> Coordinated generator electrical power with the S6/S2/S3.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p><b>2.</b> The S3 and support operations section provide assistance to the S4 section in establishing an ALOC.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Set up internal arrangement according to XO and support operations officers' guidance.</li> <li>b. Set up analog/digital maps, map overlays, and informational displays that showed the current tactical situations of all friendly and enemy forces affecting the battalion's mission according to TACSOP.</li> <li>c. Set up analog/digital status boards.</li> </ul> <hr/> <p><b>Note.</b> Status boards display locations of support facilities and their capabilities and status of personnel and equipment.</p> <hr/> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>d. Established commander's briefing area.</li> <li>e. Prepared sleep plan that is consistent with phases of supported unit's operations.</li> <li>f. Set up area access and security according to the TACSOP.</li> </ul> <p><b>*3.</b> Section leader performs or delegates performance of the steps in the risk management process for each step in troop-leading procedures (see appendix C).</p> <p>* Indicates a leader task step</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
Total Task Steps Evaluated							
Total Task Steps GO							
Training Status GO/NO-GO							

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
011-510-0306	Perform personnel/administration staff duties/responsibilities	STP 1-15 II
011-510-0309	Perform logistics staff duties/responsibilities	STP 1-15 II

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
01-1-5134	Plan aviation operations using the military decision making process	ARTEP 1-113-MTP
01-2-0341	Perform composite risk management procedures	ARTEP 1-118-MTP ARTEP 1-126-MTP ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-126-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** COMMAND SECTION  
S4 SECTION

**TASK: Organize Security Measures for Temporary Enemy Prisoners of War (EPW) at a Collection Point (01-1-5169)**

(FM 3-04.111)  
(FM 3-19.40)

(AR 190-8)

(FM 1-100)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The battalion is conducting assigned missions in a simulated (live, virtual, or constructive) combat environment. The battalion command post (CP) is operational and the staff sections and digital systems are functional. The S4 section has received mission requirements and the commander's guidance directing it to organize security measures for temporary EPWs at a collection point. The unit is supporting forces engaged in tactical operations. OPFOR EPWs have been captured or have surrendered. The S3 has coordinated with staff sections and tasked units for a security force. The capturing unit has processed EPWs through a collection point. Some iterations of this task should be performed in mission-oriented protective posture level 4 (MOPP4).

**TASK STANDARDS:** The S4 organized security measures for temporary EPWs at a collection point according to the battalion's tactical standing operating procedure (TACSOP) and the commander's guidance. There were no violations of prisoners' rights under the Geneva Convention or international law. No prisoners escaped as result of improper handling procedures. Prisoners were evacuated within the time lines specified by higher headquarters.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>1. The S4 section, with security-force augmentation, coordinates security of EPWs at a temporary EPW collection point.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Selected an area that—                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Protected EPWs from the dangers of the battlefield.</li> <li>(2) Collection point was located away from likely avenues of approach.</li> <li>(3) Had adequate fields of observation for security personnel.</li> <li>(4) Was adequately displaced from command-and-control elements and key logistical facilities.</li> </ul> </li> <li>b. Used barrier material, existing structures, and/or terrain obstacles to contain EPWs.</li> </ul> <p>2. The security force maintains segregation of EPWs.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Segregated EPWs by rank, sex, nationality, and ideology.</li> <li>b. Segregated deserters and civilians.</li> </ul> <p>3. The security force maintains silence among EPWs and prevents all communications between EPWs with emphasis on the following—</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Prevented EPW leaders from giving orders.</li> <li>b. Prevented EPWs from planning escapes.</li> </ul> <p>4. The security force safeguards EPWs.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Protected EPWs from unnecessary danger.</li> <li>b. Treated EPWs humanely.</li> </ul>		

<b>TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES</b>	<b>GO</b>	<b>NO-GO</b>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>c. Provided EPWs with available food, water, and medical attention, as required.</li> </ul> <p><b>5.</b> The S4 section coordinates with higher headquarters for the evacuation of EPWs.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Coordinated EPW issues with the detailed judge advocate or servicing staff judge advocate's office.</li> <li>b. Coordinated for transportation assets, as required.</li> <li>c. Coordinated movement and transfer of EPWs.</li> </ul> <p><b>*6.</b> Commander/leader identifies and controls hazards according to risk management procedures (see appendix C).</p> <p>* Indicates a leader task step</p>		

<b>TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK</b>							
<b>ITERATION</b>	<b>1</b>	<b>2</b>	<b>3</b>	<b>4</b>	<b>5</b>	<b>M</b>	<b>TOTAL</b>
Total Task Steps Evaluated							
Total Task Steps GO							
Training Status GO/NO-GO							

#### **SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
011-510-0300	Coordinate staff duties/responsibilities in tactical units	STP 1-15 II

#### **SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
01-1-5134	Plan aviation operations using the military decision making process	ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-118-MTP ARTEP 1-126-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** COMMAND SECTION  
S4 SECTION

**TASK: Organize External Transportation Assets for Movement of Personnel, Supplies, and Equipment (01-1-5170)**

(FM 3-04.111)	(FM 1-100)	(FM 1-113)
(FM 3-04.126)	(FM 3-04.500)	(FM 3-100.12)
(FM 4-0)	(FM 7-1)	

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The battalion is conducting assigned missions in a simulated (live, virtual, or constructive) combat environment. The battalion command post (CP), the administrative and logistical operations center (ALOC) are operational and staff sections and digital systems are functional. The battalion has published an operation order (OPORD)/fragmentary order (FRAGO). External transportation assets are needed to support units' movement mission. The S4 has received the commander's guidance directing it to coordinate external transportation assets for movement of the battalion's personnel, supplies, and equipment. Some iterations of this task should be performed in mission-oriented protective posture level 4 (MOPP4).

**TASK STANDARDS:** The S4 conducted transportation needs assessment to move subordinate units' personnel, supplies, and equipment in conjunction with other staff sections. S4 identified external transportation needs for movement of subordinate units' assets. S4 provided transportation movement requirement to supporting combat service support (CSS) units for planning and preparation of transportation missions.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>1. The S4 plans and assists in the development, maintenance, and evaluation of units' movement of personnel, supplies, and equipment using organic and external transportation assets.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Coordinated movement planning guidance applicable to subordinate units.</li> <li>b. Prepared recommendations to enhance movement planning and execution.</li> <li>c. Prepared and maintained battalion movement plans that incorporated subordinate units' movement requirements.</li> <li>d. Consolidated unit deployment lists (UDLs).</li> <li>e. Created and submitted convoy documentation.</li> <li>f. Created commercial and military transportation documents.</li> <li>g. Identified, labeled, segregated, and documented hazardous material (HAZMAT) peculiar to subordinate units.</li> </ul> <p>2. The S4 identifies and determines needs for external transportation requirements.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Planned units' transportation requirements with S3 based on assigned mission requirements.</li> <li>b. Coordinated number of deploying personnel with S1.</li> <li>c. Identified quantities of basic, prescribed, and operational loads to be moved.</li> </ul>		

<b>TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES</b>	<b>GO</b>	<b>NO-GO</b>
<p>d. Coordinated movement of personnel, supplies, and equipment using organic transportation assets.</p> <p>e. Identified need for external transportation assets based on assigned operational and tactical mission requirements.</p> <p>f. Coordinated movement of additional personnel, supplies, and equipment with CSS units.</p> <p>3. The S4 processes requests and coordinates allocation of external transportation assets.</p> <p>a. Processed request for external transportation assets through CSS units.</p> <p>b. Received and coordinated allocation of external transportation assets.</p> <p>c. Recommended to the commander procedures for controlling transportation assets and prioritizing of movement for subordinate units based on assigned operational and tactical requirements.</p> <p>d. Executed movement of personnel, supplies, and equipment using organic and CSS assets.</p> <p>*4. Commander/leader performs or delegates performance of the steps in the risk management process for each step in troop-leading procedures (see appendix C).</p> <p>* Indicates a leader task step</p>		

<b>TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK</b>							
<b>ITERATION</b>	<b>1</b>	<b>2</b>	<b>3</b>	<b>4</b>	<b>5</b>	<b>M</b>	<b>TOTAL</b>
Total Task Steps Evaluated							
Total Task Steps GO							
Training Status GO/NO-GO							

#### **SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
011-510-0004	Employ combat service support	STP 1-15 II
011-510-0300	Coordinate staff duties/responsibilities in tactical units	STP 1-15 II
011-510-0309	Perform logistics staff duties/responsibilities	STP 1-15 II

#### **SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
01-1-5134	Plan aviation operations using the military decision making process	ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-118-MTP ARTEP 1-126-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** COMMAND SECTION  
S4 SECTION

**TASK: Perform Logistics Operations (01-1-5171)**

(AR 700-138)	(AR 700-4)	(FM 1-100)
(FM 3-04.126)	(FM 3-04.500)	(FM 3-04.513)
(FM 3-100.12)	(FM 4-0)	(FM 63-11)

**ITERATION:** 1      2      3      4      5      M      (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T      P      U      (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The battalion is conducting assigned missions in a simulated (live, virtual, or constructive) combat environment. The battalion' administrative and logistics operations center is operational and the S4 section and digital systems are functional. The S4 section has received mission requirements and the commander's guidance directing it to perform logistics operations. The S4 section has all required plans, standing operating procedures (SOPs), forms, manuals, and assigned equipment. The digital units have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in mission-oriented protective posture level 4 (MOPP4).

**TASK STANDARDS:** The S4 section provided logistical support for continuous operations without degrading the ability of the battalion to perform the mission due to inadequate logistics sustainment operations. The digital units send and receive orders and reports using frequency modulated (FM) or digital means. The time required to perform this task is increased when performing it in mission-oriented protective posture MOPP4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>1. The S4 section maintains the daily staff journal according to applicable Army regulations (ARs) and Department of the Army pamphlets (DA Pams).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Opened and closed the journals daily according to the unit's tactical standing operating procedure (TACSOP).</li> <li>b. Made entries pertaining to significant events, information, messages, and documents.</li> <li>c. Reviewed the journal entries for correctness.</li> </ul> <p>2. The S4 section provides logistical sustainment operations according to ARs, Pams, and the battalion's TACSOP.</p> <hr/> <p><b>Note.</b> The digital units perform operations and send and receive requests using digital systems according to the unit tactical SOP (TACSOP).</p> <hr/> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Provided detailed information on logistical matters.</li> <li>b. Supervised and monitored the requisition, receipt, storage, and distribution of supplies and equipment (except class VIII items).</li> <li>c. Supervised and monitored property accountability procedures.</li> <li>d. Planned and supervised logistics execution and the service support portion of plans and orders.</li> <li>e. Supervised and monitored logistics and maintenance records procedures.</li> </ul>		



TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>f. Maintained consumption data on all classes of supplies and prepared forecasts for class III and class V items.</p> <p>g. Coordinated with the operations and training officer (S3) for sustainment training of logistics personnel.</p> <p>h. Maintained the battalion property book according to standard property book system-redesign (SPBS-R).</p> <p>i. Established material storage areas for battalion's basic loads.</p> <p>j. Camouflaged areas according to the tactical situation.</p> <p>3. The S4 section is responsible for food service operations using doctrinal manuals as guidelines.</p> <p>a. Maintained and monitored food service operations.</p> <p>b. Coordinated field-feeding operations.</p> <p>c. Prepared the battalion feeding plan.</p> <p>d. Inspected field-feeding operations for enforcement of sanitation regulations.</p> <p>4. The S4 section is responsible for other logistics actions according to the standards listed below.</p> <p>a. Made arrangements for the receipt, storage, and issue of organizational clothing and individual equipment.</p> <p>b. Coordinated and monitored unit laundry support services.</p> <p>c. Selected the general location of service support areas.</p> <p>d. Coordinated and monitored the use of clothing exchange and bath points.</p> <p>e. Maintained data on the number of personnel requiring services and the dates and times services were offered.</p> <p>f. Designated collection points for unserviceable turn-in(s).</p> <p>g. Controlled the disposition of unserviceable turn-in(s).</p> <p>h. Coordinated the transportation of deceased personnel.</p> <p>i. Ensured that all quartermaster items issued to the unit were on hand or on order and serviceable.</p> <p>*5. The battalion maintenance officer (BMO) is responsible for maintenance through the S4 section.</p> <p>a. Supervised the battalion maintenance program.</p> <p>b. Monitored maintenance operations and equipment status.</p> <p>c. Reviewed unit status reports and material condition reports.</p> <p>d. Performed spot-check inspections.</p> <p>e. Prepared the logistics portion of the unit status report.</p> <p>f. Reviewed and supervised the prescribed load list (PLL) for class IX ground repair parts.</p> <p>g. Coordinated for the recovery and evacuation of unserviceable or nonrepairable battalion vehicles.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>h. Monitored the distribution and storage of repair parts and maintenance supplies.</p> <p>i. Established maintenance priorities and monitored the controlled exchange program.</p> <p>j. Estimated the maintenance impact of planned operations.</p> <p>k. Monitored the Army oil analysis program (AOAP) and the calibration program.</p> <p>6. The S4 section, with the assistance of the BMO, performs supply transactions.</p> <p>a. Coordinated, controlled, and supervised the turn-in of supplies and equipment.</p> <p>(1) Inspected equipment for serviceability or repairs.</p> <p>(2) Ensured that all unit maintenance was performed.</p> <p>(3) Ensured that the required fluids were drained and equipment was cleaned consistent with the SOP for the supporting supply activity.</p> <p>(4) Ensured that all the required forms were prepared reflecting equipment turn-in.</p> <p>b. Coordinated, controlled, and supervised the issues of supplies and equipment.</p> <p>(1) Inspected equipment.</p> <p>(2) Conducted a complete inventory.</p> <p>(3) Serviced and tested equipment.</p> <p>(4) Prepared all the required forms reflecting issue and receipt of supplies and equipment.</p> <p>7. The S4 section is responsible for transportation requirements.</p> <p>a. Provided a movement officer for the battalion.</p> <p>b. Developed and maintained the unit movement plan and SOP for all modes of transportation based on the operation plan (OPLAN).</p> <p>c. Ensured that movement plans included—</p> <p>(1) Vehicle preparation.</p> <p>(2) Load plans.</p> <p>(3) Personnel processing procedures.</p> <p>(4) Security procedures.</p> <p>(5) The duties and responsibilities of unit personnel.</p> <p>d. Updated the movement and load plans when changes to the modification table of organization and equipment (MTOE) were approved.</p> <p>e. Coordinated with the S3 to determine the priorities for movement.</p> <p>f. Reviewed and coordinated the movement and load plans of subordinate units.</p> <p>g. Determined transportation requirements for the move and submitted requests for external transportation.</p> <p>h. Obtained road clearance for movement.</p> <p>*8. Commander/leader performs or delegates performance of the steps in the risk management process for each step in troop-leading procedures (see appendix C).</p> <p>* Indicates a leader task step</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
<i>ITERATION</i>	<i>1</i>	<i>2</i>	<i>3</i>	<i>4</i>	<i>5</i>	<i>M</i>	<i>TOTAL</i>
Total Task Steps Evaluated							
Total Task Steps GO							
Training Status GO/NO-GO							

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
011-510-0004	Employ combat service support	STP 1-15 II
011-510-0309	Perform logistics staff duties/responsibilities	STP 1-15 II
011-540-0049	Supervise the use of supply publications	STP 1-150-155
011-540-0051	Supervise unit level logistics system aviation maintenance (ULLS-A)	STP 1-150-155

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
01-1-5134	Plan aviation operations using the military decision making process	ARTEP 1-113-MTP  ARTEP 1-118-MTP ARTEP 1-126-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENT:** COMPANY

**TASK: Perform Unit-Level Logistics Operations (01-2-0334)**

(FM 3-04.111)	(AR 700-138)	(AR 700-4)
(FM 1-100)	(FM 1-113)	(FM 3-04.126)
(FM 3-04.500)	(FM 3-100.12)	(FM 4-0)
(FM 10-27-4)	(FM 63-11)	(JP 4-01.6)

**ITERATION:** 1      2      3      4      5      M      (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T      P      U      (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The battalion is conducting assigned missions in a simulated (live, virtual, or constructive) combat environment. The battalion command post (CP) and the administrative and logistical operations center (ALOC) are operational and staff sections and digital systems are functional. Logistics reports and requests are being received through normal channels and processed using unit level logistic systems (ULLS) interfaces or manual procedures. Unit equipment and supplies are available for resupply. Some iterations of this task should be performed in mission-oriented protective posture level 4 (MOPP4).

**TASK STANDARDS:** Company's assigned combat/peacetime missions were not impaired as result of equipment or supplies shortages. Regulatory policies, procedures and unit standing operating procedure (SOP) were used to account for all unit property and supplies. Unit equipment and supplies were on hand or on order.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p><b>*1.</b> The company commander provides guidance and establishes procedures for supplies and property accountability.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>a.</b> Conducted cyclic or annual inventories of unit property, controlled items other than weapons and ammunition were inventoried quarterly, weapons and ammunition monthly and basic loads and operational loads semiannually.</li> <li><b>b.</b> Ensured that all authorized equipment, components, and supplies are on hand or on order.</li> <li><b>c.</b> Ensured that unit property, equipment, and components are complete and serviceable.</li> <li><b>d.</b> Began process to account for lost, damaged or destroyed unit property.</li> <li><b>e.</b> Provided adequate facilities to secure unit property and sensitive items according to physical security regulatory policies.</li> <li><b>f.</b> Directed distribution of equipment and supplies in support of unit's operating tempo (OPTEMPO).</li> <li><b>g.</b> Supervised distribution of sensitive items, munitions and pyrotechnics.</li> </ul> <p><b>2.</b> The first sergeant (1SG) (or designated representative) coordinates procurement actions of supplies and accountability procedures of unit property and basic loads with the unit supply sergeant.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>a.</b> Coordinated current and future logistical needs with unit commander in support of assigned tactical missions.</li> <li><b>b.</b> Coordinated inventories of basic loads, equipment, components and unit supplies.</li> <li><b>c.</b> Identified shortages of unit supplies, basic loads, equipment and components.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>d. Monitored procurement actions of unit supplies, basic loads, equipment and components.</p> <p>e. Monitored all open document numbers and requisitions for valid supply/shipping statuses and delivery dates.</p> <p>f. Verified the accuracy of all supply document register entries.</p> <p>g. Coordinated distribution procedures of supplies and equipment in support of OPTEMPO.</p> <p>3. The unit supply sergeant coordinates inventories of unit property, equipment and basic loads with sub-hand receipt holders and initiates procurement actions of supplies, equipment and basic loads.</p> <p>a. Prepared and maintained supply document registers and property book records.</p> <p>b. Assisted commander with inventory preparations, inventory schedules and accountability procedures of all assigned unit property, equipment and basic loads.</p> <p>c. Processed shortage annexes for unit property, equipment, and basic loads.</p> <p>d. Processed request for issue documents with the property book office and/or battalion S-4.</p> <p>e. Issued unit property and supplies to all company sub-hand receipt holders.</p> <p>*4. Commander/leader identifies and controls hazards according to risk management procedures (see appendix C).</p> <p>* Indicates a leader task step</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
Total Task Steps Evaluated							
Total Task Steps GO							
Training Status GO/NO-GO							

#### SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
011-510-0309	Perform logistics staff duties/responsibilities	STP 1-15 II

#### SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
01-2-0341	Perform composite risk management procedures	ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-126-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENT:** COMPANY

**TASK: Conduct Personnel Strength Management Procedures (01-2-0335)**

(FM 3-04.111)	(AR 600-8)	(AR 600-8-6I)
(AR 600-8-101)	(AR 600-8-104)	(FM 1-100)
(FM 1-113)	(FM 3-04.126)	(FM 4-0)

**ITERATION:** 1    2    3    4    5    M    (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T    P    U    (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The battalion is in a simulated (live, virtual, or constructive) combat environment. The battalion staff and digital systems are functional and located at the administrative and logistics operations center (ALOC). The S1 section has received an operation order (OPORD)/fragmentary order (FRAGO) requiring it to perform strength management of assigned unit's personnel using the command and control reporting system. The company is engaged in combat. Personnel losses and gains have occurred. Reports from assigned and attached units are received daily. Some iterations of this task should be performed in mission-oriented protective posture level 4 (MOPP4).

**TASK STANDARDS:** The personnel situation report (SITREP) accounted for 100 percent of company personnel. Strength management reports were submitted to higher headquarters according to the unit's tactical standing operating procedure (TACSOP).

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>*1. The company collects personnel strength information from subordinate sections.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Logged SITREP and other personnel information.</li> <li>b. Verified personnel strength data.</li> <li>c. Corrected and completed data.</li> </ul> <p>*2. The company first sergeant (1SG) processes information.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Consolidated subordinate element personnel information.</li> <li>b. Determined critical shortages and cross-level requirements.</li> <li>c. Updated battle roster.</li> <li>d. Prepared personnel strength reports.</li> </ul> <p>*3. The company 1SG processes replacements.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Conducted unit welcome or orientation briefing.</li> <li>b. Inspected critical clothing and equipment shortages.</li> <li>c. Coordinated issue of needed items.</li> <li>d. Briefed replacements on company duties and responsibilities.</li> <li>e. Briefed replacements on mission, tactical situation, and company policies and procedures.</li> </ul> <p>*4. The 1SG disseminates strength information.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Briefed commander on unit strength and replacement status.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>b. Sent forward personnel SITREP and DA Form 1155 (<i>Witness Statement on Individual</i>) and DA Form 1156 (<i>Casualty Feeder Report</i>) to supporting S1 section.</p> <p>c. Informed subordinate sections of projected replacements.</p> <p>*5. The company commander performs strength management functions.</p> <p>a. Performed cross leveling.</p> <p>b. Verified combat critical personnel requirements.</p> <p>c. Reviewed and approved strength management reports.</p> <p>d. Spot checked strength information processing.</p> <p>e. Briefed superiors on unit strength and replacement status.</p> <p>*6. Commander/leader performs or delegates performance of the steps in the risk management process for each step in troop-leading procedures (see appendix C).</p> <p>* Indicates a leader task step</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
Total Task Steps Evaluated							
Total Task Steps GO							
Training Status GO/NO-GO							

#### SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
011-510-0306	Perform personnel/administration staff duties/responsibilities	STP 1-15 II

#### SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
01-2-0341	Perform composite risk management procedures	ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-126-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENT:** COMPANY

**TASK: Conduct Helicopter Maintenance (01-2-0338)**

(FM 3-04.500)	(AR 750-1)	(ARTEP 1-500-MTP)
(DA Pam 738-751)	(FM 1-100)	(FM 1-113)
(FM 3-04.111)	(FM 3-04.126)	(FM 4-30.3)

**ITERATION:** 1    2    3    4    5    M    (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T    P    U    (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The battalion is conducting assigned missions in a simulated (live, virtual, or constructive) combat environment. The main command post (CP) and the aviation unit maintenance company/platoon are operational and the staff sections and digital systems are functioning. Maintenance and shop personnel are available, repair parts, tools, and test measurement and diagnostic equipment (TMDE) are on hand to conduct helicopter maintenance. Some iterations of this task should be performed in mission-oriented protective posture level 4 (MOPP4).

**TASK STANDARDS:** Helicopter maintenance and repairs were completed according to prescribed maintenance publications. Aircraft technical inspections were performed according to applicable technical publications. Safety procedures were adhered to and maintained throughout all maintenance procedures and inspections according to maintenance standing operating procedures (SOPs). Operational readiness rates were maintained according to Department of the Army (DA) standards.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>*1. Unit commander/leader supervises operator and/or crew chief level aircraft maintenance.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Monitored timely performance of the preventive maintenance checks and services.</li> <li>b. Monitored timely completion of assigned aircraft's reoccurring inspections and services.</li> <li>c. Identified current or anticipated maintenance requirements.</li> <li>d. Monitored emergency field repairs in coordination with the aviation support company maintenance personnel.</li> <li>e. Verified validity of supply and/or shipping statuses for all technical supply processed parts requests.</li> <li>f. Requested maintenance contact teams to support forward-deployed unit aircraft and assets.</li> <li>g. Coordinated with aviation support company personnel for—               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Assistance on aircraft scheduled maintenance in support of unit's assigned mission and aircraft bank time.</li> <li>(2) Reoccurring periodic and progressive phase aircraft maintenance.</li> </ul> </li> <li>h. Provided aviation support company personnel timely aircraft status aircraft reports.</li> <li>i. Monitored inspections of aircraft systems and subsystems.</li> </ul>		



TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p><b>*2.</b> Aviation support company maintenance officer/technician directs units aircraft maintenance program.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>a.</b> Acted as the single point of contact (POC) for all supported unit's logistics and maintenance actions.</li> <li><b>b.</b> Maintained forms and records of daily flying hours and condition of assigned aircraft.</li> <li><b>c.</b> Informed commanders of the status and availability of their assigned aircraft.</li> <li><b>d.</b> Coordinated with units scheduling of aircraft to meet mission and training requirements.</li> <li><b>e.</b> Monitored progress of assigned maintenance work requests to shops and maintenance sections.</li> <li><b>f.</b> Coordinated higher level maintenance work requirements with aviation support battalion (ASB).</li> <li><b>g.</b> Managed the control exchange program to support unit's operating tempo (OPTEMPO) and aircraft operational readiness.</li> <li><b>h.</b> Coordinated all maintenance operational checks (MOCs) and test flights.</li> <li><b>i.</b> Managed aircraft flying-hour program to maintain required operational readiness rates and optimum bank time.</li> <li><b>j.</b> Submitted maintenance and aircraft status reports to commanders and higher headquarters.</li> </ul> <p><b>3.</b> Component repair platoon and maintenance personnel perform repairs on aircraft systems and subsystems.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>a.</b> Validated aircraft fault and identified level of maintenance for repair of aircraft system and subsystems.</li> <li><b>b.</b> Procured necessary maintenance repair parts and aircraft components.</li> <li><b>c.</b> Repaired aircraft systems and subsystems according to maintenance allocation chart (MAC).</li> <li><b>d.</b> Evacuated aircraft and/or components to higher echelon maintenance facilities, included maintenance and administrative actions that— <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>(1)</b> Corrected all unit-level maintenance aircraft faults.</li> <li><b>(2)</b> Prepared all required maintenance forms and records according to applicable publications.</li> </ul> </li> <li><b>e.</b> Completed technical inspections of aircraft systems, subsystems and components.</li> <li><b>f.</b> Closed out maintenance work requests and completed all required aircraft forms and records.</li> <li><b>g.</b> Submitted closed-out maintenance work requests to production control personnel.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p><b>4.</b> Unit and aviation support company personnel perform required maintenance clerical functions.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>a.</b> Generated maintenance work requests and entered latest aircraft maintenance/supply statuses on production controls' document register.</li> <li><b>b.</b> Maintained adequate onhand balances of prescribed load list (PLL) and bench stock items.</li> <li><b>c.</b> Processed repair parts request for unit's aircraft systems and subsystems.</li> <li><b>d.</b> Performed operator's maintenance on unit's assigned aviation ground support equipment (AGSE).</li> <li><b>e.</b> Maintained prescribed publications and TMDE.</li> </ul> <p><b>*5.</b> Commander/leader performs or delegates performance of the steps in the risk management process for each step in troop-leading procedures (see appendix C).</p> <p>* Indicates a leader task step</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
Total Task Steps Evaluated							
Total Task Steps GO							
Training Status GO/NO-GO							

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
011-228-2900	Perform prior-to-maintenance test-flight checks(OH-58A/C)	STP 1-15-219 STP 1-15-219-OS STP 1-15II-500-MQS
011-237-4000	Perform prior-to-maintenance test-flight Checks (UH-60)	STP 1-15 I TC 1-237 STP 1-15II-500-MQS STP 1-TACOPS
011-238-4000	Perform prior-to-maintenance test-flight checks (AH-64A)	MOS W 152F 1 STP 1-15-219 STP 1-15-219-OS STP 1-15II-500-MQS
011-240-1200	Perform nonrated crew duties (NCM) duties during a maintenance test flight (CH-47D)	MOS E 15T 3
011-248-4000	Perform prior to maintenance test flight checks (OH-58D)	STP 1-15-219 STP 1-15-219-OS STP 1-15II-500-MQS
011-251-4000	Perform prior-to-maintenance test-flight checks (AH-64D)	STP 1-15-219
011-510-0502	Plan company-level maintenance	STP 1-15-219-OS STP 1-15II-500-MQS
011-510-1300	Supervise aviation maintenance operations	STP 1-15 II STP 1-15 II

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
011-540-0004	Supervise the use of aviation maintenance publications	STP 1-150-155
011-540-0006	Supervise the aviation maintenance safety program	STP 1-150-155
011-540-0015	Supervise the standard Army maintenance program (SAMS 1&2) management	STP 1-150-155
011-540-0019	Supervise scheduling of aircraft maintenance	STP 1-150-155
011-540-0021	Supervise aircraft unscheduled maintenance	STP 1-150-155
011-540-0023	Perform the duties of an aviation maintenance officer	STP 1-150-155
011-540-0029	Supervise the preparation of maintenance forms and records	STP 1-150-155

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
01-2-0341	Perform composite risk management procedures	ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-126-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** FORWARD SUPPORT COMPANY, ASSAULT BATTALION  
 FORWARD SUPPORT COMPANY, ASSAULT BATTALION (MEDIUM)

**TASK: Perform Forward Arming and Refueling Point Operations (01-2-0339)**

(FM 3-04.111) (AR 95-1) (FM 10-67)  
 (FM 3-04.126) (FM 1-113) (FM 1-100)  
 (FM 3-100.12) (TC 1-237)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The battalion is conducting assigned missions in a simulated (live, virtual, or constructive) combat environment. The battalion's main command post (CP), administrative and logistics operations center (ALOC) are operational and staff and digital systems are functional. The unit has received an operation order (OPORD)/fragmentary order (FRAGO) and the commander's guidance directing it to perform forward arming and refueling point (FARP) operations. The main CP is operational and the staff sections and digital systems are functional. Reports are being received through normal channels. The FARP platoon is air deployed and functional. Some iterations of this task should be performed in mission-oriented protective posture level 4 (MOPP4).

**TASK STANDARDS:** The unit performed FARP operations according to the unit's tactical standing operating procedure (TACSOP) and the commander's guidance. Aircraft and equipment were serviced according to regulatory policies and published guidelines to meet mission support requirements for class III/V supplies. Support services were completed within the time constraints specified in the OPORD/FRAGO and the unit's SOP.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Actions taken prior to occupying FARP site.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Rearming and refueling site was selected according to regulatory policies.</li> <li>b. Employed appropriate security measures.</li> <li>c. Established/maintained radio communications.</li> <li>d. Established proper work/rest cycle for continuous operations.</li> </ol> </li> <li>2. Actions taken when establishing FARP site.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. FARP site to include ammo storage, maintenance pad, and boresite area were established to sustain aviation operations according to battalion SOP.</li> <li>b. Established FARP in a timely manner.</li> <li>c. FARP site and operations was certified by safety officer or battalion commander's designated representative.</li> </ol> </li> <li>3. The class III/V platoon/section prepares the forward area refueling equipment (FARE) system for refueling operations.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Bonding/handling/grounding wires were checked for electrical continuity.</li> <li>b. Personnel recirculated fuel in the system using another 500-gallon drum before aircraft refueling operations began, if dual ported, drums were not used.</li> </ol> </li> </ol>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>c. Conducted Aqua-Glo tests on fuel samples that have passed through the filter separator and inspected for water contamination prior to any aircraft refueling operations.</p> <p>d. Conducted a visual inspection of fuel samples from each nozzle for sediment accumulation.</p> <p>e. Used the closed-circuit refueling (CCR) nozzle on aircraft equipped with CCR system unless otherwise directed.</p> <p>f. Protected fuel and refueling system from accidental contamination.</p> <p>g. Maintained FARE components to ensure optimum operations of pump and filter systems.</p> <p>h. Environmental concerns were mitigated and preventive measures employed.</p> <p>4. The class III/V platoon/armament platoon refuels and/or rearms aircraft.</p> <p>a. Developed FARP Army airspace command and control (A2C2) including establishment of holding area.</p> <p>b. Established positive communication with pilot in command (PC) before beginning safeing, rearming and refueling operations or aircraft movement.</p> <p>c. Turned radios to the off position except for radio used to monitor air traffic control.</p> <p>d. Set armament systems on board aircraft to the safe position and installed pins before rearming and/or refueling operations began.</p> <p>e. Rearmed and refueled aircraft with minimal delay.</p> <p>f. Utilized qualified armament personnel to perform minor armament repairs.</p> <p>g. Aircrew and pad chiefs utilized standardized FARP pad checklist.</p> <p>h. Monitored and controlled aircraft traffic in and out FARP site.</p> <p>i. Observed all safety precautions both before and during refueling and rearming operations.</p> <p>*5. Commander/leader identifies and controls hazards according to risk management procedures (see appendix C).</p> <p>* Indicates a leader task step</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
Total Task Steps Evaluated							
Total Task Steps GO							
Training Status GO/NO-GO							

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
011-237-1194	Perform refueling operations (UH-60)	TC 1-237 STP 1-TACOPS
011-510-0004	Employ combat service support	STP 1-15 II
011-510-0309	Perform logistics staff duties/responsibilities	STP 1-15 II

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
01-2-0341	Perform composite risk management procedures	ARTEP 1-113-MTP  ARTEP 1-126-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** FORWARD SUPPORT COMPANY (FSC)  
FEEDING SECTION

**TASK:** **Provide Food Service Support (10-2-0056)**  
(AR 30-22) (AR 40-5) (DA Pam 30-22)  
(FM 3-04.111) (FM 21-10) (FM 10-23)  
(TB MED 530) (TM 10-412)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The commander's guidance is that Soldiers will be fed at least one hot meal per day. The unit has analog and digital communications with higher headquarters and tactical operations are underway according to the operations order (OPORD), the unit tactical standing operating procedure (TACSOP), and higher headquarters TACSOPs. Food is to be prepared as far forward as practical based on the tactical situation. Field kitchens are set up and food is being prepared in support of operations. Rations and water have been secured and additional rations requested. Unit strength reports are available. Disposal facilities have been prepared. This task is performed under all day and night environmental conditions. Threat capabilities cover a full spectrum including information gathering; hostile force sympathizers; terrorist activities to include suicide bombings; and conventional, air supported, and reinforced squad operations in a chemical, biological, radiological, and nuclear (CBRN) environment. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** Unit provides food service support according to field feeding plan, TACSOP, and commander's guidance.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>*1. Food operations sergeant plans food service support.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Verified strengths of all supported units.</li> <li>b. Requested required amount of subsistence from supporting class I point.</li> <li>c. Prepared personnel work schedules.</li> <li>d. Assigned duties to all food service personnel.</li> <li>e. Prepared production schedule, as required.</li> <li>f. Coordinated distribution of food to supported unit's logistics release point (LRP) or supporting field kitchen site.</li> <li>g. Developed CBRN decontamination procedures for equipment, supplies, and personnel.</li> <li>h. Coordinated food service personnel defensive duties with unit command post (CP).</li> <li>i. Requested kitchen mess attendants support from supported units (as applicable).</li> <li>j. Enforced safety procedures according to TACSOP and AR 385-10.</li> <li>k. Enforced environmental stewardship protection program procedures.</li> <li>l. Enforced food safety procedures according to TB Med 530.</li> <li>m. Determined field kitchen equipment and food service personnel requirements.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p><b>*2.</b> Food operations sergeant supervises field kitchen operations.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>a.</b> Established operational hours as prescribed by the field feeding plan and commander's guidance or both.</li> <li><b>b.</b> Prepared work schedules consistent with personnel availability and meal schedules.</li> <li><b>c.</b> Monitored equipment operations, maintenance, and safety for compliance with appropriate technical manuals (TMs) and TACSOP.</li> <li><b>d.</b> Coordinated additional supply requests with unit supply representative or other supply support element(s).</li> <li><b>e.</b> Forwarded food service personnel and equipment status reports to unit CP using electronic communications or messenger.</li> <li><b>f.</b> Performed periodic inspections of personnel and equipment for proper operations and personal hygiene.</li> <li><b>g.</b> Requested area veterinary service inspection of subsistence after CBRN attack or contamination of rations.</li> <li><b>h.</b> Enforced compliance with veterinary service inspection instructions.</li> <li><b>i.</b> Monitored employment of preventive medicine measures for compliance with field sanitation policies and procedures in the TACSOP.</li> <li><b>j.</b> Supervised decontamination of contaminated equipment, supplies, and personnel.</li> <li><b>k.</b> Enforced safety procedures according to TACSOP and publications.</li> <li><b>l.</b> Enforced environmental stewardship protection program procedures.</li> </ul> <p><b>3.</b> Food service personnel pick up and store subsistence items.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>a.</b> Inspected vehicle for cleanliness and proper dunnage.</li> <li><b>b.</b> Inspected subsistence items for condition and quantity.</li> <li><b>c.</b> Prepared shortages, overages, and unsatisfactory subsistence listings.</li> <li><b>d.</b> Signed required documentation.</li> <li><b>e.</b> Transported subsistence items from class I point to food preparation area.</li> <li><b>f.</b> Stored subsistence items according to security measures and appropriate directives.</li> <li><b>g.</b> Washed packaged or canned food after CBRN attack.</li> <li><b>h.</b> Employed safety procedures according to TACSOP and AR 385-10.</li> <li><b>i.</b> Employed environmental stewardship protection program procedures.</li> <li><b>j.</b> Employed food safety procedures according to TB MED 530.</li> </ul> <p><b>4.</b> Food service personnel prepare meals.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>a.</b> Inspected field kitchen equipment using appropriate TMs for proper operations.</li> <li><b>b.</b> Employed personal hygiene measures.</li> <li><b>c.</b> Performed preliminary food preparation procedures.</li> <li><b>d.</b> Prepared menu items according to production schedule, when applicable.</li> </ul>		



TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>e. Employed field sanitation measures.</li> <li>f. Prepared food for transport.</li> <li>g. Employed safety measures according to TACSOP and AR 385-10.</li> <li>h. Employed environmental stewardship protection procedures.</li> <li>i. Inspected insulated food containers and beverage dispensers to ensure that they are preheated/pre-chilled.</li> <li>j. Inspected insulated food containers and beverage dispensers to ensure that the food is properly packed and labeled for remote feeding.</li> <li>k. Inspected that all items to support remote feeding are assembled and packed.</li> <li>l. Employed food safety procedures according to TB MED 530.</li> </ul> <p><b>5.</b> Food service personnel issue class I to unit representative (First Sergeant [1SG]/supply sergeant).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Verified headcount with 1SG/supply sergeant.</li> <li>b. Integrated prepared food and other class I items into the next scheduled logistics package (LOGPAC) for delivery to supported unit (when applicable).</li> <li>c. Issued prepared food in insulated food containers.</li> <li>d. Issued beverages in beverage dispensers.</li> <li>e. Issued sanitized serving utensils, plates, cups, flatware, and condiments to support the meal.</li> <li>f. Employed safety procedures according to TACSOP and AR 385-10.</li> <li>g. Employed environmental stewardship protective program procedures.</li> </ul> <p><b>6.</b> Food service personnel/unit personnel (depending on the method of feeding) serves meals.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Employed personal hygiene measures.</li> <li>b. Set up serving line as dictated by the tactical situation.</li> <li>c. Inspected mess kits (if used) to ensure they are sanitized prior to serving.</li> <li>d. Employed portion control.</li> <li>e. Maintained food at proper temperature.</li> <li>f. Replenished food items.</li> <li>g. Destroyed opened food after CBRN attack.</li> <li>h. Employed safety measures according to TACSOP and AR 385-10.</li> <li>i. Employed environmental stewardship program protection procedures.</li> </ul> <p><b>7.</b> Food service personnel maintain equipment.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Performed before-, during-, and after-operations preventive maintenance checks and services (PMCS) on assigned equipment.</li> <li>b. Maintained proper temperatures of wash and rinse water on wash line.</li> <li>c. Cleaned cooking equipment.</li> <li>d. Sanitized cooking equipment.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>e. Stored clean equipment to allow air drying.</li> <li>f. Employed safety procedures according to TACSOP and AR 385-10.</li> <li>g. Employed environmental stewardship protection program procedures.</li> </ul> <p>8. Food service personnel perform waste disposal.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Initiated effective trash management procedures.</li> <li>b. Performed liquid waste disposal.</li> <li>c. Performed solid waste disposal.</li> <li>d. Cleaned vehicle thoroughly with prescribed cleaning agents.</li> <li>e. Sanitized vehicle thoroughly with prescribed cleaning agents.</li> <li>f. Employed field sanitation measures.</li> <li>g. Employed safety procedures according to TACSOP and AR 385-10.</li> <li>h. Employed environmental stewardship protection program procedures.</li> </ul> <p>* Indicates a leader task step</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
Total Task Steps Evaluated							
Total Task Steps GO							
Training Status GO/NO-GO							

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
101-92G-1103	Retain nutrients in food products	STP 10-92G1-SM STP 10-92G1-SM-TG
011-510-0309	Perform logistics staff duties/responsibilities	TC 1-237

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title
10-2-0057	Conduct food service support operations
10-2-0058	Establish a field kitchen site
10-2-0230	Provide potable water
63-2-4550	Set up unit headquarters, dining facility, and bivouac areas
01-2-0341	Perform risk management procedures
01-2-5160	Perform troop-leading procedures

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

**TASK:** GATHER INTELLIGENCE (63-OPFOR-1008)

**CONDITION:** Small opposing force (OPFOR) elements, operating in the rear area, are planning attacks on enemy bases. Information is needed to complete plans.

**STANDARD:** 1. Identify all priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements. 2. Pass through any outpost, defensive wire, or warning devices undetected. 3. Move to an observation post (OP) that offers cover and concealment and is close enough to gather PIR and other intelligence requirements. 4. Gather all PIR and other intelligence requirements. 5. Withdraw from area undetected. 6. Report all information to OPFOR headquarters.

**ELEMENT:** ASSAULT COMPANY

**TASK: Conduct Casualty Evacuation Operations (01-2-1360)**

(FM 3-04.111)	(AR 600-8-1)	(FM 1-100)
(FM 1-113)	(FM 3-04.513)	(FM 3-100.12)
(FM 12-6)	(FM 90-4)	(TC 1-201)
(TC 1-210)	(TC 1-237)	

**ITERATION:** 1      2      3      4      5      M      (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T      P      U      (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The battalion is in a simulated (live, virtual, or constructive) combat environment. The unit has received an operation order (OPORD)/fragmentary order (FRAGO) and the unit commander's guidance. The main command post (CP) is operational. The staff sections, digital and/or analog, are functioning. Reports are being received through normal channels. Some iterations of this task should be performed in mission-oriented protective posture level 4 (MOPP4).

**TASK STANDARDS:** The aviation unit provided timely, efficient aerial casualty evacuation. The unit performed operations according to OPORD/FRAGO, standing operating procedures (SOP), applicable technical manuals, regulations, directives, safety procedures, and commander's guidance. The unit provided properly equipped aircraft to the specified location at the specified time.

**Note.** Conduct casualty evacuation (CASEVAC), when medical aircraft are inadequate or not readily available.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>*1. The commander gained and/or maintained situational understanding using information gathered from Force XXI Battle Command Brigade and Below (FBCB2), frequency modulated (FM), digital and or analog communications systems, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources.</p> <p>2. The air mission commander prepares for the CASEVAC operation, including—</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Obtained locations of pickup zones (PZs), landing zones (LZs), and medical treatment facilities and brief the phases of the operation each will be active.</li> <li>b. Coordinated the frequencies, call signs, markings, and landing directions of all LZs and PZs.</li> <li>c. Briefed the readiness condition (REDCON) levels, response times and communications plan to the aircrew according to the mission requirements.</li> <li>d. Determined number of patients by type (litter or ambulatory).</li> <li>e. Determined special equipment or aircraft configuration requirements.</li> </ul> <p>3. The unit moves to the supported unit location.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Departed at the specified time or respond within the briefed REDCON level time standards.</li> <li>b. Observed appropriate control measures.</li> <li>c. Used appropriate movement techniques.</li> <li>d. Used appropriate terrain flight techniques.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>e. Observed radio communications restrictions, as appropriate.</p> <p>f. Contacted PZ control authority to finalize evacuation instructions, if tactically appropriate.</p> <p>4. The aircrews supervise loading.</p> <p>a. Directed support personnel during the loading of casualties.</p> <p>b. Ensured that support personnel followed prescribed safety procedures while working around aircraft.</p> <p>5. The AMC provides minimum essential information to the medical treatment facility.</p> <p>a. Gave the estimated time of arrival.</p> <p>b. Gave the number of patients by type (litter or ambulatory).</p> <p>c. Identified patients' types of wounds, injuries, or illness.</p> <p>d. Gave the patients' category-urgent, priority, or routine-when known.</p> <hr/> <p><b>Note.</b> As a domestic support operation, CASEVAC may be performed. FM 1-113 states that during declared disasters or emergencies within the U.S., governors may employ national guard forces. Authorities may employ aviation units to augment C2, provide air movement of rescue and firefighting personnel and equipment, search for casualties and stranded individuals in floods and earthquakes.</p> <hr/> <p>*6. Commander/leader performs or delegates performance of the steps in the risk management process for each step in troop-leading procedures (appendix C).</p> <p>* Indicates a leader task step</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
Total Task Steps Evaluated							
Total Task Steps GO							
Training Status GO/NO-GO							

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
011-237-2012	Perform tactical flight mission planning (UH-60)	TC 1-237
011-237-2024	Perform terrain flight navigation (UH-60)	STP 1-TACOPS TC 1-237
011-237-2026	Perform terrain flight (UH-60)	STP 1-TACOPS TC 1-237
011-237-2042	Perform actions on contact (UH-60)	STP 1-TACOPS TC 1-237
011-237-2060	Perform rescue-hoist operations (UH-60)	STP 1-TACOPS TC 1-237
011-501-0017	Conduct aviation command, control, and communication (C3) operations at unit level	STP 1-TACOPS STP 1-15 I
011-510-0011	Integrate fundamentals of air-ground operations	STP 1-15II-500-MQS STP 1-15 II

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
01-2-0341	Perform composite risk management procedures	ARTEP 1-113-MTP
01-2-5161	Process casualty feeder reports and witness statements	ARTEP 1-126-MTP ARTEP 1-113-MTP
		ARTEP 1-126-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENT:** COMPANY

**TASK: Comply With Mission-Oriented Protective Posture Gear Exchange Procedures (01-2-5120)**

(FM 3-04.111)	(FM 1-100)	(FM 1-113)
(FM 3-04.126)	(FM 7-0)	(FM 7-1)
(FM 71-100)	(TM 10-8415-209-10)	

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The battalion is conducting assigned missions in a simulated (live, virtual, or constructive) combat environment. The battalion tactical operations center (TOC) is operational and the staff sections and digital systems are functional. The unit has received the commander's guidance directing it to conduct mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) gear exchange. Isolated chemical, biological, radiological, and nuclear (CBRN) incidents have occurred. Some operational areas have reported contamination. Protective clothing is unserviceable as a result of contamination. This task is performed under all environmental conditions, both day and night. The unit is subject to air, CBRN, and level I ground threat forces attack. Some iterations of this task should be performed in mission-oriented protective posture level 4 (MOPP4).

**TASK STANDARDS:** MOPP gear is exchanged without further casualties or contamination of equipment. Operations are not degraded because of poor or inadequate MOPP exchange.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p><b>Note.</b> This task does not apply to units assigned the new joint service lightweight integrated suit technology (JCSLIST). For units assigned the new JCSLIST, please see your CBRN noncommissioned officer in charge (NCOIC) for exchange procedures.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The company prepares to exchange MOPP gear with—               <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Selected a site large enough to accommodate entire unit.</li> <li>b. Obtained replacement MOPP gear and decontamination kits/equipment.</li> <li>c. Decontaminated individual equipment.                   <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Decontaminated weapon, helmet, load-bearing equipment, and mask carrier.</li> <li>(2) Placed items on uncontaminated surface.</li> </ol> </li> </ol> </li> <li>2. The unit prepares for decontamination/exchange.               <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Paired off into buddy teams.</li> <li>b. Unfastened shoulder straps of hood.</li> <li>c. Loosened draw cord on hood and mask.</li> <li>d. Untied trouser leg draw cords, unzipped trouser legs, and rolled cuffs.</li> <li>e. Unfastened or cut laces/fasteners of overboots.</li> </ol> </li> <li>3. Buddy teams decontaminate the hood and mask.               <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Buddy 1 decontaminated buddy 2's hood and exposed parts of mask (decontamination wipes for chemical and biological; hot soapy water for radiological).</li> <li>b. Buddy 1 decontaminated own gloves.</li> </ol> </li> </ol>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>c. Buddy 1 removed buddy 2's hood.</p> <p>d. Buddy 1 continued decontamination of buddy 2's mask.</p> <p>4. Buddy teams remove overgarments and overboots.</p> <p>a. Buddy 1 unfastened buddy 2's trouser snaps while covered by jacket.</p> <p>b. Buddy 1 untied buddy 2's jacket drawstring.</p> <p>c. Buddy 1 unfastened buddy 2's Velcro at the wrists and front of jacket; unzipped jacket.</p> <p>d. Buddy 1 pulled jacket down and away from buddy 2.</p> <p>e. Buddy 1 laid jacket on the ground, black (uncontaminated) side up.</p> <p>f. Buddy 1 unfastened and unzipped buddy 2's trousers.</p> <p>g. Buddy 1 pulled buddy 2's trousers down to knees.</p> <p>h. Buddy 2 stepped out of trousers and overboots, and onto the black side of jacket.</p> <p>5. Buddy 2 removes gloves.</p> <p>a. Slid hands partially out of each glove.</p> <p>b. Held hands away from body and let gloves fall to the ground.</p> <p>6. Buddy teams don new overgarments, overboots, and gloves.</p> <p>a. Buddy 1 opened buddy 2's packages without touching contents.</p> <p>b. Buddy 2 removed garment without touching the outside of the package.</p> <p>c. Buddy 2 donned clean overgarments, overboots, and gloves.</p> <p>7. Buddy teams replace hood.</p> <p>a. Buddy 1 decontaminated own gloves.</p> <p>b. Buddy 1 replaced and secured buddy 2's hood.</p> <p>8. Soldiers reverse roles and repeat steps 2 through 7.</p> <p>*9. Commander/leader performs or delegates performance of the steps in the risk management process for each step of troop-leading procedures (see appendix C).</p> <hr/> <p><b>Note.</b> Evaluation Preparation: Evaluate this task during a field exercise or during a normal training session. Gather all necessary MOPP gear and ensure that it is in serviceable condition. Be ready to direct higher MOPP levels as a Soldier reaches a preceding level.</p> <hr/> <p>* Indicates a leader task step</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
Total Task Steps Evaluated							
Total Task Steps GO							
Training Status GO/NO-GO							



**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
011-237-2010	Perform multi-aircraft operations (UH-60)	TC 1-237 STP 1-TACOPS
011-237-2012	Perform tactical flight mission planning (UH-60)	TC 1-237
031-503-1015	Protect yourself from NBC injury/contamination with mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) gear	STP 1-TACOPS STP 21-1-SMCT
031-503-1019	React to chemical or biological hazard/attack	STP 21-1-SMCT
031-503-1023	Protect yourself from nuclear, biological, and chemical injury/contamination when changing mission-oriented protective posture gear	STP 21-24-SMCT
031-503-1035	Protect yourself from chemical/biological contamination using your assigned protective mask	STP 21-1-SMCT

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
01-2-0341	Perform composite risk management procedures	ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-126-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENT:** COMPANY

**TASK: Process Casualty Feeder Reports and Witness Statements (01-2-5161)**

(AR 600-8-1)	(DA Form 1155)	(DA Form 1156)
(FM 1-100)	(FM 1-113)	(FM 3-0)
(FM 3-04.111)	(FM 3-04.126)	(FM 3-100.12)
(FM 12-6)		

**ITERATION:** 1      2      3      4      5      M      (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T      P      U      (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The battalion is conducting assigned missions in a simulated (live, virtual, or constructive) combat environment. The main command post (CP), administrative and logistics operations center are operational and the staff sections and digital systems are functional. The unit has received an operation order (OPORD)/fragmentary order (FRAGO) and the commander's guidance directing it to process casualty feeder reports and witness statements. Some iterations of this task should be performed in mission-oriented protective posture level 4 (MOPP4).

**TASK STANDARDS:** The unit submitted witness statements (DA Form 1155) and casualty feeder reports (DA Form 1156) according to the TACSOP. DA Form 1155 (*Witness Statement on Individual*)/DA Form 1156 (*Casualty Feeder Report*) were prepared without error. DA Form 1155/DA Form 1156 were submitted to the S1 as soon as possible.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>*1. The commander gained and/or maintained situational understanding using information gathered from Force XXI Battle Command Brigade and Below (FBCB2), frequency modulated (FM), digital and or analog communications systems, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources.</p> <p>2. Unit personnel report Soldiers killed, wounded, or missing in action.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Completed DA Form 1155.</li> <li>b. Completed DA Form 1156.</li> <li>c. Verified report (commander or first sergeant).</li> <li>d. Attached a roster of names to DA Form 1156 in case of multiple casualties.</li> <li>e. Attached DA Form 1155 to DA Form 1156 and forwarded to the S1.</li> </ul> <p>3. Unit personnel coordinate for support with the battalion administrative and logistics operations center, as required.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Battalion aid station.</li> <li>b. Graves registration.</li> <li>c. Personnel status and personnel reports.</li> </ul> <p>*4. Commander/leader performs or delegates performance of the steps in the risk management process for each step in troop-leading procedures (see appendix C).</p> <p>* Indicates a leader task step.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
<i>ITERATION</i>	<i>1</i>	<i>2</i>	<i>3</i>	<i>4</i>	<i>5</i>	<i>M</i>	<i>TOTAL</i>
Total Task Steps Evaluated							
Total Task Steps GO							
Training Status GO/NO-GO							

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
011-237-1000	Participate in a crew mission briefing (UH-60)	TC 1-237 STP 1-TACOPS
011-510-0900	Implement the principles of medical evacuation	STP 1-15 II
081-831-1000	Evaluate a casualty	STP 21-1-SMCT

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
01-1-5134	Plan aviation operations using the military decision making process	ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-118-MTP ARTEP 1-126-MTP
01-2-0341	Perform composite risk management procedures	ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-126-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** HHC, ASSAULT BATTALION  
 COMPANY HEADQUARTERS

**TASK: Provide Support to the Tactical Operations Center (01-2-5208)**  
 (FM 5-0) (FM 1-100) (FM 1-113)  
 (FM 3-0) (FM 3-04.111) (FM 3-04.126)  
 (FM 3-100.12) (FM 4-0) (FM 7-0)  
 (FM 7-1) (FM 71-100-3) (FM 90-4)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The battalion is conducting assigned missions in a simulated (live, virtual, or constructive) combat environment. The main CP is operational and the staff sections and digital systems are functional. The unit is deployed in a tactical environment supporting operations. The base cluster operations center (BCOC) has directed the unit to displace its tactical operations center (TOC) to a new location. The unit has received an operation order (OPORD)/fragmentary order (FRAGO) and the commander's guidance directing it to support TOC operations. Advanced party operations have been accomplished, and the battalion has closed in on the new assembly area. Some iterations of this task should be performed in mission-oriented protective posture level 4 (MOPP4).

**TASK STANDARDS:** Headquarters supported TOC operations according to the tactical standing operating procedures (TACSOP) and commander's guidance. Administrative and logistical support to the TOC provided uninterrupted command and control to the battalion commander and staff. Security of the TOC was not compromised as a result of inadequate support.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>*1. Headquarters commander facilitates establishment of the TOC.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Provided ground guides to direct the TOC to its location.</li> <li>b. Established local security as the TOC was established.</li> <li>c. Provided personnel to assist in setting up the TOC.</li> </ul> <p>2. Headquarters assigns personnel provide logistical support to the TOC.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Established resupply and a ration cycle according to the unit SOP.</li> <li>b. Established a water point.</li> <li>c. Established a back-haul schedule for refuse.</li> </ul> <p>3. Headquarters assigns personnel provides maintenance support.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensured that daily preventive maintenance checks and services (PMCS) on all wheeled vehicles was conducted.</li> <li>b. Conducted wheeled vehicle maintenance procedures.</li> <li>c. Ensured that daily PMCS on all ground-support equipment was conducted.</li> <li>d. Provided maintenance support for all ground-support equipment.</li> </ul> <p>4. Headquarters assigns personnel coordinates initial medical assistance to TOC personnel.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Conducted routine sick call.</li> <li>b. Evaluated and treated more serious problems.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p><b>5.</b> Headquarters assists the battalion S2 with TOC security according to the unit's TACSOP.</p> <p><b>*6.</b> Commander/leader performs or delegates performance of the steps in the risk management process for each step in troop-leading procedures (see appendix C).</p> <p>* Indicates a leader task step.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
Total Task Steps Evaluated							
Total Task Steps GO							
Training Status GO/NO-GO							

#### SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
011-141-0004	Implement battle staff functions within a tactical operations center	MOS E 15Q 4
011-141-0110	Direct establishment of a tactical operations center	MOS E 15Q 4
011-141-3057	Supervise a tactical operations center	STP 1-15P24-SM-TG
011-141-4415	Manage a tactical operations center	STP 1-15P24-SM-TG
011-510-0303	Conduct operations missions briefing/debriefing	STP 1-15 II

#### SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
01-1-5134	Plan aviation operations using the military decision making process	ARTEP 1-113-MTP
01-2-0341	Perform composite risk management procedures	ARTEP 1-118-MTP ARTEP 1-126-MTP ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-126-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENT:** AVIATION SUPPORT COMPANY

**TASK: Provide Production Control Support in the Maintenance and Shop Sections (01-2-5209)**

(FM 3-04.500)	(AR 700-138)	(AR 750-1)
(AR 750-43)	(DA Pam 738-751)	(FM 1-100)
(FM 1-113)	(FM 3-04.111)	(FM 3-04.126)
(FM 3-04.508)	(FM 3-100.12)	(FM 4-30.3)
(FM 7-0)	(FM 7-1)	

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The battalion is conducting assigned missions in a simulated (live, virtual, or constructive) combat environment. The battalion’s main command post (CP), administrative and logistics operations center (ALOC) are operational and staff sections and digital systems are functional. The aviation support company (ASC) has received the commander’s guidance directing it to maintain accurate aircraft readiness status through production control operations. Maintenance reports and requests are being received from supported units and sections on a 24-hour maintenance-available basis. The unit level logistics system (ULLS) or manual procedures may be used to process-supported unit’s maintenance requests. Some iterations of this task should be performed in mission-oriented protective posture level 4 (MOPP4).

**TASK STANDARDS:** Maintenance requests were processed promptly using manual procedures and/or ULLS. Accuracy of maintenance fault statuses once verified by production control personnel were promptly forwarded to higher headquarters and the material management center (MMC) according to company maintenance standing operating procedures (SOP). Unit’s operational readiness rates were maintained according to Department of the Army (DA) standards.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>1. Production control officer/maintenance technician supervises administrative and maintenance operations of the production control section.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Validated maintenance work requests from supported units/sections.</li> <li>b. Established maintenance work request priorities.</li> <li>c. Coordinated maintenance actions for all aviation maintenance company (AMC) level tasks.</li> <li>d. Coordinated maintenance actions with direct support for all aviation support company (ASC) level tasks.</li> <li>e. Coordinated repair-parts procurement for not mission capable supply (NMCS) aircraft.</li> <li>f. Forwarded nonmission capable maintenance (NMCM) and NMCS equipment statuses and aircraft availability rates to higher headquarters and MMC.</li> <li>g. Coordinated quality control (QC) support for all completed maintenance actions.</li> <li>h. Coordinated all maintenance operational checks (MOC) and maintenance test flights for all completed maintenance actions.</li> <li>i. Enforced the unit’s safety program</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p><b>2.</b> Production control section noncommissioned officer (NCO) maintains aircraft work order flow.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Initiated AMC/ASC maintenance work requests.</li> <li>b. Maintained aircraft work order register.</li> <li>c. Forwarded workflow and maintenance work requests to QC and supporting aircraft maintenance repair sections.</li> <li>d. Forwarded aircraft status reports to the AMC commander.</li> <li>e. Closed out maintenance work requests and maintenance work register.</li> </ul> <p><b>3.</b> Production control section controls maintenance workflow and aircraft availability.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Acted as single point of contact (POC) for their unit and supported units.</li> <li>b. Maintained forms and records of daily flying hours and operational readiness rates of assigned aircraft.</li> <li>c. Maintained forms and records for the control exchange program.</li> <li>d. Informed the AMC commander of aircraft statuses and availability of flying hours.</li> </ul> <p><b>*4.</b> AMC commander provides aircraft availability and nonmission capable statuses to higher headquarters.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Provided commander updated not mission capable (NMC) aircraft statuses.</li> <li>b. Provided higher headquarters aircraft availability rates for mission planning.</li> </ul> <p><b>*5.</b> Commander/leader performs or delegate's performance of the steps in the risk management process for each step in troop-leading procedures (see appendix C).</p> <p>* Indicates a leader task step</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
<i>ITERATION</i>	<i>1</i>	<i>2</i>	<i>3</i>	<i>4</i>	<i>5</i>	<i>M</i>	<i>TOTAL</i>
Total Task Steps Evaluated							
Total Task Steps GO							
Training Status GO/NO-GO							

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
011-510-0502	Plan company-level maintenance	STP 1-15 II

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
01-1-5134	Plan aviation operations using the military decision making process	ARTEP 1-113-MTP  ARTEP 1-118-MTP ARTEP 1-126-MTP
01-2-0341	Perform composite risk management procedures	ARTEP 1-113-MTP  ARTEP 1-126-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**



**ELEMENT:** AVIATION SUPPORT COMPANY

**TASK: Provide Quality Control for Unit Programs and Work Completed by Maintenance and Shop Sections (01-2-5210)**

(FM 3-04.500)	(AR 700-138)	(AR 750-1)
(AR 750-43)	(DA Pam 738-751)	(FM 1-100)
(FM 1-113)	(FM 3-04.111)	(FM 3-04.126)
(FM 3-04.508)	(FM 3-100.12)	(FM 7-0)
(FM 7-1)		

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The battalion is conducting assigned missions in a simulated (live, virtual, or constructive) combat environment. The battalion’s main command post (CP), administrative and logistics operations center (ALOC) are operational and staff sections and digital systems are functional. Maintenance management reports are being received through normal and/or secured channels. Aviation support company (ASC) quality control personnel receive the commander’s guidance directing it to apply quality control measures to unit programs. Production control coordinates aircraft systems and subsystems technical inspections with quality control (QC) for all completed maintenance requests. The unit level logistics system (ULLS) or manual procedures may be used to process completed maintenance requests. Some iterations of this task should be performed in mission-oriented protective posture level 4 (MOPP4).

**TASK STANDARDS:** Aviation safety action message (ASAM) is complied with and maintained according to applicable regulatory policies. Technical inspections of aircraft systems and subsystems are conducted according to applicable technical publications and unit maintenance standing operating procedures (SOPs). Oil analysis and calibration programs are established and maintained according to applicable technical publications. Management procedures and compliance of technical bulletins (TB), modification work orders (MWO), safety of flights (SOF) and aviation safety action technical publications were completed according to applicable regulations.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>*1. Aircraft maintenance technician/quality control noncommissioned officer in charge (NCOIC) supervises operations of the unit’s quality control section.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Coordinated quality control section’s workflow and technical inspections with production control.</li> <li>b. Coordinated aircraft technical inspections of completed maintenance actions.</li> <li>c. Supervised unit’s Army oil analysis program.</li> <li>d. Supervised unit’s test measurement and diagnostic equipment (TMDE) calibration program.</li> <li>e. Supervised compliance with all SOF and ASAM messages.</li> <li>f. Supervised technical compliance of all assigned TBs and MWOs.</li> <li>g. Coordinated technical assistance to supported units/sections.</li> <li>h. Reviewed and updated quality control section’s SOP.</li> <li>i. Enforced shop and flight line safety standards.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p><b>2.</b> Quality control's technical inspectors conduct aircraft maintenance, shop, and reference libraries inspections.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Performed required inspections of aircraft systems, subsystems and components.</li> <li>b. Provided technical assistance during maintenance test flights and maintenance operational checks.</li> <li>c. Inspected aircraft and equipment logbooks for completeness and accuracy.</li> <li>d. Established and/or maintained a master reference library of technical publications.</li> <li>e. Posted and monitored posting of mandated changes to technical publications.</li> <li>f. Inspected unit's technical reference libraries for currency and applicability.</li> <li>g. Prepared recommended changes to publications and tracked responses to recommended changes from higher headquarters.</li> <li>h. Monitored MWO compliance for installation and accuracy and completeness of aircraft forms and records.</li> <li>i. Monitored compliance of SOF's and ASAM's by unit's maintenance personnel.</li> <li>j. Maintained aircraft time-change component schedules for unit's aircraft.</li> <li>k. Provided production control section a printout of component change requirements for unit's assigned aircraft.</li> <li>l. Provided production control section a printout of component change requirements for unit's assigned aircraft.</li> </ul> <p><b>3.</b> Quality control section manages the unit's Army oil analysis program.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Maintained copy of appointment orders for assigned unit's Army oil analysis coordinator/monitor.</li> <li>b. Reviewed and updated unit's Army oil analysis program SOP.</li> <li>c. Established and maintained an Army oil analysis log/chart.</li> <li>d. Monitored oil sample taking procedures.</li> <li>e. Submitted oil samples to installation oil analysis laboratory.</li> <li>f. Acted on oil analysis laboratory recommendations.</li> <li>g. Advised the maintenance troop/unit commander of any adverse findings of previously submitted oil samples.</li> </ul> <p><b>4.</b> Quality control section manages the calibration program in support of the unit's TMDE.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Maintained copy of appointment orders for assigned unit's calibration program coordinator/monitor.</li> <li>b. Reviewed and updated unit's calibration program SOP.</li> <li>c. Monitored unit's TMDE for compliance of cyclic calibration requirements.</li> <li>d. Monitored unit's calibration program maintenance request register.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p><b>*5.</b> Commander/leader performs or delegates performance of the steps in the risk management process for each step in troop-leading procedures (see appendix C).</p> <p>* Indicates a leader task step</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
Total Task Steps Evaluated							
Total Task Steps GO							
Training Status GO/NO-GO							

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
011-510-1300	Supervise aviation maintenance operations	STP 1-15 II

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
01-1-5134	Plan aviation operations using the military decision making process	ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-118-MTP ARTEP 1-126-MTP
01-2-0341	Perform composite risk management procedures	ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-126-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENT:** AVIATION SUPPORT COMPANY

**TASK: Perform Helicopter Repairs and Required Inspections of Aircraft Systems (01-2-5211)**

(FM 3-04.500)	(DA Pam 738-751)	(FM 3-04.126)
(FM 1-100)	(FM 1-113)	(FM 3-0)
(FM 3-04.111)	(FM 3-04.508)	(FM 3-100.12)
(FM 7-0)	(FM 7-1)	(FM 71-100)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The battalion is conducting assigned missions in a simulated (live, virtual, or constructive) combat environment. The battalion’s main command post (CP), administrative and logistics operations center (ALOC) are operational and staff sections and digital systems are functional. Reports are being received through normal channels. Production control provides maintenance support to all supported units/sections and coordinates aircraft systems repairs with maintenance/component repair platoons and required technical inspections with quality control (QC). The unit level logistics system (ULLS) or manual procedures may be used to process maintenance work requests. Some iterations of this task should be performed in mission-oriented protective posture level 4 (MOPP4).

**TASK STANDARDS:** Production control coordinated completion of all maintenance actions and technical inspections of aircraft systems. Completed maintenance actions from supporting maintenance/component repair shop elements and technical inspections conducted by quality control section were performed according to applicable technical publications and unit/troop maintenance standing operating procedures (SOPs).

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>*1. The aviation maintenance technician/maintenance officer supervises maintenance/shop operations.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Validated maintenance work requests from supported units/sections processed by production control section.</li> <li>b. Coordinated maintenance/shop support for all work requests based on priority.</li> <li>c. Monitored work progress of all maintenance actions in support of the unit’s operational readiness rates.</li> <li>d. Coordinated with quality control section’s personnel for quality assurance of all completed maintenance actions.</li> <li>e. Coordinated maintenance operational checks and maintenance test flights for all completed maintenance actions.</li> <li>f. Notified production control section of all completed maintenance work requests.</li> <li>g. Enforced currency and usage of all technical maintenance publications.</li> <li>h. Monitored all logistic actions in support of the unit’s aircraft and equipment, to include adequate on-hand balances of prescribed load list (PLL) repair parts and bench stock.</li> <li>i. Reviewed and updated annex of unit’s maintenance SOP.</li> <li>j. Enforced maintenance/shop safety program and procedures.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p><b>2.</b> Airframe repair platoon controls workflow and coordinates maintenance actions and inspections.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Reviewed and updated assigned unit/troop's maintenance SOP.</li> <li>b. Maintained a current maintenance work request register.</li> <li>c. Prioritized internal distribution of all assigned maintenance work requests.</li> <li>d. Established/maintained a current technical maintenance publications library.</li> <li>e. Conducted on-demand operator and unit level maintenance for all assigned and attached aircraft/equipment.</li> <li>f. Coordinated technical inspections with quality control section for quality assurance of all completed maintenance work requests.</li> <li>g. Provided technical assistance during maintenance operational checks and maintenance test flights.</li> <li>h. Conducted periodic inventories and updated inventory forms and records for all assigned tool kits, tool sets, and test equipment.</li> <li>i. Conducted periodic inventories and updated inventory forms and records for assigned PLL repair parts.</li> <li>j. Monitored logistic actions to include repair parts requests supply and shipping statuses.</li> <li>k. Notified production control section of assigned maintenance work requests statuses.</li> <li>l. Complied with all maintenance safety procedures and guidelines.</li> </ul> <p><b>3.</b> Component repair platoon conducts aircraft systems repairs and coordinates required component repair inspections.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Reviewed and updated assigned unit's component repair/shops SOP.</li> <li>b. Maintained a current maintenance work request register.</li> <li>c. Prioritized internal distribution of all assigned maintenance work requests.</li> <li>d. Established/maintained a current technical maintenance publications library.</li> <li>e. Performed aircraft systems and component troubleshooting procedures.</li> <li>f. Replaced aircraft components and/or repaired related systems.</li> <li>g. Coordinated technical inspections with quality control section for quality assurance of all completed maintenance work requests.</li> <li>h. Provided technical assistance during maintenance operational checks and maintenance test flights.</li> <li>i. Conducted periodic inventories and updated inventory forms and records for all assigned tool kits, tool sets, and test equipment.</li> <li>j. Conducted periodic inventories of bench stock items and updated inventory forms and records.</li> <li>k. Notified production control section of serviceability status for all completed aircraft component repairs.</li> <li>l. Complied with all shop safety procedures and guidelines.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p><b>*4.</b> Commander/leader performs or delegates performance of the steps in the risk management process for each step in troop-leading procedures (see appendix C).</p> <p>* Indicates a leader task step</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
Total Task Steps Evaluated							
Total Task Steps GO							
Training Status GO/NO-GO							

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
011-510-1300	Supervise aviation maintenance operations	STP 1-15 II

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
01-1-5134	Plan aviation operations using the military decision making process	ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-118-MTP ARTEP 1-126-MTP
01-2-0341	Perform composite risk management procedures	ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-126-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENT:** AVIATION SUPPORT COMPANY

**TASK: Perform Helicopter Repairs and Required Inspections of Aircraft Subsystems (01-2-5212)**

(FM 3-04.500) (DA Pam 738-751) (FM 1-100)  
 (FM 1-113) (FM 3-04.111) (FM 3-04.126)  
 (FM 3-04.508) (FM 3-100.12)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The battalion is conducting assigned missions in a simulated (live, virtual, or constructive) combat environment. The battalion’s main command post (CP), administrative and logistics operations center (ALOC) are operational and staff sections and digital systems are functional. Reports are being received through normal channels. Production control provides maintenance support to all supported units/sections and coordinates aircraft subsystems repairs with maintenance/component repair platoons and technical inspections with quality control (QC). The unit level logistics system (ULLS) or manual procedures may be used to process maintenance work requests. Some iterations of this task should be performed in mission-oriented protective posture level 4 (MOPP4).

**TASK STANDARDS:** Production control coordinated completion of all maintenance actions and technical inspections of aircraft subsystems. Completed maintenance actions from supporting maintenance/component repair shop elements and technical inspections conducted by quality control section were performed according to applicable technical publications and unit/troop maintenance standing operating procedures (SOPs).

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>*1. The aviation maintenance technician/maintenance officer supervises maintenance/shop operations.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Validated maintenance work requests from supported units/sections processed by production control section.</li> <li>b. Coordinated maintenance/shop support for all work requests based on priority.</li> <li>c. Monitored nondestructive inspections of suspected cracks in aircraft components and/or subsystems.</li> <li>d. Monitored work progress of all maintenance actions in support of the unit’s operational readiness rates.</li> <li>e. Coordinated with quality control section’s personnel for quality assurance of all completed maintenance actions.</li> <li>f. Coordinated maintenance operational checks and maintenance test flights for all completed maintenance actions.</li> <li>g. Notified production control section of all completed maintenance work requests.</li> <li>h. Enforced currency and usage of all technical maintenance publications.</li> <li>i. Monitored all logistic actions in support of the unit’s aircraft and equipment, to include adequate on-hand balances of prescribed load list (PLL) repair parts and bench stock.</li> <li>j. Reviewed and updated annex of unit’s maintenance SOP.</li> <li>k. Enforced maintenance/shop safety program and procedures.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p><b>2.</b> Airframe repair platoon controls workflow and coordinates maintenance actions and inspections.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Reviewed and updated assigned unit/troop's maintenance SOP.</li> <li>b. Maintained a current maintenance work request register.</li> <li>c. Prioritized internal distribution of all assigned maintenance work requests.</li> <li>d. Established/maintained a current technical maintenance publications library.</li> <li>e. Conducted on-demand operator and unit level maintenance for all assigned and attached aircraft/equipment.</li> <li>f. Coordinated technical inspections with quality control section for quality assurance of all completed maintenance work requests.</li> <li>g. Provided technical assistance during maintenance operational checks and maintenance test flights.</li> <li>h. Conducted periodic inventories and updated inventory forms and records for all assigned tool kits, tool sets, and test equipment.</li> <li>i. Conducted periodic inventories and updated inventory forms and records for assigned PLL repair parts.</li> <li>j. Monitored logistic actions to include repair parts requests supply and shipping statuses.</li> <li>k. Notified production control section of assigned maintenance work requests statuses.</li> <li>l. Complied with all maintenance safety procedures and guidelines.</li> </ul> <p><b>3.</b> Component repair/component repair platoon performs aircraft structural; pneudraulics; electrical; avionics; power train; and power plant maintenance procedures and conduct nondestructive inspection of aircraft's subsystems.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Reviewed and updated assigned unit's component repair/shops SOP.</li> <li>b. Maintained a current maintenance work request register.</li> <li>c. Prioritized internal distribution of all assigned maintenance work requests.</li> <li>d. Established/maintained a current technical maintenance publications library.</li> <li>e. Conducted troubleshooting procedures to isolate subsystem faults.</li> <li>f. Conducted nondestructive inspections to isolate cracks in aircraft subsystems.</li> <li>g. Performed aircraft component replacement and repaired related aircraft subsystems.</li> <li>h. Coordinated technical inspections with quality control section for quality assurance of all completed maintenance work requests.</li> <li>i. Provided technical assistance during maintenance operational checks and maintenance test flights.</li> <li>j. Conducted periodic inventories and updated inventory forms and records for all assigned tool kits, tool sets, and test equipment.</li> </ul>		



<b>TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES</b>	<b>GO</b>	<b>NO-GO</b>
<p><b>k.</b> Conducted periodic inventories of bench stock items and updated inventory forms and records.</p> <p><b>l.</b> Notified production control section of serviceability status for all completed aircraft component repairs.</p> <p><b>m.</b> Complied with all shop safety procedures and guidelines.</p> <p><b>*4.</b> Commander/leader performs or delegates performance of the steps in the risk management process for each step in troop-leading procedures (see appendix C).</p> <p>* Indicates a leader task step</p>		

<b>TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK</b>							
<b>ITERATION</b>	<b>1</b>	<b>2</b>	<b>3</b>	<b>4</b>	<b>5</b>	<b>M</b>	<b>TOTAL</b>
Total Task Steps Evaluated							
Total Task Steps GO							
Training Status GO/NO-GO							

#### **SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
011-510-1300	Supervise aviation maintenance operations	STP 1-15 II

#### **SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
01-1-5134	Plan aviation operations using the military decision making process	ARTEP 1-113-MTP
		ARTEP 1-118-MTP
01-2-0341	Perform composite risk management procedures	ARTEP 1-126-MTP
		ARTEP 1-113-MTP
		ARTEP 1-126-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENT:** AVIATION SUPPORT COMPANY

**TASK: Perform Helicopter Battle Damage Assessment and Repair/Recovery Operations (01-2-5213)**

(FM 3-04.500)	(DA Pam 738-751)	(FM 1-100)
(FM 1-113)	(FM 3-04.111)	(FM 3-04.126)
(FM 3-04.508)	(FM 3-100.12)	(TC 1-237)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The battalion is conducting assigned missions in a simulated (live, virtual, or constructive) combat environment. The battalion’s main command post (CP), administrative and logistics operations center (ALOC) are operational and staff sections and digital systems are functional. Reports are being received through normal channels. Maintenance requests are received from supported units and processed by production control personnel on a 24-hour maintenance-available basis. The unit level logistics system (ULLS) or manual procedures may be used in processing supported unit’s maintenance requests for battle damage assessment and repair (BDAR)/recovery operations. Some iterations of this task should be performed in mission-oriented protective posture level 4 (MOPP4).

**TASK STANDARDS:** Production control personnel using manual procedures and/or ULLS processed maintenance requests for BDAR/recovery operations promptly. Aircraft was recovered and evacuated (surface or aerial) to a maintenance collection point (MCP) or maintenance facility. BDAR/recovery operations were completed according to regulatory policies and aircraft recovery and evacuation team standing operating procedures (SOPs).

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>1. The aviation maintenance company (AMC) downed aircraft recovery team (DART) and BDAR team coordinates BDAR/recovery operations with owning unit.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. BDAR/recovery operations are planned and coordinated in detail to minimize risk.</li> <li>b. Identified location and type of disabled aircraft.</li> <li>c. Conducted a threat assessment and aircraft accessibility to include chemical, biological, radiological, and nuclear (CBRN) considerations.</li> <li>d. Conducted aircraft battle damage assessment and established maintenance requirements of downed aircraft.</li> <li>e. Evaluated tactical situation and established route of approach for aerial or ground recovery operations.</li> <li>f. Coordinated ground security operations.</li> <li>g. Conducted battlefield coordination through S3/G3 to eliminate possibility of fratricide.</li> </ul> <p>*2. The maintenance officer/technician directs BDAR/recovery operations.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Assessed aircraft repair requirements.</li> <li>b. Determined BDAR kits, repair parts, technical publications, and test measurement and diagnostic equipment (TMDE) requirements.</li> <li>c. Established BDAR and DART team composition.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>d. Supervised necessary BDAR aircraft repairs in a secured environment for safe return to maintenance facility of disabled airframe.</p> <p>e. Prepared disabled aircraft for a one-time evacuation flight.</p> <p>f. Recommended recovery operation of disabled aircraft using aerial or ground means.</p> <p>g. Supervised aircraft rigging for recovery operations.</p> <p>h. Supervised DART team during helicopter lift for aerial or ground recovery.</p> <p>i. Supervised safe evacuation and recovery of disabled aircraft.</p> <p>j. Discussed courses of action (COA) with owning unit commander in disposal procedures for non-reparable and/or non-recoverable aircraft.</p> <p>3. BDAR/DART team performs aircraft repairs and/or recovery operations of disabled aircraft.</p> <p>a. Removed unit equipment property.</p> <p>b. Tagged unit equipment/property and conducted adjustment of inventory forms and records.</p> <p>c. Performed BDAR repairs in a secured environment for safe return to a maintenance facility of disabled aircraft.</p> <p>d. Served as the crew during helicopter lift for aerial/ground recovery operations.</p> <p>e. Served as the crew to rig and secure disabled aircraft aboard recovery vehicle.</p> <p>f. Completed safe evacuation and recovery operation of disabled aircraft.</p> <p>*4. Commander/leader performs or delegates performance of the steps in the risk management process for each step in troop-leading procedures (see appendix C).</p> <p>* Indicates a leader task step</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
Total Task Steps Evaluated							
Total Task Steps GO							
Training Status GO/NO-GO							

#### SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
011-540-0034	Manage aircraft recovery operations	STP 1-150-155
011-540-0035	Supervise aircraft battle damage assessment and repair	STP 1-150-155

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
01-2-0341	Perform composite risk management procedures	ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-126-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENT:** AVIATION SUPPORT COMPANY

**TASK: Perform Maintenance Operations on Aviation Ground Support Equipment (AGSE) (01-2-5214)**

(TM 1-1500-204-23-9)	(AR 700-138)	(AR 750-1)
(AR 750-43)	(DA Pam 738-751)	(FM 1-100)
(FM 1-113)	(FM 3-04.111)	(FM 3-04.126)
(FM 3-04.500)	(FM 3-100.12)	(FM 4-30.3)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The battalion is conducting assigned missions in a simulated (live, virtual, or constructive) combat environment. The battalion’s administrative and logistics center (ALOC) is operational and the staff sections and digital systems are functional. The battalion is deployed per operation order (OPORD)/fragmentary order (FRAGO). The battalion is conducting continuous operations or preparing for future operations. The unit is conducting services, inspections and maintenance on its assigned aviation ground support equipment (AGSE). The battalion aviation maintenance officer (BAMO) requests units’ AGSE statuses. Some iterations of this task should be performed in mission-oriented protective posture level 4 (MOPP4).

**TASK STANDARDS:** Units’ assigned aviation ground support equipment was inventoried, inspected, serviced, repaired, turned-in and maintained according to Army regulations (ARs) and applicable technical publications. Battalion/company assigned missions were not compromised as direct result of inadequately maintained AGSE. Assigned unit personnel maintained an AGSE reference library, forms and records, equipment, and repair parts.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>*1. The company commander monitors aviation ground support equipment statuses.</p> <p>2. Unit AGSE (on-the-job trained [OJT]) maintenance personnel maintain aviation ground support equipment:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Established/maintained an AGSE reference library.</li> <li>b. Established/maintained a prescribed load list (PLL) of repair parts and expendable items to support units assigned AGSE.</li> <li>c. Established/maintained petroleum, oils, and lubricants (POL) items.</li> <li>d. Established/maintained a forms and records filing system.</li> <li>e. Established/maintained an equipment inspection and service program.</li> <li>f. Performed AGSE equipment repairs as required.</li> <li>g. Prepared AGSE work orders, turn-in, and requisition documents.</li> <li>h. Requested direct support (DS) and contract maintenance as required.</li> <li>i. Advised the chain of command of AGSE shortages, scheduled and unscheduled (Not mission capable maintenance and not mission capable supply, [NMCM/NMCS]) maintenance items that may degrade mission performance.</li> </ul> <p>*3. Commander/leader performs or delegates performance of the steps in the risk management process for each step in troop-leading procedures (see appendix C).</p> <p>* Indicates a leader task step</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
<i>ITERATION</i>	<i>1</i>	<i>2</i>	<i>3</i>	<i>4</i>	<i>5</i>	<i>M</i>	<i>TOTAL</i>
Total Task Steps Evaluated							
Total Task Steps GO							
Training Status GO/NO-GO							

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
011-420-0004	Plan for aviation and ground combat service support.	STP 1-150-155
011-510-1301	Supervise ground maintenance operations	STP 1-15 II
011-540-0042	Supervise aviation ground support equipment (AGSE) maintenance.	STP 1-150-155

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
01-1-5134	Plan aviation operations using the military decision making process	ARTEP 1-113-MTP
		ARTEP 1-118-MTP
		ARTEP 1-126-MTP
01-2-0341	Perform composite risk management procedures	ARTEP 1-113-MTP
		ARTEP 1-126-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** ASSAULT COMPANY  
 AVIATION SUPPORT COMPANY

**TASK: Maintain Aviation Life Support Equipment (01-2-5215)**

(FM 3-04.508)	(AR 750-1)	(AR 750-43)
(DA Pam 738-751)	(FM 1-100)	(FM 1-113)
(FM 3-04.111)	(FM 3-04.126)	(FM 3-04.500)
(FM 3-100.12)	(TC 1-237)	

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The battalion is conducting assigned missions in a simulated (live, virtual, or constructive) combat environment. The battalion’s main command post (CP), administrative and logistics center (ALOC) are operational and the staff sections and digital systems are functional. The battalion is deployed per operation order (OPORD)/fragmentary order (FRAGO). The battalion is conducting continuous operations or preparing for future operations. Requests for aviation life support equipment (ALSE) support have been received. Applicable ALSE publications, equipment, and repair parts are available. Some iterations of this task should be performed in mission-oriented protective posture level 4 (MOPP4).

**TASK STANDARDS:** Battalion’s assigned rated and non-rated crewmembers ALSE gear and components were inspected, maintained, and repaired according to applicable technical publications. Battalion’s assigned missions were not compromised as direct result of inadequately maintained ALSE gear. Assigned battalion personnel (ALSE trained/qualified) maintained an ALSE reference library, equipment, and repair parts according to the unit’s standing operating procedures (SOPs).

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>*1. The commander gained and/or maintained situational understanding using information gathered from Force XXI Battle Command Brigade and Below (FBCB2), frequency modulated (FM), digital and or analog communications systems, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources.</p> <p>*2. The battalion commander monitors aviation life support equipment status.</p> <p>3. Unit ALSE qualified officers and technicians maintain aviation life support equipment.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Established/maintained an ALSE reference library.</li> <li>b. Established/maintained a prescribed load list (PLL) of repair parts and expendable items.</li> <li>c. Established/maintained an equipment inspection program.</li> <li>d. Performed equipment repair as required.</li> <li>e. Prepared turn-in, work order, and/or requisition documentation.</li> <li>f. ALSE equipment found not repairable at this station (NRTS) at the support maintenance facility was returned to the supply system.</li> <li>g. Advised the chain of command of ALSE shortages, maintenance and “red X” (not mission capable maintenance [NMCM]/not mission capable supply [NMCS]) condition items that may negatively impact mission performance.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p><b>*4.</b> Commander/leader performs or delegates performance of the steps in the risk management process for each step in troop-leading procedures (see appendix C).</p> <p>* Indicates a leader task step</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
Total Task Steps Evaluated							
Total Task Steps GO							
Training Status GO/NO-GO							

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
011-141-4017	Manage the aviation life support equipment (ALSE) maintenance program	MOS E 15R 1
011-141-4028	Operate aviation life support equipment (ALSE) repair tools and test equipment	MOS E 15T 1 TC 1-237
011-237-1014	Operate aviation life support equipment (ALSE) (UH-60)	STP 1-TACOPS STP 1-15-219  STP 1-15-219-OS TC 1-237 STP 1-15II-500-MQS STP 1-TACOPS

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
01-1-5134	Plan aviation operations using the military decision making process	ARTEP 1-113-MTP
01-2-0341	Perform composite risk management procedures	ARTEP 1-118-MTP ARTEP 1-126-MTP ARTEP 1-113-MTP  ARTEP 1-126-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**



**ELEMENT:** AVIATION SUPPORT COMPANY

**TASK: Coordinate Operational Readiness and Aircraft Availability for Mission Planning With the S3 (01-2-5216)**

(AR 700-138)	(FM 1-100)	(FM 1-113)
(FM 3-04.111)	(FM 3-04.126)	(FM 3-04.500)
(FM 3-04.508)	(FM 3-04.513)	(FM 3-100.12)
(FM 4-0)	(FM 7-1)	(TC 1-237)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The battalion is conducting assigned missions in a simulated (live, virtual, or constructive) combat environment. The unit has received mission requirements and commander's guidance to coordinate operational readiness and aircraft availability for mission planning with the S3. The battalion command post (CP), the administrative and logistical operations center (ALOC) are operational and staff sections and digital systems are functional. Reports are being received and processed through normal channels. Combat service support (CSS) and maintenance/logistics assets are available. Some iterations of this task should be performed in mission-oriented protective posture level 4 (MOPP4).

**TASK STANDARDS:** The aviation support company's production control officer monitored maintenance and logistics actions for all assigned and/or attached units. Availability of operational aviation assets with corresponding equipment status was verified by the production control officer. The production control officer provided the S3 and executive officer (XO) aircraft availability and operational readiness statuses. The production control officer coordinated logistics shortcomings with the S4 section. Fully mission capable rates for all assigned reportable equipment did not fall below Department of the Army (DA) mission readiness goals. Assigned operational/tactical missions were not impaired.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The production control receives subordinate unit's aircraft operational readiness and maintenance reports and records.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Received subordinate unit's aircraft operational and maintenance reports.</li> <li>b. Ensured that equipment data and statuses on readiness and maintenance reports and records regulatory were entered according to applicable regulations and battalion standing operating procedures (SOPs).</li> <li>c. Validated accuracy of maintenance and logistics statuses entered on submitted reports and records.</li> <li>d. Consolidated subordinate unit's equipment readiness reports and records.</li> <li>e. Submitted consolidated reports to the aviation support commander.</li> </ol> </li> <li>2. The production control officer monitors current equipment availability and maintenance and operational readiness rates and statuses.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Updated consolidated maintenance and operational readiness reports and records.</li> <li>b. Monitored and analyzed equipment readiness statuses (to determine frequency of equipment breakdowns and parts usage).</li> <li>c. Determined unit's equipment readiness rates for effectiveness in executing their assigned tactical missions.</li> </ol> </li> </ol>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>d. Maintained a consolidated list with readiness statuses of battalion aircraft and weapon systems.</p> <p>e. Determined maintenance and logistics operational timelines after processing aircraft status reports from subordinate units.</p> <p>f. Supplied the battalion and aviation support commanders and staff a breakdown of aircraft availability with assigned operational status.</p> <p>3. The production control officer coordinates maintenance and logistics actions to increase aircraft availability and operational readiness rates.</p> <p>a. Coordinated battalion aircraft and equipment maintenance priorities with the aviation support company (ASC) commander and maintenance production control personnel.</p> <p>b. Coordinated controlled exchange and parts replacement of battalion assets with brigade/regimental and aviation support commanders.</p> <p>c. Improved aircraft and equipment availability and operational readiness rates through controlled exchange and internal parts replacement of battalion equipment assets to include weapons systems.</p> <p>d. Coordinated external support from civilian contract personnel, as required.</p> <p>4. Aviation support commander coordinates aircraft availability and operational readiness rates and its direct impact on current or projected assigned tactical operations for mission planning with the XO, and S3.</p> <p>*5. Commander/leader identifies and controls hazards according to risk management procedures (see appendix C).</p> <p>* Indicates a leader task step</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
Total Task Steps Evaluated							
Total Task Steps GO							
Training Status GO/NO-GO							

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
011-141-1059	Operate the aviation mission planning system (AMPS)	STP 1-15P1-SM
011-141-4414	Manage the aviation mission planning system (AMPS)	STP 1-15P24-SM-TG
011-237-1000	Participate in a crew mission briefing (UH-60)	TC 1-237 STP 1-TACOPS
011-237-2012	Perform tactical flight mission planning (UH-60)	TC 1-237
011-510-0026	Operate aviation mission planning system (AMPS)	STP 1-TACOPS STP 1-15 I
		STP 1-15II-500-MQS

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
01-1-5134	Plan aviation operations using the military decision making process	ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-118-MTP ARTEP 1-126-MTP
01-2-0341	Perform composite risk management procedures	ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-126-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENT:** ASSAULT COMPANY

**TASK: Perform Fat Hawk/Wet Hawk Operations (01-2-5217)**

(FM 3-04.111)	(FM 1-100)	(FM 1-113)
(FM 3-04.300)	(FM 3-04.500)	(FM 3-100.12)
(FM 3-100.4)	(FM 4-0)	(FM 71-100-3)
(FM 90-4)	(TC 1-201)	(TC 1-210)
(TC 1-237)		

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The battalion is in a simulated (live, virtual, or constructive) combat environment. The requirement exists to refuel and/or rearm operational aircraft at other than an established FARP. External stores support system/extended range fuel system equipment is available and installed on mission aircraft. The company has received an operation order (OPORD)/ fragmentary order (FRAGO) to perform Fat Hawk/Wet Hawk operations. Digital and/or analog systems are functional. Some iterations of this task should be performed in mission-oriented protective posture level 4 (MOPP4).

**TASK STANDARDS:** The company established the Fat Hawk/Wet Hawk site within the time constraints given in the OPORD/FRAGO. There were no accidents or fires as a result of negligent safety precautions or poor refuel/rearm procedures. The supported unit was refueled and rearmed within the time constraints imposed by mission requirements.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>*1. The commander gained and/or maintained situational understanding using information gathered from Force XXI Battle Command Brigade and Below (FBCB2), frequency modulated (FM), digital and or analog communications systems, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources.</p> <p>*2. The commander forms the planning cells to analyze and plan the detailed Fat Hawk/Wet Hawk execution portion of the air movement plan.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Analyzed the primary and alternate landing zone (LZ)/pickup zones (PZs). Ensured they were suitable taking into consideration the size, obstacles, visibility obscuration, wind direction, and threat.</li> <li>b. Analyzed the primary and alternate routes. Ensured they were suitable taking into consideration the threat, terrain masking and other terrain flight considerations. Determined the flight times of each route.</li> <li>c. Submitted required graphics and flight times to battalion.</li> <li>d. Communicated procedures, frequencies and call signs.</li> </ul> <p>3. Receives the OPORD and completes the aircrew brief, as required.</p> <p>4. Attends the battalion rehearsal and conduct company rehearsals.</p> <p>5. Unit conducts staging operations.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Moved along designated routes to the staging area.</li> <li>b. Moved III/V section along designated ground routes to staging area.</li> <li>c. Arrived at staging area at time designated in OPORD.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p><b>6.</b> Aircrews conduct loading operations.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>a.</b> Linked up with III/V section personnel and properly configured aircraft for Fat Hawk operations.</li> <li><b>b.</b> Briefed all III/V section personnel.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>(1)</b> Reviewed safety procedures.</li> <li><b>(2)</b> Reviewed emergency procedures.</li> <li><b>(3)</b> Reviewed rearming/refueling procedures</li> <li><b>(4)</b> Reviewed security plan.</li> </ul> </li> <li><b>c.</b> Ensured that load plan was followed, and that proper passenger/cargo loading and tie-down procedures were used without exceeding floor loading limits.</li> </ul> <p><b>7.</b> Unit performs air movement operations.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>a.</b> Departed PZs at times indicated in the OPORD.</li> <li><b>b.</b> Moved along preplanned routes.</li> <li><b>c.</b> Employed appropriate movement techniques.</li> <li><b>d.</b> Employed appropriate terrain flight techniques.</li> <li><b>e.</b> Executed the fire support plan, if necessary.</li> </ul> <p><b>8.</b> Unit performs landing operations.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>a.</b> Arrived at LZs as specified in the OPORD.</li> <li><b>b.</b> Ensured expeditious unloading of troops and equipment immediately upon landing.</li> </ul> <p><b>9.</b> Unit occupies and establishes the forward arming and refueling point (FARP) sites according to the unit SOP.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>a.</b> Established local security.</li> <li><b>b.</b> Assembled the forward area refueling equipment.</li> <li><b>c.</b> Established refueling points.</li> <li><b>d.</b> Established rearming points that complied with all safety regulations.</li> <li><b>e.</b> Refueled and/or rearmed aircraft according to the unit SOP.</li> <li><b>f.</b> Secured all refuse, unused ammunition, equipment, and personnel.</li> <li><b>g.</b> Returned to assembly area (AA) or conducted survivability moves as directed.</li> </ul> <p><b>*10.</b> Commander/leader performs or delegates performance of the steps in the risk management process for each step in troop-leading procedures (appendix C).</p> <p>* Indicates a leader task step</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
Total Task Steps Evaluated							
Total Task Steps GO							
Training Status GO/NO-GO							

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
011-237-2010	Perform multi-aircraft operations (UH-60)	TC 1-237 STP 1-TACOPS
011-237-2012	Perform tactical flight mission planning (UH-60)	TC 1-237  STP 1-TACOPS
011-237-2024	Perform terrain flight navigation (UH-60)	TC 1-237 STP 1-TACOPS
011-237-2026	Perform terrain flight (UH-60)	TC 1-237 STP 1-TACOPS
011-510-0004	Employ combat service support	STP 1-15 II

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
01-1-0342	Restrict local population interference with ongoing U.S. military operations	ARTEP 1-113-MTP
01-1-5132	Provide combat support and combat service support	ARTEP 1-126-MTP ARTEP 1-113-MTP
01-1-5134	Plan aviation operations using the military decision making process	ARTEP 1-113-MTP  ARTEP 1-118-MTP ARTEP 1-126-MTP
01-1-5143	Plan requirements to establish a forward arming and refueling point	ARTEP 1-113-MTP
01-1-5153	Plan aviation combat service support operations	ARTEP 1-126-MTP ARTEP 1-113-MTP
01-2-0339	Perform forward arming and refueling point operations	ARTEP 1-113-MTP  ARTEP 1-118-MTP ARTEP 1-126-MTP
01-2-0341	Perform composite risk management procedures	ARTEP 1-113-MTP
01-2-5160	Perform troop-leading procedures	ARTEP 1-126-MTP ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-126-MTP
01-2-5198	Conduct aviation mission planning/preparation	ARTEP 1-113-MTP  ARTEP 1-126-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** FORWARD SUPPORT COMPANY, ASSAULT BATTALION  
 FORWARD SUPPORT COMPANY, ASSAULT BATTALION (MEDIUM)

**TASK: Perform Unit Supply Support Operations (01-4-0359)**  
 (FM 3-04.111) (AR 710-2) (DA Pam 710-2-1)  
 (AR 735-5) (DA Pam 710-2-2) (FM 1-100)  
 (FM 1-113) (FM 3-04.126) (FM 3-04.500)  
 (FM 3-04.513) (FM 3-100.12) (FM 4-0)  
 (UNIT SUPPLY UPDATE 2-14)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The battalion is conducting assigned missions in a simulated (live, virtual, or constructive) combat environment. The main command post (CP), administrative and logistics operations center (ALOC) and digital systems are functional. The supply section has received assigned and/or attached unit's request for supplies. Equipment and supplies are arriving through supply channels. The supply section processes all supply transactions as required. Additional equipment and supplies will be required. A supply processing area has been established. Automated and/or manual supply system is functional. Some iterations of this task should be performed in mission-oriented protective posture level 4 (MOPP4).

**TASK STANDARDS:** The unit's supply section processed, logged-in and distributed all requested supplies and equipment. All supply transactions were processed timely and without interfering with mission requirements.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>*1. The battalion executive officer supervises all high priority supply actions.</p> <p>2. Unit commanders direct supply operations.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Monitored operations by reviewing supply records and status.</li> <li>b. Directed inventories of supplies and equipment to calculate assets on hand.</li> <li>c. Inspected storage of unit equipment, weapons, ammunition, and rations.</li> <li>d. Directed issue of supplies and equipment.</li> <li>e. Calculated field service requirements.</li> </ul> <p>3. The supply sergeant supervises unit supply.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Assessed the supply status to determine total assets.</li> <li>b. Conducted inventories to calculate assets on hand.</li> <li>c. Developed a supply storage plan.</li> <li>d. Monitored supply procedures by reviewing supply transactions.</li> <li>e. Directed control of weapons, ammunition, and rations.</li> <li>f. Provided input to the material condition status report regarding equipment on hand.</li> <li>g. Calculated resupply requirements.</li> <li>h. Coordinated requirements with platoons and elements.</li> <li>i. Recorded the requests on the appropriate document register.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>j. Forwarded the requests to the appropriate resupply authority.</p> <p>4. The supply section receives supplies.</p> <p>a. Inspected incoming supplies for quantity and condition.</p> <p>b. Recorded receipt on the appropriate document register.</p> <p>c. Stored supplies according to storage plans.</p> <p>d. Notified the requesting platoon or element that supplies are available for issue.</p> <p>5. The supply section issues supplies.</p> <p>a. Processed supply requests.</p> <p>b. Prepared transaction documents.</p> <p>c. Maintained prescribed copies of transactions.</p> <p>6. The supply section maintains small arms and ammunition.</p> <p>a. Controlled stored weapons and ammunition.</p> <p>b. Requested ammunition resupplies.</p> <p>c. Performed organizational maintenance on small arms and crew-served weapons.</p> <p>d. Forwarded weapons beyond unit repair capabilities to the supporting maintenance unit.</p> <p>*7. Commander/leader performs or delegates performance of the steps in the risk management process for each step in troop-leading procedures (see appendix C).</p> <p>* Indicates a leader task step</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
Total Task Steps Evaluated							
Total Task Steps GO							
Training Status GO/NO-GO							



**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
011-141-2043	Establish supply of DOD flight information publications	STP 1-15P24-SM-TG
011-510-0004	Employ combat service support	STP 1-15 II
011-510-0300	Coordinate staff duties/responsibilities in tactical units	STP 1-15 II
011-510-0309	Perform logistics staff duties/responsibilities	STP 1-15 II
011-540-0010	Coordinate supply functions with supply support activities (SSA)	STP 1-150-155
011-540-0016	Monitor the standard army retail supply system (SARSS1-0).	STP 1-150-155
011-540-0049	Supervise the use of supply publications	STP 1-150-155

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
01-2-0341	Perform composite risk management procedures	ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-126-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** FORWARD SUPPORT COMPANY, ASSAULT BATTALION  
 FORWARD SUPPORT COMPANY, ASSAULT BATTALION (MEDIUM)

**TASK: Perform Ground Vehicle Recovery Operations (01-4-0361)**  
 (FM 4-30.3) (FM 1-100) (FM 1-113)  
 (FM 3-04.111) (FM 3-04.126) (FM 3-04.500)  
 (FM 3-100.12) (FM 3-20.15) (FM 4-0)  
 (FM 9-43-2) (FM 100-14)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The battalion is conducting assigned missions in a simulated (live, virtual, or constructive) combat environment. The main command post (CP), administrative and logistics operations center (ALOC) and digital systems are functional. The company is engaged in continuous tactical operations. Vehicles or equipment are damaged, must be recovered, or are due for scheduled services. The auto maintenance section has received commander's guidance directing it to perform a vehicle/equipment recovery operation. The unit is providing field maintenance in support of tactical operations from its established field or military operations in urban terrain (MOUT) location. The higher headquarters operation order (OPORD), with all annexes and overlays, has been forwarded to the unit commander's digital device. All available information has been gathered and assistance from outside sources as well as organic assets to conduct recovery operations is available. This task is performed under all day and night environmental conditions. The unit is subject to air, chemical, biological, radiological, and nuclear (CBRN), and ground level I threat forces attack. Some iterations of this task should be performed in mission-oriented protective posture level 4 (MOPP4).

**TASK STANDARDS:** The auto maintenance section completed recovery operations of unit's assigned/attached unserviceable vehicle/equipment. Vehicles/equipment were recovered in a timely manner and according to tactical standing operating procedures (TACSOPs) and commander's guidance. Vehicle/equipment does not suffer further damage as result of recovery operations. At MOPP4, performance degradation factors increase time required to perform recovery operations.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>1. The company reports status of unserviceable vehicle.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Vehicle commanders updated first sergeant (1SG) on equipment status.</li> <li>b. The 1SG reported unserviceable status to S4 section and/or maintenance control officer/noncommissioned officer in charge (NCOIC).</li> </ul> <p>*2. Maintenance control officer/NCOIC/combat repair team (CRT) NCOIC prepares to dispatch a recovery team using analog or digital communications.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Coordinated with customer unit to verify the location of unserviceable vehicle using analog or digital communications.</li> <li>b. Identified personnel required to perform the recovery operation.</li> <li>c. Identified equipment required to perform the recovery operation.</li> <li>d. Briefed the recovery team leader on the tactical situation and the recovery operation.</li> <li>e. Ensured recovery team had adequate analog and/or digital communications.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>f. Coordinated mission status with support operations using analog and/or digital communications.</li> <li>g. Enforced safety procedures according to TACSOP and applicable publications.</li> <li>h. Enforced environmental stewardship protection program procedures.</li> </ul> <p>3. Auto maintenance personnel conduct assessment of battle damaged vehicle(s) (recoverable).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Requested direct and/or indirect supporting fire, if required.</li> <li>b. Moved on a concealed route to the disabled vehicle(s).</li> <li>c. Treated casualties according to the current treatment procedures.</li> <li>d. Removed casualties from the vehicle without causing further injuries.</li> <li>e. Requested medical assistance, if required.</li> <li>f. Evacuated casualties according to medical evacuation procedures.</li> <li>g. Took all safety precautions to prevent injury as a result of the evacuation process.</li> <li>h. Towed the vehicle to a concealed location, if required.</li> <li>i. Ensured no further damage is caused to the vehicle as a result of the recovery process.</li> <li>j. Performed battle damage assessment repair (BDAR) according to FM 9-43-2.</li> <li>k. Performed maintenance and emergency repairs on vehicles and equipment whenever the tactical situation permitted.</li> <li>l. Conducted emergency repairs as far forward as possible.</li> <li>m. Evacuated nonrepairable vehicle(s) to unit maintenance collection point(s).</li> <li>n. Security was provided by dismounted personnel throughout recovery operations.</li> <li>o. Employed safety procedures according to TACSOP and FM 9-43-2.</li> <li>p. Employed environmental stewardship protection program procedures.</li> </ul> <p>4. Auto maintenance personnel conduct assessment of battle-damaged vehicle(s) (unrecoverable).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Requested direct and/or indirect supporting fire if required.</li> <li>b. Moved on a concealed route to disabled vehicle(s).</li> <li>c. Treated casualties according to the current treatment procedures.</li> <li>d. Removed casualties from the vehicle(s).</li> <li>e. Requested medical assistance if required.</li> <li>f. Evacuated casualties according to the medical evacuation procedures.</li> <li>g. Took all safety precautions to prevent injury as a result of the evacuation process.</li> <li>h. Performed BDAR according to FM 9-43-2.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
i. Requested disposition of unrecoverable vehicle(s) from appropriate commander. j. Conducted salvage operations as directed by the appropriate commander or maintenance supervisor. k. Prepared vehicle(s) for destruction. l. Off-loaded operations ammunition, weapons, personal gear, classified materials, and critical components to operate vehicle. m. Destroyed vehicle(s) on order from the appropriate commander or designated representative. n. Destroyed the vehicle or equipment according to appropriate technical manual. o. Employed safety procedures according to TACSOP and publications. p. Employed environmental stewardship protection program procedures. *5. Commander/leader performs or delegates performance of the steps in the risk management process for each step in troop-leading procedures (see appendix C). * Indicates a leader task step		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
Total Task Steps Evaluated							
Total Task Steps GO							
Training Status GO/NO-GO							

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
011-425-0012	Integrate downed aircraft recovery courses of action into operations plans and orders	MOS W 153D 3
011-510-0004	Employ combat service support	STP 1-15 II
011-540-0034	Manage aircraft recovery operations	STP 1-150-155

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
01-2-0341	Perform composite risk management procedures	ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-126-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** FORWARD SUPPORT COMPANY, ASSAULT BATTALION  
 FORWARD SUPPORT COMPANY, ASSAULT BATTALION (MEDIUM)

**TASK: Perform Ground Vehicle Unit-Level Maintenance (01-4-0362)**  
 (FM 4-30.3) (FM 1-100) (FM 1-113)  
 (FM 3-04.111) (FM 3-04.126) (FM 3-04.500)  
 (FM 3-100.12) (FM 3-20.15) (FM 4-0)  
 (FM 9-43-2)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The battalion is conducting assigned missions in a simulated (live, virtual, or constructive) combat environment. The main command post (CP), administrative and logistics operations center (ALOC) and digital systems are functional. The company is engaged in continuous tactical operations. Maintenance areas have been established and unit maintenance personnel are receiving requests to repair inoperative equipment. Vehicles or equipment are unserviceable or are due scheduled services. The auto maintenance section has received commander's guidance directing it to perform unit level maintenance on unserviceable ground vehicles. All available information has been gathered and assistance from outside sources as well as organic assets to conduct maintenance operations is available. Threat contact is not expected. Some iterations of this task should be performed in mission-oriented protective posture level 4 (MOPP4).

**TASK STANDARDS:** The unit's auto maintenance section maintained assigned/attached ground vehicles and equipment according to applicable maintenance publications and tactical standing operating procedures (TACSOPs). At MOPP4, performance degradation factors increase completion times of maintenance activities.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>*1. Unit maintenance officer directs maintenance program.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Monitored the company and supported unit maintenance program for compliance with the TACSOP and commander's guidance.</li> <li>b. Directed proper use of unit level logistics system-ground (ULLS-G) in support of maintenance functions and activities.</li> <li>c. Identified unit and supported unit operational readiness levels by inspecting vehicles and equipment status reports.</li> <li>d. Identified current or anticipated maintenance problems through review and analysis of current reports and historical data.</li> <li>e. Coordinated resolution of maintenance problems with battalion S4.</li> <li>f. Directed controlled exchange, according to command guidance, when required repair parts are not available.</li> <li>g. Approved repairs using battle damage assessment repair (BDAR) procedures.</li> <li>h. Prepared materiel condition status reports for input into ULLS-G system.</li> <li>i. Enforced safety procedures according to TACSOP and publications.</li> <li>j. Enforced environmental stewardship protection program procedures.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p><b>2.</b> Platoon sergeants and leaders supervise operator's maintenance.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>a.</b> Supervised Soldier's performance while conducting preventive maintenance checks and services (PMCS) on assigned vehicles/equipment.</li> <li><b>b.</b> Monitored repair parts supply processes in order to better forecast the availability or nonavailability of equipment.</li> <li><b>c.</b> Inspected vehicles, weapons, and equipment to ensure compliance with technical manuals, TACSOP, and commander's guidance.</li> <li><b>d.</b> Coordinated maintenance assistance with maintenance personnel.</li> <li><b>e.</b> Maintained current maintenance status of all vehicles, weapons, and equipment.</li> <li><b>f.</b> Provided input for materiel condition status reports.</li> <li><b>g.</b> Enforced safety procedures according to TACSOP and publications.</li> <li><b>h.</b> Enforced environmental stewardship protection program procedures.</li> </ul> <p><b>3.</b> Company personnel perform operator's maintenance.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>a.</b> Performed PMCS on all vehicles and equipment according to the appropriate technical manual specifications.</li> <li><b>b.</b> Notified supervisor of maintenance problems beyond operator's capabilities.</li> <li><b>c.</b> Assisted maintenance personnel with repairs and services.</li> <li><b>d.</b> Requested approval for BDAR from commander through appropriate noncommissioned officer (NCO) support channels and chain of command.</li> <li><b>e.</b> Performed BDAR according to FM 9-43-2.</li> <li><b>f.</b> Employed safety procedures according to TACSOP and publications.</li> <li><b>g.</b> Employed environmental stewardship protection program procedures.</li> </ul> <p><b>*4.</b> Senior maintenance supervisor supervises maintenance section.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>a.</b> Verified ULLS-G system operability and operator competency.</li> <li><b>b.</b> Organized unit maintenance personnel for an efficient workflow.</li> <li><b>c.</b> Requested approval for BDAR from appropriate commander.</li> <li><b>d.</b> Supervised BDAR procedures according to TACSOP and FM 9-43-2.</li> <li><b>e.</b> Supervised the Army maintenance management system (TAMMS), prescribed load list (PLL) procedures for company and supported unit.</li> <li><b>f.</b> Supervised recovery operations for company and supported unit.</li> <li><b>g.</b> Coordinated maintenance status with company and supported unit platoon sergeants and first sergeants.</li> <li><b>h.</b> Requested controlled exchange approval from appropriate commander.</li> <li><b>i.</b> Provided unit maintenance status to company and supported unit commanders.</li> <li><b>j.</b> Enforced environmental stewardship protection program procedures.</li> <li><b>k.</b> Enforced safety procedures according to TACSOP and publications.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p><b>5.</b> Maintenance personnel repair organic and supported unit equipment.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>a.</b> Verified fault diagnosis/category of maintenance.</li> <li><b>b.</b> Requested required repair parts.</li> <li><b>c.</b> Repaired equipment according to the applicable level technical manual specifications.</li> <li><b>d.</b> Recorded completed work on appropriate forms and records.</li> <li><b>e.</b> Performed final inspection of completed work.</li> <li><b>f.</b> Notified supervisor upon completion of repairs.</li> <li><b>g.</b> Employed environmental stewardship protection program procedures.</li> <li><b>h.</b> Employed safety procedures according to TACSOP and publications.</li> </ul> <p><b>6.</b> Maintenance personnel conduct transactions with support maintenance organization.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>a.</b> Identified category of maintenance.</li> <li><b>b.</b> Corrected all unit-level maintenance deficiencies.</li> <li><b>c.</b> Prepared required forms and records according to applicable technical manuals and TACSOP.</li> <li><b>d.</b> Evacuated equipment to supporting maintenance facilities.</li> <li><b>e.</b> Picked up equipment upon completion of repairs.</li> <li><b>f.</b> Employed safety procedures according to TACSOP and publications.</li> <li><b>g.</b> Employed environmental stewardship protection program procedures.</li> </ul> <p><b>7.</b> Maintenance personnel perform maintenance administrative and support functions.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>a.</b> Maintained company and supported unit's PLL.</li> <li><b>b.</b> Requested repair parts for the company and supported unit's organizational equipment.</li> <li><b>c.</b> Tagged unserviceable repairable items prior to turn-in.</li> <li><b>d.</b> Maintained separate document register(s) for each company according to applicable directives.</li> <li><b>e.</b> Maintained separate maintenance control records for the company and supported unit.</li> <li><b>f.</b> Operated ULLS-G system according to the appropriate electronic technical manual.</li> <li><b>g.</b> Maintained publications, tools, and equipment.</li> <li><b>h.</b> Maintained power generators.</li> <li><b>i.</b> Employed safety procedures according to TACSOP and publications.</li> <li><b>j.</b> Employed environmental stewardship protection program procedures.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p><b>*8.</b> Commander/leader performs or delegates performance of the steps in the risk management process for each step in troop-leading procedures (see appendix C).</p> <p>* Indicates a leader task step</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
Total Task Steps Evaluated							
Total Task Steps GO							
Training Status GO/NO-GO							

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
011-510-0004	Employ combat service support	STP 1-15 II
011-510-0011	Integrate fundamentals of air-ground operations	STP 1-15 II

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
01-2-0341	Perform composite risk management procedures	ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-126-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**



**ELEMENT:** UNIT MINISTRY TEAM, BATTALION

**TASK: Conduct Unit Religious Support (16-1-1001)**

(AR 165-1)	(CD 16-02)	(DA Pam 165-3)
(DA Pam 165-17)	(DA Pam 165-18)	(DA Pam 600-63-12)
(DA Pam 608-43)	(DA Pam 608-47)	(FM 1-05)
(FM 100-17)	(STP 16-56II-OFS)	(STP 16-56M10-SM)
(TC 1-05)		

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The unit ministry team has received requests for religious support. Support operations have commenced. Casualties have occurred. The battalion tactical standing operating procedure (TACSOP) and operation order (OPORD) are available. Some iterations of this task should be performed in mission-oriented protective posture level 4 (MOPP4).

**TASK STANDARDS:** Command and Soldier religious support needs are met according to the TACSOP, OPORD, AR 165-1, FM 1-05, and command directives. At MOPP4, performance degradation factors increase time of religious support activities.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Unit ministry team develops a religious support plan.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Listed the religious (spiritual) needs of the battalion based analysis of makeup, morale, and mission requirements.</li> <li>b. Established religious support priorities</li> <li>c. Coordinated direct and general religious support with corps support command (COSCOM) ministry activity.</li> <li>d. Provided staff sections with required input for plans and orders.</li> <li>e. Consolidated input to the religious support plan from other staff sections.</li> <li>f. Distributed plan to all subordinate units.</li> </ol> </li> <li>2. Unit ministry team provides religious support (to include rites and services).                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Monitored casualty data to determine religious support requirements.</li> <li>b. Provided worship services, memorial ceremonies, services for the dead, sacraments, rites, and ordinances.</li> <li>c. Conducted mass or emergency burials according to current regulations and directives.</li> <li>d. Provided support to battalion headquarters personnel.</li> <li>e. Requested supplies and additional transportation requirements from battalion S4.</li> </ol> </li> <li>3. Unit ministry team provides pastoral care to Soldiers.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Provided pastoral care that counters battlefield shock and trauma.</li> <li>b. Conducted pastoral counseling that lessens stress and enhances morale.</li> <li>c. Provided immediate support for battle fatigue cases (Soldiers).</li> </ol> </li> </ol>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>d. Conducted specialized counseling that enhances morale.</p> <p>e. Provided routine pastoral care and counseling to all battalion Soldiers.</p> <p>f. Conducted pastoral care to casualties at battle site(s).</p> <p>4. Battalion chaplain advises the command on unit morale, moral climate, and religious welfare.</p> <p>a. Provided information on morale and moral climate of the battalion.</p> <p>b. Briefed commander on moral and humanitarian aspects of policies and procedures.</p> <p>c. Notified commander immediately of policies perceived as unjust by Soldiers.</p> <p>d. Notified commander of disruptive and potentially disruptive social patterns.</p> <p>e. Notified commander of possible violations of the laws of war.</p> <p>f. Advised commander on policies or procedures affecting Soldier rights to the free exercise of religion.</p> <p>5. Battalion chaplain advises the commander on ethical issues.</p> <p>a. Advised the commander on specific methods of improving the ethical climate within the battalion.</p> <p>b. Briefed commander on ethical aspects of policies and leadership.</p> <p>c. Briefed the commander on Soldier training in ethical and moral decisionmaking.</p> <p>d. Emphasized value of human life, justice, dignity, and truth through sermons, pastoral counseling, and ethical or moral instruction.</p> <p>e. Performed duties as ethical advocate to the commander in the prevention of dehumanizing treatment of friendly troops, enemy prisoners of war (EPWs), and civilians, the violation of codes of morality, illegal acts, desecration of sacred places, and disrespect for human life.</p> <p>6. Unit ministry team provides information on indigenous religions</p> <p>a. Advised the commander of the impact of indigenous religion(s) on the battalion's mission.</p> <p>b. Advised the commander on developing friendly relations with local religious bodies and civilians.</p> <p>c. Identified human welfare needs caused by combat on indigenous population.</p> <p>d. Coordinated alleviation of human welfare needs with host nation (HN) military and civilian institutions.</p> <p>7. Commander/leader performs or delegates performance of the steps in the risk management process for each step in troop-leading procedures (see appendix C).</p> <p>* Indicates a leader task step</p>		

<b>TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK</b>							
<b>ITERATION</b>	<b>1</b>	<b>2</b>	<b>3</b>	<b>4</b>	<b>5</b>	<b>M</b>	<b>TOTAL</b>
Total Task Steps Evaluated							
Total Task Steps GO							
Training Status GO/NO-GO							

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
011-510-0301	Participate in the military decision making process	STP 1-15 II
011-510-0303	Conduct operations missions briefing/debriefing	STP 1-15 II
011-510-0305	Conduct battalion/brigade after-action review	STP 1-15 II
011-510-0306	Perform personnel/administration staff duties/responsibilities	STP 1-15 II
011-510-0311	Conduct military briefings	STP 1-15 II

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
01-1-5132	Provide combat support and combat service support	ARTEP 1-113-MTP
01-1-5134	Plan aviation operations using the military decision making process	ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-118-MTP ARTEP 1-126-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** COMMAND SECTION  
S3 SECTION

**TASK: Supervise Chemical, Biological, Radiological, and Nuclear Defense Operations (03-1-C404)**

(FM 3-11.4)	(FM 1-100)	(FM 1-113)
(FM 3-04.111)	(FM 3-04.126)	(FM 3-5)
(FM 3-6)	(FM 3-11.9)	(FM 3-100.12)
(FM 7-0)	(FM 7-1)	(TC 1-237)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** Battalion operations have commenced. Subordinate units have been deployed. The commander and staff require updated chemical, biological, radiological, and nuclear (CBRN) data for current operations and future planning. The battalion headquarters has analog and/or digital communications with higher and lower headquarters. The higher headquarters operation order (OPORD) with all annexes, status reports, maps, overlays, and other required documents has been forwarded to the commander's digital device. The unit, higher, and lower tactical standing operating procedures (TACSOPs) are available. The S3 is required to provide command and control of subordinate units during CBRN intrusions. Isolated CBRN incidents have occurred. Some operational areas have reported contamination. Simplified collective protective equipment (SCPE) is on hand. The commander has elected to locate outside the shelter and has appointed a liaison officer to coordinate command and control (C2) functions between the commander and the staff. This task is performed under all environmental conditions, both day and night. The unit is subject to air, CBRN, and level I ground threat forces attack. Some iterations of this task should be performed in mission-oriented protective posture level 4 (MOPP4).

**TASK STANDARDS:** Support is maintained at a level that allows the supported units to sustain momentum of operations. CBRN defense measures are conducted according to CBRN defense plan, TACSOP, and OPORD. At MOPP4, performance degradation factors increase time required to implement CBRN defense operations.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>1. S3 section, with coordination with the S2, develops CBRN defense plan.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Identified established policies and procedures by reviewing CBRN defense portion of the TACSOP.</li> <li>b. Identified CBRN threat and recommended countermeasures by analyzing the higher headquarters vulnerability analysis and assessment.</li> <li>c. Prepared CBRN defense requirement forecast.</li> <li>d. Coordinated medical mass casualty evacuation and treatment support with the S1 section and supporting medical element.</li> <li>e. Coordinated alternate methods of conducting support mission with the support operations section.</li> <li>f. Coordinated alternate lines of communications with S6 or communications personnel.</li> <li>g. Coordinated additional and augmented decontamination support with higher headquarters staff element using analog and digital communications.</li> <li>h. Developed CBRN defense item consumption plan for increased demand.</li> <li>i. Developed personnel, equipment, and facilities decontamination plan.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>j. Disseminated CBRN defense plan to all subordinate units using analog and/or digital communications.</li> </ul> <p>2. S3 section, with coordination with the S2, directs preparation for CBRN defense.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Identified backup command and control procedures.</li> <li>b. Alerted all CBRN defense teams and subordinate companies of impending or actual attack.</li> <li>c. Maintained CBRN analog/digital situation map(s) to include potential enemy CBRN targets, decontamination site overlays, and predicted contamination overlay.</li> <li>d. Directed periodic monitoring by subordinate units of their assigned areas.</li> <li>e. Directed appropriate MOPP level.</li> <li>f. Directs preparation for receiving CBRN decontamination augmentations.</li> <li>g. Directed redeployment of units and facilities.</li> </ul> <p>3. S3 section, with coordination with the S2, directs response to initial effects of CBRN attack.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Revised MOPP level as necessary.</li> <li>b. Alerted higher, lower, adjacent units of imminent attack using analog and digital communications.</li> <li>c. Reestablished chains of command and communication, as required.</li> <li>d. Assessed damage to equipment and facilities by analyzing reports from subordinate units.</li> <li>e. Coordinated assistance for subordinate units with higher headquarters staff element and supporting rear operations element using analog and/or digital communications.</li> <li>f. Alerted marshalling area, EPW collection points, and aid stations of CBRN hazards.</li> <li>g. Forwarded CBRN 1 and subsequent CBRN 1 reports to higher headquarters staff element and supporting rear operations element using analog and/or digital communications.</li> <li>h. Computed yield and ground zero location.</li> <li>i. Prepared downwind hazard prediction.</li> <li>j. Prepared simplified fallout prediction.</li> <li>k. Forwarded CBRN 6 report to higher headquarters staff element and supporting rear operations element, as appropriate using analog and/or digital communications.</li> <li>l. Provided current status of augmented chemical unit employment, protective measures, and MOPP and operational exposure guidance (OEG) implementation to the headquarters staff.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p><b>4.</b> S3 section, with coordination with the S2, directs response to residual effects of CBRN attack.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Plotted CBRN 4 report on situation map.</li> <li>b. Forwarded CBRN 4 report to higher headquarters staff element and supporting rear operations element.</li> <li>c. Maintained radiation exposure status.</li> <li>d. Prepared analog/digital contamination overlay(s).</li> <li>e. Predicted contamination duration period.</li> <li>f. Plotted CBRN 3 report on analog/digital situation map.</li> <li>g. Briefed CBRN implications to commander and staff.</li> <li>h. Listed restoration decontamination requirements.</li> <li>i. Recommended survey requirements to S2/S3 and headquarters CBRN element.</li> <li>j. Coordinated for replacement of chemical personnel and mass casualty handling procedures with the S1 section.</li> <li>k. Coordinated clearing of obstacles and the use of chemical weapons in denial operations with the supporting engineer and the supporting rear operations elements.</li> <li>l. Directed revised MOPP level, as required.</li> <li>m. Coordinated acquisition, storage, and issue of CBRN equipment and supplies with the S4 section.</li> <li>n. Updated NBC defense contingency plan.</li> <li>o. Provided current status of augmented chemical unit employment, protective measures, and MOPP and OEG implementation to the headquarters staff.</li> </ul>		
<p><b>5.</b> S3 section, with coordination with the S2, directs preparation for a friendly CBRN strike.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Identified specific actions by analyzing STRIKEWARN message.</li> <li>b. Provided current situation briefing to commander.</li> <li>c. Directed subordinate units to implement CBRN defense protective measures using analog and/or digital communications.</li> </ul>		
<p><b>6.</b> S3 section, with coordination with the S2, directs radiological and chemical surveys.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Selected survey techniques according to FM 3-11.4.</li> <li>b. Tasked units to provide team(s).</li> <li>c. Formulated turnback dose and dose rates.</li> <li>d. Prepared overlays and/or strip maps to destination point(s).</li> <li>e. Briefed survey team(s) on current situation and information requirements.</li> <li>f. Recommended COA to S2/S3 after analyzing survey team(s) data.</li> <li>g. Listed decontamination requirements.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>7. S3 section, with coordination with the S2, directs radiological and chemical decontamination.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Identified degree and extent of hazard(s).</li> <li>b. Established an acceptable level of decontamination according to commander's guidance.</li> <li>c. Directed MOPP gear exchange.</li> <li>d. Identified areas and facilities for sustainment decontamination.</li> <li>e. Supervised marking of contaminated runoff areas.</li> <li>f. Updated battalion and subordinate units' radiation status (RS).</li> <li>g. Requested replenishment of CBRN decontamination equipment and supplies from S4 section.</li> </ul> <p>8. S3 section, and S2, coordinates for operational decontamination.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Directed preventive maintenance checks and services (PMCS) before-operations checks on vehicles and equipment.</li> <li>b. Identified contaminated locations and routes to be taken.</li> <li>c. Coordinated set up assistance with subordinate units and site supervisor.</li> <li>d. Forwarded situation report (SITREP) to higher headquarters and supporting rear operations element using analog and digital communications.</li> </ul> <p>9. S3 section, and S2, coordinates for thorough decontamination.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Coordinated with higher and lower units using analog and/or digital communications.</li> <li>b. Coordinated additional support with higher headquarters staff element and/or supporting rear operations element.</li> <li>c. Coordinated with support operations section for decontamination priorities of service support facilities.</li> <li>d. Directed CBRN augmentations to designated area.</li> <li>e. Monitored decontamination operations to ensure priority guidance is being followed.</li> <li>f. Provided decontamination status updates to the commander and supporting rear operations element.</li> </ul> <p>*10. Commander/leader performs or delegates performance of the steps in the risk management process for each step in troop-leading procedures (appendix C).</p> <p>* Indicates a leader task step</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
Total Task Steps Evaluated							
Total Task Steps GO							
Training Status GO/NO-GO							

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
011-237-2012	Perform tactical flight mission planning (UH-60)	TC 1-237
011-510-1101	Employ NBC protection for aviation operations	STP 1-TACOPS STP 1-15 II
011-510-1103	Plan aviation operations in an NBC environment	STP 1-15 II

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
01-2-0341	Perform composite risk management procedures	ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-126-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**



**ELEMENTS:** COMMAND SECTION  
BATTALION

**TASK: Perform Aviation Medicine (Flight Surgeon) Support Activities (08-1-8102)**

(AR 40-3)	(AR 40-400)	(AR 40-501)
(FM 1-100)	(FM 3-04.111)	(FM 3-11.4)
(FM 3-100.4)	(FM 3-100.12)	(FM 4-02)
(FM 4-02.7)	(FM 7-0)	(FM 8-10-26)
(FM 8-55)	(FM 22-51)	(TC 3-34.489)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The unit is receiving requests for support and is conducting its assigned missions in a simulated (live, virtual, or constructive) combat environment. The commander has provided his planning guidance and restated mission. The flight surgeon provides supervision, guidance, and advice on the unit’s aviation medicine (AVMED) program and overall readiness to the commander and staff. The unit’s main command post is operational and staff sections are functional. The unit has analog and/or digital communications. Higher headquarters operation order (OPORD) is available. Unit and higher HQ tactical standing operating procedures (TACSOPs) are available. Unit-developed tactics, techniques, and procedures (TTPs) and standing operating procedures (SOPs) are available. This task is performed under all environmental conditions. The unit may be subject to attack by threat forces; including air; ground; chemical, biological, radiological, nuclear, and high yield explosives (CBRNE); or directed energy (DE) attack. Simplified collective protective equipment (SCPE) is on hand and/or field-expedient and natural shelters are available. This task should not be trained in mission-oriented protective posture level 4 (MOPP4).

**TASK STANDARDS:** Flight surgeon and assigned medical personnel provide AVMED program support according to higher headquarters OPORD, unit and higher headquarters TACSOPs, unit-developed TTPs and SOPs, and commander’s guidance. At MOPP4, performance degradation factors increase the time required to supervise and perform AVMED support activities.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>*1. Flight surgeon directs the AVMED program within the unit.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Established the AVMED program within the unit according to unit-developed TTPs and TACSOP.</li> <li>b. Supervised AVMED program activities to ensure compliance with unit-developed TTPs, TACSOP, plans, and policies.</li> <li>c. Administered the AVMED program within the unit, which to included aviation personnel.</li> <li>d. Served as liaison officer between medical and aviation elements.</li> <li>e. Provided operational guidance to assigned medical personnel.</li> <li>f. Assisted the commander with advice and input on all AVMED matters.</li> <li>g. Instituted a health education program according to unit-developed TTPs and TACSOP, as required.</li> <li>h. Monitored the conditions and hazards present in the work environment.</li> <li>i. Conducted flying duty medical examinations according to TACSOP.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>j. Assisted the commander in developing, presenting, and monitoring the unit's aeromedical training program.</li> <li>k. Directed daily meetings to review personnel and unit effectiveness, as required.</li> <li>l. Coordinated with other staff elements (S1, S2/S3, S4, and so forth) for support and assistance, when required.</li> <li>m. Coordinated with higher, lower, or adjacent headquarters for health service support beyond unit capability.</li> <li>n. Provided daily status reports (such as personnel, equipment, and so forth) to the commander and appropriate staff sections.</li> <li>o. Enforced safety and risk management procedures according to TACSOP.</li> <li>p. Advised the commander when potential safety or risk management problems were identified.</li> <li>q. Enforced environmental protection procedures according to TACSOP.</li> </ul> <p>2. Flight surgeon, aeromedical physician assistant, and/or medical treatment team provides primary medical care to all aviation personnel within the unit.</p>		
<p><b>Note.</b> Aviation personnel will be provided ambulatory care by or under the direct supervision of a flight surgeon, if available. If a surgeon is not available, other health care providers will ensure adherence to requirements in the above Army regulations.</p>		
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Conducted flight physicals, as required.</li> <li>b. Provided medical care to unit aviation personnel including aviation support personnel.</li> <li>c. Initiated medical records, reports, and/or other appropriate documentation on aviation personnel.</li> <li>d. Verified that proper entries are made in the patient's medical records.</li> <li>e. Recommended medical clearance or disqualification (temporary or permanent) for flight duty performance, as required.</li> <li>f. Recommended waivers for medical disqualification (temporary or permanent) of flight duty performance, when justified.</li> <li>g. Submitted medical records, reports, and/or other appropriate documentation to higher headquarters for approval actions, as required.</li> <li>h. Supported the mental and physical well-being of aviation and aviation support personnel.</li> <li>i. Reviewed care provided by other health care providers for impact on flight status of aviation personnel.</li> <li>j. Conducted flying duty medical examinations according to TACSOP.</li> <li>k. Employed safety and risk management procedures according to TACSOP.</li> <li>l. Corrected potential safety or risk management problems within capability of unit personnel.</li> <li>m. Conducted post-accident investigation team activities, as required.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>n. Coordinated with higher headquarters or supporting element for correction of investigative problems beyond unit capabilities.</p> <p>o. Employed environmental protection procedures according to TACSOP.</p> <p>3. Flight surgeon, aeromedical physician assistant, and/or medical treatment team provides aeromedical consultations to aviation personnel within the unit.</p> <p>a. Provided 24-hour on-call service for aeromedical emergencies and aeromedical evacuation consultations.</p> <p>b. Interviewed newly assigned aviation personnel according to unit-developed TTPs and TACSOP.</p> <p>c. Reviewed their medical records before granting a medical clearance to fly.</p> <p>d. Established procedures for automatically grounding air crewmembers who seek medical treatment.</p> <p>e. Verified that protocol includes a requirement that the air crewmember report to the flight surgeon as soon as reasonably possible thereafter.</p> <p>f. Cleared air crewmembers for further flight duty following temporary medical disqualification or aircraft mishap.</p> <p>g. Performed timely evaluation of aviation personnel who were medically disqualified to determine return to duty status.</p> <p>*4. Flight surgeon performs nonclinical support functions.</p> <p>a. Assisted the commander and staff in medical staff planning activities associated with tactical aviation operations (for example, mission analysis, support estimate, plans, and/or orders), as required.</p> <p>b. Reviewed aviation operation plans (OPLANs)/contingency plans (CONPLANs), determined if aeromedical factors adversely effected unit operations.</p> <p>c. Advised the commander of physiological and psychological factors affecting aviation operations.</p> <p>d. Recommended policies and procedures pertaining to exposure and decontamination of aviation personnel operating in the vicinity of toxic gaseous or particulate agents.</p> <p>e. Supported the air crewmember endurance program.</p> <p>f. Assisted unit commanders in developing a training program that met specific operational needs of the unit.</p> <p>g. Functioned as medical technical advisor to air ambulance unit commanders.</p> <p>h. Served as a member of or consultant to the flight evaluation board.</p> <p>i. Conducted flight line aeromedical occupational inspections according to unit-developed TTPs and TACSOP.</p> <p>j. Conducted aeromedical briefing for both officer and enlisted personnel at unit level training or aviation safety meetings.</p> <p>k. Participated in aircraft emergency exercises to observe the effectiveness of response, equipment, and communications of fire rescue, air ambulance, and medical teams.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p><b>l.</b> Observed flight operations in order to monitor physical and psychological stresses contributing to fatigue and human error in the flight environment.</p> <p><b>m.</b> Participated in day-to-day activities and in an operational capacity as an air crewmember in flight for each type of aircraft assigned to supported units.</p> <p><b>n.</b> Participated as an air crewmember under all flight environments, included emergency procedures and mission profiles.</p> <p><b>o.</b> Employed safety and risk management procedures according to TACSOP.</p> <p><b>p.</b> Employed environmental protection procedures according to TACSOP.</p> <p><b>*5.</b> Commander/leader performs or delegates performance of the steps in the risk management process for each step in troop-leading procedures (appendix C).</p> <p>* Indicates a leader task step</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5		TOTAL
Total Task Steps Evaluated							
Total Task Steps GO							
Training Status GO/NO-GO							

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
011-510-0004	Employ combat service support	STP 1-15 II
081-831-1047	Supervise the implementation of preventive medicine policies	STP 21-24-SMCT
081-831-1053	Practice individual preventive medicine countermeasures	STP 21-1-SMCT
081-831-9000	Implement preventive medicine measures	STP 21-24-SMCT
850-001-2000	Employ accident prevention measures and risk management process	STP 21-24-SMCT
850-001-4001	Integrate risk management into mission plans	STP 21-24-SMCT

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
01-1-5134	Plan aviation operations using the military decision making process	ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-118-MTP ARTEP 1-126-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENT: COMPANY**

**TASK: Provide First Aid to Casualties (08-2-0003)**

- |               |              |                     |
|---------------|--------------|---------------------|
| (FM 4-25.11)  | (AR 600-8-1) | (FM 1-100)          |
| (FM 1-113)    | (FM 3-3)     | (FM 3-04.111)       |
| (FM 3-04.126) | (FM 3-5)     | (FM 3-11.4)         |
| (FM 3-100.12) | (FM 4-02.7)  | (FM 4-02.283)       |
| (FM 7-0)      | (FM 7-1)     | (FM 8-9)            |
| (FM 8-10-6)   | (FM 8-10-26) | (FM 8-284)          |
| (FM 8-285)    | (FM 22-51)   | (STP 8-91W15-SM-TG) |

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** THIS TASK MAY BE USED TO SUPPORT A CHEMICAL, BIOLOGICAL, RADIOLOGICAL, NUCLEAR, AND HIGH YIELD EXPLOSIVES (CBRNE) EVENT. The unit has sustained casualties. The unit has medical treatment personnel or combat lifesavers. Threat force contact has been broken. Soldiers have been wounded and may have chemical contamination or non-battle injuries. Unit personnel are performing first aid (self-aid/buddy aid) treatment. The unit has analog and/or digital communications. Higher headquarters operation order (OPORD) is available. Unit and headquarters tactical standing operating procedures (TACSOPs) are available. Treatment plan is available. This task is performed under all environmental conditions. The unit may be subject to attack by threat forces, including air, ground, chemical, biological, radiological, and nuclear (CBRN), or directed energy (DE) attack. Simplified collective protective equipment (SCPE) is on hand and/or field-expedient and natural shelters are available. Some iterations of this task should be performed in mission-oriented protective posture level 4 (MOPP4).

**TASK STANDARDS:** Casualties are treated according to FM 4-25.11, FM 8-285, and the tactical standing operating procedures (TACSOPs). At MOPP4, performance degradation factors increase the time required to provide treatment and evacuation.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>*1. Commander and leaders supervise first aid treatment of casualties.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Implement treatment plan.</li> <li>b. Monitor treatment to ensure all casualties are treated.</li> <li>c. Direct employment of combat lifesavers to treat casualties.</li> <li>d. Monitor battlefield stress reduction and prevention procedures.</li> <li>e. Report casualties, as required.</li> <li>f. Coordinate with higher headquarters for additional medical support.</li> <li>g. Coordinate replenishment of class VIII supplies with supporting medical element according to TACSOP.</li> <li>h. Direct distribution of class VIII supplies according to the TACSOP.</li> <li>i. Enforce quality control (QC) procedures for class VIII items issued to unit elements.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p><b>2.</b> Unit personnel perform first aid treatment.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Evaluate casualties.</li> <li>b. Administer life-saving first aid treatment (cardiopulmonary resuscitation [CPR]), if required.</li> <li>c. Control hemorrhage.</li> <li>d. Dress wounds.</li> <li>e. Splint suspected fractures.</li> <li>f. Provide first aid treatment to casualties with burns.</li> <li>g. Provide first aid treatment for environmental injuries.</li> <li>h. Provide first aid treatment for chemical casualties.</li> <li>i. Prevent shock.</li> </ul> <p><b>3.</b> Unit medical personnel/combat lifesavers perform enhanced first aid treatment.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Evaluate casualty for condition and type treatment needed.</li> <li>b. Measure casualty's vital signs.</li> <li>c. Insert oropharyngeal airway in an unconscious casualty.</li> <li>d. Apply a splint to a fractured limb.</li> <li>e. Administer first aid to chemical agent casualties.</li> <li>f. Initiate an intravenous infusion for hypovolemic shock.</li> <li>g. Identify environmental injuries.</li> <li>h. Treat environmental injuries.</li> <li>i. Manage casualties with combat operational stress reactions.</li> </ul> <p><b>4.</b> Unit medical personnel/combat lifesavers evacuate casualties to supporting medical element.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Prepare casualties for evacuation.</li> <li>b. Identify litter team(s).</li> <li>c. Construct improvised litter from available material, as required.</li> <li>d. Secure casualty on litter.</li> <li>e. Employ appropriate manual carry if litter is not available.</li> <li>f. Transport casualty without causing further injury according to TACSOP.</li> </ul> <p><b>*5.</b> Commander/leader performs or delegates performance of the steps in the risk management process for each step in troop-leading procedures (appendix C).</p> <p>* Indicates a leader task step</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
<i>ITERATION</i>	<i>1</i>	<i>2</i>	<i>3</i>	<i>4</i>	<i>5</i>	<i>M</i>	<i>TOTAL</i>
Total Task Steps Evaluated							
Total Task Steps GO							
Training Status GO/NO-GO							

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
031-503-1019	React to chemical or biological hazard/attack	STP 21-1-SMCT
081-831-1054	Evacuate casualties	STP 21-24-SMCT
081-831-1055	Ensure unit combat lifesaver requirements are met	STP 21-24-SMCT
081-831-9000	Implement preventive medicine measures	STP 21-24-SMCT

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
01-2-0341	Perform composite risk management procedures	ARTEP 1-113-MTP
08-2-R303	Conduct battlefield stress reduction and prevention procedures	ARTEP 1-126-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** COMPANY HEADQUARTERS  
 MEDICAL TREATMENT TEAM

**TASK: Provide Health Service Support (Aviation) (08-2-8101)**  
 (FM 3-04.111) (AR 40-3) (AR 40-66)  
 (AR 40-400) (AR 40-501) (AR 190-8)  
 (AR 200-1) (FM 1-100) (FM 3-100.4)  
 (FM 4-02.7) (FM 8-10-26) (STP 8-91W15-SM-TG)  
 (TC 3-34.489)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** Supported unit personnel that are sick, injured, or requiring a physical are reporting to unit medical personnel. The unit’s medical treatment area is established and operational. Physicals are coordinated by supported units with unit medical personnel, as required. The unit’s flight surgeon and medical treatment team are available with appropriate supplies and equipment. This task is performed under all environmental conditions. Higher headquarters operation order (OPORD) is available. Unit and higher headquarters tactical standing operating procedures (TACSOPs) are available. Unit-developed tactics, techniques, and procedures (TTPs) and standing operating procedures (SOPs) are available. The unit has analog and/or digital communications. The unit may be subject to attack by threat forces, including air, ground, chemical, biological, radiological, nuclear and high yield explosives (CBRNE), or direct energy (DE) attack. Simplified collective protective equipment (SCPE) is on hand and/or field-expedient and natural shelters are available. This task should not be trained in mission-oriented protective posture level 4 (MOPP4).

**TASK STANDARDS:** Health service support is performed according to TACSOP, unit-developed TTPs and SOPs, and medical treatment officer’s (flight surgeon and/or aeromedical physician assistant) guidance.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p><b>*1.</b> Flight surgeon, aeromedical physician assistant, and/or senior health care sergeant (SGT) supervises unit health service support operations.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Monitored patient treatment to determine quality of care.</li> <li>b. Provided medical guidance and assistance to medical treatment team members, as required.</li> <li>c. Monitored patient evacuation from the unit to determine adequacy and effectiveness of evacuation support.</li> <li>d. Monitored control of weapons and ammunition for compliance with TACSOP.</li> <li>e. Monitored maintenance and/or disposition of medical records for compliance with the TACSOP.</li> <li>f. Inspected operational and storage areas for compliance with the TACSOP.</li> <li>g. Monitored security of controlled substances (Note “Q” and “R” items) to include inventories and audit trails for compliance with TACSOP.</li> <li>h. Monitored class VIII storage and stockage levels for compliance with the TACSOP.</li> </ul>		



TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>i. Monitored requisitioning of supplies and equipment for compliance with stockage level allowances.</li> <li>j. Directed operator maintenance of all organic equipment.</li> <li>k. Monitored patient A &amp; D logbook which ensured accuracy.</li> <li>l. Monitored daily reporting of personnel and equipment status for accuracy.</li> <li>m. Directed combat proficiency training of element personnel.</li> <li>n. Advised commander on health status of aviation personnel, as required.</li> <li>o. Forwarded medical information of operational or potential intelligence value to unit headquarters and higher headquarters operations element, as required.</li> <li>p. Maintained registry of controlled substances.</li> <li>q. Advised the commander on the health of the command.</li> <li>r. Enforced safety and risk management procedures according to TACSOP.</li> <li>s. Enforced environmental protection procedures according to TACSOP.</li> </ul> <p>2. Medical treatment team performs administrative operations.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Recorded patient data in the patient A &amp; D logbook for patients according to higher headquarters instructions and the TACSOP.</li> </ul>		
<hr/> <p><b>Note.</b> Data should include at a minimum the following entries: patient name, grade/rank, social security number (SSN), unit, date/time seen, diagnosis, and disposition.</p> <hr/>		
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>b. Maintained security of controlled substances to include inventories and audit trails.</li> <li>c. Forwarded patient status reports to the higher headquarters personnel element according to TACSOP.</li> <li>d. Forwarded daily equipment and personnel status reports to the unit headquarters.</li> </ul>		
<p>3. Medical treatment team conducts health service support operations.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Regulated patient flow through operational areas.</li> <li>b. Performed quality assurance inspections of pharmaceuticals.</li> <li>c. Maintained security of controlled substances to include inventories and audit trails.</li> <li>d. Performed preventive maintenance checks and services (PMCS) on vehicles and equipment.</li> <li>e. Monitored communication assets according to the TACSOP to meet operational requirements.</li> <li>f. Coordinated with higher headquarters logistics element for securing of patient weapons, ammunition, and personal items, as required.</li> <li>g. Coordinated with higher headquarters personnel or operations element for additional assets to meet operational requirements, as necessary.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>h. Coordinated with the supporting medical element for routine health service support (HSS) beyond team capability.</li> <li>i. Coordinated with higher headquarters logistic element for anticipated logistics support.</li> <li>j. Coordinated emergency resupply of class VIII with the higher headquarters and/or supporting logistic element.</li> </ul> <p>4. Medical treatment team performs emergency medical treatment.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Trained patients to determine priority of treatment, if required due to mass casualties.</li> <li>b. Identified extent of injuries.</li> <li>c. Maintained airway.</li> <li>d. Maintained cardiopulmonary function.</li> <li>e. Controlled hemorrhage.</li> <li>f. Immobilized fractures and/or suspected fractures.</li> <li>g. Provided relief from severe pain according to medical treatment officer's orders.</li> <li>h. Treated burns.</li> <li>i. Treated environmental injuries.</li> <li>j. Treated directed energy device wounds.</li> <li>k. Treated shock.</li> <li>l. Initiated immediate measures for battle fatigue (BF) cases.</li> <li>m. Initiated field medical chart (FMC)/electronic field medical chart (EFMC), if required.</li> <li>n. Updated FMC/EFMC, as required.</li> <li>o. Treated civilian(s), refugee(s), and EPW according to TACSOP and provisions of the Geneva Conventions.</li> <li>p. Evacuated patients according to TACSOP, if required.</li> <li>q. Employed safety and risk management procedures according to TACSOP.</li> <li>r. Employed environmental protection procedures according to TACSOP.</li> </ul> <p>5. Medical treatment team conducts sick call.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Recorded patient data on patient A &amp; D logbook.</li> <li>b. Screened patients to prioritize treatment.</li> <li>c. Treated patients according to medical treatment officer's orders and/or the TACSOP.</li> <li>d. Employed isolation techniques when contagious patients are identified.</li> <li>e. Collected requested lab specimen according to medical treatment officer's request.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>f. Forwarded lab specimens to supporting laboratory element or with patients evacuated to the supporting medical element, as required.</p> <p>g. Issued patient medications and/or supplies for out-patient care, as required.</p> <p>h. Provided patient instructions on out-patient care, as required.</p> <p>i. Completed patient records according to the TACSOP.</p> <p>j. Evacuated and/or referred patients to the supporting medical element for HSS beyond team capabilities.</p> <p>k. Employed safety procedures according to TACSOP.</p> <p>l. Employed environmental protection procedures according to TACSOP.</p> <p>6. Flight surgeon, aeromedical physician assistant, and/or medical treatment team performs aviation medicine.</p> <p>a. Conducted flight physicals, as required.</p> <p>b. Initiated medical records and/or reports, as required.</p> <p>c. Recommended medical clearance or disqualification (temporary or permanent) for flight duty performance.</p> <p>d. Recommended waiver for medical disqualification (temporary or permanent) of flight duty performance.</p> <p>e. Submitted medical records and/or reports to the appropriate authority according to unit-developed TTPs and TACSOP, as required.</p> <p>f. Conducted post-accident investigation team activities, as required.</p> <p>*7. Commander/leader performs or delegates performance of the steps in the risk management process for each step in troop-leading procedures (appendix C).</p> <p>* Indicates a leader task step</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5		TOTAL
Total Task Steps Evaluated							
Total Task Steps GO							
Training Status GO/NO-GO							

### SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
011-510-0004	Employ combat service support	STP 1-15 II
081-831-0101	Request medical evacuation	STP 21-24-SMCT
151-357-0002	Coordinate combat service support operations	STP 21-24-SMCT
301-371-1050	Implement operations security (OPSEC) measures	STP 21-1-SMCT
850-001-2000	Employ accident prevention measures and risk management process	STP 21-24-SMCT
850-001-3001	Control mission safety hazard	STP 21-24-SMCT
850-001-4001	Integrate risk management into mission plans	STP 21-24-SMCT

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
01-2-0341	Perform composite risk management procedures	ARTEP 1-113-MTP
01-2-5160	Perform troop-leading procedures	ARTEP 1-126-MTP ARTEP 1-113-MTP
08-1-8102	Perform aviation medicine (flight surgeon) support activities	ARTEP 1-126-MTP ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-126-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENT: COMPANY**

**TASK: Evacuate Casualties (08-2-0316)**

(FM 8-10-6)	(AR 200-1)	(AR 385-10)
(AR 600-8-1)	(FM 1-100)	(FM 1-113)
(FM 3-3)	(FM 3-04.126)	(FM 3-11.4)
(FM 3-100.4)	(FM 3-100.12)	(FM 4-02)
(FM 4-02.6)	(FM 4-02.7)	(FM 4-02.283)
(FM 8-10-26)	(FM 8-42)	(FM 8-55)
(FM 8-9)	(FM 8-285)	

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** THIS TASK MAY BE USED TO SUPPORT A CHEMICAL, BIOLOGICAL, RADIOLOGICAL, NUCLEAR AND HIGH YIELD EXPLOSIVES (CBRNE) EVENT. Unit personnel are wounded and some may be chemically contaminated. Threat force contact has been broken. Unit defenses have been reorganized. The unit's defensive positions are established as part of the supporting command defense. Casualties are evacuated from defensive positions to designated casualty collection points. All methods of transport are employed. Some wounded enemy prisoners of war (EPW) casualties may require transport. This task is performed simultaneously with other reorganization tasks. The unit has analog and/or digital communications. The higher headquarters operation order (OPORD) and tactical standing operating procedures (TACSOPs), unit TACSOP and standing operating procedures (SOPs), and sleep plan are available. This task is performed under all environmental conditions. The unit may be subject to attack by threat forces, including air, ground, chemical, biological, radiological, and nuclear (CBRN), or direct energy (DE) attack. Simplified collective protective equipment (SCPE) is on hand and/or field-expedient and natural shelters are available. Some iterations of this task should be performed in mission-oriented protective posture level 4 (MOPPP4).

**TASK STANDARDS:** Casualties are evacuated as soon as tactical situation permits according to the TACSOP, OPORD, the provisions of the Geneva Conventions, and FM 8-10-6. At MOPPP4, performance degradation factors increases the time required to evacuate casualties.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>*1. Commander and leaders supervise evacuation of casualties.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Monitored casualty evacuation operations for compliance with TACSOP.</li> <li>b. Identified casualty collection points.</li> <li>c. Identified evacuation requirements.</li> <li>d. Supervised preparation of casualties for evacuation.</li> <li>e. Coordinated evacuation of casualties from unit area with the area defense command post (CP) according to TACSOP.</li> <li>f. Coordinated security requirements for the pickup site with subelements and area defense CP.</li> <li>g. Disseminated evacuation information to unit personnel.</li> <li>h. Forwarded casualty feeder report and witness statements to the area defense CP according to TACSOP.</li> </ul> <p>2. Unit personnel prepare casualties for evacuation.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Provided first aid treatment to casualties.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>b. Reported casualties, as required.</li> <li>c. Collected classified documents such as signal operation instructions (SOI)/signal supplemental instructions (SSI), maps, overlays, and key lists.</li> <li>d. Secured custody of organizational equipment according to TACSOP.</li> <li>e. Forwarded casualty feeder reports to unit headquarters according to TACSOP.</li> </ul> <p>3. Unit personnel evacuate casualties to casualty collection points using manual carries.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Selected type of manual carry appropriate to situation and injury.</li> <li>b. Evacuated casualty without causing further injury.</li> </ul> <p>4. Unit personnel evacuate casualties to casualty collection points using litter carries.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Identified litter team(s).</li> <li>b. Constructed improvised litter from available material, as required.</li> <li>c. Secured casualty on litter.</li> <li>d. Evacuated casualty without causing further injury.</li> </ul> <p>5. Unit personnel evacuate casualties to an maintenance test flights using available vehicles.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Loaded maximum number of casualties.</li> <li>b. Secured casualties in vehicle.</li> <li>c. Evacuated casualties without causing further injury.</li> </ul> <p>*6. Commander and leaders request aeromedical evacuation.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Transmitted request according to OPORD and TACSOP.</li> <li>b. Selected landing site, which provides sufficient space for helicopter hover, landing, and take-off.</li> <li>c. Supervised removal of all dangerous objects likely to be blown about prior to aircraft arrival.</li> <li>d. Supervised security of landing site according to the TACSOP.</li> <li>e. Ensured landing zone (LZ) is appropriately marked (light sets, smoke, and so forth) according to TACSOP, if required.</li> </ul> <p>7. Unit personnel assist in loading ambulance.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Employed proper carrying and loading techniques.</li> <li>b. Loaded casualties in the sequence directed by crew.</li> <li>c. Loaded casualties without causing unnecessary discomfort.</li> <li>d. Employed safety procedures according to TACSOP.</li> <li>e. Employed environmental protection procedures according to TACSOP.</li> </ul> <p>8. Unit personnel evacuate chemically contaminated casualties.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Assumed MOPP4.</li> <li>b. Marked contaminated casualties according to the TACSOP.</li> </ul>		

<b>TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES</b>	<b>GO</b>	<b>NO-GO</b>
<p>c. Notified supporting medical treatment facility (MTF) that contaminated casualties are en route to their location.</p> <p>d. Evacuated casualties directly to a designated decontamination and treatment station.</p> <p>e. Protected casualties from further contamination during evacuation.</p> <p>9. Unit personnel evacuate EPW casualties.</p> <p>a. Maintained security of EPW casualties according to TACSOP.</p> <p>b. Searched EPW casualties for weapons and ordnance prior to evacuation.</p> <p>c. Evacuated EPW casualties according to the provisions of the Geneva conventions and the TACSOP.</p> <p>*10. Commander/leader performs or delegates performance of the steps in the risk management process for each step in troop-leading procedures (appendix C).</p> <p>* Indicates a leader task step</p>		

<b>TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK</b>							
<b>ITERATION</b>	<b>1</b>	<b>2</b>	<b>3</b>	<b>4</b>	<b>5</b>	<b>M</b>	<b>TOTAL</b>
Total Task Steps Evaluated							
Total Task Steps GO							
Training Status GO/NO-GO							

#### **SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
011-510-0004	Employ combat service support	STP 1-15 II
031-503-1015	Protect yourself from NBC injury/ contamination with mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) gear	STP 21-1-SMCT
031-503-3008	Implement mission-oriented protective posture	STP 21-24-SMCT
081-831-0101	Request medical evacuation	STP 21-24-SMCT
081-831-1046	Transport a casualty	STP 21-1-SMCT
081-831-1054	Evacuate casualties	STP 21-24-SMCT

#### **SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
01-2-0341	Perform composite risk management procedures	ARTEP 1-113-MTP
08-2-0003	Provide first aid to casualties	ARTEP 1-126-MTP ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-126-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENT:** COMPANY

**TASK: Perform Field Sanitation Functions (08-2-R315)**

(FM 21-10)	(AR 200-1)	(AR 385-10)
(AR 40-5)	(FM 1-113)	(FM 3-3)
(FM 3-04.126)	(FM 3-11.21)	(FM 3-100.4)
(FM 4-25.12)	(FM 8-42)	(FM 8-284)
(FM 8-285)	(TC 3-34.489)	

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** THIS TASK MAY BE USED TO SUPPORT A CHEMICAL, BIOLOGICAL, RADIOLOGICAL, NUCLEAR, AND EXPLOSIVE (CBRNE) EVENT. Health hazards exist, which require field sanitation measures. The unit is in the field without permanent sanitation or water facilities. The commander has selected and trained the unit field sanitation team (FST). The unit has analog and/or digital communications. Support plan, unit and higher headquarters tactical standing operating procedures (TACSOPs), and higher headquarters operation order (OPORD) are available. All required sanitation equipment is available. Field sanitation measures are continuous and are performed simultaneously with other operational tasks. This task is performed under all environmental conditions. The unit may be subject to attack by threat forces, including air, ground, CBRN, or direct energy (DE) attack. Simplified collective protective equipment (SCPE) is on hand and/or field-expedient and natural shelters are available. Some iterations of this task should be performed in mission-oriented protective posture level 4 (MOPP4).

**TASK STANDARDS:** Field sanitation measures are accomplished according to the TACSOP, OPORD, and FM 21-10. FST performs field sanitation measures according to FM 4-25.12, FM 21-10, TACSOPs, and commander's guidance. At MOPP4, only minimum essential field sanitation activities are performed.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p><b>*1.</b> Commander directs field sanitation measures.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>a.</b> Directed field sanitation activities to counter the health threat, including actions such as the setting up of hand washing stations near each latrine and ration handling areas.</li> <li><b>b.</b> Monitored field sanitation activities for compliance with TACSOP.</li> <li><b>c.</b> Enforced individual field sanitation measures.</li> <li><b>d.</b> Requested assistance from the supporting preventive medicine (PVNTMED) element for sanitation problems that are beyond the expertise of the unit's FST according to TACSOP and OPORD.</li> <li><b>e.</b> Verified all field sanitation deficiencies are corrected.</li> <li><b>f.</b> Reported field sanitation deficiencies which cannot be corrected by unit personnel to the FST.</li> <li><b>g.</b> Enforced safety procedures according to TACSOP.</li> <li><b>h.</b> Enforced environmental protection procedures according to TACSOP.</li> </ul> <p><b>2.</b> FST conducts unit field sanitation measures.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>a.</b> Maintained field sanitation basic load.</li> <li><b>b.</b> Supervised distribution of field sanitation basic load items.</li> </ul>		



TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>c. Tested unit water supply for required chlorine residual level according to TACSOP.</p> <p>d. Inspected water containers and trailers according to TACSOP.</p> <p>e. Monitored personnel to ensure use of personal protective measures against arthropods (skin, clothing, and bednet repellent) and rodents according to applicable directives and commander's guidance.</p> <p>f. Supervised installation of appropriate latrine facilities based on terrain.</p> <p>g. Conducted rodent's surveys, as required.</p> <p>h. Monitored personnel for employment of correct hygiene measures.</p> <p>i. Monitored waste facilities and procedures for compliance with TACSOP, as required.</p> <p>j. Inspected latrines and urinals according to TACSOP.</p> <p>k. Inspected liquid and solid waste disposal facilities to ensure compliance with TACSOP.</p> <p>l. Inspected hand washing devices according to TACSOP.</p> <p>m. Inspected transport, storage, preparation, and service of food for compliance with TACSOP.</p> <p>n. Provided advice, recommendations, and training requirements to the commander.</p> <p>o. Employed safety procedures according to TACSOP.</p> <p>p. Employed environmental protection procedures according to TACSOP.</p> <p>3. Unit personnel employ field sanitation measures.</p> <p>a. Maintained prescribed load of water treatment materials according to TACSOP.</p> <p>b. Prepared nonpotable water for personal use according to TACSOP.</p> <p>c. Consumed only water designated as potable.</p> <p>d. Maintained latrines and hand washing facilities according to TACSOP.</p> <p>e. Employed preventive measures against cold and heat injuries.</p> <p>f. Employed personal hygiene measures.</p> <p>g. Employed preventive measures against arthropod and rodent infestation, which included using skin, clothing, and bednet repellent.</p> <p>h. Reported field sanitation deficiencies to the FST.</p> <p>i. Employed safety procedures according to TACSOP.</p> <p>j. Employed environmental protection procedures according to TACSOP.</p> <p>*4. Commander/leader performs or delegates performance of the steps in the risk management process for each step in troop-leading procedures (appendix C).</p> <p>* Indicates a leader task step</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
<i>ITERATION</i>	<i>1</i>	<i>2</i>	<i>3</i>	<i>4</i>	<i>5</i>	<i>M</i>	<i>TOTAL</i>
Total Task Steps Evaluated							
Total Task Steps GO							
Training Status GO/NO-GO							

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
081-831-1047	Supervise the implementation of preventive medicine policies	STP 21-24-SMCT
101-92Y-0006	Inspect equipment for accountability, cleanliness, and serviceability	STP 21-24-SMCT
850-001-2000	Employ accident prevention measures and risk management process	STP 21-24-SMCT
850-001-3001	Control mission safety hazard	STP 21-24-SMCT

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
01-2-0341	Perform composite risk management procedures	ARTEP 1-113-MTP
08-2-0220	Establish operational areas	ARTEP 1-126-MTP
63-2-5518.08	Establish unit headquarters area	

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** COMMAND SECTION  
S2 SECTION

**TASK: Handle Enemy Prisoners of War (19-3-3106)**

(FM 3-19.4) (FM 1-100) (FM 1-113)  
(FM 2-0) (FM 3-04.111) (FM 3-04.126)  
(FM 3-19.1) (FM 3-100.12)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The element, S2 section/leader, must process all enemy Soldiers who have surrendered or were captured in their area of operations (AO). Some iterations of this task should be performed in mission-oriented protective posture level 4 (MOPP4).

**TASK STANDARDS:** The capturing element processes and evacuates the enemy prisoners of war (EPWs) according to the unit standing operating procedure (SOP). The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in MOPP4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>1. The S2/leader searches the EPWs.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Removed weapons and documents that had potential intelligence value.</li> <li>b. Returned personal items of no military intelligence value, such as protective clothing and equipment.</li> <li>c. Provided receipts to the prisoners for items that were confiscated.</li> </ul> <p>2. The S2/leader segregates the EPWs.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Segregated the EPWs by rank, sex, desertion status, civilian status, nationality, and ideology.</li> <li>b. Evacuated the sick and wounded EPWs through the medical channels.</li> </ul> <p>3. The S2/leader silence the EPWs.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Prevented the EPW leaders from giving orders.</li> <li>b. Prevented EPWs from talking among themselves.</li> <li>c. Prevented the EPWs from planning an escape.</li> </ul> <hr/> <p><b>Note.</b> The element guard personnel should not talk in front of the EPWs, except to give orders or maintain discipline.</p> <hr/> <p>4. The S2/leader safeguards the EPWs.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Removed the EPWs from the dangers of the battlefield.</li> <li>b. Ensured that the EPWs were not abused.</li> <li>c. Treated the EPWs humanely.</li> </ul> <p>5. The S2/leader tags the EPWs with Department of Defense (DD) Form 2745 (<i>Enemy Prisoner of War [EPW] Capture Tag</i>).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Annotated the date and time, grid coordinates, capturing unit, and circumstances of the capture.</li> <li>b. Attached part A to the EPW.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
c. Retained part B for the unit records. d. Attached part C to the property. 6. The S2/leader rapidly transports the EPWs to the rear. a. Notified higher headquarters that the element had EPWs. b. Removed the EPWs rearward to the nearest military police collecting point. c. Reported information of potential intelligence to higher headquarters. d. Disposed of captured data and equipment according to the unit SOP. e. Planned for future operations. *7. Commander/leader identifies and controls hazards according to risk management procedures (see appendix C). * Indicates a leader task step		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
Total Task Steps Evaluated							
Total Task Steps GO							
Training Status GO/NO-GO							

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
011-510-0300	Coordinate staff duties/responsibilities in tactical units	STP 1-15 II
011-510-0303	Conduct operations missions briefing/debriefing	STP 1-15 II
011-510-0304	Conduct battalion/brigade rehearsal	STP 1-15 II
011-510-0305	Conduct battalion/brigade after-action review	STP 1-15 II

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
01-2-0341	Perform composite risk management procedures	ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-126-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** COMMAND SECTION  
BATTALION

**TASK: Restrict Local Population Interference With Ongoing U.S. Military Operations (01-1-0342)**

(FM 41-10)	(FM 1-100)	(FM 1-113)
(FM 3-04.111)	(FM 3-04.126)	(FM 3-06)
(FM 3-06.11)	(FM 3-100.4)	(FM 3-100.12)
(FM 7-0)	(FM 7-1)	

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The battalion is conducting stability operations in a simulated (live, virtual, or constructive) combat environment. The battalion’s main command post (CP) is operational and the staff sections and digital systems are functional. The battalion is conducting operations independently or as part of a higher headquarters and has received an operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) to conduct operations at the location and time specified requiring cooperation and coordination with civilian authorities. The unit commander’s obligation to civil and military authority is defined. The commander has provided guidance to the S3 section directing it to restrict interference of local population with U.S. military operations. The unit has been augmented with a S5 and a civil affairs detachment support team (CADST). The order includes all applicable overlays and or graphics. All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. The unit has communications with higher, adjacent, subordinate, and supporting elements. The unit has been provided guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and or rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Reports are being received through normal channels. Some iterations of this task should be performed in mission-oriented protective posture level 4 (MOPP4).

**TASK STANDARDS:** The battalion restricted local population interference with ongoing U.S. military operations according to tactical standing operating procedures (TACSOP), applicable publications, the OPORD/FRAGO, and or higher commander’s guidance. The unit analyzed the impact of the mission on the civilian populace and the impact of the civilian populace on the operation. The unit planned operations security (OPSEC). Correct assessment of the local civilian population and its relationship to military operations resulted in minimal interference with friendly forces. All potential problem areas were identified and addressed. The unit developed a dislocated civilian (DC) plan. Force protection is applied to all operations. The unit complied with the ROE and or ROI.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>1. The S3 develops an area survey concerning the important characteristics of the displaced civilians within the battalion area of operations.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Reviewed current intelligence information.</li> <li>b. Estimated the number of DCs and their points of origin and anticipated direction of movement.</li> <li>c. Determined the number of personnel in each collection cam, assembly area, and DC camp within the area of operations (AO).</li> <li>d. Determined the health status of DCs.</li> <li>e. Determined the transportation means of DCs.</li> <li>f. Determined the DC direction of travel.</li> <li>g. Identified who was in charge of the DC camps.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>h. Estimated the increase or decrease of DCs within the next 48 hours.</p> <p>2. The S3 establishes a plan to restrict civilian interference.</p> <p>a. Coordinated with the S1 for—</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Allocation of military police assets to support local officials.</li> <li>(2) Availability of medical supplies, resources, and personnel that could augment the civilian community.</li> <li>(3) Policies on relations between the civilian community and military personnel.</li> </ol> <p>b. Coordinated with the S2 for—</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Intelligence collection operations.</li> <li>(2) Assistance in determining the capabilities of host-nation government agencies.</li> <li>(3) Procedures for screening civilian traffic to uncover agents and saboteurs.</li> </ol> <p>c. Directed assistant S3 to coordinate section personnel for—</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Psychological operations support.</li> <li>(2) Identification of alternative elements to perform civil-military operations missions.</li> <li>(3) Establishment of priorities for allocation of resources.</li> <li>(4) Advice on the availability of units and personnel to function in an advisory or assistance role.</li> <li>(5) Information on the tactical situation, boundaries, and plans for future operations.</li> <li>(6) Tactical requirements for control of civilian traffic.</li> <li>(7) Recommendations of routes to use for evacuation of personnel.</li> <li>(8) Recommendations concerning need for evacuation of refugees.</li> </ol> <p>d. Coordinated with the S4 for—</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Availability of logistics support and priorities and allocations of supplies and equipment for civilian assistance.</li> <li>(2) Mass sanitation efforts, to include appropriate solid- and human-waste disposal.</li> <li>(3) Release of civil-affairs stocks (class X).</li> <li>(4) Routes that were reserved for logistics reasons and ensuring that civilian movement was coordinated with the traffic-control plan.</li> <li>(5) Recommendations concerning the use of military transportation for movement of DCs.</li> </ol> <p>e. Coordinated with host-nation officials (such as the mayor, other elected officials, and police and fire chiefs) to limit/control civilian movement.</p> <p>f. Coordinated with the staff judge advocate for advice on legal aspects of the civilian population.</p> <p>g. Coordinated with the provost marshal's office for assistance in developing the civilian traffic control plans; planning the location of signs, roadblocks, patrols and checkpoints; and enforcing civilian traffic control, as required.</p> <p>h. Coordinated with subordinate commanders for estimates of civilian interference problems in their appropriate sectors.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>3. The S3 briefs the commander on the proposed plan to restrict civilian interference with U.S. military operations.</p> <p>4. The S3 incorporates the plan in the OPORD.</p> <p>5. The S3 monitors implementation of the plan to ensure that—</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Relief supplies reached the DC camps.</li> <li>b. Transportation assets were used to move DCs, particularly the sick, injured, pregnant, and children.</li> <li>c. Military police (MP) assets were available.</li> <li>d. The S2 screened civilian traffic.</li> <li>e. Psychological operations assets were able to assist in media production and dissemination, if needed.</li> <li>f. The surgeon was kept informed of the health status of civilians and of possible medical assistance, if needed.</li> <li>g. Civil-affairs stocks (class X) were available.</li> </ul> <p>6. The S3 informs the commander of current or projected civilian interference with U.S. military operations and recommends actions to limit the effect on U.S. forces.</p> <p>7. Commander/leader identifies and controls hazards according to risk management procedures (see appendix C).</p> <p>* Indicates a leader task step</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
Total Task Steps Evaluated							
Total Task Steps GO							
Training Status GO/NO-GO							

#### SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
011-510-0022	Determine characteristics of U.S. Army organization and capabilities	STP 1-15 II
011-510-0301	Participate in the military decision making process	STP 1-15 II
011-510-0303	Conduct operations missions briefing/debriefing	STP 1-15 II
011-510-0306	Perform personnel/administration staff duties/responsibilities	STP 1-15 II
011-510-0309	Perform logistics staff duties/responsibilities	STP 1-15 II
011-510-0311	Conduct military briefings	STP 1-15 II

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
01-1-5134	Plan aviation operations using the military decision making process	ARTEP 1-113-MTP  ARTEP 1-118-MTP ARTEP 1-126-MTP
01-2-0341	Perform composite risk management procedures	ARTEP 1-113-MTP  ARTEP 1-126-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**



**ELEMENTS:** COMMAND SECTION  
BATTALION

**TASK: Conduct Command and Control Battalion/Squadron Operations (01-1-0343)**

(FM 3-04.111)	(FM 1-100)	(FM 1-113)
(FM 3-04.126)	(FM 3-100.4)	(FM 3-100.12)
(FM 3-52)	(FM 6-0)	(FM 7-0)
(FM 7-1)		

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The battalion is conducting assigned missions in a simulated (live, virtual, or constructive) combat environment. The battalion’s main command post (CP) is operational and the staff sections, digital and/or analog systems, are functional. The battalion is conducting operations independently or as part of a higher headquarters. All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. The battalion headquarters has analog and/or digital communications with higher and lower headquarters. The higher headquarters operation order (OPORD) with all annexes, status reports, maps, overlays, and other required documents has been forwarded to the commander. The unit, higher, and lower tactical standing operating procedures (TACSOPs) are available. The unit has been provided guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and/or rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. This task is performed under all day and night environmental conditions. The unit is subject to air, chemical, biological, radiological, and nuclear (CBRN) and level I ground threat forces attack. Some iterations of this task should be performed in mission-oriented protective posture level 4 (MOPP4).

**TASK STANDARDS:** The unit conducted command and control of operations according to the tactical standing operating procedures (TACSOP), the order, and or higher commander’s guidance. Battalion staff and leaders employed command; control; communications; computers; intelligence, surveillance, and reconnaissance (C4ISR) infrastructure. Unit leaders and staff allocated resources. Unit leaders employed CPs. The unit complied with the ROE and or ROI. At MOPP4, performance degradation factors increase time of decisionmaking procedures and activities.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>*1. The commander and staff gained and/or maintained situational understanding using information gathered from Force XXI Battle Command Brigade and Below (FBCB2), frequency modulated (FM), digital and or analog communications systems, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources.</p> <p>2. Commander develops techniques and procedures promoting expeditious flow of information throughout the entire command and control (C2) process.</p> <p>3. Attack reconnaissance leaders, assault leaders when applicable, and staff accomplish the following—</p> <p>a. Emphasized the need to include integration, use, and synchronization of the following digital systems into rehearsals and battle drills.</p> <p>(1) Global command and control system—Army (GCCS-A).</p> <p>(2) Army tactical and control system (ATCCS).</p> <p>(3) Force XXI Battle Command Battalion/Brigade and Below (FBCB2).</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>b. Defined and articulated the commander's intent and commander's critical information requirements (CCIR) to eliminate confusion and potential information overload.</li> <li>c. Established clearly defined standing operating procedures (SOPs) for the operation of communication and digitized systems within the unit.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Ensured SOPs included procedural guidance for information prioritization.</li> <li>(2) Ensured SOPs established primary and secondary transmission means for information categories when in and out of enemy contact.                                     <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) SINGARS frequency modulated (FM) anti-jam radio.</li> <li>(b) Have-Quick ultra high frequencies (UHF).</li> </ul> </li> </ul> </li> <li>d. Designed CPs to maximize the capabilities of digitized systems in the analysis, formulation, and dissemination of information.</li> </ul>		
<p>4. Unit leaders and staff plan operations.</p> <hr/> <p><b>Note.</b> Refer to task 01-1-5134, Plan aviation operations using the military decision making process.</p> <hr/>		
<p>5. Unit leaders and staff make timely decisions and take appropriate actions.</p> <hr/> <p><b>Note.</b> Unit leaders and staff must make timely decisions to ensure the unit maintains the initiative and dictates the tempo of operations and to allow subordinate echelons time to prepare for their missions.</p> <hr/>		
<p>6. Unit leaders and staff task organize to obtain the optimum mix of subordinate elements to accomplish the mission by coordinating—</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. The right mix of AH-64D and OH-58D aircraft, or UH-60 aircraft, when applicable, for assigned mission.</li> <li>b. Linkup time.</li> <li>c. Linkup time.</li> <li>d. Responsible element.</li> </ul>		
<p>7. Unit leaders and staff delegate authority.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Defined specified tasks in orders.</li> <li>b. Used mission orders when feasible.</li> </ul>		
<p>8. Unit leaders and staff allocate resources.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Prioritized allocation of resources based on mission analysis and staff input.</li> <li>b. Accepted risks when allocating resources.</li> </ul> <hr/> <p><b>Note.</b> Refer to task 01-2-0341, Perform composite risk management procedures and/or appendix C.</p> <hr/>		
<p>9. Unit leaders and staff create and disseminate orders and graphic control measures.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p><b>10.</b> Unit leaders and staff conduct liaison operations.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Appointed liaison officers early in the planning process.</li> <li>b. Coordinated with subordinate, higher, supporting, and adjacent elements to gather information for planning.</li> </ul> <p><b>11.</b> Unit leaders and staff communicate with higher, adjacent, subordinate, and supporting units.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Planned communications architectures including the use of retransmission means, digital network linkages, and command and control (C2) node placement.</li> <li>b. Followed proper signal and communications security procedures.</li> <li>c. Ensured subordinates understood the commander's intent so they know what to do when communications are lost.</li> <li>d. Provided redundancy in means of communications.</li> <li>e. Kept digital orders, overlays, and messages concise to avoid overloading the tactical internet and digital systems.</li> </ul> <p><b>12.</b> Unit leaders and staff prepare for the operation.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Performed backbriefs with subordinate commanders, leaders, and key staff.</li> <li>b. Maintained status of preparations.</li> <li>c. Conducted rehearsals.</li> <li>d. Supervised subordinate preparations and rehearsals.</li> </ul> <p><b>13.</b> Unit leaders and staff see the battlefield.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Monitored digital and analog communications and/or information transfer systems and situation reports (SITREPs).</li> <li>b. Employed C4ISR infrastructure.</li> </ul> <p><b>14.</b> Unit leaders and staff employ C2 facilities.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Employed the command group, (Commander). <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Directed C2 of the unit.</li> <li>(2) Formed anytime the commander goes forward to control an operation.</li> <li>(3) Positioned (normally) with the main effort headquarters.</li> </ul> </li> <li>b. Employed the main CP executive officer (XO). <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Controlled current operations.</li> <li>(2) Synchronized combat, combat support (CS), and combat service support (CSS) activities in support of the overall operation.</li> <li>(3) Provided a focal point for the development of intelligence.</li> <li>(4) Supported the commander and subordinates by monitoring, analyzing, and disseminating information.</li> <li>(5) Tracked the current battle by monitoring and anticipating the commander's decision points.</li> <li>(6) Planned future operations.</li> <li>(7) Monitored rear operations.</li> <li>(8) Coordinated with higher headquarters and adjacent units.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>(9) Kept the higher headquarters informed.</p> <p>(10) Provided net control station (NCS) for the operations and intelligence (OI) radio net and backup NCS for the command radio net.</p> <p>(11) Provided terrain management and Army airspace command and control (A2C2).</p> <p>(12) Provided a stable, secure planning facility.</p> <p>(13) Produced and disseminated the commander's orders.</p> <p>(14) Planned and controlled reconnaissance and surveillance (R&amp;S) operations.</p> <p>c. Employed the rear CP.</p> <p>(1) Consisted of the unit S1, S4, surgeon, and any attached elements.</p> <p>(2) Tracked the current battle.</p> <p>(3) Provided CSS representation to the main CP for planning and integration.</p> <p>(4) Sustained operations.</p> <p>(5) Forecasted and coordinated future requirements.</p> <p>(6) Served as the entry point for units entering the unit rear area.</p> <p>(7) Monitored main supply routes (MSRs) and controlled CSS traffic.</p> <p>(8) Coordinated the evacuation of casualties, equipment, and enemy prisoners of war (EPWs).</p> <p>15. Unit leaders and staff execute the plan.</p> <p>a. Verified subordinate elements report enemy and friendly actions, change in status, and any other factors that would require changer to the plan.</p> <p>b. Won the battle.</p> <p>(1) Directed the maneuver of attack reconnaissance units.</p> <p>(2) Controlled direct and indirect fires using digital and or analog communications systems.</p> <p>(3) Directed other CS actions to cope wit changes in mission, enemy, terrain and weather, troops and support available, time available, and civil considerations (METT-TC) factors.</p> <p>c. Verified FRAGOs were clear, concise, and quickly executed by subordinates.</p> <p>d. Disseminated changes that affected the battle.</p> <p>e. Coordinated all battle actions between unit and higher elements as required.</p> <p>16. Unit leaders and staff track the battle and assess the operations by;</p> <p>a. Monitored continuously the situation and the progress of the operation.</p> <p>b. Directed adjustments to ensure that operations remained aligned with the commander's intent.</p> <p>17. Unit leaders and staff report status to the higher headquarters.</p> <p>18. Commander/leader performs or delegates performance of the steps in the risk management process for each step in troop-leading procedures (see appendix C).</p> <p>* Indicates a leader task step</p>		

<b>TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK</b>							
<b>ITERATION</b>	<b>1</b>	<b>2</b>	<b>3</b>	<b>4</b>	<b>5</b>	<b>M</b>	<b>TOTAL</b>
Total Task Steps Evaluated							
Total Task Steps GO							
Training Status GO/NO-GO							

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
011-237-2012	Perform tactical flight mission planning (UH-60)	STP 1-15-219 STP 1-15-219-OS TC 1-237 STP 1-15II-500-MQS STP 1-TACOPS
011-510-0018	Employ Army airspace command and control	STP 1-15 II

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
01-1-5134	Plan aviation operations using the military decision making process	ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-118-MTP ARTEP 1-126-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** COMMAND SECTION  
 BATTALION  
 EXECUTIVE OFFICER

**TASK: Direct the Battalion/Squadron Staff (01-1-0344)**

(FM 3-04.111) (FM 1-100) (FM 1-113)  
 (FM 3-04.126) (FM 3-100.12) (FM 7-0)  
 (FM 7-1)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The battalion is conducting assigned missions in a simulated (live, virtual, or constructive) combat environment. The battalion is conducting operations independently or as part of a higher headquarters and has received an operation order (OPORD) and the commander's guidance to direct the battalion's staff. The main command post (CP), the administrative and logistics operations center (ALOC) are operational, and staff sections and digital systems are functional. The executive officer (XO) supervises the staff in the absence of the commander as they plan and coordinate combat, combat support (CS), and combat service support (CSS) operations. Some iterations of this task should be performed in mission-oriented protective posture level 4 (MOPP4).

**TASK STANDARDS:** All assigned operational and tactical missions were completed according to the commander's intent and the unit's tactical standing operating procedures (TACSOPs). Assigned and/or attached units were given adequate time to plan operations as a result of timely information and staff coordination.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The XO directs and supervises the battalion's primary and special staffs.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensured that established standard operating procedures for the primary and special staff were adhered to and enforced.</li> <li>b. Determined staff priorities and set standards.</li> <li>c. Established suspenses and timelines.</li> <li>d. Informed the commander and staff of all matters affecting the battalion.</li> <li>e. Ensured that the unit and staff had vertical and horizontal lines of communication for easy flow of critical information.</li> <li>f. Coordinated staff estimates and recommendations.</li> <li>g. Developed presentations for the commander.</li> <li>h. Coordinated the development and issuance of plans, orders, and procedures.</li> <li>i. Ensured that required liaison were coordinated, established and maintained.</li> <li>j. Supervised execution of the military decisionmaking process (MDMP).</li> <li>k. Supervised implementation of the commander's guidance and directives.</li> </ol> </li> <li>2. The XO coordinates the administrative and logistics support of the battalion.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Coordinated personnel management with the S1.</li> <li>b. Coordinated logistics management with the S4.</li> <li>c. Supervised the establishment of the ALOC.</li> </ol> </li> </ol>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>d. Supervised the special staff.</p> <p>3. The XO commands and controls operations in the absence of the commander.</p> <p>a. Assumed command of the unit.</p> <p>b. Notified higher headquarters and subordinate units of the situation.</p> <p>c. Received information from the staff and subordinate elements of mission, personnel, and equipment status.</p> <p>d. Received missions from higher headquarters and directed operations.</p> <p>e. Continued to direct and supervise the staff.</p> <p>4. As staff coordinator and supervisor, the XO—</p> <p>a. Formulated and announced staff operating policies.</p> <p>b. Ensured that the commander and staff are informed on matters affecting the commander.</p> <p>c. Supervised the main CP's operations.</p> <p>d. Responsible for the execution of staff tasks and the coordinated efforts of staff members.</p> <p>e. Ensured that the staff performed as a team and assigned definite responsibilities.</p> <p>f. Transmitted the commander's decisions to the staff and to subordinate commanders, when applicable, staff members can deal directly with the commander; however, they are obligated to inform the XO of the commander's instructions or requirements.</p> <p>g. Established and monitored liaison and liaison activities.</p> <p>h. Responsible for the information program.</p> <p>i. Supervised maintenance operations.</p> <p>j. Oversaw force protection measures in fixed-base operations.</p> <p>k. Coordinated medical evacuation (MEDEVAC) operations.</p> <p>l. Served as the materiel readiness officer.</p> <p>5. The XO supervises risk management integration across the entire staff according to the responsibilities and standards in appendix C.</p> <p>* Indicates a leader task step</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
Total Task Steps Evaluated							
Total Task Steps GO							
Training Status GO/NO-GO							

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
011-510-0300	Coordinate staff duties/responsibilities in tactical units	STP 1-15 II
011-510-0301	Participate in the military decision making process	STP 1-15 II
011-510-0303	Conduct operations missions briefing/debriefing	STP 1-15 II
011-510-0304	Conduct battalion/brigade rehearsal	STP 1-15 II

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
01-1-5134	Plan aviation operations using the military decision making process	ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-118-MTP ARTEP 1-126-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**



**ELEMENTS:** BATTALION  
 COMMAND SERGEANT MAJOR  
 COMMAND SECTION

**TASK: Manage the Status of Enlisted Personnel Assigned to the Battalion (01-1-0346)**

(FM 3-0) (DA Pam 385-1) (FM 1-100)  
 (FM 1-113) (FM 3-04.111) (FM 3-04.126)  
 (FM 3-100.12) (FM 7-0) (FM 7-1)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The battalion is conducting assigned missions in a simulated (live, virtual, or constructive) combat environment. The battalion main command post (CP) is operational and the staff sections and digital systems are functional. The battalion has established communications, and digital connectivity via the Army battle command system (ABCS), when equipped, with subordinate, adjacent, and higher headquarters, and is passing information according to higher headquarters' and the unit's tactical standing operating procedures (TACSOP). The battalion is conducting maneuver, combat service (CS), and combat service support (CSS) operations. The command sergeant major (CSM) has received the commander's guidance directing it to manage the status of battalion enlisted personnel. Some iterations of this task should be performed in mission-oriented protective posture level 4 (MOPP4).

**TASK STANDARDS:** The battalion's CSM managed the status of battalion enlisted personnel according to the commander's guidance and regulatory policies. The CSM informed the commander on all matters and issues related to Soldiers in the unit that would negatively impact the battalion's assigned missions.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p><b>Note.</b> The battalion CSM performs duties and responsibilities that vary according to the commander's specific focus and the unit's type, size, and mission.</p> <p>1. The battalion's CSM manages the status of enlisted personnel using all means of data collection to include digital systems.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Identified numbers of enlisted personnel assigned in primary military occupational specialty (PMOS) or secondary military occupational specialty (SMOS).</li> <li>b. Managed numbers of personnel assigned in other than PMOS or SMOS.</li> <li>c. Managed number of vacancies in critical positions.</li> <li>d. Managed number of personnel on routine and emergency leave.</li> <li>e. Managed number of personnel performing temporary duties and duties in other than their assigned MOS.</li> <li>f. Identified number of personnel in the hospital, on quarters, or otherwise unavailable for duty.</li> </ul> <p>2. CSM informs the commander of critical enlisted personnel issues that will negatively impact the battalion's assigned missions.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p><b>3.</b> CSM maintains communications with subordinate unit noncommissioned officers (NCOs) and enlisted personnel through the NCO channel.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>a.</b> Developed a NCO professional development program.</li> <li><b>b.</b> Reviewed and developed common task training, MOS training, and other enlisted training.</li> </ul> <p><b>4.</b> The battalion CSM provides advice and recommendations to the commander and staff in matters pertaining to enlisted personnel preparedness and provides commander with factors that affect the Soldier's performance.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>a.</b> CSM advised the commander on positive and negative factors influencing the Soldier's performance.</li> <li><b>b.</b> CSM recommended alternate courses of action (COA) to minimize negative factors.</li> </ul> <p><b>5.</b> CSM develops, reviews, and manages unit programs to include safety; education; health; and moral, welfare, and recreation (MWR) for assigned enlisted personnel.</p> <p><b>6.</b> CSM enforces established policies and standards on the performance, training, appearance, and conduct of enlisted personnel.</p> <p><b>7.</b> CSM provides counsel and guidance to NCOs and other enlisted personnel.</p> <p><b>8.</b> CSM performs other duties prescribed by the commander that may include reception and orientation of newly-assigned enlisted personnel, and assisting in the inspection of command activities and facilities.</p> <p><b>9.</b> CSM performs command safety duties in the planning and direction of missions and operations.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>a.</b> Identified and controlled hazards according to risk management procedures.</li> <li><b>b.</b> Ensures implementation of the command safety and occupational health program according to DA Pam 385-1 to meet the next higher commander's accident prevention guidance.</li> </ul> <p><b>10.</b> The CSM is the commander's primary advisor concerning enlisted Soldiers and acts in the name of the commander as directed.</p> <p><b>11.</b> The CSM focuses attention on functions critical to the success of the operation.</p> <p><b>12.</b> The CSM assists the commander in the following ways—</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>a.</b> Monitored NCO development, promotions, and assignments.</li> <li><b>b.</b> Identified, planned, and assessed Soldier performance on tasks that support collective (unit) tasks on the mission essential task list (METL).</li> <li><b>c.</b> Monitored subordinate unit morale.</li> <li><b>d.</b> Provided recommendations, expedited procurement and preparation of enlisted replacements for subordinate units.</li> <li><b>e.</b> Monitored food service and other logistics operations.</li> <li><b>f.</b> Conducted informal investigations.</li> <li><b>g.</b> Assisted in controlling battalion movements.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>h. May lead the battalion advanced or quartering party during a major movement, coordinating closely with the headquarters commander.</p> <p>i. Monitored the CSS effort when the executive officer (XO) is in the tactical operations center (TOC) or forward.</p> <p>13. CSM performs or delegates performance of the steps in the risk management process of each step in troop-leading procedures (see appendix C.)</p> <p>* Indicates a leader task step</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
Total Task Steps Evaluated							
Total Task Steps GO							
Training Status GO/NO-GO							

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
011-510-0301	Participate in the military decision making process	STP 1-15 II
011-510-0306	Perform personnel/administration staff duties/responsibilities	STP 1-15 II

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
01-1-5134	Plan aviation operations using the military decision making process	ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-118-MTP ARTEP 1-126-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** COMMAND SECTION  
 BATTALION  
 COMMAND SERGEANT MAJOR

**TASK: Integrate Key Operations and Support Functions into Battalion Operations (01-1-0347)**

(FM 3-04.111)	(FM 1-100)	(FM 1-113)
(FM 3-0)	(FM 3-04.126)	(FM 3-100.12)
(FM 7-0)	(FM 7-1)	(FM 100-14)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The battalion is conducting assigned missions in a simulated (live, virtual, or constructive) combat environment. The battalion main command post (CP) is operational and the staff sections and digital systems are functional. The battalion has established communications, and digital connectivity via the Army battle command system (ABCS), when equipped, with subordinate, adjacent, and higher headquarters, and is passing information according to higher headquarters' and the unit's tactical standing operating procedures (TACSOP). The battalion is preparing for or is engaged in operations. Information and intelligence is provided according to unit SOPs. Combat support (CS) and combat service support (CSS) assets are available. The operation plan (OPLAN) or operation order (OPORD) has been issued. The command sergeant major (CSM) has received the commander's guidance directing it to integrate key operational and support functions into battalion operations. Some iterations of this task should be performed in mission-oriented protective posture level 4 (MOPP4).

**TASK STANDARDS:** The battalion's CSM integrated key operational and support functions into battalion operations according to the commander's guidance and TACSOP. Battalion planning, coordination, and operations were enhanced as result of timely advice and recommendations from the CSM. Plans and orders developed and executed ensured continuous battalion operations and force sustainment.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p><b>1.</b> The battalion CSM participates in planning operations using the military decisionmaking process (MDMP).</p> <hr/> <p><i>Note.</i> Refer to task 01-1-5134, Plan operations using the military decision making process.</p> <hr/> <p><b>2.</b> The CSM—</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>a.</b> Reviewed all essential tasks assigned by higher headquarters.</li> <li><b>b.</b> Observed each staff section during the planning process, and received situational updates.</li> <li><b>c.</b> Participated in the staff estimate and recommendation process.</li> <li><b>d.</b> Evaluated status (training, health, welfare, and moral) of subordinate unit enlisted personnel.</li> </ul> <p><b>3.</b> CSM coordinates and integrates key administrative and logistic support functions into battalion operations.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>a.</b> Monitored key personnel and logistics status of the main CP.</li> </ul>		

<b>TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES</b>	<b>GO</b>	<b>NO-GO</b>
<p>b. Coordinated with the headquarters and headquarters company commander to ensure continuous administrative and logistics support for the main CP.</p> <p>c. Monitored the security and training of enlisted personnel at the main CP.</p> <p>d. Recommended to the battalion executive officer courses of action to improve key administrative and logistics support functions; directs necessary actions as required.</p> <p>4. CSM performs or delegates performance of the steps in the risk management process for each step in troop-leading procedures (see appendix C).</p> <p>* Indicates a leader task step</p>		

<b>TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK</b>							
<b>ITERATION</b>	<b>1</b>	<b>2</b>	<b>3</b>	<b>4</b>	<b>5</b>	<b>M</b>	<b>TOTAL</b>
Total Task Steps Evaluated							
Total Task Steps GO							
Training Status GO/NO-GO							

#### **SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
011-510-0003	Employ mobility/countermobility/survivability	STP 1-15 II
011-510-0004	Employ combat service support	STP 1-15 II
011-510-0006	Employ fire support	STP 1-15 II
011-510-0007	Employ aviation in offensive operations	STP 1-15 II
011-510-0008	Employ aviation in defensive operations	STP 1-15 II
011-510-0013	Employ air assault operations	STP 1-15 II
011-510-0018	Employ army airspace command and control	STP 1-15 II
011-510-0019	Plan aviation brigade operations	STP 1-15 II

#### **SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
01-1-5134	Plan aviation operations using the military decision making process	ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-118-MTP ARTEP 1-126-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** COMMAND SECTION  
 AVIATION SAFETY OFFICER  
 BATTALION

**TASK: Manage the Battalion/Squadron Safety Program (01-1-0348)**  
 (AR 385-10) (AR 95-1) (FM 1-100)  
 (FM 1-113) (FM 3-04.111) (FM 3-04.126)  
 (FM 3-04.513) (FM 3-100.12) (FM 7-0)  
 (FM 7-1)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The battalion is in a simulated (live, virtual, or constructive) combat environment. The aviation safety officer (ASO) has received the commander's guidance directing him to manage the battalion's safety program. The main command post (CP) and digital systems are functional. The battalion is conducting maneuver, combat service (CS), and combat service support (CSS) operations. Reports are being received through normal channels. Some iterations of this task should be performed in mission-oriented protective posture level 4 (MOPP4).

**TASK STANDARDS:** The unit conducts all missions without personnel loss or injury or equipment loss or damage as a result of violations of approved safety procedures.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p><b>1.</b> The safety officer and/or noncommissioned officer (NCO), in support of the commander's safety program, manages the safety program, monitors safety in functional areas, and assists with the integration of risk management into operations. The program includes safety and occupational health, risk management, safety awareness, accident prevention, and accident investigation and reporting procedures for aviation and ground operations.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>a.</b> Served as the principal safety and risk management advisor, trainer, planner, and evaluator for the commander.</li> <li><b>b.</b> Investigated reports and analyzes unit accidents. Identifies cause factor trends and recommends corrective action.</li> <li><b>c.</b> Monitored execution of safety and risk management procedures in the readiness and tactical standing operating procedure (SOP), including the aircraft preaccident plan.</li> <li><b>d.</b> Evaluated and reported on unit success in meeting the commander's safety goals, objectives, and priority actions.</li> <li><b>e.</b> Provided safety and risk management training for unit personnel to correct observed shortcomings.</li> </ul> <p><b>2.</b> The aviation safety officer provides technical assistance to the operations officer for the development of a preaccident plan.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>a.</b> Assisted with testing the plan to ensure adequacy.</li> <li><b>b.</b> Recommended revisions to the plan, if necessary.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p><b>3.</b> The battalion commander supports compliance with the Army safety program.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>a.</b> Established a unit safety program and supports higher headquarters safety requirements to ensure the safety of personnel and equipment under his/her control.</li> <li><b>b.</b> Appointed and rated a safety officer to manage and implement the unit safety program. Appointed a safety NCO, as necessary.</li> <li><b>c.</b> Ensured that safe practices and safety standards are incorporated in all directives, SOPs, and orders.</li> <li><b>d.</b> Established measures to protect against discriminatory actions or reprisals resulting from exercising safety and health rights.</li> <li><b>e.</b> Ensured that the safety SOP describes channels for reporting unsafe or unhealthy conditions.</li> <li><b>f.</b> Ensured that reports of unsafe and unhealthy conditions are properly investigated and appropriate action taken to correct hazards identified.</li> </ul> <p><b>4.</b> The safety officer is frequently the other crew member for the battalion commander or the S3.</p> <p><b>5.</b> The safety officer is responsible to the standardization instructor pilots (SIP) for the safety contents of the reading files. The safety officer is also a principal trainer and a peer leader for the company safety officers.</p> <p><b>*6.</b> Commander/leader performs or delegates performance of the steps in the risk management process for each step in troop-leading procedures (see appendix C).</p> <p>* Indicates a leader task step</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
Total Task Steps Evaluated							
Total Task Steps GO							
Training Status GO/NO-GO							

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
011-510-0301	Participate in the military decision making process	STP 1-15 II
011-510-1700	Implement the Army safety program	STP 1-15 II

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
01-1-5134	Plan aviation operations using the military decision making process	ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-118-MTP ARTEP 1-126-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** COMMAND SECTION  
 BATTALION  
 AVIATION STANDARDIZATION OFFICER

**TASK: Direct the Battalion/Squadron Standardization Program (01-1-0349)**

(TC 1-210)	(AR 95-1)	(FM 1-100)
(FM 1-113)	(FM 3-04.111)	(FM 3-04.126)
(FM 3-100.12)	(FM 7-0)	(FM 7-1)

**ITERATION:** 1      2      3      4      5      M      (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T      P      U      (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The battalion is in a simulated (live, virtual, or constructive) combat environment. The battalion's main command post (CP) is operational and the staff sections and digital systems are functional. The commander has directed the standardization pilot to manage the battalion's standardization program. The battalion staff has received a warning order (WARNO)/operation order (OPORD)/fragmentary order (FRAGO) to conduct combat, combat support (CS) or combat service support (CSS) operations. The executive officer (XO) is coordinating the staff. Some iterations of this task should be performed in mission-oriented protective posture level 4 (MOPP4).

**TASK STANDARDS:** The coordination and management of the battalion's standardization program ensured that the unit readiness level is attainable and sustainable with available resources. The SP managed the battalion's standardization program according to the battalion's tactical standing operating procedures (TACSOPs) and the commander's guidance. The unit conducted all missions without personnel loss or injury or equipment loss or damage as a result of violations of approved tactics, techniques or procedures. The coordination and management of the battalion's standardization program ensured that the unit readiness level is attainable and sustainable with available resources.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>1. The battalion's standardization pilot coordinates development of the battalion's aviation standardization program standing operation procedures (SOP).</p> <hr/> <p><b>Note.</b> The standardization pilot can also be referred to as standardization instructor pilot (SIP).</p> <hr/> <p>a. Validated the battalion's aviation standardization program SOP.</p> <p>b. Ensured compliance with the battalion's aviation standardization program SOP by all crewmembers.</p> <p>c. The SOP prescribed procedures for implementation and sustainment of aircrew training program.</p> <p>2. The battalion's SP manages the battalion aircrew training program according to TC 1-210.</p> <p>a. Complied with all academic training requirements according to TC 1-210.</p> <p>b. Standardized the battalion's individual aircrew training folders (IATF) according to TC 1-210.</p>		



TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p><b>3.</b> The battalion's SP implements the battalion's aircrew training and standardization programs.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Evaluated subordinate unit's assigned crewmembers.</li> <li>b. Identified crew's shortcomings and notified the battalion and subordinate commanders of unit's crewmembers training deficiencies (including individual and crew levels) within the battalion.</li> <li>c. Notified the battalion commander of negative training trends that will affect the battalion's assigned missions and standardization program.</li> <li>d. Advised the commander and staff on all aspects of the battalion's assigned mission.</li> <li>e. Integrated risk management procedures.</li> </ul> <p><b>4.</b> The battalion standardization pilot coordinates the battalion's standardization program and provides training guidance to:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Master gunner.</li> <li>b. Unit's standardization officers.</li> <li>c. Maintenance evaluators and maintenance test pilots.</li> <li>d. Instructor pilots and unit trainers.</li> <li>e. Instrument examiners.</li> </ul> <p><b>5.</b> Standardization officer participates in the military decisionmaking process (MDMP).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Coordinated the standardization program with the battalion staff.</li> <li>b. Informed appropriate staff sections of its requirement to maintain the individual flight record folder (IFTF) to include—                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) DA Form 759 (<i>Individual Flight Record and Flight Certificate—Army</i>).</li> <li>(2) DA Form 4186 (<i>Medical Recommendation for Flying Duty</i>).</li> </ul> </li> </ul> <p><b>6.</b> The battalion standardization pilot performs or delegates performance of the steps in the risk management process for each step in troop-leading procedures (see appendix C).</p> <p>* Indicates a leader task step</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
Total Task Steps Evaluated							
Total Task Steps GO							
Training Status GO/NO-GO							

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
011-510-0021	Employ fundamentals of Army operations	STP 1-15 II
011-510-0311	Conduct military briefings	STP 1-15 II

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
01-1-5134	Plan aviation operations using the military decision making process	ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-118-MTP ARTEP 1-126-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** COMMAND SECTION  
 S1 SECTION  
 BATTALION

**TASK: Develop an Aviation Media Plan (01-1-0355)**

(FM 3-04.111) (FM 1-100) (FM 3-0)  
 (FM 1-100) (FM 3-100.12) (FM 3-100.4)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The battalion is conducting assigned missions in a simulated (live, virtual, or constructive) combat environment. The battalion’s main command post (CP) is operational and the staff sections and digital systems are functional. The battalion is conducting stability operations and support operations. The battalion is conducting operations independently or as part of a higher headquarters and has received an operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) to conduct operations at the location and time specified that will require cooperation and coordination with civilian authorities. An incident or event has occurred requiring media coverage. The unit has received a directive to host the media event and has received the commander’s guidance. Higher headquarters has provided public-affairs office augmentation for this event. The unit has been augmented with a S5 and a civil affairs detachment support team (CADST). This task should not be trained in mission-oriented protective posture level 4 (MOPP4).

**TASK STANDARDS:** The S1 section developed an aviation media plan that met the commander’s intent. All aspects of the media event were addressed as a result of accurate planning. The event was completed according to the specified timelines. Key personnel were kept aware of all important details.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p><b>Note.</b> Media presence guarantees that a global audience views military activities in near real-time. The activities of the force (including Soldiers) can have far-reaching effects on domestic and international opinion. FM3.04-111 addresses media presence.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The commander issues initial guidance and directs the staff to assess the nature and effect of the media event in the following areas—                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Reviewed the effect of the event/incident on the public.</li> <li>b. Determined the public factions most affected by the event/incident.</li> <li>c. Evaluated the effect on unit operations.</li> </ol> </li> <li>2. The S1 and public affairs office (PAO) conduct mission analysis.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Determined the methods of media coverage, in coordination with higher headquarters.</li> <li>b. Determined if media personnel would be isolated or allowed to move through the area under escort.</li> <li>c. Verified higher headquarters clearances.</li> <li>d. Selected tentative locations for the event considering security, weather, accessibility, communications, and power requirements.</li> </ol> </li> </ol>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>e. Verified timelines and tie-ins with local events and calendar for effect on host-country sensitivities.</p> <p>3. The executive officer (XO) directs staff preparation.</p> <p>a. Developed and published the itinerary of events and adjusted milestones, as required.</p> <p>b. Established final coordination with key personnel.</p> <p>c. Ensured that all presentations were rehearsed before the event.</p> <p>d. Ensured that all key people were briefed before the event.</p> <p>(1) Checked attendance lists.</p> <p>(2) Developed a troubleshooting contact list.</p> <p>e. Obtained advance clearances for media personnel.</p> <p>(1) Provided a media list to gate guards and military police.</p> <p>(2) Provided instructions on how to handle media personnel who had not received advance clearances.</p> <p>(3) Developed a plan to place PAO representatives at the arrival area to verify credentials and issue badges.</p> <p>f. Planned transportation and support requirements.</p> <p>g. Provided the commander with progress reports.</p> <p>4. The battalion conducts the media event.</p> <p>a. Registered all media representatives.</p> <p>b. Provided badges and press kits.</p> <p>c. Introduced escorts, if required.</p> <p>d. Ensured that all facets of the event were monitored and all problems were solved quickly and quietly.</p> <p>e. Monitored all presentations.</p> <p>5. The commander and staff complete followup actions.</p> <p>a. Debriefed key personnel.</p> <p>b. Monitored print media, radio, and television coverage.</p> <p>c. Prepared an after-action report.</p> <p>6. Commander/leader performs or delegates performance of the steps in the risk management process for each step in troop-leading procedures (see appendix C).</p> <p>* Indicates a leader task step</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5		TOTAL
Total Task Steps Evaluated							
Total Task Steps GO							
Training Status GO/NO-GO							

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
011-420-0027	Implement stability and reconstruction operations	MOS W 153D 3
011-510-0301	Participate in the military decision making process	STP 1-15 II
011-510-0304	Conduct battalion/brigade rehearsal	STP 1-15 II
011-510-0305	Conduct battalion/brigade after-action review	STP 1-15 II
011-510-0311	Conduct military briefings	STP 1-15 II

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
01-1-5134	Plan aviation operations using the military decision making process	ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-118-MTP ARTEP 1-126-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** COMMAND SECTION  
BATTALION

**TASK: Conduct Aviation Stability Operations and Support Operations (01-1-5126)**

(FM 3-07)	(FM 1-100)	(FM 1-113)
(FM 3-04.111)	(FM 3-04.126)	(FM 3-04.300)
(FM 3-04.500)	(FM 3-06.11)	(FM 3-100.12)
(FM 4-0)	(FM 7-0)	(FM 7-1)
(FM 90-4)	(TC 1-210)	(TC 1-237)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The battalion is conducting assigned missions in a simulated (live, virtual, or constructive) combat environment. The battalion tactical operations center (TOC) is operational and the staff sections and digital systems are functional. The battalion staff has received mission requirements and the commander's guidance directing it to conduct stability operations and support operations. The staff has been briefed on mission, enemy terrain and weather, troops and support available, time available, and civil considerations (METT-TC) command and control (C2) relationships, and rules of engagement (ROE). Operations may require offensive/defensive operations. Reports are being received through normal channels and the executive officer (XO) is coordinating the staff. Some iterations of this task should be performed in mission-oriented protective posture level 4 (MOPP4).

**TASK STANDARDS:** The battalion staff conducted stability operations and support operations according to the tactical standing operating procedure (TACSOP) and the commander's guidance. The battalion established immediate physical security of personnel and equipment. All assigned/attached personnel received comprehensive briefings on the mission, command relationships, situation/threat, and ROE. Battalion operations minimized adverse effects on civilian populations and resources. Collateral damage to noncombatants and infrastructures were minimized.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p><b>Note.</b> Attack reconnaissance battalion (ARB)/assault battalion commander and staff gained and/or maintained situational understanding using information gathered from Force XXI Battle Command Brigade and Below (FBCB2), frequency modulated (FM), digital and or analog communications systems, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources.</p> <hr/> <p>*1. The commander initiates the military decisionmaking process (MDMP).</p> <p>*2. The commander and staff conduct mission analysis.</p> <hr/> <p><b>Note.</b> Refer to task 01-2-5198, Conduct aviation mission planning/preparation.</p> <hr/> <p>*3. The commander and staff develop the OPORD with emphasis on factors that are unique to stability and reconstruction operations, to include—</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Established the location of subordinate unit base camp installations.</li> <li>b. Established battalion base camp/installation.</li> <li>c. Considered use of existing installations or facilities.</li> <li>d. Planned for use of static and mobile security assets.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>e. Established performance criteria for continuous patrolling and reconnaissance.</p> <p>f. Established route clearance and control.</p> <p>g. Established checkpoints.</p> <p>h. Provided for conventional rear area security.</p> <p>i. Established ROE guidance.</p> <p>j. Established priorities for protection of civil/military personnel, facilities, installations, and key terrain within the area of operations (AO).</p> <p>k. Planned for the complete integration of aviation and ground assets.</p> <p>4. The XO directs the staff to gather critical data that may negatively impact stability operations and support operations mission.</p> <p>5. The staff recommends policies and procedures for conducting stability operations and support operations.</p> <p>a. Identified pertinent demographic and economic issues.</p> <p>b. Reviewed local customs and laws.</p> <p>c. Sought input from local leaders.</p> <p>d. Planned positive community-relations programs.</p> <p>6. The staff maximizes joint, interagency, multinational, and local civil coordination and cooperation.</p> <p>a. S3 determined local flight rules and procedures.</p> <p>b. S3 obtained interpreters, as necessary, for mission planning and in-flight operations.</p> <p>c. S3 supervised the implementation of ROE.</p> <p>*7. The commander directs the staff to conduct the battalion's stability operations and support operations mission—</p> <p>a. Oriented on the area and its culture and the nature of the situation.</p> <p>b. Planned operations to complement those of government and private agencies.</p> <p>c. Planned operations within the framework of the overall mission, with primary focus on stability and reconstruction operations</p> <p>d. Planned for transition to civilian agencies as soon as feasible.</p> <p>*8. The commander emphasizes civil affairs and information operations.</p> <p>a. Ensured that Soldiers at all levels understood the consequences of releasing inaccurate, unsubstantiated, or poorly timed information.</p> <p>b. Information released was authoritative and reflected the degree of accuracy known at the time.</p> <p>9. The battalion conducts support, antiterrorism, counterterrorism, and force-on-force operations, as required.</p> <p>a. Accommodated the culture, values, and methods of operations of the other participants.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>b. Accommodated the political, economic, and social situations, including demographics, of the population.</p> <p>c. Prioritized efforts and allocated resources to achieve the greatest essential support to the largest number of people possible.</p> <p>d. Displayed preparedness (capability to apply force without threatening), consistent with mission constraints, by conducting demanding combined-arms training routinely in the area of operations, as appropriate.</p> <p>e. Used war fighting doctrine, with suitable modification, to accommodate the situation.</p> <p>f. Made quick transition between support, peacekeeping/peace-enforcing operations, and offensive/defensive operations, as required.</p> <p>g. Applied force that was consistent with and adequate for assigned objectives, employing combat power selectively according to assigned missions and prescribed ROE.</p> <p>*10. Commander/leader applies required steps of the risk management process to identify and control hazards to protect the force (see appendix C).</p> <p>* Indicates a leader task step</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
Total Task Steps Evaluated							
Total Task Steps GO							
Training Status GO/NO-GO							

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
011-237-2012	Perform tactical flight mission planning (UH-60)	STP 1-15-219  STP 1-15-219-OS TC 1-237 STP 1-15II-500-MQS STP 1-TACOPS MOS W 153D 3
011-420-0027	Implement stability and reconstruction operations	
011-510-0021	Employ fundamentals of Army operations	STP 1-15 II
011-510-0301	Participate in the military decision making process	STP 1-15 II



**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
01-1-5134	Plan aviation operations using the military decision making process	ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-118-MTP ARTEP 1-126-MTP
01-2-0341	Perform composite risk management procedures	ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-126-MTP
01-2-5198	Conduct aviation mission planning/ preparation	ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-126-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

- ELEMENTS:** COMMAND SECTION  
 S1 SECTION  
 S2 SECTION  
 S3 SECTION  
 S4 SECTION  
 S6 SECTION  
 BATTALION  
 EXECUTIVE OFFICER  
 COMMAND SERGEANT MAJOR  
 AVIATION SAFETY OFFICER  
 AVIATION STANDARDIZATION OFFICER

**TASK: Plan Aviation Operations Using the Military Decision Making Process (01-1-5134)**

(FM 1-100)	(FM 1-113)	(FM 2-0)
(FM 3-0)	(FM 3-04.111)	(FM 3-04.126)
(FM 3-04.300)	(FM 3-100.4)	(FM 3-100.12)
(FM 4-0)	(FM 7-1)	(TC 1-237)

**ITERATION:** 1      2      3      4      5      M      (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T      P      U      (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The battalion is conducting assigned missions in a simulated (live, virtual, or constructive) combat environment. The unit has received an operation order (OPORD)/fragmentary order (FRAGO) and commander’s guidance directing it to plan operations using the military decisionmaking process (MDMP). The unit is conducting operations independently or as part of a higher headquarters and has received an OPORD, warning order (WARNO), or FRAGO to conduct an operation at the location and time specified. The order includes all applicable overlays and or graphics. All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. The unit has communications with higher, adjacent, subordinate, and supporting elements. The unit has been provided guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and or rules of interaction (ROI). Digital and/or analog systems are functioning. Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task should be conducted during limited visibility conditions. Some iterations of this task should be performed in mission-oriented protective posture level 4 (MOPP4).

**TASK STANDARDS:** The unit planned operations as part of the MDMP according to appropriate field manuals, tactical standing operating procedures (TACSOP), the order, and or higher commander’s guidance. The unit S3 section issued a WARNO to the staff alerting them of pending planning process. The unit staff prepared for mission analysis by gathering necessary tools. The commander and staff completed a quick initial assessment determining time available from mission receipt to mission execution. The commander issued planning guidance to the staff. The commander and staff conducted mission analysis. The commander approved the restated mission. The unit issued WARNOs, as necessary, during the planning process. The unit staff developed courses of action (COA) for analysis and comparison. The staff compared feasible COA and identified one that has highest probability of success against the most likely enemy COA and most dangerous enemy COA. The staff briefed the selected COA. The unit developed a plan that supported the higher commander’s intent. The unit planned complied with the ROE and or ROI. This MDMP task is used for all sections including the aviation safety officer (ASO), command sergeant major (CSM) , S1, S2, S3, S4, and S6 sections.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p><b>Note.</b> All staff planners integrate risk management procedures into their functional area in coordination with the ASO. Each staff officer addresses planning from their own functional area. The CSM, would conduct mission analysis according to the commander's specific guidance and unit's type and mission. The S1, would concern himself with personnel-related issues that could affect the outcome of the mission. The S2 provides input and makes recommendations on intelligence issues that may impact the unit's mission. The S3 would deal with operations planning and preparation of plans and orders. The S4 determines logistics requirements, prepares the logistical staff estimate and assists with preparation of plans and orders. The ASO assists the S3 with the development of a comprehensive risk assessment of a unit's assigned mission.</p> <hr/> <p><b>*1.</b> Commander, staff, and leaders gain and or maintain situational understanding using information that is gathered from Force XXI Battle Command Brigade and Below (FBCB2), frequency modulated (FM) communications, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources.</p> <p><b>*2.</b> Commander and staff receive an order or anticipate a new mission and begin the MDMP.</p> <hr/> <p><b>Note.</b> The executive officer (XO) is the time keeper for the MDMP. The XO coordinates and synchronizes activities of all staff officers.</p> <hr/> <p><b>*3.</b> Commander identifies what is to be displayed as the common operational picture (COP).</p> <p><b>4.</b> Unit staff ensures that the COP is updated and maintained during the MDMP.</p> <p><b>5.</b> The S3 section issues a WARNO 1 to staff alerting them of pending planning process.</p> <p><b>6.</b> The XO coordinates staff actions required to ensure staff estimates are current and staff elements have necessary mission analysis tools.</p> <p><b>7.</b> Staff prepares for mission analysis by gathering necessary tools.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>a.</b> Ensured the COP is created and or maintained.</li> <li><b>b.</b> Gathered higher headquarters plan or orders with graphics.</li> <li><b>c.</b> Gathered digital or paper maps of area of operations (AO).</li> <li><b>d.</b> Gathered own and higher headquarters' TACSOP.</li> <li><b>e.</b> Gathered appropriate field manuals and other references.</li> <li><b>f.</b> Gathered existing staff estimates.</li> </ul> <hr/> <p><b>Note.</b> Estimates are conducted continuously to provide important inputs for the MDMP. The commander and each staff section make estimates. Estimates are revised when important new information is received or when the situation changes significantly.</p> <hr/> <p><b>g.</b> Obtained and or reviewed information available through shared network databases or through reach-back.</p> <p><b>*8.</b> Commander and staff complete a quick initial assessment.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>a.</b> Determined time available from mission receipt to mission execution.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p><b>Note.</b> The most critical product of the assessment is an initial allocation of available time. As a general rule, the commander allocates a minimum of two-thirds of available time for subordinate units to conduct their planning and preparation.</p> <hr/> <p>b. Determined time needed to plan, prepare for, and execute mission for own and subordinate units.</p> <p>c. Determined intelligence preparation of the battlefield (IPB).</p> <hr/> <p><b>Note.</b> IPB is an ongoing process, proceeding simultaneously with other steps in the MDMP. Changes are dictated by the factors of mission, enemy, terrain and weather, troops and support available, time available, and civil considerations (METT-TC) and MDMP requirements.</p> <hr/> <p>d. Determined staff estimates and or information already available to assist planning.</p> <p>e. Determined time required to position critical elements (to include command and control [C2] nodes) for the upcoming operation.</p> <p>f. Determined how to incorporate collaborative planning, and if used, who must collaborate, when, and via what medium.</p> <p>g. Determined staff's experience, cohesiveness, and level of rest or stress.</p> <p>*9. Commander determines, time permitting, whether to conduct a full or an abbreviated (time-constrained environment) MDMP.</p> <p>*10. Commander issues the initial guidance.</p> <p>a. Included how to abbreviate MDMP, if necessary.</p> <p>b. Included initial time allocation.</p> <p>c. Included liaison officers to dispatch.</p> <p>d. Included time to begin initial reconnaissance and surveillance (R&amp;S) or collection planning to answer initial priority intelligence requirements (PIR) or to fill information voids that allow the commander to visualize.</p> <p>e. Included possible decision points.</p> <p>f. Included authorized movement.</p> <p>g. Included additional tasks the commander wanted the staff to accomplish.</p> <p>*11. The S1 prepares the personnel estimate.</p> <p>a. Analyzed courses of action considering personnel factors.</p> <p>(1) Compared courses of action from a personnel strength aspect to evaluate possible shortcomings affecting unit's mission.</p> <p>(2) Determined advantages and disadvantages for each course of action.</p> <p>(3) Recommended best course of action.</p> <p>b. Submitted personnel estimate to the XO.</p> <p>c. Conducted personnel status briefings, as required.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>d. Maintained a current personnel estimate in coordination with other staff elements.</p> <p><b>*12.</b> The S2 conducts intelligence preparation of the battlefield.</p> <p>a. Prepared the intelligence staff estimate.</p> <p>(1) Obtained and analyzed information.</p> <p>(2) Described the enemy situation.</p> <p>(3) Described probable enemy courses of action.</p> <p>(4) Created a situational template.</p> <p>(5) Described the effects of the AOs and enemy situation on friendly COA.</p> <p>(6) Compared COA.</p> <p>(7) Submitted the intelligence estimate to the XO and briefed, as required.</p> <p>(8) Maintained a current intelligence estimate of the situation with other staff elements.</p> <p>b. Prepared the intelligence annex.</p> <p><b>*13.</b> The S4 determines logistics requirements.</p> <p>a. Prepared the logistical staff estimate.</p> <p>(1) Analyzed COA to include—adequate equipment, materiel, and services.</p> <p>(2) Made it known whether or not the mission could be logistically supported.</p> <p>(3) Recommended the best COA from a logistics aspect.</p> <p>(4) Submitted the logistics estimate to the XO and briefed, as required.</p> <p>b. Developed the service support annex in coordination with the S1.</p> <p>c. Issued the service support annex and accompanying appendixes to include overlays.</p> <p><b>*14.</b> The ASO assists the commander during the risk management process and monitors the unit's missions to identify and address potential hazards.</p> <p>a. Gathered pertinent mission data and prepared a risk assessment and controlled product.</p> <p>b. Coordinated the risk management product with the staff.</p> <p>c. Provided the risk management product, with recommendations to the S3.</p> <p>d. Recommended actions that allowed safe mission accomplishment.</p> <p><b>15.</b> Commander and staff deploy R&amp;S assets early in the planning process but not before determining the initial R&amp;S requirements.</p> <p>a. Ensured R&amp;S is continuous during the planning and preparation process.</p> <p>b. Ensured R&amp;S is continuous during the execution of the mission.</p> <p><b>16.</b> S3 section issues the WARNO to subordinate and supporting units.</p> <p>a. Included type of operation.</p> <p>b. Included general location of operation.</p> <p>c. Included initial time line.</p> <p>d. Included any collaborative planning sessions directed by the commander.</p> <p>e. Included any movement or R&amp;S to initiate.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>17. The XO coordinates dispatch of liaison personnel, as directed.</p> <p>*18. Commander and staff conduct mission analysis. (Each staff officer analyzes the mission and order for their area of expertise and/or responsibility).</p> <p>a. Analyzed the higher headquarters' order.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Determined commanders' intent two levels up.</li> <li>(2) Determined mission.</li> <li>(3) Determined tasks.</li> <li>(4) Determined constraints.</li> <li>(5) Determined risks.</li> <li>(6) Determined available assets.</li> <li>(7) Determined higher headquarters' AO.</li> <li>(8) Determined concept of the operation including deception plan.</li> <li>(9) Determined timelines for mission execution.</li> <li>(10) Determined mission of adjacent units (including front and rear) and their relation to higher headquarters plan.</li> <li>(11) Determined assigned unit AO.</li> </ol> <hr/> <p><b>Note.</b> The IPB is the commander's and each staff officer's responsibility.</p> <hr/> <p>b. Conducted initial IPB.</p> <hr/> <p><b>Note.</b> The IPB is the commander's and each staff officer's responsibility.</p> <hr/> <p>c. Assisted the S2 section in developing the situation template (SITREP) within their specific area of expertise/responsibility.</p> <p>d. Determined specified, implied, and essential task for their area of expertise/responsibility.</p> <p>e. Reviewed available assets for their area of expertise and or responsibility.</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">Examined additions to and deletions from current task organization, support relationships, and status to determine additional resources needed for mission success. (Commander and staff).</p> <p>f. Determined constraints that restrict freedom of action in their area of expertise and or responsibility.</p> <p>g. Identified critical facts and assumptions in their area of expertise and or responsibility.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Listed all appropriate assumptions received from higher headquarters.</li> <li>(2) Stated expected conditions over which the commander has no control but which are relevant to the plan.</li> <li>(3) Listed conditions that would invalidate the plan or its concept of operations.</li> </ol> <p>h. Conducted risk assessment for their area of expertise and or responsibility. (The unit commander makes an initial assessment of where tactical risks might be taken.)</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Identified non-tactical risk hazards.</li> <li>(2) Made an initial assessment of the risk level for each hazard.</li> </ol>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>i. Determined information requirements (IR) and initial commander's critical information requirements (CCIR) for each area of expertise and or responsibility. (Commander alone decided what information is/was critical.)</p> <p>j. Determined the initial R&amp;S plan based on the initial IPB, the CCIR, and the commander's initial guidance for R&amp;S.</p> <p>(1) Turned the R&amp;S plan into an initial detailed, synchronized reconnaissance annex and surveillance order to the reconnaissance, surveillance, and target acquisition (RSTA) squadron, (or other ISR assets) to launch R&amp;S assets as soon as possible so they can begin the collection effort. (S3 section).</p> <hr/> <p><b>Note.</b> As more information becomes available, it is incorporated into a complete reconnaissance or assault annex for the OPORD.</p> <hr/> <p>(2) Published an R&amp;S order with the minimum information. (S3 section).</p> <p>(a) Included the AO for the RSTA squadron and other R&amp;S assets.</p> <p>(b) Included a mission statement.</p> <p>(c) Included task organization.</p> <p>(d) Included the reconnaissance objective.</p> <p>(e) Included PIR and IR to be answered.</p> <p>(f) Included line of departure (LD) or line of contact (LC).</p> <p>(g) Included initial named areas of interest (NAIs).</p> <p>(h) Included routes to AO and passage of lines instructions.</p> <p>(i) Included fire support coordinating measures and airspace control measures.</p> <p>(j) Included communications and logistics support.</p> <p>(k) Included casualty evacuation.</p> <p>k. Planned use of available time.</p> <p>(1) Refined their initial plan for the use of available time.</p> <p>(2) Compared the time needed to accomplish essential tasks to the higher headquarters' time line to ensure mission accomplishment was possible in the allotted time.</p> <p>(3) Compared the time line to the enemy time line developed during the IPB to determine windows of opportunity for exploitation or times when the unit would be at risk from enemy activity.</p> <p>(4) Specified when and where they would conduct briefings that resulted from the planning process (if they used collaborative planning sessions; when, where, and in what form they would conduct rehearsals.</p> <p>(5) Used liaison officer (LNOs) to stay abreast of changes at the unit.</p> <p>l. Wrote the restated mission. Prepared restated mission for the unit based on mission analysis (XO and S3).</p> <hr/> <p><b>Note.</b> Addressing the who, what (tasks), when, where, how, and why.</p> <hr/>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p><b>m.</b> Conducted a mission analysis briefing.</p> <hr/> <p><b>Note.</b> The commander may forego the briefing if the commander obtains the mission analysis information from a shared database.</p> <hr/> <p><b>n.</b> Briefed the commander on its mission analysis, time permitting.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Included mission and commander's intent, concept of the operation, and deception plan or objective of the headquarters one level up.</li> <li>(2) Included mission, commander's intent, concept of the operation, and deception plan or objective of the headquarters one level up.</li> <li>(3) Included review of unit commander's initial guidance.</li> <li>(4) Included initial IPB products.</li> <li>(5) Included specified, implied, and essential task.</li> <li>(6) Included constraints on the operation.</li> <li>(7) Included forces available.</li> <li>(8) Included risk assessments.</li> <li>(9) Included recommended IR for incorporation into the CCIR.</li> <li>(10) Included recommended time lines.</li> <li>(11) Included recommended restated mission.</li> <li>(12) Included recommended collaborative planning sessions.</li> </ul> <p><b>*19.</b> The CSM conducts mission analysis, provides advice and recommendations to the commander.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>a.</b> Reviewed known enemy and friendly situations and templates.</li> <li><b>b.</b> Reviewed the concept of operation and identified essential task to the S3.</li> <li><b>c.</b> Evaluated planning guidance.</li> <li><b>d.</b> Provided initial input into the mission planning for convoy operations and quartering party operations.</li> <li><b>e.</b> Monitored and reported on unit's performance and progress in support of mission.</li> </ul> <p><b>*20.</b> Commander approves restated mission.</p> <p><b>*21.</b> Commander develops the initial intent. (During mission analysis, the commander begins the visualization and develops the initial intent for the operation.)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>a.</b> Provided intent to staff. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Issued intent statement that is clear and concise.</li> <li>(2) Provided link between the mission and the concept of operations.</li> <li>(3) Included key tasks that must be performed or conditions that must be met to accomplish the mission.</li> <li>(4) Did not include the "method" by which the force will get from its current state to the end state.</li> <li>(5) Did not include "acceptable risk."</li> </ul> </li> <li><b>b.</b> Prepared intent statement and, when possible, delivered it face-to-face.</li> </ul>		



TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p><b>*22.</b> Commander issues the commander's guidance.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Provided the staff with enough additional guidance (preliminary decisions) to focus staff activities in planning.</li> <li>b. Placed guidance on a shared database to ensure a common base of planning effort within the unit.</li> <li>c. Focused on essential tasks.</li> <li>d. Emphasized in broad terms when, where, and how the commander intended to mass combat power.</li> <li>e. Included priorities for all combat, combat support (CS), and combat service support (CSS) elements and how the commander envisioned their support of the concept.</li> <li>f. Included specific COA to consider, both friendly and threat, and priority for addressing them.</li> <li>g. Included initial CCIR.</li> <li>h. Included anticipated decision points.</li> <li>i. Included risk guidance.</li> <li>j. Included military deception guidance.</li> <li>k. Included guidance for nonlethal efforts.</li> <li>l. Included guidance for nonlethal efforts.</li> <li>m. Included targeting guidance.</li> <li>n. Included mobility and countermobility guidance.</li> <li>o. Included security measures to be implemented.</li> <li>p. Included time planning.</li> <li>q. Included type of order to issue.</li> <li>r. Included any collaborative planning sessions to be conducted.</li> <li>s. Included movement to initiate (including movement of C4ISR INFOSYS nodes).</li> <li>t. Included type of rehearsal to conduct.</li> <li>u. Included additional specific priorities for CS and CSS.</li> <li>v. Included any other information the commander wants the staff to consider.</li> </ul> <p><b>23.</b> The S3 section issues a WARNO 2 to subordinate and supporting elements immediately after the unit commander provides guidance.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Contained R&amp;S to be initiated by RSTA squadron and other R&amp;S assets.</li> <li>b. Contained approved restated mission statement.</li> <li>c. Contained unit commander's intent.</li> <li>d. Contained unit's AO (for example; sketch, overlay, or some other description).</li> <li>e. Contained CCIR.</li> <li>f. Contained risk guidance.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>g. Contained security measures.</p> <p>h. Contained military deception guidance.</p> <p>i. Contained mobility and countermobility guidance.</p> <p>j. Contained specific priorities.</p> <p>k. Contained time planning.</p> <p>l. Contained guidance on collaborative events and rehearsals.</p> <p>m. Contained task organization changes from the higher headquarters.</p> <p>n. Contained attachments and or detachments.</p> <p><b>*24.</b> Commander and staff perform the following functions during the rest of the decisionmaking process—</p> <p>a. Reviewed periodically all available facts and assumptions for new or changed information.</p> <p>b. Assessed impact of changes on the plan.</p> <p>c. Made necessary adjustments.</p> <p><b>25.</b> Staff, upon receipt of commander's guidance, develops COA for analysis and comparison.</p> <p>a. Ensured COA meet the following criteria—</p> <p>(1) Ensured COA are suitable.</p> <p>(2) Ensured COA are feasible.</p> <p>(3) Ensured COA are acceptable.</p> <p>(4) Ensured COA are distinguishable.</p> <p>(5) Ensured COA are complete.</p> <p>b. Continued the risk management process.</p> <p>c. Used the following guidelines to develop COA.</p> <p>(1) Analyzed relative combat power.</p> <p>(2) Generated options.</p> <p>(3) Arrayed initial forces.</p> <p>(4) Developed the scheme of maneuver.</p> <p>(5) Assigned headquarters.</p> <p>(6) Prepared COA statements and sketches.</p> <p>d. Briefed COA to the commander for review (optional).</p> <p><b>26.</b> Staff conducts course of action analysis (wargaming) for each COA.</p> <p>a. Used the following rules for wargaming—</p> <p>(1) Remained objective. (Wargamers do not defend a COA just because they developed it).</p> <p>(2) Recorded, accurately, advantages and disadvantages for each COA.</p> <p>(3) Assessed, continually, the feasibility, acceptability, and suitability of the COA.</p> <p>(4) Avoided drawing premature conclusions.</p> <p>(5) Avoided comparing one COA with another during wargaming.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p><b>b.</b> Used the following wargaming steps.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Gathered tools.</li> <li>(2) Listed all friendly forces.</li> <li>(3) Listed assumptions.</li> <li>(4) Listed known critical events and decision points.</li> <li>(5) Determined evaluation criteria.</li> <li>(6) Selected the wargaming criteria.</li> <li>(7) Selected a method to record and display results.</li> <li>(8) Conducted the wargame and assessed the results.</li> </ol> <p><b>c.</b> Understood wargaming responsibilities.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Coordinated actions of staff, (XO).</li> <li>(2) Analyzed COA to determine potential personnel battle losses and determine how to provide personnel support during the operation (S1).</li> <li>(3) Developed critical enemy decision points in relation to the friendly course of action (S2).</li> <li>(4) Captured the results of enemy action and counteraction and the corresponding friendly and enemy strengths and vulnerabilities (S2).</li> <li>(5) Role-played the enemy commander (S2).</li> <li>(6) Identified information requirements for friendly forces, (S2).</li> <li>(7) Refined NAIs, target areas of interest (TAIs), and the high-value targets (HVTs) (S2).</li> <li>(8) Refined the event template, situation template, and event matrix (S2).</li> <li>(9) Participated in the targeting conference and identified a high-payoff target (HPT) list based on the IPB (S2).</li> <li>(10) Selected the technique and methods to be used for wargaming, (S3).</li> <li>(11) Role-played the friendly commander during the wargaming if the unit commander is unavailable (S3).</li> <li>(12) Ensured the wargame covers every operational aspect of the mission, (S3).</li> <li>(13) Recorded each event's strengths and weaknesses and annotated the rationale (S3).</li> <li>(14) Analyzed each COA to assess its sustainability (S4).</li> <li>(15) Identified potential shortfalls and recommends actions to eliminate or reduce their effect on the COA (S4).</li> <li>(16) Ensured that available movement times and assets supported the COA (S4).</li> <li>(17) Analyzed each course of action for effective integration of the information systems (S6).</li> <li>(18) Determined how the information management (IM) plan affected each course of action and recommended it to the XO for modification, if necessary, the IM plan to best support each course of action, (S6).</li> <li>(19) Analyzed the COA in their own area of expertise including how they best supported the mission, (special staff officer).</li> </ol> <p><b>d.</b> Determined the force requirements and the risks.</p> <p><b>e.</b> Completed the wargaming process.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p><b>27.</b> Staff conducts an (internal) wargame OPTIONAL briefing, normally given by the XO.</p> <p><b>28.</b> Staff compares feasible COA and identifies one that has highest probability of success against most likely enemy COA and most dangerous enemy COA.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;"><b>a.</b> Analyzed and evaluated advantages and disadvantages of each COA. (Each staff officer evaluates the COA from their perspective and presents findings for others' consideration.)</p> <hr/> <p><b>Note.</b> Each staff officer may use his own matrix; however, all must use the same evaluation criteria. The XO normally determines the weight of each evaluation criterion.</p> <hr/> <p style="padding-left: 20px;"><b>b.</b> Identified the preferred COA and made recommendations. (The XO decides which COA to recommend at the commander's decision briefing if the staff cannot reach a mutual recommendation.)</p> <hr/> <p><b>Note.</b> If the unit commander has directed one course of action, the staff modifies this step (combining it with course of action analysis) to determine the advantages and disadvantages of the directed or refined course of action.</p> <hr/> <p><b>29.</b> The S3 presents the decision briefing.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;"><b>a.</b> Included as a minimum—</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;"><b>(1)</b> Intent of the higher headquarters (higher and next higher commanders).</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;"><b>(2)</b> Mission.</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;"><b>(3)</b> Status of own forces.</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;"><b>(4)</b> An updated IPB.</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;"><b>(5)</b> Assumptions used in planning.</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;"><b>(6)</b> COAs considered.</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;"><b>(7)</b> Advantages and disadvantages (including risk) of each COA, with a decision matrix or table showing course of action comparison.</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;"><b>(8)</b> Included recommended COA.</p> <p><b>30.</b> Commander approves a COA.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;"><b>a.</b> Decided on a COA the commander believed to be most advantageous.</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;"><b>(1)</b> Refined intent statement and CCIR, if required.</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;"><b>(2)</b> Issued additional guidance if required.</p> <p style="padding-left: 60px;"><b>(a)</b> Issued additional guidance for priorities for CS or CSS activities (particularly for resources the commander needed to preserve freedom of action and ensure continuous service support).</p> <p style="padding-left: 60px;"><b>(b)</b> Issued additional guidance for orders preparation.</p> <p style="padding-left: 60px;"><b>(c)</b> Issued additional guidance for rehearsal preparation.</p> <p style="padding-left: 60px;"><b>(d)</b> Issued additional guidance for preparation for mission execution.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;"><b>b.</b> Decided what level of residual risk is acceptable to accomplish mission.</p> <p><b>31.</b> The S3 section issues WARNO with essential information so subordinate elements could refine their plans.</p> <p><b>32.</b> Staff refines the COA based on the commander's decision and final guidance.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p><b>33.</b> Staff prepares the order or plan by turning it into a clear, concise concept of operations, a scheme of maneuver, and the required fire support.</p> <p><b>*34.</b> Commander reviews and approves orders before the staff reproduces and briefs them.</p> <p><b>35.</b> Staff reproduces, briefs, and distributes order.</p> <hr/> <p><b>Note.</b> The MDMP can be conducted in a time-constrained environment. However, before a unit can conduct decisionmaking in a time-constrained environment, it must master the steps in the full MDMP. (See FM 6-0 for information on conducting the MDMP in a time-constrained environment.)</p> <hr/> <p><b>36.</b> Unit begins preparing for operations and conducts a rehearsal.</p> <p><b>*37.</b> Commander/leader performs or delegates performance of the steps in the risk management process for each step in troop-leading procedures (see appendix C).</p> <p>* Indicates a leader task step</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
Total Task Steps Evaluated							
Total Task Steps GO							
Training Status GO/NO-GO							

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
011-237-2012	Perform tactical flight mission planning (UH-60)	STP 1-15-219  STP 1-15-219-OS TC 1-237 STP 1-15II-500-MQS STP 1-TACOPS
011-420-0301	Employ the military decision making process	MOS W 153D 3 STP 1-150-155
011-510-0300	Coordinate staff duties/responsibilities in tactical units	STP 1-15 II
011-510-0301	Participate in the military decision making process	STP 1-15 II
011-510-0303	Conduct operations missions briefing/debriefing	STP 1-15 II
011-510-0304	Conduct battalion/brigade rehearsal	STP 1-15 II

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
01-1-5164	Integrate the Army airspace command and control plan into aviation operations	ARTEP 1-113-MTP
01-2-0341	Perform composite risk management procedures	ARTEP 1-126-MTP ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-126-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** COMMAND SECTION  
 S3 SECTION  
 AVIATION LIAISON

**TASK: Coordinate Aviation Liaison Officer Operations (01-1-5146)**

(FM 3-04.111)	(FM 1-100)	(FM 1-113)
(FM 3-0)	(FM 3-04.126)	(FM 3-100.12)
(FM 7-0)	(FM 7-1)	(TC 1-237)

**ITERATION:** 1      2      3      4      5      M      (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T      P      U      (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The battalion is conducting assigned missions in a simulated (live, virtual, or constructive) combat environment. The battalion’s main command post (CP) is operational and the staff sections and digital systems are functional. The commander has directed the S3 to coordinate aviation liaison operations. The S3 is developing or has issued an operation order (OPORD)/fragmentary order (FRAGO). The battalion has established communications, and digital connectivity via the Army battle command system (ABCS), when equipped, with subordinate, adjacent, and higher headquarters, and is passing information according to higher headquarters’ and the unit’s tactical standing operating procedures (TACSOP). The battalion is preparing for or is engaged in combat. The aviation mission planning system (AMPS) is operational and contains information pertaining to location of friendly and enemy units, boundary lines, phase lines, and engagement areas. Some iterations of this task should be performed in mission-oriented protective posture level 4 (MOPP4).

**TASK STANDARDS:** Aviation liaison officers (LNOs) obtained and integrated coordination information that met the S3 and commander’s information requirements. LNOs integrated processed information in the employment of aviation assets in direct support of the ground maneuver element. The LNOs kept supported and parent units informed of current and future operations.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p><b>Note.</b> The task steps below will be accomplished using ABCS when indicated in the performance measures. When preformatted messages do not exist, free text messages may be substituted for other Force XXI Battle Command Brigade and Below (FBCB2) and maneuver control system (MCS) messages identified in task steps and performance measures below. Attack reconnaissance/assault battalions without ABCS will substitute appropriate TACSOP for task steps requiring ABCS.</p> <hr/> <p>*1. S3 dispatches aviation LNOs based upon commander’s guidance and mission, enemy, terrain and weather, troops and support available, time available, and civil considerations (METT-TC). LNOs may be dispatched to—</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Higher and adjacent headquarters.</li> <li>b. Subordinate headquarters.</li> <li>c. Supported ground maneuver elements.</li> </ul> <hr/> <p><b>Note.</b> Aviation LNOs dispatched to non-digital units should be equipped with sufficient digital equipment (such as FBCB2 and/or MCS Light) to provide the unit with connectivity with the supporting battalion.</p> <hr/> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>d. Other headquarters or agencies (military or nonmilitary), as necessary.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p><b>*2.</b> Aviation LNOs examine all aspects of battalion operations before departing on liaison tour.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Informed of assigned aircraft operational readiness status.</li> <li>b. Impending unit moved in support of other missions.</li> <li>c. Reviewed the battalion’s mission, situation, commander’s intent, concept of operation, logistics situation, combat power status, and status of critical supplies.</li> <li>d. Obtained current map overlays and copies of orders.</li> <li>e. Ensured there was reliable means of communication back to the main CP.</li> <li>f. Obtained and reviewed the commander’s information requirements, including commander’s critical information requirements(CCIR), and the battle staff’s information requirements.</li> </ul> <p><b>*3.</b> Aviation LNOs coordinate with the headquarters of the receiving unit.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Reported to commander, S3, or executive officer (XO) and briefed the battalion’s situation on status of attack reconnaissance helicopter assets.</li> <li>b. Determined the supported unit’s scheme of maneuver.</li> <li>c. Advised the commander, S3, or XO on the proper missions for employment of attack reconnaissance and or assault helicopter assets to include fire power emplacement limitations and capabilities.</li> <li>d. Established communications with the battalion’s main CP and updated information.</li> <li>e. Assisted the S3 with the integration of attack reconnaissance and or assault helicopters in the scheme of maneuver.</li> <li>f. Provided necessary information to each staff section and obtained information requested by the battalion commander and staff for transmission to parent unit.</li> <li>g. Obtained information about visited unit operations, commander’s intent, mission, unit locations and capabilities, and future operations and transmitted them to the battalion’s CP.</li> <li>h. Informed receiving unit commander or XO concerning reports dispatched to the battalion’s main CP.</li> <li>i. Kept a record of liaison actions during tour.</li> <li>j. During liaison tour— <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Kept abreast of the situation of assigned unit and provided updates to supported headquarters.</li> <li>(2) Monitored and assisted in the planning process of supported unit. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) Advised staff on how to best employ assets of assigned unit.</li> <li>(b) Recorded all critical information and passed it to parent unit as soon as possible (included CCIR, specified/implied tasks, mission essential tasks, constraints, and limitations).</li> <li>(c) Obtained and passed all enemy situation templates (SITEMPs) and other intelligence products to parent unit as soon as possible.</li> </ul> </li> </ul> </li> </ul>		



TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>(d) Maintained parent battalion's common operational picture (COP) with supported unit actions and locations.</p> <p>(3) Provided parent battalion COP to support unit CP.</p> <p>(a) Updated supported unit COP to show battalion's actions and locations.</p> <p>(b) Provided digital COP display if supported unit is non-digital.</p> <p>(4) Conducted adjacent unit coordination.</p> <p>*4. Aviation LNOs transmit information to parent unit's staff upon return.</p> <p>a. Briefed battalion XO, S3, or main CP duty officer (battle captain) on all information received during visit.</p> <p>b. Transmitted mission requirements and requests for information from the visited headquarters.</p> <p>c. Briefed all staff sections on detailed information received during visit and transmitted information required by higher headquarters in each staff area of responsibility (AOR).</p> <p>d. Assisted in the conduct of the tactical decisionmaking process.</p> <p>*5. Battalion staff and aviation liaison officers conduct after-action reviews.</p> <p>a. Debriefed the supported commander, XO, S3 on mission execution and lessons learned.</p> <p>b. Debriefed the parent unit commander, XO, S3 on mission execution and lessons learned.</p> <p>*6. Commander/leader performs or delegates performance of the steps in the risk management process for each step in troop-leading procedures (see appendix C).</p> <p>* Indicates a leader task step</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
Total Task Steps Evaluated							
Total Task Steps GO							
Training Status GO/NO-GO							

#### SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
011-237-2010	Perform multi-aircraft operations (UH-60)	STP 1-15-219 STP 1-15-219-OS TC 1-237 STP 1-15II-500-MQS STP 1-TACOPS
011-510-0301	Participate in the military decision making process	STP 1-15 II
011-510-0310	Perform duties of aviation liaison officer	STP 1-15 II

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
01-1-5134	Plan aviation operations using the military decision making process	ARTEP 1-113-MTP  ARTEP 1-118-MTP ARTEP 1-126-MTP
01-1-5146	Coordinate aviation liaison officer operations	ARTEP 1-113-MTP  ARTEP 1-126-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** COMMAND SECTION  
 S3 SECTION  
 TACTICAL CP

**TASK: Establish Battalion/Squadron Tactical Command Post Operations (01-1-5147)**  
 (FM 3-04.111) (FM 1-100) (FM 1-113)  
 (FM 3-04.126) (FM 3-100.12) (FM 7-0)  
 (FM 7-1)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The battalion is conducting assigned missions in a simulated (live, virtual, or constructive) combat environment. The battalion’s main command post (CP) is operational, the staff and digital systems are functional. The tactical situation dictates the movement of the tactical operations center (TOC). Units have been deployed tactically and are conducting operations. The S3 has received requirements and the commander’s guidance directing it to maintain a tactical command post. Some iterations of this task should be performed in mission-oriented protective posture level 4 (MOPP4). Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** Command and Control (C2) of subordinate elements is continuous and effective twenty four hours a day. The operation of the tactical command post (TAC CP) allowed the commander or the S3 to maintain continuous tactical control of the operational area. Site selection of the TAC CP allowed for uninterrupted vertical and horizontal communications.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>*1. The commander and staff gained and/or maintained situational understanding using information gathered from Force XXI Battle Command Brigade and Below (FBCB2), frequency modulated (FM), digital and or analog communications systems, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources.</p> <p>2. The S3 section identifies requirements to maintain a TAC CP.</p> <p>a. Identified and selected appropriate TAC CP personnel based on mission, enemy, terrain and weather, troops and support available, time available, and civil considerations (METT-TC) and the commander’s guidance.</p> <p>b. Selected and coordinated mode of transportation for TAC CP (airborne or ground).</p> <p>c. Conducted reconnaissance of the proposed new location.</p> <hr/> <p><b>Note.</b> The situation and/or time may dictate a map reconnaissance. Reconnaissance should include security and communication requirements.</p> <hr/> <p>d. Developed and issued the movement requirements.</p> <p>e. Identified the new location.</p> <p>f. Assigned responsibilities and issued instructions.</p> <p>g. Task organized TOC personnel.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p><b>*3.</b> The S3 section displaces the tactical CP to support current or planned operations.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Moved the tactical CP to an area where C2 of ongoing or planned operations were facilitated.</li> <li>b. Established tactical security.</li> <li>c. Maintained communications with all elements.</li> <li>d. Ensured that the displaced tactical CP was operational and controlled all operations if the main TOC displaces.</li> <li>e. Coordinated battle handover between TAC and TOC.</li> <li>f. Identified triggers for displacement.</li> </ul> <p><b>*4.</b> The S3 section operates a tactical CP.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Maintained vertical and horizontal communications with assigned and/or attached units throughout the operation.</li> <li>b. Maintained security around the tactical CP.</li> <li>c. Maintained an internal TAC CP security plan.</li> <li>d. Conducted tactical operations to provide continuous C2 of battalion operations.</li> <li>e. Received and processed required operational reports in a timely manner.</li> <li>f. Prepared and updated situation maps immediately on receipt of tactical information.</li> <li>g. Maintained a staff journal.</li> </ul> <p><b>*5.</b> Commander/leader performs or delegates performance of the steps in the risk management process for each step in troop-leading procedures (see appendix C).</p> <p>* Indicates a leader task step</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
Total Task Steps Evaluated							
Total Task Steps GO							
Training Status GO/NO-GO							

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
011-510-0300	Coordinate staff duties/responsibilities in tactical units	STP 1-15 II
011-510-0301	Participate in the military decision making process	STP 1-15 II
011-510-0306	Perform personnel/administration staff duties/responsibilities	STP 1-15 II
011-510-0309	Perform logistics staff duties/responsibilities	STP 1-15 II
011-510-0310	Perform duties of aviation liaison officer	STP 1-15 II

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
01-1-5134	Plan aviation operations using the military decision making process	ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-118-MTP ARTEP 1-126-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** COMMAND SECTION  
S3 SECTION

**TASK: Coordinate Procedures for Establishing a Tactical Operations Center (01-1-5149)**  
 (FM 3-04.111) (FM 1-100) (FM 1-113)  
 (FM 3-04.126) (FM 3-100.12) (FM 7-0)  
 (FM 7-1)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The battalion is conducting assigned missions in a simulated (live, virtual, or constructive) combat environment. The battalion’s main command post (CP) is operational, staff sections and digital systems are functional. The battalion has received an operation order (OPORD) requiring movement to a new location. The battalion is operational and has all of its required resources and equipment. The S3 has received the commander’s guidance directing it to establish a tactical operations center (TOC). Some iterations of this task should be performed in mission-oriented protective posture level 4 (MOPP4).

**TASK STANDARDS:** The S3 section relocated and established the battalion TOC as part of the main CP. The establishment of the TOC allowed the commander or the S3 to maintain continuous tactical control of operational area. It also established and maintained local and physical security of assigned tactical area.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>*1. The battalion S3 develops and issues the movement plan.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Identified the new location.</li> <li>b. Together with the executive officer, task-organized TOC personnel, assigning responsibilities, and issued instructions.</li> </ul> <p>*2. The headquarters and headquarters company (HHC) commander with S3 guidance directs advance/quartering party operations.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Identified and briefed advance party personnel.</li> <li>b. Reconnoitered the route to the new location.</li> <li>c. Reconnoitered the prepared site together with the S3 or his representative and the signal officer.</li> <li>d. Planned site layout and assigned areas of responsibility to each section.</li> <li>e. Briefed the guides on the reception of main body.</li> </ul> <p>3. The HHC establishes and maintains security.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. The HHC commander, together with the S2, formed a security force.</li> <li>b. Assigned sectors and occupied positions; prepared range cards in duplicate (one for position, one for HHC commander).</li> <li>c. Coordinated with adjacent units.</li> <li>d. Identified entrances, exits, and routes.</li> <li>e. Identified or removed enemy mines and obstacles.</li> <li>f. Identified and covered likely enemy avenues of approach.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>g. Positioned observation and listening posts within range of supporting small-arms fire from the perimeter and allowed a covered and concealed route back to the perimeter.</p> <p>4. The HHC designates fighting positions.</p> <p>a. Ensured that the positions overwatched likely enemy avenues of approach.</p> <p>b. Ensured that fields of observation and fire overlapped.</p> <p>c. Ensured that positions are properly covered and concealed.</p> <p>5. The S3 section establishes and maintains a TOC.</p> <p>a. Received the main body with no delays or choke points during movement into the area. Ensured that the main TOC maintained communications with higher, lower, and adjacent units or communicated with the tactical CP during movement.</p> <p>b. Established and maintained communications.</p> <p>c. Positioned and employed equipment.</p> <p>*6. Commander/leader performs or delegates performance of the steps in the risk management process for each step in troop-leading procedures (see appendix C).</p> <p>* Indicates a leader task step</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
Total Task Steps Evaluated							
Total Task Steps GO							
Training Status GO/NO-GO							

#### SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
011-510-0021	Employ fundamentals of Army operations	STP 1-15 II
011-510-0300	Coordinate staff duties/responsibilities in tactical units	STP 1-15 II
011-510-0301	Participate in the military decision making process	STP 1-15 II
011-510-0306	Perform personnel/administration staff duties/responsibilities	STP 1-15 II
011-510-0309	Perform logistics staff duties/responsibilities	STP 1-15 II

#### SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
01-1-5134	Plan aviation operations using the military decision making process	ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-118-MTP ARTEP 1-126-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** COMMAND SECTION  
BATTALION

**TASK: Direct Civil-Military Operations (01-1-5155)**

(FM 3-04.111)	(FM 1-100)	(FM 1-113)
(FM 3-04.126)	(FM 3-05.301)	(FM 3-06)
(FM 3-19.15)	(FM 3-100.12)	(FM 41-10)
(JP 3-57)		

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The battalion is conducting assigned missions in a simulated (live, virtual, or constructive) combat environment. The battalion’s main command post (CP) is operational and the staff sections and digital systems are functional. The battalion is conducting operations independently or as part of a higher headquarters and has received an operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) to conduct operations at the location and time specified, that will require cooperation and coordination with civilian authorities. The unit commander’s obligation to civil and military authority is defined. The commander has provided guidance to the S3/S5 section directing it to conduct civil military operations. The unit has been augmented with a S5 and a civil affairs detachment support team (CADST). The order includes all applicable overlays and or graphics. All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. The unit has communications with higher, adjacent, subordinate, and supporting elements. The unit has been provided guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and or rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task should be conducted during limited visibility conditions. Some iterations of this task should be performed in mission-oriented protective posture level 4 (MOPP4).

**TASK STANDARDS:** The command section/S3 directed civil military operations according to tactical standing operating procedures (TACSOP), applicable publications, the OPORD/FRAGO, and/or higher commander’s guidance. The unit identified mission-essential tasks and or mission requirements. The unit analyzed the impact of the mission on the civilian populace and the impact of the civilian populace on the operation. The unit planned operations security (OPSEC). The unit established and maintained close and continuing relations with local civil authorities, other U.S. government, and non-governmental agencies in the assigned area of operations. The unit developed a dislocated civilian (DC) plan. Force protection is applied to all operations. The unit complied with the ROE and or ROI.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p><b>Note.</b> The term “enemy” is used in this outline to signify an actual enemy force, a belligerent, and or an individual or group that is or may become hostile to U.S. forces.</p> <p><b>Note.</b> The term “battlefield”, when used in this outline, is synonymous with the area of operations (AO).</p> <hr/> <p>*1. The commander and staff gained and/or maintained situational understanding using information gathered from Force XXI Battle Command Brigade and Below (FBCB2), frequency modulated (FM), digital and or analog communications systems, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources.</p>		



TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p><b>*2.</b> Commander and staff receive an order or anticipate a new mission and begin the military decisionmaking process (MDMP).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Identified mission-essential tasks and or mission requirements required for mission accomplishment, issued warning order (WARNO) to CADST.</li> <li>b. Conducted a map reconnaissance.</li> <li>c. Conducted intelligence preparation of the battlefield (IPB). <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Employed all available information gathering assets.</li> <li>(2) Defined the battlefield environment.</li> <li>(3) Described battlefield effects.</li> <li>(4) Evaluated the enemy.</li> <li>(5) Determined enemy courses of action (COA).</li> </ul> </li> <li>d. Developed the situation template (SITEMP). <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Included location and orientation of enemy forces.</li> <li>(2) Included location and range of all enemy direct and indirect fire systems.</li> <li>(3) Included location of enemy target acquisition assets.</li> <li>(4) Included positioning of enemy air defense artillery (ADA) assets.</li> <li>(5) Included enemy obstacle systems, including tactical and protective obstacles and scatterable mines (SCATMINES).</li> <li>(6) Included likely enemy air avenues of approach (AAs).</li> </ul> </li> <li>e. Developed reconnaissance and surveillance (R&amp;S) plan and employ R&amp;S assets early in the MDMP process. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Developed a well-resourced and coordinated R&amp;S plan that provided a detailed picture of the enemy situation and continuous updates.</li> <li>(2) Developed an R&amp;S plan that answered the commander's intelligence requirements and accomplished his intent.</li> <li>(3) Included redundant information-gathering systems to ensure continuous flow of information to higher headquarters and correspondingly from higher headquarters to the unit.</li> <li>(4) Included ingress and egress routes for positions, limits of fire, and obstacles.</li> </ul> </li> <li>f. Organized the unit to accomplish the mission and coordinated with higher headquarters requests for further civil affair (CA) specialty teams.</li> <li>g. Analyzed the impact of the mission on the civilian populace.</li> <li>h. Analyzed the impact of the civilian populace on military operations.</li> <li>i. Provided staff assistance and guidance on command policy to subordinate units.</li> <li>j. Determined CA activities to assist in the accomplishment of the mission.</li> <li>k. Determined the location of critical environmental resources, assets, and facilities (such as nuclear power plants, water and or sewage treatment facilities, and oil refineries). <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Indicated which resources might be afforded special protection.</li> <li>(2) Determined value of asset to the mission.</li> <li>(3) Determined effects on public health if the asset is destroyed.</li> <li>(4) Determined danger of significant regional or global contamination.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>(5) Determined potential post-conflict clean-up costs.</p> <p>(6) Determined economic viability of the area.</p> <p><b>l.</b> Identified cultural considerations within the operational area, to include religious, social, political, and economical elements.</p> <p><b>m.</b> Determined location and site of joint commissions, local government and non-government meetings, and civilian gatherings that should be attended by unit representative.</p> <p><b>n.</b> Planned OPSEC.</p> <p>(1) Ensured leaders have proper clearances to review plans. (Requests for clearances and background investigations should be processed ahead of time).</p> <p>(2) Planned redundancy of systems, capabilities and plans in every aspect of a contingency operation. (Overlapping forces or time sequencing provided backup without requiring more forces to be committed to the overall operation).</p> <p>(3) Developed procedures for decentralized operations.</p> <p>(a) Ensured subordinates understand the commander's intent two levels up.</p> <p>(b) Ensured subordinates understand complex ROE.</p> <p>(c) Ensured subordinates understand the maneuver plan.</p> <p><b>o.</b> Developed force protection measures.</p> <p><b>p.</b> Integrated and synchronize warfighting functions based on the factors of mission, enemy, terrain and weather, troops and support available, time available, and civil considerations (METT-TC).</p> <p>(1) Planned fire support.</p> <p>(2) Planned engineer support. Considerations for the scheme of engineer operations [SOEO] follow—</p> <p>(a) Ensured terrain visualization products from higher headquarters are available and distributed.</p> <p>(b) Integrated obstacle intelligence (OBSTINTEL) requirements into the priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and R&amp;S plan.</p> <p>(c) Ensured confirmed OBSTINTEL receives immediate unit-wide dissemination, including supporting combat support (CS) and combat service support (CSS) units.</p> <p>(d) Identified required mobility, countermobility, and survivability tasks throughout the depth of the unit zone or axis.</p> <p>(e) Planned adequate command and control to rapidly shift priority of effort and support in order to reinforce success or respond to a changing situation.</p> <p>(3) Planned chemical, biological, radiological, and chemical (CBRN) support.</p> <p>(4) Planned air defense (AD) support. (if support has been provided by higher headquarters).</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>(5) Planned CSS.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) Integrated the movement and positioning of CSS assets with the scheme of maneuver to ensure immediate support of anticipated requirements.</li> <li>(b) Ensured adequate CSS support to the R&amp;S effort. (The S4 plans and integrates timely resupply and evacuation support of forward R&amp;S assets).</li> <li>(c) Planned immediate support to high-risk operations if any are identified.</li> <li>(d) Planned and coordinated casualty evacuation.</li> <li>(e) Integrated refueling and resupply operations with the scheme of maneuver.</li> <li>(f) Established drop points for movement of key CSS assets.</li> <li>(g) Planned on-order control measures, logistics release points (LRPs), unit maintenance collection points (UMCPs), and ambulance exchange points (if applicable).</li> <li>(h) Determined host nation and or area resources available for the mission.</li> <li>(i) Organized resources according to the classes of supply.</li> </ul> <p>q. Developed a departure control (DC) plan to minimize civilian interference with military operations.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Estimated the number of DCs, their points of origin, and anticipated direction of movement.</li> <li>(2) Identified requirements for care of civilians. (medical, food, and water).</li> <li>(3) Assessed the ability of foreign nation and or host nation to solve DC situation.</li> <li>(4) Identified need for additional CA assets.</li> <li>(5) Coordinated with the S4 for DC routes.</li> <li>(6) Coordinated for military police (MP) support along DC routes within the AO.</li> <li>(7) Coordinated requirement for military intelligence (MI) screening and integration support.</li> <li>(8) Designed a plan with control measures. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) Established collection points and assembly areas.</li> <li>(b) Established routes away from main supply routes (MSR).</li> <li>(c) Established food, water, and medical needs of DCs.</li> <li>(d) Established maximum foreign nation, host nation, non-governmental organization (NGO), and or private voluntary organization (PVO) support.</li> </ul> </li> <li>(9) Disseminated DC plan and route overlays to U.S. and allied military, and to the local government and populace.</li> <li>(10) Monitored process to completion.</li> </ul> <p>r. Conducted risk management.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p><b>3.</b> S3/S5 and CA team prepares CA annex and portions of the operation plan (OPLAN) for the unit.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>a.</b> Assigned aspects of the preparation to S5 section providing guidance, editing, and validation of the end product.</li> <li><b>b.</b> Issued and or wrote plans according to the COA selected by the unit commander and the planning guidance issued.</li> <li><b>c.</b> Included primary, alternate, contingency plans (CONPLAN), and emergency plans based on the criticality of the task.</li> <li><b>d.</b> Included in appropriate CONPLANS any reasonable or anticipated changes to the civil-military operations (CMOs) mission (such as follow-on missions or other missions to be executed on order from the tasking headquarters).</li> <li><b>e.</b> Presented the complete plan to the commander for review as part of the OPORD and or OPLAN.</li> </ul> <p><b>4.</b> S3/S5 and CA team maintains operational presence in main CP with updated situation map (such as foreign-national resources, DC information, protected targets, and unit and incident locations).</p> <p><b>5.</b> S3/S5 and CA team provides liaison to subordinate units, as required.</p> <p><b>*6.</b> S5 or CA team and or staff judge advocate (SJA) advises the commander of legal obligations and moral considerations.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>a.</b> Identified civilian casualty figures.</li> <li><b>b.</b> Identified property destruction.</li> <li><b>c.</b> Identified infrastructure dislocation.</li> </ul> <p><b>*7.</b> Commander and staff conduct confirmation briefings with subordinates immediately after OPORD is issued to ensure subordinates understand commander's intent and concept.</p> <p><b>8.</b> Unit prepares for the mission.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>a.</b> Established liaison with local officials. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>(1)</b> Coordinated for linguist support.</li> <li><b>(2)</b> Identified local officials.</li> <li><b>(3)</b> Contacted local officials.</li> </ul> </li> <li><b>b.</b> Established and maintained close and continuing relations with other U.S. government agencies with a responsibility toward the civilian community in the area of responsibility (AO). <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>(1)</b> Secured list of agencies operating in AO.</li> <li><b>(2)</b> Identified contact persons within the agencies.</li> <li><b>(3)</b> Determined mission and AO of agencies.</li> <li><b>(4)</b> Established contact with agencies.</li> </ul> </li> <li><b>c.</b> Refined the plan based on continuously updated intelligence.</li> <li><b>d.</b> Conducted extensive R&amp;S.</li> <li><b>e.</b> Conducted precombat checks as necessary.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>f. Supervised subordinate troop-leading procedures to ensure planning and preparations are on track and consistent with the unit commander's intent.</p> <p>g. Conducted rehearsals during day and limited visibility, if possible.</p> <p>h. Established medical civilian-assistance programs (MEDCAPs) to provide health care to noncombatants, incorporating U.S. doctors and local host nation medical personnel.</p> <p>i. Briefed subordinates on the danger of unmapped mine fields and or booby traps in the AO.</p> <p>j. Positioned forces.</p> <p>k. Completed host-nation resource estimate.</p> <p>9. Unit executes the civil military operation (CMO).</p> <p>a. Conducted combat, stability, support, enabling, CS, and CSS operations as directed. (Operations may be conducted in an urban environment).</p> <p>b. Concentrated engineers on both battle-damage repair and the upgrading of utilities to improve local infrastructure.</p> <p>c. Maintained an information field. (CMO database).</p> <p>(1) Maintained area assessment and study and resource file database input from CADST.</p> <hr/> <p><b>Note.</b> An area study is normally a filed document that contains information obtained in advance of the need. Area assessment begins upon receipt of the mission and supplements the study.</p> <hr/> <p>(2) Maintained copies and working knowledge of existing treaties, status of forces agreement and international law and agreements applicable to the AO.</p> <p>(3) Requested information necessary to satisfy the PIR from applicable sources, to include foreign nation information.</p> <p>(4) Routed intelligence information requests through the unit S2.</p> <p>(5) Identified information received that satisfies PIR.</p> <p>(6) Modified previously developed estimates and plans according to the latest information available.</p> <p>(7) Notified CADST leader of modified estimates and plans.</p> <p>(8) Notified other concerned (higher, lower, or adjacent) staff sections of information that satisfies intelligence requirements (IR).</p> <p>(9) Updated, in conjunction with the unit S2, the commander's PIR list according to the latest information available and requirements for additional commander's critical information requirements (CCIR) that arise from modified estimate and-plans.</p> <p>d. Maintained liaison with local civil authorities and nongovernmental organizations.</p> <p>(1) Established face-to-face contact with key officials.</p> <p>(2) Determined degree of support and trust of officials.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p><b>10.</b> Unit public affairs office (PAO) and or S1 supervises media support, control, and briefings.</p> <p><b>11.</b> Unit leaders assess the operation.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;"><b>a.</b> Monitored continuously the situation and the progress of the operation.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;"><b>b.</b> Directed adjustments to ensure that operations remain aligned with the commander's intent.</p> <p><b>12.</b> Unit complies with ROE and or ROI.</p> <p><b>13.</b> S5 and CA coordinate with the higher headquarters S5/G5 for further civil-affairs assets such as functional specialty teams and resource needs.</p> <p><b>14.</b> Commander/leader identifies and controls hazards according to risk management procedures (see appendix C).</p> <p>* Indicates a leader task step</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
Total Task Steps Evaluated							
Total Task Steps GO							
Training Status GO/NO-GO							

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
011-510-0700	Determine characteristics of terrorism, counterterrorism, and antiterrorism	STP 1-15 II
011-510-0701	Determine heavy/light opposing forces organization and equipment	STP 1-15 II
011-510-0702	Determine characteristics heavy/light opposing forces offensive/defensive tactics	STP 1-15 II

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
01-1-5134	Plan aviation operations using the military decision making process	ARTEP 1-113-MTP
01-2-0341	Perform composite risk management procedures	ARTEP 1-118-MTP ARTEP 1-126-MTP ARTEP 1-113-MTP  ARTEP 1-126-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** COMMAND SECTION  
S3 SECTION

**TASK: Plan Aviation Stability Operations and Support Operations (01-1-5157)**

(FM 3-04.111)	(FM 1-100)	(FM 1-113)
(FM 3-04.126)	(FM 3-04.300)	(FM 3-07)
(FM 3-100.12)	(FM 90-4)	(TC 1-237)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The battalion is conducting assigned missions in a simulated (live, virtual, or constructive) combat environment. The battalion tactical operations center (TOC) is operational and the staff sections and digital systems are functional. The S3 section has received mission requirements and the commander's guidance directing it to plan aviation stability operations and support operations. The staff has been briefed on mission, enemy terrain and weather, troops and support available, time available, and civil considerations (METT-TC), weather, command and control (C2) relationships, and rules of engagement (ROE). Operations may require offensive/defensive operations. Reports are being received through normal channels and the executive officer (XO) is coordinating the staff with the S3. Adequate time is available for planning. Some iterations of this task should be performed in mission-oriented protective posture level 4 (MOPP4).

**TASK STANDARDS:** The S3 planned aviation stability operations and support operations according to the tactical standing operating procedure (TACSOP) and the commander's guidance. The battalion established immediate physical security of personnel and equipment. All assigned/attached personnel received comprehensive briefings on the mission, command relationships, situation/threat, and ROE. Battalion operations minimized adverse effects on civilian populations and resources. Collateral damage to noncombatants and infrastructures were minimized.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>*1. The S3, with assistance from the S2, plans for aviation stability operations and support operations to include force protection measures of battalion personnel.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Prepared and implemented physical security and operational security plans.</li> <li>b. Included measures to minimize vulnerability to terrorism and non-hostile factions.</li> </ul> <p>2. The XO directs the staff to gather critical data that may negatively impact stability operations and support operations mission.</p> <p>3. The staff recommends policies and procedures to the S3 for planning and guiding stability operations and support operations.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Identified pertinent demographic and economic issues.</li> <li>b. Reviewed local customs and laws.</li> <li>c. Sought input from local leaders.</li> <li>d. Planned positive community-relations programs.</li> </ul> <p>4. The staff maximizes joint, interagency, multinational, and local civil coordination and cooperation.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. The S3 coordinated to determine local flight rules and procedures.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>b. The S3 coordinated to obtain interpreters, as necessary, for mission planning and in-flight operations.</p> <p>c. Reviewed and supervised the implementation of ROE.</p> <p>5. The S3 determines and plans the battalion's mission—</p> <p>a. Oriented on the area and its culture and the nature of the situation.</p> <p>b. Planned operations to complement those of government and private agencies.</p> <p>c. Planned operations within the framework of the overall mission, with primary focus on stability operations and support operations.</p> <p>d. Planned for transition to civilian agencies as soon as feasible.</p> <p>*6. The commander emphasizes civil affairs and information operations.</p> <p>a. Ensured that Soldiers at all levels understood the consequences of releasing inaccurate, unsubstantiated, or poorly timed information.</p> <p>b. Information released was authoritative and reflected the degree of accuracy known at the time.</p> <p>7. The unit conducts support, antiterrorism, counterterrorism, and force-on-force operations, as required.</p> <p>a. Accommodated the culture, values, and methods of operations of the other participants.</p> <p>b. Accommodated the political, economic, and social situations, including demographics, of the population.</p> <p>c. Prioritized efforts and allocated resources to achieve the greatest essential support to the largest number of people possible.</p> <p>d. Displayed preparedness (capability to apply force without threatening), consistent with mission constraints, by conducting demanding combined arms training routinely in the area of operations, as appropriate.</p> <p>e. Used warfighting doctrine, with suitable modification, to accommodate the situation.</p> <p>f. Made quick transition between support, peacekeeping/peace-enforcing operations, and offensive/defensive operations, as required.</p> <p>g. Applied force that was consistent with and adequate for assigned objectives, employing combat power selectively according to assigned missions and prescribed ROE.</p> <p>*8. Commander/leader applies required steps of the risk management process to identify and control hazards to protect the force (see appendix C).</p> <p>* Indicates a leader task step</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
Total Task Steps Evaluated							
Total Task Steps GO							
Training Status GO/NO-GO							



**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
011-237-2010	Perform multi-aircraft operations (UH-60)	TC 1-237 STP 1-TACOPS
011-237-2012	Perform tactical flight mission planning (UH-60)	TC 1-237  STP 1-TACOPS
011-237-2026	Perform terrain flight (UH-60)	TC 1-237 STP 1-TACOPS
011-510-0004	Employ combat service support	STP 1-15 II
011-510-1700	Implement the Army safety program	STP 1-15 II

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
01-1-5134	Plan aviation operations using the military decision making process	ARTEP 1-113-MTP  ARTEP 1-118-MTP ARTEP 1-126-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** COMMAND SECTION  
S3 SECTION

**TASK: Integrate the Army Airspace Command and Control Plan into Aviation Operations (01-1-5164)**

(FM 3-52)	(FM 1-100)	(FM 1-113)
(FM 3-04.111)	(FM 3-04.126)	(FM 3-04.300)
(FM 3-100.2)	(FM 6-0)	(FM 71-100-3)
(FM 90-4)	(TC 1-237)	

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The battalion is conducting assigned missions in a simulated (live, virtual, or constructive) combat environment. The S3 section has received mission requirements and the commander's guidance to integrate the Army airspace command and control (A2C2) plan into aviation operations. The battalion's command post (CP) is operational and corresponding staff sections and digital systems are functional. The unit's aviation mission planning system (AMPS) is available, operational and contains all enemy and friendly locations and graphic control measures provided by the higher headquarters. Operations may be conducted during day, at night using night vision devices (NVDs), under electronic warfare (EW) conditions, and using terrain flight. Some iterations of this task should be performed in mission-oriented protective posture level 4 (MOPP4).

**TASK STANDARDS:** The battalion's S3 section met the commander's intent and integrated A2C2 measures into the battalion's tactical operations. The S3 provided A2C2 data for unit's to incorporate the data into their mission planning. The A2C2 measures are observed by assigned/attached units throughout the operations. No friendly aircraft losses occurred because of poor or inadequate integration of operations into the A2C2 plan.

---

**Note.** Due to the intricacies of the modern battlefield and the number of airspace users in the contemporary operating environments (COE), it is imperative that all aircrews are trained in, and habitually use, established A2C2 procedures.

---

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p><b>Note.</b> The battalion creates a system that ensures that the airspace coordination order and air tasking order (ATO) are sent to the battalion headquarters, and that the airspace control order and ATO are read for all information/instructions that apply to assigned/attached operational aviation units.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The S3 section reviews the A2C2 plan.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Identified the areas for which the commander was responsible.</li> <li>b. Identified U.S. and allied airspace users.                                     <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Army aviation.</li> <li>(2) Other aviation forces.</li> <li>(3) Civil aviation.</li> <li>(4) Unmanned aerial vehicles.</li> <li>(5) Fire support assets.</li> <li>(6) Air defense assets.</li> <li>(7) Air traffic control.</li> </ol> </li> </ol> </li> </ol>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>c. Determined A2C2 measures imposed by higher headquarters.</li> <li>d. Determined A2C2 priorities established by higher headquarters.</li> <li>e. Determined mission requirements.</li> </ul> <p>2. The S3 section considers the A2C2 plan while developing courses of action.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Consolidated airspace user requirements for each course of action.</li> <li>b. Identified conflicts with airspace usage.</li> <li>c. Determined control measures to resolve conflicts.</li> <li>d. Evaluated the effects of control measures on each course of action.</li> <li>e. Recommended a specific course of action.</li> </ul> <p>3. The S3 section develops the battalion A2C2 annex.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Incorporated the commander's airspace priorities.</li> <li>b. Developed the concept of the operation.</li> <li>c. Defined front, rear, left, right, and upper limits of the airspace sub-sector.</li> <li>d. Outlined the authority (by echelon) designated in higher headquarters' A2C2 annex.</li> <li>e. Established control measures.</li> <li>f. Determined the type of control required (positive/procedural).</li> <li>g. Defined information affecting more than two users. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Procedural control measures/restrictions/information not on the overlay.</li> <li>(2) Flight rules (visual meteorological conditions [VMC]/instrument meteorological conditions [IMC]).</li> <li>(3) Airspace control order issuance times.</li> <li>(4) High-density airspace control zone and other potentially congested areas.</li> <li>(5) Friendly electronic warfare operations that affect airspace users.</li> <li>(6) Forward arming and refueling point locations (active and planned).</li> <li>(7) Airfield locations and operations.</li> <li>(8) Navigational aid locations and times of operation (active and planned).</li> <li>(9) Flight operations center and flight coordination center locations/operations.</li> <li>(10) Control reporting center and control and reporting element (U.S. Air Force).</li> <li>(11) Inadvertent IMC procedures.</li> </ul> </li> </ul> <p>4. The S3 section establishes A2C2 control measures to support the operation.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Coordinated requirements with brigade.</li> <li>b. Adjusted plans and orders, as required.</li> <li>c. Disseminated A2C2 measures and plans to staff and subordinate elements.</li> </ul> <p>*5. Commander/leader identifies and controls hazards according to risk management procedures (see appendix C).</p> <p>* Indicates a leader task step</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
<i>ITERATION</i>	<i>1</i>	<i>2</i>	<i>3</i>	<i>4</i>	<i>5</i>	<i>M</i>	<i>TOTAL</i>
Total Task Steps Evaluated							
Total Task Steps GO							
Training Status GO/NO-GO							

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
011-237-2012	Perform tactical flight mission planning (UH-60)	TC 1-237
011-510-0018	Employ Army airspace command and control	STP 1-TACOPS STP 1-15 II
011-510-0021	Employ fundamentals of Army operations	STP 1-15 II

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
01-1-5134	Plan aviation operations using the military decision making process	ARTEP 1-113-MTP  ARTEP 1-118-MTP ARTEP 1-126-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** COMMAND SECTION  
 S3 SECTION  
 BATTALION

**TASK: Coordinate Personnel Recovery/Self-Recovery Operations (01-1-5165)**

(FM 3-04.111)	(FM 1-100)	(FM 1-113)
(FM 3-04.126)	(FM 3-100.12)	(FM 4-0)
(FM 71-100-3)	(FM 90-4)	(TC 1-210)
(TC 1-237)		

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The battalion is conducting assigned missions in a simulated (live, virtual, or constructive) combat environment. The main command post (CP) is operational and the tactical operations/S3 section and digital systems are functional. The tactical operations/S3 has received the commander's guidance directing it to coordinate personnel recovery operations. One or more friendly aircrews have been shot down or have experienced maintenance difficulties. Their location is not known but is believed to be in enemy territory. All available information has been gathered and assistance from outside sources, as well as organic assets to conduct the search and recovery, are available. The unit can conduct the operation using terrain flight, in electronic warfare (EW), during the day or at night with night vision devices (NVDs). The unit's automated mission planning system is available, operational and contains all enemy and friendly locations and graphic control measures provided by the higher headquarters. Some iterations of this task should be performed in mission-oriented protective posture level 4 (MOPP4).

**TASK STANDARDS:** The S3 section coordinated personnel recovery operations according to the battalion's tactical standing operating procedure (TACSOP) and FM 3-04.111. Coordination that was made by the S3 section did not compromise location of isolated personnel. Coordination made by the S3 section facilitated immediate search and rapid recovery/rescue of personnel. Sensitive items and personnel were recovered rapidly and without loss of personnel or equipment.

---

**Note.** If necessary, the S3 will plan recovery operations based on the need.

---

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p><b>Note.</b> Techniques for hasty recovery of downed personnel, once developed internally by individual battalions, should be included in the battalion's TACSOP. These hasty recovery techniques must be rehearsed at time intervals directed by the attack reconnaissance battalion (ARB) commander.</p> <hr/> <p>1. The tactical operations/S3 section coordinates development of a personnel recovery SOP which includes—</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Integration of blue force tracker (BFT) system, if available.</li> <li>b. Isolation preparation packets.</li> <li>c. Evasion plans of actions.</li> <li>d. Signaling procedures.</li> <li>e. Personnel recovery alert procedures (horizontal/vertical).</li> <li>f. Task-organizing procedures (attachments/detachments).</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>g. Threat updates procedures.</p> <p>h. Search and recovery techniques.</p> <p>i. Reporting requirements.</p> <p>j. Notification/authentication techniques.</p> <p>k. Security measures (downed personnel).</p> <hr/> <p><b>Note.</b> Security should be established as soon as practical in case downed personnel have moved to the pickup point or is unable to provide security.</p> <p><b>Note.</b> Decisions should be made whether to execute the personnel recovery plan or execute a hasty recovery.</p> <hr/> <p>2. The S3 coordinates with rescue coordination center (RCC).</p> <p>a. Appointed an on scene commander, or rescue mission commander (RMC).</p> <p>b. Prepared information and transmitted search and rescue incident report (SARIR).</p> <p>c. Requested assistance for intraservice support.</p> <p>(1) Ensured unit was aware of all personnel recovery capabilities, both air and ground.</p> <p>(2) Ensured unit was knowledgeable of parameters within which personnel recovery forces will operate according to RCC guidance.</p> <p>(3) Ensured TACOPS/S3 personnel were knowledgeable of procedures and requirements for requesting personnel recovery.</p> <p>d. Prepared for joint personnel recovery operations.</p> <p>(1) Provided mutual support to other services when tasked by the joint search and rescue center.</p> <p>(2) Ensured that battalion personnel augmenting joint personnel recovery operations were familiar with applicable publications and regulations to include joint publications.</p> <hr/> <p><b>Note.</b> Refer to aviation support company (ASC) task 01-2-5213, Perform helicopter battle damage assessment and repair (BDAR) recovery operations for related information.</p> <hr/> <p>*3. Commander/leader performs or delegates performance of the steps in the risk management process for each step in troop-leading procedures (see appendix C).</p> <p>* Indicates a leader task step</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
Total Task Steps Evaluated							
Total Task Steps GO							
Training Status GO/NO-GO							

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
011-237-2010	Perform multi-aircraft operations (UH-60)	TC 1-237 STP 1-TACOPS
011-237-2012	Perform tactical flight mission planning (UH-60)	TC 1-237
011-510-0306	Perform personnel/administration staff duties/responsibilities	STP 1-TACOPS STP 1-15 II
011-540-0034	Manage aircraft recovery operations	STP 1-150-155

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
01-1-5134	Plan aviation operations using the military decision making process	ARTEP 1-113-MTP
01-2-0341	Perform composite risk management procedures	ARTEP 1-118-MTP ARTEP 1-126-MTP ARTEP 1-113-MTP
01-2-5213	Perform helicopter battle damage assessment and repair/recovery operations	ARTEP 1-126-MTP ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-126-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** COMMAND SECTION  
S3 SECTION

**TASK: Employ Automated Mission Planning Systems (01-1-5166)**

(FM 3-04.111)	(FM 1-100)	(FM 1-113)
(FM 3-0)	(FM 3-04.126)	(FM 7-1)
(JP 3-05.2)	(TC 1-237)	

**ITERATION:** 1      2      3      4      5      M      (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T      P      U      (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The unit is conducting assigned missions in a simulated (live, virtual, or constructive) combat environment. The tactical operations center (TOC) is operational, staff sections and digital systems are functional. The S3 section has received mission requirements and the commander's guidance directing it to conduct attack operations. The S2 provides the most recent intelligence on force disposition in the area of operations. The unit's automated mission planning systems are available, operational and contain all enemy and friendly locations and graphic control measures provided by the higher headquarters. Theater aircraft survivability settings have been downloaded and uploaded to the aircraft. Reports are being received through normal channels and the executive officer (XO) is coordinating the staff with the S3. Adequate time is available for planning. Some iterations of this task should be performed in mission-oriented protective posture level 4 (MOPP4).

**TASK STANDARDS:** The tactical operations officer has overlaid enemy threat and ranges to provided analysis of all aircraft routes, and objective areas using the approved automated mission planning system. Recommended changes to aircraft survivability equipment (ASE) programming and routes based on threat analysis and aircraft capabilities. Aircraft routes have been passed to higher for integration into the Army A2C2 system. Terrain has been analyzed using approved, automated terrain modeling software. The battalion tactical operations officer demonstrated the ability to provide aerial perspective views of objective areas and estimated weapons effects based on terrain, weather and munitions to be used if applicable.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The S2, with coordination with the S3, provides the tactical operations officer current enemy situation.</li> <li>2. Using current enemy situation received from the S2 or downloaded from higher, the tactical operations officer conducts the following—               <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Threat analysis along the axis of advance.</li> <li>b. Route recommendations based on—                   <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Enemy threat weapon systems and ranges.</li> <li>(2) Masking terrain.</li> <li>(3) Weather effects on masking and weapons employment.</li> <li>(4) Choke points.</li> <li>(5) Maneuver area.</li> <li>(6) Organic or coordinated ability to suppress threat en route to objective.</li> <li>(7) Hazards to flight.</li> <li>(8) Aircraft survivability equipment.</li> <li>(9) Effects of sun, moon, and shadows on the route of flight.</li> </ol> </li> </ol> </li> </ol>		



TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>c. Objective area analysis completed.</p> <p>(1) Enemy threat weapon systems and ranges.</p> <p>(2) Masking terrain.</p> <p>(3) Weather effects on masking and weapons employment.</p> <p>(4) Maneuver area.</p> <p>(5) Rally point locations.</p> <p>(6) Effects of moon, sun, and shadows on the route of flight.</p> <p>d. Objective area visualization—</p> <p>(1) Utilized terrain modeling software that allows “pilot-eye” view of terrain en route to the objective and at the objective area.</p> <p>(2) Provided detailed maps of the objective area for planning.</p> <p>*3. Commander/leader performs or delegates performance of the steps in the risk management process for each step in troop-leading procedures (see appendix C).</p> <p>* Indicates a leader task step</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
Total Task Steps Evaluated							
Total Task Steps GO							
Training Status GO/NO-GO							

#### SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
011-237-2012	Perform tactical flight mission planning (UH-60)	TC 1-237
011-510-0026	Operate aviation mission planning system (AMPS)	STP 1-TACOPS STP 1-15 I  STP 1-15II-500-MQS

#### SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
01-1-5130	Conduct battalion air assault operations	ARTEP 1-113-MTP
01-1-5134	Plan aviation operations using the military decision making process	ARTEP 1-113-MTP  ARTEP 1-118-MTP ARTEP 1-126-MTP
01-1-5151	Plan aviation air assault operations (UH-60)	ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-118-MTP
01-1-5152	Plan aviation air movement operations (UH-60)	ARTEP 1-113-MTP  ARTEP 1-118-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENT:** COMPANY

**TASK: Perform Composite Risk Management Procedures (01-2-0341)**

- |               |               |               |
|---------------|---------------|---------------|
| (FM 3-04.111) | (AR 95-1)     | (FM 1-100)    |
| (FM 1-113)    | (FM 3-04.126) | (FM 3-04.500) |
| (FM 3-04.513) | (FM 3-100.4)  | (FM 3-100.12) |
| (TC 1-210)    | (TC 1-237)    |               |

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The battalion is conducting assigned missions in a simulated (live, virtual, or constructive) combat environment. The main command post (CP) is operational and the staff sections and digital systems are functional. The unit is deployed in a tactical environment supporting operations. Safety hazards for personnel and equipment exist. Hazards increase as operations intensify. The higher headquarters operation order (OPORD), unit tactical standing operating procedure (TACSOP), and higher headquarters TACSOP are available. This task is performed under all day and night environmental conditions. The unit is subject to air, chemical, biological, radiological, and nuclear (CBRN), and all levels of threat forces attacks. Some iterations of this task should be performed in mission-oriented protective posture level 4 (MOPP4).

**TASK STANDARDS:** Potential safety hazards and/or risks for tasks were identified and either mitigated or eliminated. At MOPP4 performance degradation factors increase implementation time for risk management procedures.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p><b>*1.</b> Commander and leaders identify risk and or safety hazards.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Maintained situational awareness using analog and/or digital communications.</li> <li>b. Identified specified and implied missions and tasks in the operation plan (OPLAN), OPORD, and fragmentary order (FRAGO) using analog and/or digital communications or messenger.</li> <li>c. Identified all risks associated with specified and implied missions or tasks.</li> <li>d. Integrated safety into every phase of the planning process.</li> <li>e. Contrasted the benefits of safety measures to the unit's mission versus the potential cost of risk or safety hazards.</li> <li>f. Conducted continuous assessment of phases of operations for safety and risk reduction.</li> </ul> <p><b>*2.</b> Commander and leaders evaluate risk or safety hazards identified during operations.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Identified previously executed unsafe acts and their corrective actions.</li> <li>b. Identified all unwarranted risks.</li> <li>c. Compared identified risk to acceptable risk level stated in the commander's intent and based on the training objective.</li> <li>d. Calculated projected equipment and personnel losses from accidents by reviewing historical records.</li> <li>e. Described operations in terms of its risk level (extremely high, high, medium, or low).</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>f. Prepared courses of action that minimized accidental losses.</p> <p>*3. Commander and leaders eliminate or reduce risk and safety hazards.</p> <p>a. Selected course of action that maximized operational effectiveness and minimized risks.</p> <p>b. Developed procedures that mitigated risk.</p> <p>c. Provided guidance that enhanced safety in all phases of operation.</p> <p>d. Prescribed safety and protective equipment that enhanced safety and mitigated risks.</p> <p>e. Enforced environmental stewardship protection program procedures.</p> <p>4. Unit personnel employ safety enhancement procedures.</p> <p>a. Practiced safety procedures during all mission rehearsals and operations.</p> <p>b. Corrected unsafe acts on the spot.</p> <p>c. Reported to unit safety officer risk or safety violations beyond unit's corrective level.</p> <p>*5. Commander/leader performs or delegates performance of the steps in the risk management process for each step in troop-leading procedures (see appendix C).</p> <p>* Indicates a leader task step</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
Total Task Steps Evaluated							
Total Task Steps GO							
Training Status GO/NO-GO							

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
011-501-0009	Plan risk management in unit operations	STP 1-15 I STP 1-15II-500-MQS
154-385-6465	Employ the risk management process during mission planning	STP 21-24-SMCT

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
01-1-5134	Plan aviation operations using the military decision making process	ARTEP 1-113-MTP  ARTEP 1-118-MTP ARTEP 1-126-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** ASSAULT COMPANY  
 COMMAND SECTION  
 S6 SECTION

**TASK: Establish Battalion Tactical Base Operations (01-2-5118)**  
 (FM 1-100) (FM 3-04.126) (FM 3-100.12)  
 (FM 7-0) (FM 7-1) (TC 1-237)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The battalion is conducting assigned missions in a simulated (live, virtual, or constructive) combat environment. The battalion tactical operations center (TOC) is operational and the staff sections and digital systems are functional. The company is conducting stability operations and support operations as part of a higher headquarters and has received an operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) to establish and occupy a tactical base of operations at the location and time specified. Combat support (CS) and combat service support (CSS) personnel and assets have been provided. Interpreters are provided. Environmental, construction, and restoration constraints have been provided. The company provides its own security. All company personnel and equipment are available. The company has communications with higher, adjacent, and subordinate elements. The company has been provided guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task should be conducted during limited visibility conditions. Some iterations of this task should be performed in mission-oriented protective posture level 4 (MOPP4).

**TASK STANDARDS:** The company established and occupied a tactical base of operations according to the tactical standing operating procedures (TACSOP), the order, and or higher commander's guidance. The company used existing facilities if available and adequate. The company constructed facilities as necessary. The company established security measures to protect the force. The company complied with the ROE, ROI, and other restrictions.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>*1. The commander gained and/or maintained situational understanding using information gathered from Force XXI Battle Command Brigade and Below (FBCB2), frequency modulated (FM), digital and or analog communications systems, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources.</p> <p>*2. Company commander receives an OPORD or FRAGO and issues warning order (WARNO) to the company using FBCB2, FM, or other tactical means.</p> <p>*3. Company commander confirms friendly and enemy situations.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Received an updated digital report showing the location of forward and adjacent friendly elements, if applicable.</li> <li>b. Received an updated enemy situational template for added fratricide prevention and increased force protection, if applicable.</li> <li>c. Clarified priority intelligence requirement (PIR) requirements.</li> <li>d. Confirmed any changes to the higher headquarters and company task or purpose.</li> <li>e. Confirmed any changes to the scheme of maneuver.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>f. Reviewed higher headquarters' S2 intelligence preparation of the battlefield (IPB) data.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Determined the nature, makeup and urban concentrations of local civil and or military population.</li> <li>(2) Determined the natural defensive characteristics of the terrain.</li> <li>(3) Determined conditions of existing roads, railways, pipelines, waterways, and other movement corridors for use as military lines of communications (LOCs) and local civil/military movement.</li> <li>(4) Determined proximity of threat to potential civil/military facilities and installations.</li> </ul> <p>*4. Company commander plans using troop-leading procedures.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Considered the potential enemy's capabilities, likely courses of action (COA), and specific weapons capabilities. Conducted analysis based on factors of mission, enemy, terrain and weather, troops and support available, time available, and civil considerations (METT-TC).</li> <li>b. Conducted a digital and or conventional map reconnaissance. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Identified location of base camp and surrounding area.</li> <li>(2) Identified tentative security positions.</li> <li>(3) Identified likely enemy avenues of approach.</li> <li>(4) Marked tentative dismount points on digital and conventional maps as appropriate.</li> </ul> </li> <li>c. Planned a tactical base of operations that considered the following— <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Assignment of subunit sectors.</li> <li>(2) Assignment of contiguous or noncontiguous areas of operations (AO).</li> <li>(3) Other forces operating in the area.</li> <li>(4) Composition, location, and size of base camp.</li> <li>(5) Location of the command post (CP).</li> <li>(6) Distances from urban areas.</li> <li>(7) Location of possible landing zones and pickup zones.</li> <li>(8) Proximity to LOCs.</li> <li>(9) Priorities for protection of civil/military personnel, facilities, installations, and key terrain.</li> <li>(10) Visibility of forces to establish force presence.</li> <li>(11) Use of static and mobile security assets.</li> <li>(12) Fire support.</li> <li>(13) Continuous reconnaissance and security (R&amp;S).</li> <li>(14) Security measures.</li> <li>(15) Availability of host nation support.</li> <li>(16) Combat service support (CSS). <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) Storage bunkers.</li> <li>(b) Maintenance and refueling areas.</li> <li>(c) Mess areas, showers, and latrines.</li> <li>(d) Aid stations.</li> <li>(e) Contracted services.</li> </ul> </li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>(17) Civil affairs and or civil military operations (CMO) activities.  (18) Assets required from battalion and higher.</p> <p>d. Organized the company as necessary to accomplish the mission and or compensate for combat losses.</p> <p>(1) Designated an advance/quartering party.  (2) Designated a reserve or reserve force, if required.</p> <p>e. Addressed actions on chance contact with the enemy.</p> <p>f. Coordinated and synchronizes activities within each warfighting function.</p> <p>*5. Company commander disseminates digital reports (if applicable), overlays, and other pertinent information to each element to keep them abreast of the situation.</p> <p>*6. Company commander issues orders and instructions to include ROE and ROI.</p> <p>a. Issued clear and concise taskings to platoons and or elements.  b. Briefed quartering party.</p> <p>7. Company conducts a rehearsal.</p> <p>*8. Company commander issues a FRAGO, as necessary, to address changes to the plan identified during the rehearsal.</p> <p>9. Advance/quartering party moves to the tactical base of operations area using appropriate movement method (tactical road march or tactical movement) (based on METT-TC).</p> <p>a. Entered way points into position navigation (POSNAV) equipment to aid navigation.  b. Assisted in and or conducts reconnaissance of route to the tactical base of operations  c. Posted guides along route and at entrance of the tactical base of operations as required.  d. Assisted in and or conducts reconnaissance of the tactical base of operations.  e. Secured the tactical base of operations.  f. Conducted mine clearance as required.  g. Assisted in/marks obstacles and mines.  h. Selected and marks tentative positions according to the order, TACSOP, and/or guidance.  i. Established initial coordination with local residents if required.  j. Maintained surveillance and provides security of the area until the arrival of the remainder of the troop.  k. Reacted to contact as required.  l. Reported to main body when the tactical base of operations is secure.</p> <p>10. Main body moves to the tactical base of operations using appropriate movement method (tactical road march or tactical movement) (based on METT-TC factors).</p> <p>a. Entered way points into POSNAV equipment to aid navigation.  b. Followed direction of guides if used.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>c. Occupied the tactical base of operations.</li> <li>d. Used existing facilities if available and adequate.</li> <li>e. Reported arrival to higher headquarters as required.</li> <li>f. Established security based on factors of METT-TC.</li> <li>g. Reacted to contact as required.</li> <li>h. Submitted situation reports (SITREPs) to higher headquarters as required.</li> </ul> <p>11. Company performs tactical base of operations activities.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Established command and control operations. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Positioned the CP in a location from which the commander can best lead the company. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) Considered communications requirements.</li> <li>(b) Considered security needs for the CP.</li> </ul> </li> <li>(2) Established company communications nets.</li> </ul> </li> <li>b. Established and maintains a reserve force or reserve force based on threat factors if not established before.</li> <li>c. Conducted defense of the tactical base of operations.</li> <li>d. Conducted CSS activities (started construction of needed facilities.)</li> <li>e. Improved positions as time permits.</li> <li>f. Conducted informal discussions with local residents using combat intelligence/human intelligence (HUMINT) specialists.</li> <li>g. Takes measures to protect the force. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Ensured equipment, personnel, and positions are camouflaged as required.</li> <li>(2) Enforced light, noise, and litter discipline.</li> <li>(3) Enforced proper radiotelephone procedures.</li> <li>(4) Established checkpoints.</li> <li>(5) Established and enforces effective tactical base of operations security procedures.</li> <li>(6) Established observation posts as required.</li> <li>(7) Conducted aggressive patrolling.</li> <li>(8) Conducted reconnaissance as necessary.</li> </ul> </li> <li>h. Ensured all leaders and Soldiers know how to deal effectively with broadcast and print reporters and photographers.</li> <li>i. Conducted negotiations required and or directed.</li> <li>j. Conducted presence operations required and or directed.</li> <li>k. Conducted civil disturbance operations required and or directed.</li> <li>l. Conducted compliance inspections as required and or directed.</li> <li>m. Reacted to terrorists and or insurgents as required.</li> <li>n. Conducted support operations as required and or directed.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>o. Secured civilians as required.</li> <li>p. Processed captured documents and equipment as required.</li> </ul> <p>*12. Company commander keeps the next higher commander informed of status of the tactical base of operations occupation and development.</p> <p>*13. Commander/leader performs or delegates performance of the steps in the risk management process for each step in troop-leading procedures (see appendix C.)</p> <p>* Indicates a leader task step</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
Total Task Steps Evaluated							
Total Task Steps GO							
Training Status GO/NO-GO							

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
011-237-2000	Perform FM radio homing (UH-60)	TC 1-237 STP 1-TACOPS
011-237-2012	Perform tactical flight mission planning (UH-60)	TC 1-237
011-510-0300	Coordinate staff duties/responsibilities in tactical units	STP 1-TACOPS STP 1-15 II
011-510-0303	Conduct operations missions briefing/debriefing	STP 1-15 II
011-510-1700	Implement the Army safety program	STP 1-15 II

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
01-2-0341	Perform composite risk management procedures	ARTEP 1-113-MTP
01-2-5160	Perform troop-leading procedures	ARTEP 1-126-MTP ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-126-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**



**ELEMENTS:** ASSAULT COMPANY  
COMPANY

**TASK: Perform Troop-Leading Procedures (01-2-5160)**

(FM 3-04.111)	(FM 1-100)	(FM 1-113)
(FM 3-0)	(FM 3-04.126)	(FM 3-100.12)
(FM 4-01.011)	(FM 7-0)	(FM 7-1)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The battalion is conducting assigned missions in a simulated (live, virtual, or constructive) combat environment. The company has received mission requirements and the commander's guidance to perform troop-leading procedures. The battalion command post (CP) is operational and the staff sections and digital systems are functional. Some iterations of this task should be performed in mission-oriented protective posture level 4 (MOPP4).

**TASK STANDARDS:** The unit performed troop-leading procedures according to the unit's tactical standing operating procedure (TACSOP) and the commander's guidance. Mission preparation was enhanced as result of proper troop-leading procedures. Sufficient time was allocated to allow subordinate elements to conduct their preparations according to unit SOP.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p><b>*1.</b> The company commander receives a mission.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>a.</b> Determined assets required based on mission, enemy, terrain and weather, troops and support available, time available, and civil considerations (METT-TC).</li> <li><b>b.</b> Identified supplies and equipment required.</li> <li><b>c.</b> Identified personnel required.</li> <li><b>d.</b> Designated an air mission commander, if required.</li> </ul> <hr/> <p><b>Note.</b> AMCs for battalion, company, and platoon-sized operations will usually be the respective commander. The commander will designate air mission commanders for operations below platoon level.</p> <hr/> <p><b>*2.</b> The company commander issues the warning order (WARNO) to platoon leaders, first sergeant, and attached elements.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>a.</b> Briefed general enemy and friendly situation.</li> <li><b>b.</b> Briefed tentative mission.</li> <li><b>c.</b> Identified operation participants.</li> <li><b>d.</b> Briefed coordinating instructions focused on earliest time of movement, assets required, and special equipment required for the mission.</li> <li><b>e.</b> Briefed time and location of the operation order (OPORD) brief.</li> </ul> <p><b>*3.</b> The company commander develops a tentative plan while the unit prepares for operations.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>a.</b> Based the execution plan on the factors of METT-TC.</li> <li><b>b.</b> Developed and published a timeline.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>c. Used reverse planning to optimize time available.</p> <p>d. Conducted parallel planning with higher headquarters.</p> <p>e. Used planning cells to analyze information provided from higher headquarters and to identify issues requiring resolution.</p> <p>f. Used no more than one-third of the available time to develop plans, leaving the remaining two-thirds for unit preparation.</p> <p><b>*4.</b> The company commander initiates movement to prepare the unit for mission execution.</p> <p>a. Established priorities for precombat checks (PCC) and precombat inspections (PCI).</p> <p>b. Designated individuals responsible for PCC.</p> <p>c. Designated leaders responsible for PCI.</p> <p>d. Repositioned equipment/personnel as required to support the mission.</p> <p>e. Published times for the completion of all PCC and/or PCI tasks.</p> <p><b>*5.</b> The company commander and platoon leaders conduct a reconnaissance to assist in the development of the plan and to confirm/deny the course of action.</p> <p>a. Conducted a map or physical reconnaissance of all landing zones (LZs) and pickup zones (PZs) to confirm/deny their suitability.</p> <p>b. Identified LZs and PZs critical to the mission.</p> <p>c. Conducted a map or physical reconnaissance of all air/ground routes to ensure suitability and avoid enemy interdiction.</p> <p><b>*6.</b> The company commander completes the plan and ensures that coordination with supported unit is complete.</p> <p>a. Made changes to the tentative plan based on the map/ground reconnaissance.</p> <p>b. Made changes to the tentative plan based on available aircraft, equipment, personnel, and or material.</p> <p>c. Attended initial planning conference-for battalion or higher operations.</p> <p>d. Coordinated with the battalion S3 and the supported unit's S3 to ensure that all aspects of the air movement portion of the operation had been addressed.</p> <p>e. Coordinated, as necessary, with supporting units.</p> <p>f. Planning cells completed all required planning tasks, produced all necessary kneeboard/briefing products and completed the aircrew brief.</p> <p><b>*7.</b> The company commander recommends or makes a decision on a course of action (COA).</p> <p><b>*8.</b> The company commander issues an OPORD/FRAGO and ensures an aircrew briefing is conducted.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p><b>Note.</b> Unit leaders supervise final preparations using any combination of the task steps 9 through 11.</p> <p><b>*9.</b> The company commander and platoon leaders develop sand table exercises.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Constructed a sand table reflecting the mission terrain.</li> <li>b. Rehearsed the mission on the sand table with the leaders.</li> </ul> <p><b>*10.</b> The company commander conducts rehearsals.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Covered the critical aspects of the mission.</li> <li>b. Ensured that platoon leaders understood their mission.</li> </ul> <p><b>*11.</b> The company commander participates in rehearsals with higher headquarters.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Conducted a sand table rehearsal and/or a leader rehearsal.</li> <li>b. Conducted a full unit rehearsal in the assembly area.</li> </ul> <p><b>*12.</b> The company commander conducts inspections.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Platoon leaders finalized the PCC/PCIs of their Soldiers and equipment, reported the results to the commander, and corrected deficiencies as required.</li> <li>b. Ensured that the unit has adequate supply of ammunition, food, water, repair parts, fuel and medical supplies.</li> <li>c. Conducted communications checks.</li> <li>d. Conducted a final inspection of personnel, aircraft, vehicles, weapons, and equipment before starting missions.</li> </ul> <p><b>*13.</b> The company commander supervises and refines the plan for mission execution.</p> <p><b>*14.</b> Commander/leader identifies and controls hazards according to risk management procedures (see appendix C).</p> <p>* Indicates a leader task step</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
Total Task Steps Evaluated							
Total Task Steps GO							
Training Status GO/NO-GO							

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
011-510-0300	Coordinate staff duties/responsibilities in tactical units	STP 1-15 II

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
01-1-5134	Plan aviation operations using the military decision making process	ARTEP 1-113-MTP  ARTEP 1-118-MTP ARTEP 1-126-MTP
01-1-5166	Employ automated mission planning systems	ARTEP 1-113-MTP  ARTEP 1-118-MTP ARTEP 1-126-MTP
01-2-0341	Perform composite risk management procedures	ARTEP 1-113-MTP
01-2-5103	Perform air movement procedures (UH-60)	ARTEP 1-126-MTP ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-118-MTP
01-2-5113	Defend unit position	ARTEP 1-113-MTP
01-2-5159	Employ fratricide prevention measures	ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-126-MTP
01-2-5196	Perform aerial passage of lines operations	ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-126-MTP
01-2-5198	Conduct aviation mission planning/ preparation	ARTEP 1-113-MTP  ARTEP 1-126-MTP
01-2-5218	Perform air assault operations	ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-118-MTP
01-2-5223	Perform command, control, communications, computers, and intelligence operations	ARTEP 1-113-MTP
01-2-7759	Perform aviation urban operations at company level	ARTEP 1-126-MTP ARTEP 1-113-MTP  ARTEP 1-126-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** ASSAULT COMPANY

**TASK: Conduct Personnel Recovery/Self-Recovery Operations (UH-60) (01-2-5219)**

(FM 1-113)	(FM 1-100)	(FM 3-04.300)
(FM 3-04.513)	(FM 3-100.12)	(FM 4-0)
(FM 90-4)	(TC 1-201)	(TC 1-210)
(TC 1-237)		

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The battalion is in a simulated (live, virtual, or constructive) combat environment. The battalion tactical operations center (TOC) is operational and the staff sections and digital systems are functional. The unit has received mission requirements and the commander's guidance directing it to conduct personnel recovery operations. One or more friendly aircrews have been shot down or have experienced maintenance difficulties. Their location is not known but is believed to be in enemy territory. All available information has been gathered and assistance from outside sources, as well as organic assets to conduct the personnel recovery, are available. The unit can perform the operation during the day or at night with night vision devices (NVDs), in electronic warfare (EW) conditions, using terrain flight, Aviation mission planning system (AMPS) is operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in mission-oriented protective posture level 4 (MOPP4).

**TASK STANDARDS:** The aviation unit conducted personnel recovery operations according to unit's tactical standing operating procedure (TACSOP) and FM 3-04.111. Search did not compromise location of isolated personnel. Actions taken, facilitated immediate personnel recovery/rescue of personnel. Sensitive items and personnel were recovered rapidly and without loss of personnel or equipment.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>*1. The commander gained and/or maintained situational understanding using information gathered from Force XXI Battle Command Brigade and Below (FBCB2), frequency modulated (FM), digital and or analog communications systems, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources.</p> <p>*2. Commander integrates blue force tracker (BFT), if available, into their personnel recovery plan.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. BFT allowed the commander to track the locations of the commander's downed aircraft.</li> <li>b. BFT enhanced command and control (C2) by enabling the common operational picture (COP) to be readily shared between headquarters and search aircraft.</li> <li>c. BFT helped with tracking personnel recovery progress and provided a last known point to assist locating downed aircraft.</li> </ul> <hr/> <p><b>Note.</b> Depending on availability, the BFT or other digital devices may be used.</p> <hr/> <p>3. The downed personnel has (if able and if necessary)—</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Administered first aid.</li> <li>b. Secured aircraft and sensitive items.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>c. Prepared the aircraft and sensitive items for destruction (if necessary).</p> <p>d. Moved to pre-planned pickup point, as prescribed in the SOP (such as 30 minutes before sunrise and 30 minutes after sunset at designated locations) or as prescribed in pre-mission briefing.</p> <p>e. Avoided capture and attempted to join friendly units by infiltration if the situation does not permit occupation of the pickup point.</p> <p>4. Unit's immediate action for personnel pickup—</p> <p>a. Unit located downed personnel.</p> <p>b. Unit self-extracted personnel to safety (as appropriate).</p> <p>c. Engaged enemy forces (if necessary) to draw fires away from personnel (if under fire).</p> <p>5. Personnel report findings that included—</p> <p>a. Aircraft identification.</p> <p>b. Location of aircraft.</p> <p>c. Number of personnel and extent of injuries.</p> <p>d. Aircraft damage estimate (total, major, or minor).</p> <p>e. Evidence of chemical, biological, radiological, and nuclear (CBRN) contamination.</p> <p>f. Enemy situation, to include air defense artillery (ADA).</p> <p>g. Accessibility of helicopter.</p> <p>h. Unit's intentions (secure site, destroy aircraft, and return).</p> <hr/> <p><b>Note.</b> Security should be established as soon as practical in case downed personnel have moved to the pickup point or is unable to provide security.</p> <hr/> <p>6. Unit recovers downed personnel.</p> <p>a. Established contact with downed personnel.</p> <p>b. Reported the situation.</p> <p>c. Moved to the pickup point or landing zone (LZ). If sufficient assets are not available, guided recovery aircraft into the LZ and provided local security.</p> <p>d. Exchanged signals with downed personnel (if practical).</p> <p>e. Recovered downed personnel.</p> <p>f. Recovered or destroyed sensitive items and/or downed aircraft or remained on station providing security until recovery aircraft arrived and completed recovery mission.</p> <p>g. Departed the area.</p> <p>h. Submitted appropriate reports indicating closure of personnel recovery operations to higher echelon headquarters, to include negative reports.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p><b>7.</b> In conducting personnel recovery operations, downed aircraft recovery team (DART) mission can be tied into this operation.</p> <hr/> <p><b>Note.</b> See aviation support company (ASC) task 01-2-5213, Perform helicopter battle damage assessment and repair recovery operations for more details.</p> <hr/> <p><b>a.</b> DART's primary mission was to recover an aircraft damaged on the battlefield. Considerations include—</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Included extent of damage.</li> <li>(2) Included location on the battlefield.</li> <li>(3) Included proximity to the enemy.</li> <li>(4) Included proximity to friendly forces.</li> <li>(5) Included recovery resources available.</li> </ul> <p><b>b.</b> Assault helicopter units transported maintenance contact teams along with a security element (if required) to repair or evacuate downed aircraft/personnel.</p> <p><b>*8.</b> Commander/leader performs or delegates performance of the steps in the risk management process for each step in troop-leading procedures (see appendix C).</p> <p>* Indicates a leader task step</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
Total Task Steps Evaluated							
Total Task Steps GO							
Training Status GO/NO-GO							

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
011-237-2000	Perform FM radio homing (UH-60)	TC 1-237
011-237-2010	Perform multi-aircraft operations (UH-60)	STP 1-TACOPS
011-237-2012	Perform tactical flight mission planning (UH-60)	TC 1-237
011-237-2022	Transmit tactical reports (UH-60)	STP 1-TACOPS
011-237-2024	Perform terrain flight navigation (UH-60)	TC 1-237
011-237-2026	Perform terrain flight (UH-60)	STP 1-TACOPS
011-237-2036	Perform terrain flight deceleration (UH-60)	TC 1-237
011-237-2060	Perform rescue-hoist operations (UH-60)	STP 1-TACOPS
011-237-2076	Perform troop ladder operations (UH-60)	TC 1-237
011-237-2086	Operate aviator's night vision imaging system (ANVIS) heads-up display (HUD) (UH-60)	STP 1-TACOPS
		TC 1-237

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
011-510-0004	Employ combat service support	STP 1-TACOPS STP 1-15 II

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
01-1-5134	Plan aviation operations using the military decision making process	ARTEP 1-113-MTP
01-1-5165	Coordinate personnel recovery/self-recovery operations	ARTEP 1-118-MTP ARTEP 1-126-MTP ARTEP 1-113-MTP
01-2-0341	Perform composite risk management procedures	ARTEP 1-126-MTP ARTEP 1-113-MTP
01-2-5160	Perform troop-leading procedures	ARTEP 1-126-MTP ARTEP 1-113-MTP
01-2-5198	Conduct aviation mission planning/preparation	ARTEP 1-126-MTP ARTEP 1-113-MTP
01-2-5216	Coordinate operational readiness and aircraft availability for mission planning with the S3	ARTEP 1-126-MTP ARTEP 1-113-MTP
		ARTEP 1-126-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**



**ELEMENT:** ASSAULT COMPANY

**TASK: Perform Command, Control, Communications, Computers, and Intelligence Operations (01-2-5223)**

(FM 3-04.111)	(FM 1-100)	(FM 1-113)
(FM 3-04.126)	(FM 3-52)	(FM 3-100.4)
(FM 3-100.12)	(FM 4-0)	(FM 6-0)
(FM 7-1)	(FM 71-100-3)	(FM 90-4)
(TC 1-210)	(TC 1-237)	

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The battalion is in a simulated (live, virtual, or constructive) combat environment. The main command post (CP) is operational. Reports are being received through normal channels. The tactical situation dictates that selected maneuver unit commanders require aerial command and control (C2) capability. The battalion has received an operation order (OPORD)/fragmentary order (FRAGO) to conduct command, control, communications, and computers, and intelligence (C4I) operations. The battalion's main command post (CP) is operational and the staff sections and analog/digital systems are functional. The unit has received an OPORD/FRAGO from higher headquarters and the commander's guidance directing it to provide tactical C4 systems planning. Personnel have accompanied the advance party to the new area of operations. The battalion advance/quartering party has secured the new area. The location for the tactical operations center (TOC) is identified. Equipment and personnel are available. Battalion personnel provide initial C4I systems operations. C4I systems operations are provided to the battalion on a 24-hour basis. This task is performed under all day and night environmental conditions. The unit is subject to air, chemical, biological, radiological, and nuclear (CBRN) and level I ground threat forces attack. Some iterations of this task should be performed in mission-oriented protective posture level 4 (MOPP4).

**TASK STANDARDS:** Console-equipped aircraft arrived at the supported unit CP at the time specified in the OPORD/FRAGO. Maneuver unit commanders' ability to C2 the unit was enhanced as a result of a properly coordinated and executed C4 mission profile. Radio communications between units were enhanced as a result of properly planned and executed radio retransmission operations. The battalion provided continuous C4 systems operations to the battalion and its staff. Analog and/or digital communications, tactical internets, local area networks, and generator power were established according to the communication plan, OPORD, signal operations instructions (SOI)/special skill identifier (SSI), and tactical standing operating procedure (TACSOP). Tactical local area network (TACLAN) security was not compromised as a result of improper management and planning. At MOPP4 performance degradation factors increase the time required to establish communication.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>*1. The commander gained and/or maintained situational understanding using information gathered from Force XXI Battle Command Brigade and Below (FBCB2), frequency modulated (FM), digital and or analog communications systems, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources.</p> <p>*2. The air mission commander conducts special C4I coordination as required.</p> <p>a. Coordinated with higher headquarters to have a restricted operation zone (RZ) that supported the tactical operation submitted for publication to the airspace control order (ACO).</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>b. Attended briefings and rehearsals of the supported unit to understand the concept of the operation and the role of the C4I aircrews in the operation.</p> <p>c. Designated a trained console operator.</p> <p>d. Determined the mission requirement for employment of the command console in the ground configuration. If the ground employment is required—</p> <p>(1) Analyzed proposed locations for suitable communications and security considerations.</p> <p>(2) Coordinated for required additional equipment (such as ground antennas, generators, cables, ground stakes, and camouflage nets).</p> <p>(3) Coordinated for a security force to guard the CP.</p> <p>3. The company develops C4I support plan that, as a minimum, addresses the following—</p> <p>a. Maintained operational C4I systems architecture at all times.</p> <p>b. Provided support to C4I system users.</p> <p>c. Monitored operation of C4I systems.</p> <p>d. Planned for maintenance, evacuation, and turn-in of C4I equipment.</p> <p>e. Integrated all C4I systems and communications systems used by battlefield elements to support unit C2.</p> <p>f. Maintained configuration control of all software by ensuring that the software was current, compatible, and standardized.</p> <p>g. Coordinated for a security force to guard the CP.</p> <p>4. The company aircrew/console operator conducts radio retransmission as required to ensure communication continuity.</p> <p>5. The company integrates C4I systems operations into OPORDs and unit standing operating procedures.</p> <p>6. The company establishes C4I policies and procedures and briefs unit on mission-specific variations.</p> <p>7. The company provides a C4I architecture that allows the unit elements to acquire, distribute, and store timely, accurate, and reliable information.</p> <p>a. Planned, installed, operated, and maintained local area networks (LANs).</p> <p>b. Planned, and coordinated with the next higher echelon signal unit for, interface with wide-area networks.</p> <p>8. The company performs user functions for their C4I systems. Coordinates the installation, operation, and maintenance of their respective C4I systems and LANs.</p> <p>9. The company implements command-and-control protect-network security management measures to maintain effective C2 by reducing the enemy's potential to influence, degrade, or destroy friendly C2 systems.</p> <p>a. Implemented protect measures to provide system security.</p> <p>b. Implemented detect measures to detect system intrusion and abuse.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>c. Implemented react measures to report system intrusion, take appropriate actions, and restore system integrity.</p> <p>*10. Commander/leader performs or delegates performance of the steps in the risk management process for each step in troop-leading procedures (see appendix C).</p> <p>* Indicates a leader task step</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
Total Task Steps Evaluated							
Total Task Steps GO							
Training Status GO/NO-GO							

### SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
011-141-1065	Extract Information from airspace command and control documents, air tasking order (ATO), airspace control order (ACO), and special instructions (Spins)	STP 1-15P1-SM
011-237-1032	Perform radio communications procedures (UH-60)	STP 1-15-219 STP 1-15-219-OS TC 1-237 STP 1-15II-500-MQS STP 1-TACOPS MOS W 153D 3
011-425-0011	Develop the Army airspace command and control (A2C2) annex to operations plans and orders	
011-501-0010	Employ communications security equipment	STP 1-15 I STP 1-15II-500-MQS
011-510-0018	Employ army airspace command and control	STP 1-15 II
011-540-0002	Supervise the hazardous communications program	STP 1-150-155

### SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
01-2-0334	Perform unit-level logistics operations	ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-126-MTP
01-2-0341	Perform composite risk management procedures	ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-126-MTP
01-2-5160	Perform troop-leading procedures	ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-126-MTP
01-2-5223	Perform command, control, communications, computers, and intelligence operations	ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-126-MTP
01-4-0359	Perform unit supply support operations	ARTEP 1-126-MTP ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-126-MTP

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
01-1-5175	Coordinate aviation tactical command, control, communications, computers, and intelligence systems planning	ARTEP 1-113-MTP  ARTEP 1-126-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** COMMAND SECTION  
S6 SECTION

**TASK: Establish Battalion/Squadron Tactical Communications (01-1-5174)**

(FM 3-04.111)	(FM 1-100)	(FM 1-113)
(FM 3-04.126)	(FM 3-100.12)	(FM 7-0)
(FM 7-1)	(TC 24-12)	(TC 24-21)
(FM 24-24)		

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The battalion is conducting assigned missions in a simulated (live, virtual, or constructive) combat environment. The battalion’s main command post (CP) is operational and the staff sections, with an analog/digital systems, are functional. The commander has received an operations order (OPORD)/fragmentary order (FRAGO) from higher headquarters and the commander’s guidance directing it to establish communications. The battalion’s S6 section has accompanied the advance party to the new area of operations. The battalion advance/quartering party has secured the new area. The location for the tactical operations center (TOC) is identified. Equipment and personnel are available. Initial communications is established by the advance S6 element. Message service is provided on a 24-hour basis. This task is performed under all day and night environmental conditions. The unit is subject to air, chemical, biological, radiological, and nuclear (CBRN) and level I ground threat forces attack. Some iterations of this task should be performed in mission-oriented protective posture level 4 (MOPP4).

**TASK STANDARDS:** Analog and/or digital communications, tactical internets, local area networks, and generator power were established according to the communication plan, OPORD, signal operation instruction (SOI)/signal supplemental instruction (SSI), and tactical standing operating procedure (TACSOP). At MOPP4 performance degradation factors increase the time required to establish communication.

---

**Note.** The S6 communications section must perform all the below task steps and performance measures if the battalion headquarters does not have an S6 section.

---

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p><b>1.</b> The S6 section organizes communications element of the advance/quartering party.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>a.</b> Selected communication personnel to perform all communication setup tasks at new location.</li> <li><b>b.</b> Selected required vehicles and equipment to establish communications at the new site according to movement order or TACSOP.</li> <li><b>c.</b> Coordinated area analog/digital communication system support at the new location with supporting signal element.</li> <li><b>d.</b> Inspected personnel, vehicles, and equipment prior to departure for compliance with TACSOP and commander’s guidance.</li> <li><b>e.</b> Dispatched communication personnel to assembly area.</li> <li><b>f.</b> Ensured radio communications exist during a move between the start point and release point.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>2. The S6 section provides assistance for area communications system hookup.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Identified location of the battalion switchboard in coordination with headquarters advance element leader.</li> <li>b. Identified all other elements that require area communication system hookup.</li> </ul> <p>3. The S6 section installs local and area networks to include tactical internet capabilities.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Determined communications service requirements.</li> <li>b. Ensured analog/digital communications links with higher, adjacent, subordinate, and supported units.</li> <li>c. Planned backup means of communications.</li> <li>d. Implemented backup or alternate means of communications.</li> </ul> <p>4. The S6 section performs system/software security manager functions.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Issued passwords.</li> <li>b. Installed anti-virus software.</li> <li>c. Performed combat service support control system (CSSCS) network management functions in support of support operations section.</li> <li>d. Coordinated with the combat service support (CSS) air maintenance officer (AMO) to resolve application problems with CSS standard Army information management system (STAMIS) and CSSCS.</li> <li>e. Advised the commander, staff, and subordinate units on communications matters.</li> <li>f. Coordinated with support operations section to ensure continuity of operations (COOP) is included in communications estimate/plan.</li> </ul> <p>5. The S6 section establishes wire communications.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Identified locations of all subordinate units' CPs.</li> <li>b. Planned wire and telephone installation.</li> <li>c. Prepared a telephone traffic diagram.</li> <li>d. Installed telephone switchboard.</li> <li>e. Installed telephones.</li> <li>f. Laid wire for communications between switchboard and other subordinate units.</li> <li>g. Established wire communications between CP, TOC, and switchboard.</li> <li>h. Established other wire communications between switchboard and other subordinate units when area signal support personnel arrive.</li> <li>i. Tested each telephone circuit to ensure there are no breaks in the wire system.</li> <li>j. Operated the battalion switchboard.</li> </ul> <p>*6. The S6 section selects radio communications site.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Selected best location for primary common site based on tactical and technical requirements in coordination with the advance/quartering party leader.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>b. Identified support requirements for common site (such as fuel, water, maintenance, and rations).</li> <li>c. Selected alternate communications site(s).</li> <li>d. Selected locations away from power lines and other friendly sources of frequency interference.</li> <li>e. Established physical security control of communication security (COMSEC) material and documents containing essential elements of friendly information (EEFI).</li> <li>f. Incorporated signal site defense plan with overall defense plan.</li> </ul> <p>7. The S6 section establishes generator power.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Selected generator power sites.</li> <li>b. Established fire and fuel storage points.</li> <li>c. Leveled generator sets.</li> <li>d. Conducted preoperational preventive maintenance checks and services (PMCS) on generator sets.</li> <li>e. Grounded generator sets.</li> <li>f. Connected direct current power cable.</li> <li>g. Performed generator starting procedures.</li> <li>h. Accomplished transition to generator power with minimum interruption of communications.</li> <li>i. Constructed sound barriers and screening system to muffle noise and reduce heat signal.</li> <li>j. Operated generator sets according to appropriate technical manuals.</li> </ul> <p>8. The S6 section establishes a message center.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Established primary and alternate messenger routes and schedules.</li> <li>b. Coordinated pickup and delivery times with users.</li> <li>c. Identified type of messengers to be used.</li> <li>d. Established message control and accountability procedures.</li> </ul> <p>9. The S6 section establishes and operates a tactical telephone network.</p> <p>10. The S6 section establishes a tactical internet network.</p> <p>11. The S6 section implements electronic protection techniques, as required.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Recognized jamming and interference to affected networks and systems.</li> <li>b. Used appropriate countermeasures.</li> <li>c. Notified higher headquarters of suspected jamming/interference.</li> <li>d. Submitted meaconing, interference, jamming, and intrusion (MIJI) report.</li> </ul> <p>*12. Commander/leader performs or delegates performance of the steps in the risk management process for each step in troop-leading procedures (see appendix C).</p> <p>* Indicates a leader task step</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
<i>ITERATION</i>	<i>1</i>	<i>2</i>	<i>3</i>	<i>4</i>	<i>5</i>	<i>M</i>	<i>TOTAL</i>
Total Task Steps Evaluated							
Total Task Steps GO							
Training Status GO/NO-GO							

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
011-141-0110	Direct establishment of a tactical operations center	MOS E 15Q 4
011-141-1047	Process information during tactical operations	STP 1-15P1-SM
011-510-0300	Coordinate staff duties/responsibilities in tactical units	STP 1-15 II

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
01-2-0341	Perform composite risk management procedures	ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-126-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**



**ELEMENTS:** COMMAND SECTION  
S6 SECTION

**TASK: Coordinate Aviation Tactical Command, Control, Communications, Computers, and Intelligence Systems Planning (01-1-5175)**

(FM 3-04.111)	(FM 1-100)	(FM 1-113)
(FM 3-04.126)	(FM 3-100.12)	(FM 7-0)
(FM 7-1)	(JP 6-0)	(JP 6-02)
(TC 1-210)	(TC 1-237)	

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The battalion is conducting assigned missions in a simulated (live, virtual, or constructive) combat environment. The battalion’s main command post (CP) is operational and the staff sections and analog/digital systems are functional. The S6 section has received an operation order (OPORD)/fragmentary order (FRAGO) from higher headquarters and the commander’s guidance directing it to provide tactical command, control, communications, computer, and intelligence (C4I) systems planning. S6 section personnel have accompanied the advance party to the new area of operations. The battalion advance/quartering party has secured the new area. The location for the tactical operations center (TOC) is identified. Equipment and personnel are available. S6 personnel provide initial C4I systems operations. C4I systems operations are provided to the battalion on a 24-hour basis. This task is performed under all day and night environmental conditions. The unit is subject to air, chemical, biological, radiological, and nuclear (CBRN) and level I ground threat forces attack. Some iterations of this task should be performed in mission-oriented protective posture level 4 (MOPP4).

**TASK STANDARDS:** The S6 section provided continuous C4I systems operations to the battalion and its staff. Analog and/or digital communications, tactical internets, local area networks, and generator power were established according to the communication plan, OPORD, signal operations instructions (SOI)/special skill identifier (SSI), and TACSOP. Tactical local area network (TACLAN) security was not compromised as a result of improper management and planning. At MOPP4 performance degradation factors increase the time required to establish communication.

---

**Note.** The S3 communications section must perform all the below task steps and performance measures if the battalion headquarters element does not have an S6 section.

---

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p><b>*1.</b> The S6 officer coordinates and develops a C4I support plan that, as a minimum, addresses the following—</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Maintained operational C4I systems architecture at all times.</li> <li>b. Provided support to C4I system users.</li> <li>c. Monitored operation of C4I systems.</li> <li>d. Planned for maintenance, evacuation, and turn-in of C4I equipment.</li> <li>e. Integrated all C4I systems and communications systems used by battlefield elements to support unit command and control (C2).</li> <li>f. Maintained configuration control of all software by ensuring that the software was current, compatible, and standardized.</li> <li>g. Supervised integration of C4I systems for the battalion staff and elements.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p><b>*2.</b> The S6 officer integrates C4I systems operations into OPORDs and unit standing operating procedures.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>a.</b> Established C4I policies and procedures and briefed unit on mission-specific variations.</li> <li><b>b.</b> Established policies and procedures for coordination and integration between staff-section C4I systems.</li> </ul> <p><b>*3.</b> The S6 section provides a C4I architecture that allows the unit elements to acquire, distribute, and store timely, accurate, and reliable information.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>a.</b> Planned, installed, operated, and maintained local area networks (LANs).</li> <li><b>b.</b> Planned, and coordinated with the next higher echelon signal unit for, interface with wide-area networks.</li> <li><b>c.</b> Planned configuration of the TACLAN.</li> </ul> <p><b>4.</b> The staff sections perform user functions for their C4I systems.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>a.</b> Coordinated the installation, operation, and maintenance of their respective C4I systems and LANs.</li> <li><b>b.</b> Coordinated LAN interface with the signal officer.</li> </ul> <p><b>5.</b> The S6 officer implements command-and-control protect-network security management measures to maintain effective C2 by reducing the enemy's potential to influence, degrade, or destroy friendly C2 systems.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>a.</b> Implemented protect measures to provide system security.</li> <li><b>b.</b> Implemented detect measures to detect system intrusion and abuse.</li> <li><b>c.</b> Implemented react measures to report system intrusion, take appropriate actions, and restore system integrity.</li> </ul> <p><b>6.</b> Commander/leader performs or delegates performance of the steps in the risk management process for each step in troop-leading procedures (see appendix C).</p> <p>* Indicates a leader task step</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
Total Task Steps Evaluated							
Total Task Steps GO							
Training Status GO/NO-GO							

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
011-141-1065	Extract information from airspace command and control documents, air tasking order (ATO), airspace control order (ACO), and special instructions (Spins)	STP 1-15P1-SM
011-143-5062	Determine Army airspace command and control procedures	STP 1-15P24-SM-TG
011-420-0018	Integrate Army airspace command and control (A2C2)	STP 1-150-155

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
011-425-0011	Develop the Army airspace command and control (A2C2) annex to operations plans and orders	MOS W 153D 3
011-510-0018	Employ Army airspace command and control	STP 1-15 II

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
01-2-0341	Perform composite risk management procedures	ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-126-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** COMMAND SECTION  
S6 SECTION

**TASK: Establish an Aviation Frequency Modulated Radio Retransmission Station (01-4-5221)**

(FM 3-04.111)  
(FM 3-04.126)

(FM 1-100)  
(FM 3-100.12)

(FM 1-113)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The battalion is conducting assigned missions in a simulated (live, virtual, or constructive) combat environment. The battalion's main command post (CP) and tactical operations center is operational and the staff sections and analog/digital systems are functional. The commander has received an operation order (OPORD)/fragmentary order (FRAGO) from higher headquarters and directed the S6 section to establish an frequency modulated (FM) radio retransmission station. The battalion's S6 section has accompanied the advance/quartering party to the new area of operations. The battalion advance/quartering party has secured the new area. The location for the tactical operations center (TOC) is identified. Equipment and personnel are available. An FM radio retransmission station is established by the advance S6 element. Message service is provided on a 24-hour basis. This task is performed under all day and night environmental conditions. The unit is subject to air, chemical, biological, radiological, and nuclear (CBRN) and level I ground threat forces attack. Some iterations of this task should be performed in mission-oriented protective posture level 4 (MOPP4).

**TASK STANDARDS:** The S6 section established an FM radio retransmission station and operated the system according to times in the OPORD/FRAGO/OPLAN (operation plan). Analog and/or digital communications, tactical internets, and local area networks were established according to the communication plan, OPORD, signal operations instructions/standing signal instructions (SOI/SSI), and tactical standing operating procedure (TACSOP). Tactical local area network (TACLAN) security was not compromised as a result of improper management and planning. At MOPP4 performance degradation factors increase the time required to establish communication.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>*1. The S6 section chief directs the team chief to select a site for equipment placement.</p> <p>2. The team chief selects a site for equipment placement.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Selected a site for the antenna.</li> <li>b. Ensured location provided cover and concealment.</li> <li>c. Ensured location provided physical security.</li> <li>d. Ensures location provides access to at least one escape route for opposing forces (OPFOR).</li> <li>e. Establishes control of communication security (COMSEC) documents containing essential elements of friendly information (EEFI).</li> </ul> <p>3. The team installs and operates a secure retransmission station.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Performed before-operations PMCS.</li> <li>b. Set assigned frequencies.</li> <li>c. Checked installation of secure equipment.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>d. Loaded variables in secure equipment.</li> <li>e. Initiates secure voice procedures.</li> <li>f. Established communications with distant stations.</li> <li>g. Established two-way retransmission.</li> </ul> <p>4. The team installs the generator set, if required.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Conducted pre-operational checks.</li> <li>b. Grounded generator.</li> <li>c. Established fuel point.</li> <li>d. Established fire point.</li> <li>e. Started generator.</li> <li>f. Accomplished transition to generator power without unnecessary interruption of communications.</li> </ul> <p>5. The team extends the range of the retransmission station, if required.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Selected site for antenna installation.</li> <li>b. Assembled antenna components.</li> <li>c. Ensured the number of antenna sections conform to the operating frequency.</li> <li>d. Erected the antenna using the team method.</li> <li>e. Transitioned from whip to OE-254/GRC antenna without interruption of service.</li> </ul> <p>6. The team employs preventive electronic counter-countermeasures (ECCM) procedures.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Transmitted quickly and precisely.</li> <li>b. Used low power, when possible.</li> <li>c. Used the antenna with the shortest feasible range.</li> <li>d. Selected a site that will mask signal from enemy interception.</li> <li>e. Used proper radio telephone operator procedures.</li> <li>f. Encrypted all EEFI category data.</li> <li>g. Authenticated when using nonsecure communications means.</li> </ul> <p>7. The team implements remedial ECCM techniques.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Recognized jamming/interference and determined if the source is from an internal or external site.</li> <li>b. Determined if interference is intentional or unintentional.</li> <li>c. Notified S6 section chief of suspected jamming and continue to operate.</li> <li>d. Increased transmitter power/reroute traffic using alternate means.</li> <li>e. Relocated antenna and request change of frequency.</li> <li>f. Submitted meaconing, interference, jamming, and intrusion (MIJI) feeder voice template message report.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p><b>*8.</b> S6 section chief performs or delegates performance of the steps in the risk management process for each step in troop-leading procedures (see appendix C).</p> <p>* Indicates a leader task step</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
Total Task Steps Evaluated							
Total Task Steps GO							
Training Status GO/NO-GO							

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
011-141-1057	Operate an AN/GRC-240 (Have Quick II radio)	STP 1-15P1-SM
011-143-5057	Communicate using radio communication procedures	MOS E 15Q 1
011-237-1032	Perform radio communications procedures (UH-60)	STP 1-15-219
		STP 1-15-219-OS TC 1-237
011-501-0010	Employ communications security equipment	STP 1-15 I STP 1-15II-500-MQS
011-510-0309	Perform logistics staff duties/responsibilities	STP 1-15 II

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title	References
01-2-0341	Perform composite risk management procedures	ARTEP 1-113-MTP
		ARTEP 1-126-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENT: COMPANY**

**TASK: Conduct Negotiations (07-2-5045)**

(FM 41-10)	(FM 1-100)	(FM 1-113)
(FM 3-0)	(FM 3-04.111)	(FM 3-04.126)
(FM 3-21.11)	(FM 3-100.12)	(FM 7-0)
(FM 7-1)	(FM 71-100)	

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The company is conducting operations as part of a higher headquarters and is required by the situation to conduct preplanned negotiations with local factional or non-U.S. military elements. The local factional or external military elements are willing to negotiate. Higher headquarters provides the interpreters. All necessary company personnel and equipment are available. The company has communications with higher, adjacent, and subordinate elements. The company has been provided guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. This task should not be trained in mission-oriented protective posture level 4 (MOPP4).

**TASK STANDARDS:** The company conducts negotiations according to the tactical standing operating procedures (TACSOPs), the order, and or higher commander's guidance. The company resolves the dispute or issue or sets the conditions for future negotiations. The company complies with the ROE and ROI.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p><b>Note.</b> There are two general types of negotiations: SITUATIONAL and PREPLANNED. Situational negotiations are conducted in response to a requirement for on-the-spot discussion and resolution of a specific issue or problem. An example would be members of an advance guard negotiating the passage of a convoy through a checkpoint. At the company level, situational negotiations are far more common than the preplanned type. In fact, employment in stability operations requires the commander, the subordinate leaders, and other Soldiers to conduct some form of negotiations almost daily. This, in turn, requires them to have a thorough understanding of the ROE and ROI.</p> <hr/> <p>*1. The commander gained and/or maintained situational understanding using information gathered from Force XXI Battle Command Brigade and Below (FBCB2), frequency modulated (FM), digital and or analog communications systems, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources.</p> <p>*2. Company commander designates a negotiation team. Includes interpreters and other personnel from higher headquarters.</p> <p>*3. Company commander or designated representative and negotiation team analyzes negotiation requirements.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Identified the problem or source of contention.</li> <li>b. Analyzed previous attempts to resolve the issue(s) or dispute(s).</li> <li>c. Analyzed existing agreements or understandings relevant to the situation.</li> <li>d. Determined end state or success criteria for the negotiating session.</li> </ul> <p>(1) Identified issues and or items that cannot be negotiated.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>(2) Identified issues and or items that can be negotiated and define the “bottom line” position that can be accepted by the U.S. side.</p> <p>e. Obtained approval for end state or success criteria for the negotiating session.</p> <p>f. Developed draft agenda for the negotiations.</p> <p>4. Company negotiation team prepares for negotiations.</p> <p>a. Requested additional information about the situation, as necessary.</p> <p>b. Collected relevant documents, maps, and photographs to facilitate mutual agreement of facts and details of issues.</p> <p>c. Selected interpreters.</p> <p>(1) Selected neutral interpreters that are acceptable to all parties in the negotiation.</p> <p>(2) Ensured interpreters are fluent in English.</p> <p>(3) Ensured interpreters are fluent in local languages and dialects.</p> <p>(4) Selected a different interpreter if the competence, loyalty or impartiality of the primary interpreter is uncertain.</p> <p>(5) Briefed interpreter on the situation prior to execution.</p> <p>(6) Rehearsed with interpreter.</p> <p>d. Met individually with the leader of each party to negotiation. At a minimum, negotiator obtains—</p> <hr/> <p><b>Note.</b> During the initial meeting with the leader of each negotiation parties to establish the agenda, the negotiator should attempt to get to know the leader and establish a relationship if possible. The ability to achieve success can be enhanced by knowing the other negotiator and having a relationship that helps better understand the position of the party the leader represents.</p> <hr/> <p>(1) Approval for the meeting site.</p> <p>(2) Agreement for the date and time of the negotiation.</p> <p>(3) Approval of the negotiation agenda.</p> <p>e. Selected meeting location.</p> <p>(1) Ensured meeting place is neutral in terms of cultural and ethnic considerations.</p> <p>(2) Ensured site is acceptable to all parties.</p> <p>5. Company negotiation team prepares meeting location.</p> <p>a. Organized meeting site (tables, chairs, maps, cameras, and so forth).</p> <p>b. Designated a waiting area (for guards, support personnel, drivers, and so forth).</p> <p>c. Designated a parking area.</p> <p>d. Prepared to record meeting on videotape or other electronic media, if required.</p> <p>e. Provided maps with the same series number, page number, and terrain scale to all parties.</p> <p>f. Coordinated for local security to secure the site to prevent interference during the negotiations. Security elements are assigned to do the following—</p> <p>(1) Conducted rapid but thorough security checks.</p>		



TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>(2) Controlled access to the meeting.  (3) Provided local security.</p> <p>g. Designated break areas.</p> <p>h. Provided for latrine facilities.</p> <p>i. Arranged for refreshments when possible.</p> <p>j. Established adequate communications assets for all parties.</p> <p>*6. Company negotiation team conducts negotiations.</p> <p>a. Established the negotiating environment.</p> <p>(1) Greeted and or exchanges courtesies with negotiators.  (2) Introduced all attendees and interpreters.  (3) Encouraged informal small talk among participants while offering refreshments.  (4) Described layout and configuration of site before starting the negotiation.  (5) Described a previously agreed-upon agenda or, establishes one.</p> <hr/> <p><b>Note.</b> A previously agreed upon agenda becomes a framework to guide the discussion.</p> <hr/> <p>b. Manages the negotiations.</p> <p>(1) Kept the negotiations on the agreed to agenda.  (2) Identified what each party desires.  (3) Provided time for all participants to present their cases without interruption.  (4) Described the issue in clear and unambiguous terms agreed to by all participants.  (5) Provided the stability force preferred solution, or acceptable solutions.  (6) Described a common middle ground.</p> <hr/> <p><b>Note.</b> If negotiators display frustration, take a break and give tempers a chance to cool before continuing. If negotiations reach an impasse, isolate the issue, and deal with it separately. Get negotiators to identify their issues in specific terms. Then seek common ground.</p> <hr/> <p>(7) Identified options, if appropriate.  (8) Avoided confrontation.  (9) Conducts mediation between multiple parties.  (10) Provided facts supported by evidence to correct inaccurate information or misrepresentation.  (11) Obtained small concessions to get parties in a pattern of agreements.  (12) Recorded all positions, opinions, and issues for possible investigation and further action by higher headquarters.  (13) Used previous agreements or understandings as a framework for the negotiation (unless those were the basis of contention).</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>c. Completed the session at the agreed time or ends the session when no further progress is feasible.</p> <p>(1) Describes the points of agreement and disagreement in clear and unambiguous terms agreed to by all participants. Results include actions to be taken by each party, if appropriate.</p> <p>(2) Obtained agreements from all negotiating parties that do not exceed the mission instructions, higher headquarters order, or other special orders.</p> <p>OR</p> <p>(3) Established favorable conditions for future successful negotiations.</p> <p>(a) Described the position of each party as concerns the dispute or issue in clear and unambiguous terms agreed to by all participants.</p> <p>(b) Obtained agreement from all parties to continue negotiations.</p> <p>d. Documented the results of the negotiations.</p> <p>(1) Recorded results of session, to include—</p> <p>(a) Acknowledged agreements and concessions made by negotiating parties.</p> <p>(b) Issued requiring investigation.</p> <p>(c) Included tentative agenda for followup meetings.</p> <p>(2) Provided written copies of record to participants, if possible.</p> <p>(3) Obtained copies of other parties' records if they were taking notes.</p> <p>(4) Ensured clear and positive understanding of any actions agreed upon and defined coordination measures to accomplish those actions.</p> <p>(5) Prepared agreements for signature before parties depart.</p> <p>(6) Obtained signatures to agreements before parties depart.</p> <p>(7) Completed the meeting with concluding remarks that point out the positive aspects or results of the session.</p> <p>(8) Coordinated for future meetings that included dates, times, locations, and means of communication.</p> <p>e. Maintained pleasant conversation with each party during their departure, regardless of results of the session.</p> <p>*7. Company negotiation team leader implements followup activities.</p> <p>a. Reported results of negotiation to the unit commander and (if required) to higher headquarters.</p> <p>b. Ensured team consolidates all notes and other raw data.</p> <p>c. Debriefed all team members or other participants (for example, unit personnel or representatives of non-governmental organizations [NGOs]).</p> <p>d. Identified key points or issues that require investigation or immediate attention.</p> <p>e. Prepared written report of meeting listing circumstances, issues, and results that included agreements or other outcomes and recommendations.</p> <p>f. Prepared documents to implement any agreed upon actions.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p><b>*8.</b> Company negotiation team leader prepares for subsequent negotiations (if required).</p> <p>a. Conducted negotiation after-action reviews (AARs) to identify techniques and procedures for use in future negotiations.</p> <p>b. Updated information requirements.</p> <p>c. Disseminated new information requirements.</p> <p>d. Arranged for rehearsals to prepare for future negotiations (if required).</p> <p><b>*9.</b> Commander/leader performs or delegates performance of the steps in the risk management process for each step in troop-leading procedures (appendix C).</p> <p>* Indicates a leader task step</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5		TOTAL
Total Task Steps Evaluated							
Total Task Steps GO							
Training Status GO/NO-GO							

#### SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
011-510-0020	Apply fundamentals of Army aviation in military operations in urban terrain (MOUT)	STP 1-15 II
011-510-0022	Determine characteristics of U.S. Army organization and capabilities	STP 1-15 II
011-510-0300	Coordinate staff duties/responsibilities in tactical units	STP 1-15 II
011-510-0303	Conduct operations missions briefing/debriefing	STP 1-15 II
011-510-0700	Determine characteristics of terrorism, counterterrorism, and anti-terrorism	STP 1-15 II

#### SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
01-2-0341	Perform composite risk management procedures	ARTEP 1-113-MTP
07-2-1112	React to ambush	ARTEP 1-126-MTP ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-126-MTP
07-2-1923	React to indirect fire	ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-126-MTP
07-2-6045	Employ camouflage, concealment, and deception techniques (infantry and aviation)	ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-126-MTP

## OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

### **TASK: Resolve Dispute on Faction Terms (20-OPFOR-2001A)**

**CONDITION:** The U.S. forces are conducting stability and or support operations in the local area. Factional elements are engaged in negotiations with U.S. forces. Faction member has requested the negotiating session to obtain favorable treatment and further faction goals and objectives. The U.S. forces are operating under restrictive rules of engagement (ROE). Civilians, government organizations, and the international press may be present in the area.

#### **STANDARD:**

---

**Note.** Depending on the commander's training objectives, some of the opposing forces (OPFOR) standards may not apply. Also, OPFOR "fighting" tasks have not been included in this training and evaluation outline (T&EO).

---

If the OPFOR enters into direct combat with the unit, OPFOR tasks for conventional operations would apply. 1. Faction members state their position in clear, unambiguous terms and argue for those positions. 2. Faction members do not accept any compromise that is not favorable to the faction's position. 3. Faction members refuse to discuss any issues that interfere with faction goals or objectives.

### **TASK: Disrupt Coordination or Negotiations (20-OPFOR-2006)**

**CONDITION:** The U.S. forces are conducting stability and or support operations in the local area. Belligerent factions that have agreed to the presence of the stability operations force have been interfering with unit operations. The unit is conducting formal and informal meetings with faction leaders to ensure freedom of movement of local civilians and U.S. forces. The factional element wants to continue controlling the area and the local inhabitants. Faction members are attempting to disrupt these coordination meetings. Factional elements attempt to use the coordination meeting agreements to further factional causes. The U.S. forces are operating under restrictive ROE. Civilians, government organizations, and the international press may be present in the area.

#### **STANDARD:**

---

**Note.** Depending on the commander's training objectives, some of the OPFOR standards may not apply. Also, OPFOR "fighting" tasks have not been included in this T&EO.

---

If the OPFOR enters into direct combat with the unit, OPFOR tasks for conventional operations would apply. 1. Faction members or crowds disrupt the coordination meetings by demonstrating outside the meeting location and or being loud and abusive to local leadership and U.S. forces. 2. Faction members or crowds disrupt coordination meetings by forcing their way into the meeting site and or denying access to meeting locations. 3. Faction representatives agree to a meeting but routinely fail to arrive at the agreed upon time. 4. Faction members demand preferential treatment over other participants. 5. Faction representatives present contentious issues that are beyond the scope of the negotiation and are designed to delay resolution of disputes or problems or, enhance faction legitimacy. 6. Faction representative refuses to support previous agreements.

### **TASK: Delete (20-OPFOR-2997A)**

**CONDITION:** U.S. forces are conducting stability and or support separations in the local area. A non-government organization (NGO) and or a private voluntary organization (PVO) are conducting operations within the unit's AO. The NGO/PVO requires the support of U.S. forces to conduct its humanitarian relief or assistance operations. NGO/PVO operations are considered supportive to the unit's mission. NGO/PVO personnel are cooperative. U.S. forces are operating

under restrictive ROE. Civilians, government organizations, and the international press may be present in the area.

**STANDARD:**

---

**Note.** Depending on the commander's training objectives, some of the OPFOR standards may not apply. Also, OPFOR "fighting" tasks have not been included in this T&EO.

---

If the OPFOR enters into direct combat with the unit, OPFOR tasks for conventional operations would apply. 1. NGO/PVO element specifies support requirements to continue humanitarian relief or assistance operations in the local area to U.S. unit or liaison officer. 2. NGO/PVO conducts coordination meetings with U.S. unit to refine support requirements and establish process/procedures for support of the NGO/PVO. 3. NGO/PVO responds to selected requests for information from U.S. forces. 4. NGO/PVO successfully conducts operations in the local area that support the U.S. force stability and reconstruction operations.

**ELEMENTS:** COMMAND SECTION  
S3 SECTION

**TASK: Prepare Operations Plan/Operations Order and Annexes (63-1-4009)**  
(FM 3-04.111)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The supporting commander's (operation) estimate is approved. The commander has provided a decision and concept of operations. The battalion headquarters has analog and/or digital communications with higher and lower headquarters. The higher headquarters operation plan (OPLAN)/operation order (OPORD) with all annexes, status reports, maps, overlays, and other required documents has been forwarded to the commander. The unit, higher, and lower tactical standing operating procedures (TACSOPs) are available. The executive officer (XO) assigns preparation responsibilities for OPLAN/OPORD and annexes. The S2/S3 has staff responsibility for consolidation, publication, and distribution of OPLAN/OPORD and annexes. The battalion staff continuously receives messages from higher, adjacent, and lower echelons by analog and digital means of communications and by courier. OPLAN becomes OPORD upon implementation. Simplified collective protective equipment (SCPE) is on hand. The commander has elected to locate outside the shelter and has appointed a liaison officer to coordinate command and control (C2) functions between him and the staff. This task is performed under all day and night environmental conditions. The unit is subject to air, chemical, biological, radiological, and nuclear (CBRN) and level I ground threat forces attack. Some iterations of this task should be performed in mission-oriented protective posture level 4 (MOPP4).

**TASK STANDARDS:** OPLAN/OPORD and annexes are prepared according to regulations within the time prescribed by the commander or XO. OPLAN/OPORD supports and articulates the commander's intent. At MOPP4, performance degradation factors increase OPLAN/OPORD and annexes completion time.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>1. The S3 section coordinates with the S2 section. The S3 drafts reference, time zone used, and task organization sections.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Listed maps, charts, sketches, or other documents used in preparation and required for complete understanding of OPLAN.</li> <li>b. Transcribed time zone consistent with higher headquarters OPLAN.</li> <li>c. Listed battalion task organization, time, and effective date.</li> </ul> <p>2. The S3 and support operations sections draft paragraph 1, situation.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Listed composition, disposition, location, estimated strength, identification, and capabilities of enemy forces that influenced the battalion's logistics and combat health support (CHS) mission.</li> <li>b. Listed in order by higher, adjacent, supporting, and reinforcing friendly forces that influenced support operations.</li> </ul> <hr/> <p><b>Note.</b> List consists of units not previously named in the task organization.</p> <hr/>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>c. Listed units attached to or detached from the battalion, with their attachment or detachment effective time, if applicable.</li> <li>d. Listed commander's assumptions that existed at the time the OPLAN becomes an OPORD.</li> </ul> <p>3. The S3 section drafts paragraph 2, mission.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Stated tasks to be accomplished that address the who, what, when, where and time length of operation.</li> <li>b. Stated the mission based on the commander's guidance and intent.</li> </ul> <p>4. The S3 section drafts paragraph 3, execution.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Stated the commander's intention in sufficient detail which ensured appropriate actions by subordinate units.</li> <li>b. Stated the commander's concept of operations for the execution of support mission from start to finish.</li> <li>c. Listed the scheme of support that includes placement, movement, and primary mission of each subordinate unit.</li> <li>d. Listed all details of coordination and control applicable to two or more units of the battalion which included troop safety measures, mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) levels, and restriction on use of chemical weapons.</li> </ul> <p>5. Support operations, S1, and S4 sections draft paragraph 4, service support.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Updated battle rosters and personnel status charts to reflect new task organization.</li> <li>b. Developed estimates of injured, sick, and wounded rates.</li> <li>c. Prepared "personnel" portion of paragraph 4, service support.</li> <li>d. Provided support instructions, logistics and CHS distribution schemes and other arrangements that supported the operations and were of primary interests to subordinate units.</li> <li>e. Referenced higher headquarters service support paragraph, when it was lengthy and the details were included in higher headquarters service support paragraph.</li> </ul> <p>6. The S3 and/or S6 sections draft paragraph 5, command and signal.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Listed location of the command post (CP), alternate CP, and liaison requirements different than those stated in TACSOP.</li> <li>b. Listed all information technologies including index of the effective signal operation instruction/signal supplemental instructions (SOI/SSI) and instructions for the use of local area networks, automation, radio, pyrotechnics, or restriction on the employment of analog or digital communications.</li> <li>c. Provided acknowledgement instructions, commander's signature block, authentication section, and distribution instructions.</li> </ul> <p>7. The S3 section, in coordination with the support operations officer (SPO) task, organizes subordinate units/elements for the support mission.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Identified total support requirements by reviewing the commander's planning guidance and the restated mission.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>b. Identified unit availability by inspecting higher headquarters OPLAN.</p> <p>c. Identified where to reduce or add units or elements by reviewing supported forces scheme of maneuver and terrain factors.</p> <p>d. Organized subordinate units based on their capability to accommodate the support mission.</p> <p>8. The S3 section drafts the task organization annex.</p> <p>a. Listed each assigned or attached unit and their tentative location and appropriate time of attachment.</p> <p>b. Forwarded annex to the S2/S3 for approval or modification.</p> <p>c. Distributed annex to all appropriate staff sections and organic and attached units using appropriate battlefield functional area control system (BFACS).</p> <p>d. Attached task organization annex to the OPLAN/OPORD.</p> <p>9. The S3 section drafts an operations overlay.</p> <p>a. Stated map reference data, effective date, and purpose of the overlay.</p> <p>b. Listed classification markings and downgrading instructions, if applicable.</p> <p>c. Applied overlay plotting techniques.</p> <p>d. Plotted boundaries, supporting, supported, and subordinate units' locations within 50 meters.</p> <p>e. Affixed graphic portrayal of axis of advance, supply routes, and unit locations.</p> <p>f. Forwarded operations overlay to the S3, with assistance from the S2, for approval or modification using maneuver control system (MCS).</p> <p>g. Attached overlay to the OPLAN/OPORD as an annex.</p> <p>10. The S3 section consolidates staff input/annexes.</p> <p>a. Verified staff input/annexes for completeness and compliance with commander's guidance.</p> <p>b. Prepared revised copy of OPLAN/OPORD.</p> <p>c. Forwarded draft copy to commander or XO for approval or modification.</p> <p>11. The S3 section distributes the OPLAN/OPORD using analog and/or digital devices.</p> <p>a. Prepared appropriate number copies of OPLAN/OPORD and annexes.</p> <p>b. Distributed OPLAN/OPORD with annexes to all appropriate staff sections, organic, and attached units using MCS.</p> <p>*12. Commander/leader performs or delegates performance of the steps in the risk management process for each step in troop-leading procedures (appendix C).</p> <p>* Indicates a leader task step</p>		



<b>TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK</b>							
<b>ITERATION</b>	<b>1</b>	<b>2</b>	<b>3</b>	<b>4</b>	<b>5</b>	<b>M</b>	<b>TOTAL</b>
Total Task Steps Evaluated							
Total Task Steps GO							
Training Status GO/NO-GO							

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
011-141-1067	Extract information from operations orders	STP 1-15P1-SM
011-510-0504	Prepare a company-level operations order (OPORD)	STP 1-15 II
071-326-5502	Issue a fragmentary order	STP 21-24-SMCT

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>References</b>
01-2-0341	Perform composite risk management procedures	ARTEP 1-113-MTP ARTEP 1-126-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**This page intentionally left blank.**

## Chapter 6

# External Evaluations

### 6-1. GENERAL

a. This chapter is a guide for preparing and conducting external evaluations. Major paragraphs detail how to prepare the evaluation, select and train evaluators/OCs, and conduct the evaluation and AAR.

b. External evaluations provide the battalion commander and the higher headquarters a clear picture and assessment of the battalion's ability to conduct wartime missions. Battalion external evaluations are planned, resourced, and conducted by a headquarters at an echelon higher in the chain of command than the organization undergoing the evaluation or a headquarters outside the chain of command. Commanders are responsible for training their own unit and one echelon below. Commanders evaluate unit's two echelons below. (For example, brigade commanders train battalions and evaluate companies; battalion commanders train companies and evaluate platoons.) The unit should modify the evaluation based on METT-TC, contingency plans, and the battalion's METL. The METL along with T&EOs found in chapter 5 provide the primary basis and focus for an external evaluation. External evaluations conducted at the different CTCs provide the chain of command a highly realistic and stressful joint, interservice and combined arms training according to Army doctrine.

### 6-2. PREPARING THE EVALUATION

a. General Preparation Procedures. Evaluation of training tells the unit whether or not they achieved the Army standard and, therefore, assist them in determining the overall effectiveness of their training plans. Evaluation produces disciplined units; training without evaluations is a waste of time and resources. The evaluation of collective training is critical to assess a unit's capability to perform its METL tasks. For evaluation to be effective, it must be thoroughly planned and rigorously executed. To ensure that the evaluation accurately measures the battalion's capabilities, the headquarters administering the evaluation must develop a plan for preparing, administering, evaluating, and reporting the examination results. This section outlines evaluation preparation procedures.

(1) A critical component of this assessment is evaluation of training. Training evaluation is integral to standards-based training and is conducted by leaders at every level. The method of preparing the evaluation depends on the intent of the commander administering the evaluation. The evaluation process is continuous, and must be planned for all training and considered as a way of life in the unit. If the intent is to determine the unit's ability to execute its wartime mission, the evaluation should mirror the missions required by its contingency plans. If the evaluation is to be a diagnostic tool to help the commander develop future training plans, the emphasis should be on devising an evaluation that allows him to see the unit perform as many tasks or subtasks as possible in the given time, with as little redundancy as possible.

(2) An evaluation developed to evaluate fighting abilities should use, as a starting point, the battalion's wartime contingency plan and possible missions associated with the execution of that plan. The scenarios will reflect contingency plans; however, those who prepare the evaluation should be aware that the type of missions being evaluated results in some task redundancy.

(3) In formulating a diagnostic evaluation to help develop future training plans, the initiating headquarters should look at the type of missions that the battalion might have to execute. It should select those missions with as little task and subtask redundancy as possible. Minimizing redundancy will give the battalion a more comprehensive evaluation.

(4) The battalion evaluation will combine evaluation of fighting abilities and development of plans and orders. Some missions are selected because of the battalion's wartime contingency mission. Other missions are selected because of the value of the tasks and their contribution to a well-rounded evaluation. After missions and tasks are identified, they should be arranged in logical sequence. The sequence is based on the order in which they will occur in the scenario. The selected missions and tasks are then grouped into events. The end of each event represents a break point where the evaluation scenario can be interrupted if required, for assessment, AARs, or a change in scenario. After missions and tasks are grouped into events, they are listed on DA Form 7506 (*Unit Proficiency/Evaluation Worksheet*) (figure 6-1). The work sheet serves as the base document for the AAR.

(5) Preparation includes development of enemy situations, friendly situations, warning orders, FRAGOs, OPORDs, overlays, milestones, and message input to support the scenario. In addition to being a vital requirement for a well-coordinated evaluation, production of these materials and documents provides excellent staff training (see FM 7-2).

(6) OC organization and OC information packets must be developed. OC AARs and meeting requirements should be considered along with a milestone schedule and key events list.

(7) In preparing the evaluation for a battalion, the higher headquarters should ensure that—

- (a) Ample maneuver space is available.
- (b) Supporting forces (OPFOR and CS and CSS elements normally attached to the unit being evaluated) are identified and made available.
- (c) Sufficient ammunition; petroleum, oils, and lubricants (POL); and spare parts are on hand.



b. Mission-essential Task List. The battalion METL, along with T&EOs found in chapter 5, provide the foundation and focus for external evaluations. It lists collective tasks which the unit must perform to accomplish its wartime mission and is also the starting point for developing an evaluation. All mission-essential tasks should be evaluated to assess the battalion's capability to perform its mission. Additional collective tasks from chapter 5 can be added to complement mission-essential tasks. Since it is not possible to evaluate every task in this mission training plan (MTP), selective tailoring is required. The list of evaluated tasks can also be modified when the evaluation is primarily a diagnostic tool.

c. Evaluation Scenario Development. Once evaluation tasks are identified and listed, the evaluating headquarters develops a broad exercise scenario and supporting materials. The scenario (figure 6-2) shows the logical sequence in which tasks would usually be performed on the battlefield. It should depict general events and broad time-planning factors so that it can be revised, refined, and expanded. The materials in chapter 4 are valuable in developing the scenario. Development of the scenario requires manpower devoted to planning and scheduling activities. Many actions can be done at the same time. Table 6-1 is a suggested format for an evaluation scenario.

(1) The scenario requires developing a variety of supporting materials. The friendly and enemy situations are developed in detail and prepared as intelligence summaries, OPORDs, map overlays, and so forth. These documents are used later during the evaluation. A master event or incident list is prepared. It depicts the cues or events that will cause the battalion to perform the mission-essential tasks. Actual event drivers are developed along with the master event list. These event drivers include FRAGOs, messages, OPFOR missions, controller tasks, role-player assignments, and records and reports. Included in this process are determining evaluation requirements and responsibilities and preparing materials that will help OCs conduct an evaluation.

(2) In preparing the master event list, developers must incorporate the cues or events that will cause the battalion to perform all mission-essential tasks. Because mission-essential tasks are directly related to the collective tasks in chapter 5, cues are already identified in the condition statement of each T&EO. The focus must be on structuring the evaluation so that the battalion can perform its mission-essential tasks to the standards specified in this MTP.

(3) Expanding the general scenario by listing the mission-essential tasks for each phase of the evaluation is one method of ensuring that most, if not all, mission-essential tasks are included in the evaluation. Adding an evaluation column to the unit evaluation work sheet produces a chart that allows summarizing of the evaluation of each critical task.

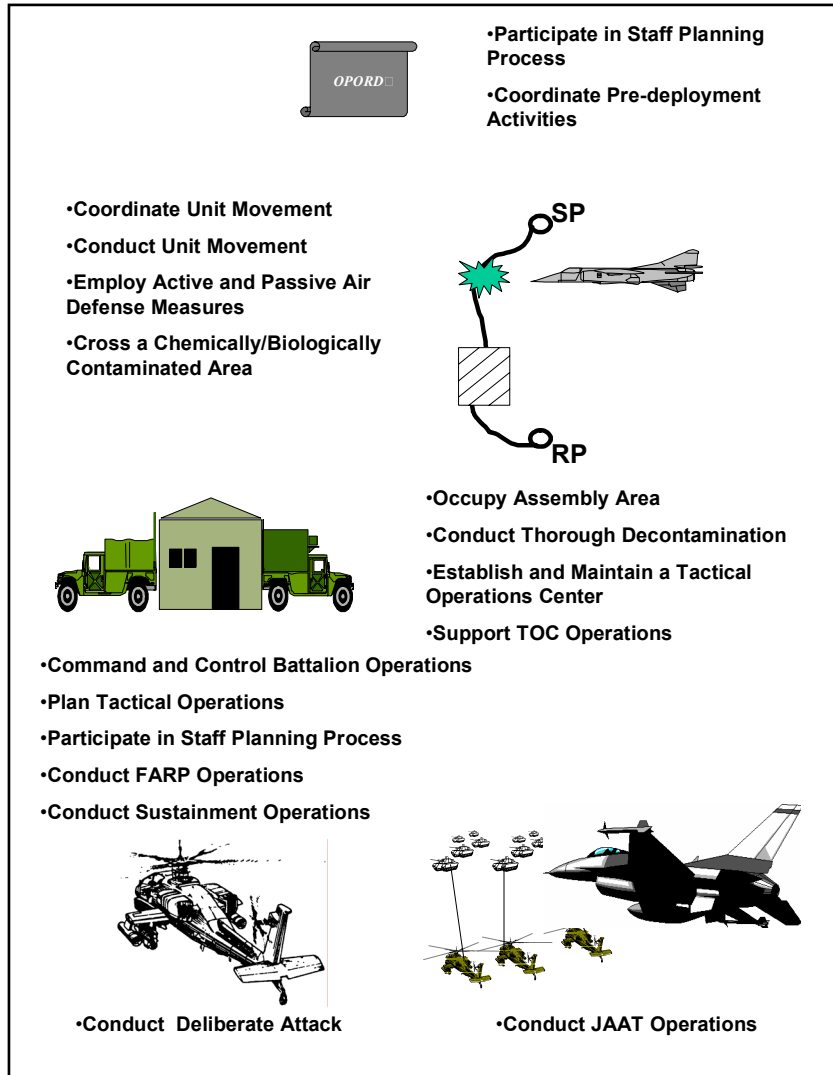


Figure 6-2. Graphic portrayal of an evaluation scenario

Table 6-1. Suggested format for an evaluation scenario

<i>FTX-1: Conduct assault operations</i>				
<b>SEQUENCE</b>	<b>EVENT</b>	<b>MAXIMUM TIME ALLOTTED</b>		<b>PROPOSED TIME FRAME</b>
1	Administrative preparations are made.	Pre-FTX		
2	Battalion receives OPORD.	1 hour	Day 1	
3	Battalion initiates personnel recall and issues warning order to companies.	2 hours		
4*	Battalion prepares for tactical movement.	4 hours		

**Table 6-1. Suggested format for an evaluation scenario**

<i>FTX-1: Conduct assault operations</i>				
<b>SEQUENCE</b>	<b>EVENT</b>	<b>MAXIMUM TIME ALLOTTED</b>		<b>PROPOSED TIME FRAME</b>
5	Battalion staff conducts staff planning process and prepares OPORD.	2 to 4 hours (depending on the complexity of the mission)		
6*	Coordinate required assistance during movement.	6 hours		
7	Battalion issues OPORD to subordinate elements.	1 hour		
8*	Monitor movement of subordinate elements.	6 hours		
9*	Conduct advance party operations.	1.5 hours		
10	Main body conducts tactical move.	1.5 hours (Total en route time without training events, based on distance traveled)		
11*	Advance party secures AA and establishes hasty defense.	1 hour		
12	Main body crosses a contaminated area (decontamination is not performed; crossing is to train or evaluate crossing procedures only).	0.5 hour (AAR if required)		
13	Main body continues tactical move to AA.	NA		
14	Main body reacts to hostile aircraft.	0.5 hour (AAR if required)		
15	Main body continues tactical move to AA.	NA		
16	Main body closes on and occupies AA.	1 hour (Unit SOP will vary on when AA occupation is complete)		
17*	Battalion establishes force-protection measures.	1 hour		
18*	Aircraft arrive on site and conduct arming and refueling as necessary.	0.7 hour (depends on distance)		



**Table 6-1. Suggested format for an evaluation scenario**

<i>FTX-1: Conduct assault operations</i>				
<b>SEQUENCE</b>	<b>EVENT</b>	<b>MAXIMUM TIME ALLOTTED</b>		<b>PROPOSED TIME FRAME</b>
19	Battalion headquarters establishes TOC.	1 hour		
20*	Companies establish command posts.	1 hour		
21*	Battalion establishes communications with higher headquarters (may be simulated).	0.5 hour		
22*	Battalion establishes internal communications.	0.5 hour		
23	Conduct AAR: company and battalion.	1.5 hours		
24	Battalion conducts assault operations and tactical sustainment.	72 hours		
25*	Battalion executes STX-1: Conduct a deliberate assault.	12 hours	Day 2	
26*	Battalion executes STX-2: Conduct joint air attack team (JAAT) operations.	12 hours	Day 3	
27	Battalion receives FRAGO to redeploy to home station.	1 hour	Day 4	
27a	Battalion issues warning order to companies.	1 hour		
28*	Battalion prepares for redeployment.	3 hours		
29	Battalion staff conducts staff planning process and issues a FRAGO to the companies.	2 to 4 hours (Depending on the complexity of the mission)		
30	Redeployment OPORD issued by battalion.	1 hour		
31*	Conduct advance party operations.	1.5 hours		
32	Main body conducts tactical move.	1.5 hours		
33	Main body closes on and occupies AA home station.	3 hours (may be extended for equipment servicing and storage)		

**Table 6-1. Suggested format for an evaluation scenario**

<i>FTX-1: Conduct assault operations</i>				
<i>SEQUENCE</i>	<i>EVENT</i>	<i>MAXIMUM TIME ALLOTTED</i>		<i>PROPOSED TIME FRAME</i>
34	Conduct final AAR: companies and battalion.	1.5 hours		
		Total Time: 96 hours		
* Indicates that time is not added to the total time because tasks are performed simultaneously with other tasks.				
<p><b>Notes:</b></p> <p>The proposed timing factors in this figure illustrate the process for evaluation development only and therefore they do not establish ARTEP standards for execution.</p> <p>Additional time is required if large portions of the exercise are conducted at night, under limited visibility, or under MOPP conditions.</p> <p>Events will be trained to standards, not time limitations. The time required to train an event varies based on METT-TC factors and the proficiency of the staff.</p> <p>AARs are not time-constrained.</p>				

**6-3. RESOURCE REQUIREMENTS AND PLANNING CONSIDERATION.** Resource requirements and other planning considerations become evident as the evaluation expands and develops. Even in the planning stages, when everything is subject to change, developers must begin scheduling, coordinating, and planning. Table 6-2 is an example of consolidated support requirements. Requirements and considerations for the evaluation team or other staff agencies that have been designated specific responsibilities include the following—

- a. Scheduling training areas.
- b. Preparing a calendar of events and key milestones for the evaluation, including the final after-action review and preparation of the after action report.
- c. Identifying individual and battalion support requirements and tasking applicable agencies, personnel, and units required to perform OC, safety, support, OPFOR, and other functions.
- d. Requisitioning training ammunition, training aids, and other training materials and fuel, rations, and other required supplies.
- e. Coordinating unit movement and transportation support requirements.
- f. Identifying equipment requirements and coordinating support.
- g. Notifying supporting and supported units of the planned evaluation dates and coordinating adjustments, to include personnel and unit support required to perform the unit's mission during evaluation.
- h. Scheduling and conducting safety training.
- i. Scheduling OC training and orientation sessions.
- j. Identifying and scheduling OPFOR training.

**Table 6-2. Example of consolidated support requirements**

<b>AMMUNITION</b>	<b>QUANTITY</b>
5.56-mm (blank)	134 rounds/rifleman
7.62-mm (blank)	400 rounds/M60 machine guns
Caliber .50 (blank)	200 rounds per M2 machine gun
Hand grenade (practice)	2 per Soldier
Hand grenade fuse (practice)	2 per Soldier
Simulator, artillery	8 per company/10 per OPFOR
Simulator, booby trap	6 per company/3 per OPFOR
<b>OTHER ITEMS</b>	<b>QUANTITY</b>
Diesel and MOGAS	500 gallons
JP8	10,000 gallons
Batteries—BA 200 (6-volt)	48 each
Batteries—BA 3090 (9-volt)	560 each
Chemlights	4 boxes per company
War wound moulage kit	1 each
MILES equipment for all weapons and personnel	
MILES controller guns per OC	

**6-4. SELECTING AND TRAINING EVALUATORS/OBSERVERS-CONTROLLERS.**

Evaluators/OCs are evaluators who are qualified or properly trained to enhance the training experience for the evaluated unit by providing valid, credible observations. Adhering to standard procedures is essential to the evaluation process. These procedures ensure that the evaluation is administered fairly and correctly for all units commanded by the evaluating headquarters.

a. At the battalion level, the number of OCs required varies, depending on the evaluation method. If the intent is to conduct a multiechelon, simultaneous evaluation, the number of OCs can be high. The two-echelons-above rule allows the number of OCs to be reduced; that is, divisions evaluate battalions, battalions evaluate platoons, and companies evaluate sections. An OC team composed of the following personnel is the minimum recommended for an external evaluation of a battalion—

- (1) Senior OC: aviation lieutenant colonel.
- (2) Staff OC: aviation major or captain.
- (3) Operations OC: aviation major.
- (4) Administrative OC: MOS 75Z sergeant first class.
- (5) Logistics OC: MOS 76Y sergeant first class.
- (6) CBRN OC: MOS 54B sergeant first class.

b. OCs must be thoroughly familiar with assault helicopter battalion missions, organization, equipment, and doctrine. They need to understand the overall operation of the battalion and how it is integrated to support Army operations. Team members must have a comprehensive working knowledge of common individual and collective tasks. These tasks cover such areas as assault operations, reconnaissance operations, stability and reconstruction operations, security operations, force protection, communications, and CBRN. At least one member of the evaluation team must have detailed expertise in CBRN related tasks and local-defense common-task areas. For a primary evaluation, OCs should be equal or senior in rank to the leader of the evaluated element. Ideally OCs should have held the positions themselves because it lends credibility to their role of evaluator. All members of the team must be able to assess objectively, function effectively as team members, and articulate their findings orally and in writing.

c. External evaluators must be certified in the task they are evaluating and normally will not be dual-hatted as a participant in the training being executed. Leaders, Soldiers, and units learn from the evaluator and evaluators learn by observing the unit. Unit leaders who serve as internal evaluators must also be certified in the tasks they will evaluate. Certification is a measure of *individual technical proficiency* and normally found in Army or major Army command (MACOM) regulations. Certification requirements for OCs, individuals to supervise live-fire ranges, unit movements, and so forth, are examples of individual technical proficiencies that commanders may require to support training. Commanders may require certification to confirm a unit's collective training proficiency to perform a specific type of mission or task. Listed below are some basic guidelines for the evaluators—

- (1) Be trained (tactically and technically proficient) and rehearsed in the tasks to be evaluated.
- (2) Know the terrain (Conduct reconnaissance of the training area).
- (3) Know the evaluation standards.
- (4) Follow the field and TACSOP for the organization to be evaluated.
- (5) Apply relevant information about the evaluated unit (such as wartime missions, METL, personnel turbulence, leader fill, and equipment status).
- (6) Patiently observe all actions of a unit (don't jump to conclusions).
- (7) Assist the commander and leaders in training safety. Be aware of specific safety considerations applicable to the training.
- (8) Be flexible, base evaluation on unit's reaction to the tactical situation, not on personal knowledge of the pre-planned scenario.
- (9) Do what Soldiers do. Experience the same conditions as the evaluated unit.
- (10) Know OPFOR training objectives.

d. OC training focuses on providing OCs with a general understanding of the overall evaluation. This training gives each OC a detailed understanding of the specific duties and responsibilities and builds a spirit of teamwork. OC training should include the following areas—

- (1) The overall evaluation design, general scenario, master event list, and specific evaluation purposes and objectives. Each event is designed to evaluate specific critical missions or tasks within the overall scenario. The OCs must know the evaluation thoroughly and to ensure that it is implemented correctly.
- (2) The battalion METL and its relationship to T&EOs and other materials contained within this MTP. The OC must understand the task, the doctrine required to execute the task, the standards, and the methods of measuring mission and task accomplishment. Each OC should receive a copy of the battalion TACSOP. The evaluation validates this document.
- (3) OC team composition and general duties and responsibilities of each team member.
- (4) Detailed duties and responsibilities of individual team members, emphasizing the master event list items for which they will be responsible. Information is included on the evaluation control system. This information ensures that the evaluation is consistent and standardized and that the correct data are collected for the final evaluation.
- (5) A review of the written instructions and materials contained in the OC folders.
- (6) A detailed reconnaissance of the area used for the evaluation.
- (7) The OC and C2 systems, to include a review of the OC organization apparatus. The organization is usually depicted on a flow chart showing evaluation coverage in depth. The C2 system normally includes a separate radio net and SOI for OCs. The SOI should include call signs and frequencies for the evaluated unit, controllers, and OPFOR as well as for all OCs. OCs should never rely on the organic tactical radio nets of the unit being evaluated.
- (8) Safety procedures.

(9) The evaluation data-collection plan and procedures. The plan states how data are to be reported, collected, consolidated, and briefed. It covers times and locations of OC meetings and when OCs should debrief their counterparts.

(10) AAR procedures and techniques according to FM 7-1, appendix C.

e. A talk-through of the entire evaluation in which the evaluation team war-games all items of the master event list in chronological order. The team reviews the objective of each event, individual team-member responsibilities, and anticipated problems. OCs should be prepared to ride on aircraft and have flight gear with them. Forward arming refueling points (FARPs), LZs, and PZs must be observed. In some cases, OCs may have to ride in designated chase aircraft. This must not interfere with the evaluated battalion.

f. The senior OC supervises the operation of the team. The OC provides team leadership, assuring that evaluation personnel fulfill their responsibilities and adhere to the evaluation plan. The senior OC—

- (1) Answers questions about the evaluation plan.
- (2) Resolves problems.
- (3) Synchronizes the efforts of team members.
- (4) Ensures close coordination among team members.
- (5) Holds periodic team coordination meetings.
- (6) Plans and orchestrates the battalion AAR.
- (7) Conducts specific evaluation team AARs.

**6-5. SELECTING AND TRAINING OPPOSING FORCE.** Selecting and training the OPFOR are crucial to a standardized evaluation. OPFOR support may be used in only a few tasks; however, proper training and employment of this force accurately assesses unit capabilities. OPFOR is one control measure that influences the evaluation conditions. While it is impossible to have the same OPFOR unit each time, the better trained that the OPFOR is to a stated standard, the more standard the evaluation. The force must be augmented with enough CS and CSS to accurately portray the expected threat.

a. OPFOR units must be trained and equipped to confront U.S. units with realistic opponents that look like and fight like potential adversaries. To include groups representing unconventional forces (for example, terrorist or guerrillas) and it should be modeled like foreign organizations that currently posed a threat. Such realism enhances unit training exercises. This is a unique training environment where Soldiers, leaders, and units will learn the potential adversary's tactics, doctrine, and weapon systems that they could successfully exploit in air-land battles. OPFOR units encourage—

- (1) Effective intelligence-gathering procedures.
- (2) Electronic warfare techniques.
- (3) Operations security measures.
- (4) Deception measures.
- (5) Unconventional warfare techniques.

b. The OPFOR commander has tactical and administrative control of the OPFOR and its attached units during the exercise. The OPFOR commander should be well trained in OPFOR tactics and operations. The grade (from senior NCO to field-grade officer) is determined by the size of the OPFOR element that the OPFOR commander commands. In addition to leading various OPFOR elements, the OPFOR commander is a part-time member of the OC team. Thus, the OPFOR commander must participate in OC planning and training activities and rehearse planned tactical operations with them. The OPFOR commander must also be present during AARs.

c. OPFOR elements must be distinguishable on the battlefield from friendly forces through use of visual modifications. The characteristics of OPFOR weapons (range of weapons, rounds

on board, protection, and penetration) should be the same as those of the enemy force being depicted. Aircraft survivability equipment trainers should be employed to the maximum extent possible to simulate the threat's AD capability. Some characteristics can be portrayed using the MILES, while others must be represented by OC interaction. OPFOR training must include—

- (1) Threat tactics.
- (2) OPFOR missions and responsibilities.
- (3) Rules of engagement.
- (4) OPFOR tasks and standards for each mission.
- (5) Threat weapons and equipment, if available.
- (6) Command and control.
- (7) Safety.
- (8) The evaluation scenario—who does what and when it is done.
- (9) Effect of personnel and equipment shortages on the evaluated unit.

d. Offensive strength. The OPFOR should be armed with weapons organic to the force that it is depicting. OPFOR must be able to move rapidly around the battlefield and should be strong enough to offer the evaluated unit a realistic challenge.

e. Defensive strength. As in the offense, the OPFOR must have weapons organic to the force being depicted. Assault/defense ratios can be greatly reduced directly proportional to the amount of time available for the OPFOR to prepare the defense. The defense should be challenging; like the offense, the defense depends on METT-TC.

## 6-6. CONDUCTING THE EVALUATION

a. General. The senior OC conducts the evaluation. The senior OC also oversees support provided by the individuals and elements selected and trained to fulfill designated functions and responsibilities.

(1) OCs must be free to observe, report, and record the actions of the unit. This chapter covers their selection, training, and duties.

(2) The battalion's next-higher headquarters or a specialized cell drawn from that headquarters should be selected and trained to serve as the control element for the evaluation. This element issues orders, receives reports, provides feeder information, and controls the OPFOR. This cell is commonly referred to as the *White Cell*.

(3) All exercise participants and supporting personnel should ensure that every facet of the evaluation is conducted safely. Personnel observing unsafe conditions must promptly correct them and advise superiors of the situation.

b. Phases of the evaluation. The evaluation is divided into three phases: preevaluation, evaluation, and postevaluation.

(1) Preevaluation phase.

(a) Reconnaissance of the evaluation area. The senior OC and all other OCs must conduct a reconnaissance of the evaluation area. This reconnaissance ensures that all OCs understand the boundaries of the area and the locations of key terrain and objectives.

(b) Review of OC folders. Under control of the senior OC, OCs should review their evaluation packets to ensure that they contain all needed administrative and tactical directives. The senior OC must ensure that all OCs understand the directives and review the milestone schedule. The senior OC also answers any questions about the evaluation plan, control plan, or tactical scenario for the evaluated unit.

(2) Evaluation phase.

(a) Controlling the exercise. Normally, the next-higher headquarters acts as the controlling unit in a battalion evaluation. The *White Cell* issues orders, receives reports, provides feeder information, and controls the OPFOR. This frees the OCs to perform their principal duties of observing, reporting, and recording the actions of the evaluated unit. The higher headquarters

may designate a separate control element to accompany the evaluated unit; thus the OC has maximum flexibility because the OC does not have to function as both a controller and an evaluator.

(b) OC control. In the absence of a separate control element or if a problem in the control plan proves detrimental to scenario continuity, the OC must be able to implement the controls required to salvage the operation. If the OC is forced to act, the OC must guard against overreacting and; thus, disrupting the initiative and momentum of the exercise.

(c) Ending the event. The senior OC should end an event when the evaluated unit has completed all tasks and missions in a particular event or when the unit has suffered such extensive casualties or damage that assigned missions or tasks cannot be executed. Coordination with the senior OC ensures that events are stopped and started in a timely fashion. The senior OC may decide to run several events in sequence before halting the scenario to conduct a critique or gather evaluation data. While this decision is normally made before the exercise begins, adjustments can be made during the operation if coordinated with the control headquarters.

(d) Guidelines for OCs. The following are guidelines for observer-controllers:

- Observe critical events based on the milestone schedule, and record any action that might affect later performance or mission outcome. Be specific. Using T&EOs, evaluate events according to the unit evaluation work sheet, current doctrine, and unit SOPs.
- Ensure that the control headquarters is kept abreast of the unit's location and intent. This information enables the headquarters to control OPFOR action according to the desired sequence of events.
- Enforce rules of engagement.
- Enforce safety.

(3) Postevaluation phase.

(a) When the exercise ends, the senior OC should assemble the OCs and prepare the final AAR. The senior OC should then begin work on the final AAR. The AAR is a formal document that the commander uses to develop future training plans. It addresses all combined arms functional tasks performed in the missions executed during the evaluation. The format and content of the AAR may vary among commands. All after-action reports should, however, have, as a foundation, the unit evaluation work sheet (figure 6-1), annotated with the proper rating criteria as demonstrated during the evaluation. In addition, the AAR conducted at the end of the exercise aids in preparing the written AAR. This report gives the commander a precise evaluation of the unit's training status and serves as the bridge between evaluation and training. It also eliminates ambiguity resulting from the use of generalized strength/weakness statements.

(b) Unit evaluation work sheets provide a consolidated roll-up of the unit's performance and of the battalion's overall mission rating—that is, GO or NO-GO for the missions and their supporting collective tasks. The work sheet may vary, depending on the unit's location, contingency plans, and intent of the evaluation. (For example, if the evaluation was designed to give an overall diagnostic assessment, the work sheet concentrates on underlying tasks.) For an evaluation to test contingency plans, the work sheet focuses on specific missions.

(c) To aid in planning future training, the battalion's training status is recorded on the unit proficiency work sheet. The work sheet contains assessments of strong and weak areas noted during training and external evaluations. The battalion commander and S3 use this record of training status to develop and modify long- and short-range training plans to prepare the unit for combat.

## **6-7. RECORDING EXTERNAL EVALUATION INFORMATION**

a. The senior OC prepares and implements the evaluation scoring system. While the commander makes the final evaluation assessment, the full team participates. The team's report reflects the overall proficiency of the unit in accomplishing its wartime missions.

b. The evaluation system is based on assessing the unit's performance on each mission-essential task and all other collective tasks in the overall evaluation plan. The following steps show the evaluation process:

- (1) Step 1: Identify each mission in the evaluation scenario, and prepare DA Form 7502 (*Task Summary Sheet*) (figure 6-3).
- (2) Step 2: Identify the T&EOs in chapter 5 that correspond to each mission of the evaluation scenario.
- (3) Step 3: Use T&EO standards to evaluate the battalion's performance of the tasks for each evaluation task.
- (4) Step 4: On the T&EO, record a GO for each task step performed to standard and a NO-GO for each task step not performed to standard.
- (5) Step 5: Record T&EO evaluation information on the task summary work sheet.
- (6) Step 6: Determine the battalion's overall capability to perform the task using the information recorded on each task summary work sheet and the task standard information from the T&EOs:
  - GO – the battalion's completion of a task or performance step of a task was performed to standard; a rating of GO is normally awarded if all the steps in the task were successfully completed.
  - NO-GO – the battalion receives a NO-GO if the task or any performance step in the task was not performed to standard.
- (7) Step 7: Finally, commanders use the evaluator ratings as one of source of input when making their training assessment ratings of "T", "P", or "U" (figure 6-1).



<b>TASK SUMMARY SHEET</b>			
For use of this form, see the applicable ARTEP MTP; the proponent agency is TRADOC.			
<b>INSTRUCTIONS:</b> A separate task summary sheet will be prepared for each mission evaluated. Additional comments may be placed on an enclosure to each task summary sheet.			
1. MISSION <b>Conduct a Deliberate Assault</b>			
2. UNIT IDENTIFICATION		3. ARTEP MTP NUMBER ARTEP 1-113UA-MTP	
4. TASK TITLE	5. T&EO NUMBER	6. EVALUATION	
		GO	NO-GO
Conduct Command and Control (C2) Battalion/Squadron Operations	01-1-0343		
Direct the Battalion/Squadron Staff	01-1-0344		
Direct the Battalion Standardization Program	01-1-0349		
Implement Operations Security (OPSEC) Measures	01-1-5135		
Integrate Aircraft Survivability Measures	01-1-5163		
Coordinate Personnel/Self Recovery Operations	01-1-5165		
Plan Fire Mission in support of Aviation Operations	01-1-5142		
Manage the Battalion Safety Program	01-1-0348		
Plan Aviation Operations Using the MDMP	01-1-5134		
Coordinate Procedures for Establishing a Tactical Command Center (TOC) Operations	01-1-5149		
Establish a Tactical Command Post (TAC CP)	01-1-5147		
Integrate the Army Airspace Command and Control (A2C2) Plan into Aviation Operations	01-1-5164		
Coordinate Aviation Liaison Officer (LNO) Operations	01-1-5146		
Perform Troop Leading Procedures	01-2-5160		
Coordinate Operational Readiness and Aircraft Availability for Mission Planning with the S3	01-2-5216		
Conduct Thorough Decontamination Operations	03-2-C312.01-0100		
Perform Operations within Established Army Airspace Command and Control (A2C2) Measures	01-2-5181		
Employ Fratricide Prevention Measures	01-2-5159		
Conduct Mission Planning/Preparation	01-2-5198		
7. COMMENTS			
8. OBSERVER/CONTROLLER OR EVALUATOR'S SIGNATURE			

DA FORM 7502, APR 2003

USAPA V1.00

Figure 6-3. Example of DA Form 7502 (front)

TASK SUMMARY SHEET			
For use of this form, see the applicable ARTEP MTP; the proponent agency is TRADOC.			
<b>INSTRUCTIONS:</b> A separate task summary sheet will be prepared for each mission evaluated. Additional comments may be placed on an enclosure to each task summary sheet.			
1. MISSION <b>Conduct a Deliberate Assault continued</b>			
2. UNIT IDENTIFICATION		3. ARTEP MTP NUMBER ARTEP 1-113UA MTP	
4. TASK TITLE	5. T&EO NUMBER	6. EVALUATION	
		GO	NO-GO
Employ Passive Air Defense Measures	44-2-0220.01-0100		
Perform Air Assault Procedures	01-2-5103		
Perform Air Assault Operations	01-2-5218		
Perform Aerial Passage of Lines	01-2-5196		
Conduct Personnel Recovery/Self-Recovery Operations (UH-60)	01-2-5219		
Provide Pathfinder Support	01-3-1353		
Conduct Forward Arming and Refueling Point (FARP) Operations	01-2-0339		
Establish Battalion/Squadron Tactical Communications	01-1-5174		
Coordinate Aviation Tactical Command, Control, Communications, Computers, and Intelligence (C4I) Systems Planning	01-1-5175		
7. COMMENTS			
8. OBSERVER/CONTROLLER OR EVALUATOR'S SIGNATURE			

DA FORM 7502, APR 2003

USAPA V1.00

Figure 6-3. Example of DA Form 7502 (back)



c. Other locally designed reports, approved by the senior OC and prescribed in the evaluation plan, may be used to collect evaluation information. These reports should assist the team in recording the information about the battalion's capability to perform its wartime mission according to established standards. This information also helps the senior OC to determine the unit's overall final rating. The following reports may be used—

(1) DA Form 7505 (*Unit Data Sheet*). This report records personnel and equipment status information as well as narrative strength and weakness data (figure 6-4).

(2) DA Form 7503 (*Environmental Data Sheet*). This report records information about weather and terrain conditions during task performance (figure 6-5).

(3) DA Form 7504 (*Personnel and Equipment Loss Report*). This report records information about battalion personnel and equipment losses in OPFOR engagements (figure 6-6).

(4) Other reports. These cover battlefield operating systems, losses, equipment status, supply status, and weapons effects, as locally prescribed (figures 6-7 through 6-11).

## **6-8. CONDUCTING THE AFTER-ACTION REVIEW**

a. AARs expand the value of an evaluation; AARs are a key part of the training process and are not cure-alls for unit training problems. The purpose of the AAR is to provide the feedback essential to correcting training deficiencies. AARs involve battalion members in the training diagnosis process as they discover for themselves what happened during the evaluation and why it happened. Participants identify errors and seek solutions that increase the value of the training and reinforce learning. The senior OC is responsible for the AAR process and coordinates the entire AAR program from the initial planning of the evaluation through after action phases.

b. The following are key steps in the AAR process:

(1) After-action review planning. The AAR plan provides the foundation for a successful AAR. Planning for AARs is initiated during preparation activities long before the actual evaluation begins. AARs are integrated into the general scenario at logical break points and into the detailed evaluation scenario that is developed later. The AAR plan specifies who attends each AAR. Qualified OCs are selected and trained. OCs use the AAR plan to identify critical places and events they must observe to provide the unit a valid evaluation. This phase also includes identifying potential AAR sites and requisitioning equipment and supplies needed to conduct the AAR.

(2) After-action review preparation. Preparation is the key to the effective execution of any plan. Preparing for an AAR begins before the training and continues until the actual event. In addition to the OCs watching the battalion perform its combat critical tasks, this phase includes a review of training objectives, orders, and doctrine. Final AAR site selection is completed, and timelines and attendance requirements are established. AAR information is gathered from OCs and applicable battalion personnel. The AAR is organized and rehearsed.

(3) After-action review conduct. AARs continue throughout the evaluation. They are conducted at logical break points in the exercise—at the end of each event or mission, at intervals directed by the senior OC, and when the evaluation ends. In a multilevel evaluation, an oral AAR of the action to date occurs at every level between the OC and the counterpart in the evaluated unit. After AAR participants assemble, the senior OC opens the AAR with a statement of purpose. The senior OC also establishes the AAR ground rules and procedures and restates the training and evaluation objectives. The following are some guidelines for a successful AAR.

(a) AARs are not critiques. They are professional discussions of training events designed to maximize training benefits by allowing Soldiers to learn from each other.

(b) The senior OC guides the discussion to ensure that participants openly discuss important lessons.

(c) Dialogue is encouraged among OCs and unit personnel. Discussion covers not only strengths and weaknesses but also the rationale behind the decisions and actions that resulted in the demonstrated strengths or weaknesses. There are always weaknesses to improve and strengths to sustain.

(d) All individuals who participated in the evaluation are present for the AAR, if possible. Every unit or element that participated in the exercise should be represented.

(e) Participants discuss not only what happened but also how it happened and how it could have been done better.

(f) Events that were not directly related to the major training objectives are not examined.

(g) Participants do not offer self-serving excuses for inappropriate actions.

(h) A unit succeeds or fails specifically because of its performance on a task. Summations by the OC should focus on the demonstrated proficiency of the unit in executing T&EOs.

(i) Sequentially, the discussion normally covers what was planned and what happened relative to the doctrine that applies to the action. This discussion will be followed by critiques from the OC and from the OPFOR view.

(j) Discussion should focus on training objectives as they relate to the battlefield operating systems.

(k) The result should be that Soldiers and leaders, through discovery learning, better understand their individual and collective strengths and weaknesses and become more proficient in training for and performing their combat critical tasks.

(4) Benefits of the after-action review. AARs are the dynamic link between task performance and execution to standard. They provide commanders a critical assessment tool to plan Soldier, leader, and unit training. The real benefits of AARs come from applying results in developing future training. Leaders can use the information to assess performance and to plan future training to correct deficiencies and sustain demonstrated task proficiency.

<b>ENVIRONMENTAL DATA SHEET</b> For use of this form, see the applicable ARTEP MTP; the proponent agency is TRADOC.		
1. EXERCISE NUMBER AND DESCRIPTION	2a. DATE EXERCISE STARTED (YYYYMMDD)	2b. TIME EXERCISE STARTED
	2c. DATE EXERCISE ENDED (YYYYMMDD)	2d. TIME EXERCISE ENDED
3. UNIT IDENTIFICATION	4. ARTEP MTP NUMBER	
5. WEATHER CONDITIONS (Check appropriate description) <input type="checkbox"/> CLEAR <input type="checkbox"/> PARTLY CLOUDY <input type="checkbox"/> CLOUDY <input type="checkbox"/> HAZY <input type="checkbox"/> RAINING <input type="checkbox"/> SNOWING <input type="checkbox"/> FOG  <input type="checkbox"/> OTHER (Describe) _____ TEMPERATURE: _____		
6. GROUND CONDITIONS (Check appropriate description) <input type="checkbox"/> DRY <input type="checkbox"/> WET <input type="checkbox"/> ICE <input type="checkbox"/> SNOW <input type="checkbox"/> OTHER (Describe) _____		
7. LIGHT CONDITIONS (Check appropriate description) <input type="checkbox"/> DAY <input type="checkbox"/> NIGHT		
8. MOON PHASE (Check appropriate description) <input type="checkbox"/> 1/4 <input type="checkbox"/> 1/2 <input type="checkbox"/> 3/4 <input type="checkbox"/> FULL <input type="checkbox"/> NONE  AVERAGE RANGE OF VISIBILITY DUE TO LIGHT: _____		
9. TERRAIN (Check appropriate description) <input type="checkbox"/> FLAT <input type="checkbox"/> ROLLING <input type="checkbox"/> MOUNTAINOUS <input type="checkbox"/> JUNGLE <input type="checkbox"/> DESERT <input type="checkbox"/> URBAN <input type="checkbox"/> ARCTIC  <input type="checkbox"/> OTHER (Describe) _____		
10. TOP SOIL (Check appropriate description) <input type="checkbox"/> SANDY <input type="checkbox"/> ROCKY <input type="checkbox"/> CLAY    AVERAGE RANGE OF VISIBILITY DUE TO TERRAIN: _____  <input type="checkbox"/> OTHER (Describe) _____		
11. REMARKS		

Figure 6-5. Example of DA Form 7503 (front)

<b>12. AIRCRAFT WEATHER BOARD</b>			
<b>a. CURRENT CONDITIONS - DESTINATION</b>			
(1) TIME POSTED	(2) WIND VELOCITY ( <i>Spec and Direction</i> )	(3) VISIBILITY ( <i>Feet</i> )	
(4) DENSITY ALTITUDE ( <i>Feet</i> )	(5) CEILING ( <i>Feet</i> )	(6) TEMPERATURE/DEW POINT _____ / _____	
(7) OTHER SIGNIFICANT WEATHER ACTIVITY ( <i>Runway visual range, fog, icing, etc.</i> )			
<b>b. CURRENT CONDITIONS - LOCAL AREA</b>			
(1) TIME POSTED		(2) TIME VALID	
<b>(3) WIND/TEMPERATURE</b>			
SURFACE _____ / _____	1,000 FEET _____ / _____	2,000 FEET _____ / _____	5,000 FEET _____ / _____
(4) HAIL <input type="checkbox"/> YES <input type="checkbox"/> NO _____			
(5) SNOW/SLEET <input type="checkbox"/> YES <input type="checkbox"/> NO _____			
(6) RAIN <input type="checkbox"/> YES <input type="checkbox"/> NO _____			
(7) TURBULENCE <input type="checkbox"/> SEVERE <input type="checkbox"/> MODERATE <input type="checkbox"/> LIGHT <input type="checkbox"/> NONE			
(8) ICING <input type="checkbox"/> RIME <input type="checkbox"/> CLEAR <input type="checkbox"/> MIXED			
(9) CLOUD COVERAGE			
<input type="checkbox"/> CLEAR <input type="checkbox"/> SCATTERED <input type="checkbox"/> BROKEN <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> OVERCAST <input type="checkbox"/> PARTIAL OBSCURATION <input type="checkbox"/> OBSCURATION			
(10) OTHER SIGNIFICANT WEATHER ACTIVITY ( <i>Runway visual range, fog, icing, etc.</i> )			
<b>13. TWENTY-FOUR HOUR LOOKOUT (<i>As of</i>)</b>			
<b>14. REMARKS</b>			

DA FORM 7503, APR 2003

Page 2 of 2  
USAPA V1.00

Figure 6-5. Example of DA Form 7503 (back)





<b>COMMAND AND CONTROL</b>					
<b>OBSERVABLE RESULTS:</b>	<b>BN</b>	<b>HHC</b>	<b>A CO</b>	<b>B CO</b>	<b>C CO</b>
Mission OPORD received at					
Warning order issued at					
OPORD and graphics disseminated (one-third–two-thirds rule)					
Reconnaissance conducted					
Precombat checks					
Rehearsal conducted					
Coordination with adjacent/rearward supporting elements					
Plan refined					
Fire plans made—direct and indirect					
Combat status— <b>number and</b> percentage of operationally ready aircraft/vehicles					
<b>KEY EVENTS:</b>					

**Figure 6-7. Suggested format for an after-action review collection chart: command and control system**

<b>CHEMICAL, BIOLOGICAL, RADIOLOGICAL, AND NUCLEAR (CBRN)</b>			
<b>OBSERVABLE RESULTS:</b>			
	<b>LOSSES</b>	<b>ELEMENT</b>	<b>REMARKS</b>
Friendly losses to chemical tasks			
	<b>LOSSES</b>	<b>ELEMENT</b>	<b>REMARKS</b>
Friendly losses persistent contamination (after assault)			
	<b>MINUTES</b>	<b>ELEMENT/TYPE</b>	<b>REMARKS</b>
Time after chemical strike mission continues			
<b>KEY EVENTS:</b>			

**Figure 6-8. Suggested format for an after-action review collection chart: chemical, biological, radiological, and nuclear**

<b>COMBAT SERVICE SUPPORT (CSS)</b>				
<b>OBSERVABLE RESULTS:</b>				
	<i>HHC</i>	<i>A CO</i>	<i>B CO</i>	<i>C CO</i>
Number/percentage of battalion vehicles/elements that ran out of class III or class V items				
Number/percentage of damaged vehicles recovered versus not recovered				
<b>KEY EVENTS:</b>				

**Figure 6-9. Suggested format for an after-action review collection chart: combat service support**

<b>COMBAT SERVICE SUPPORT (VEHICLE STATUS)</b>						
<i>TYPE OF VEHICLE</i>	<i>BUMPER/TAIL NUMBER</i>	<i>DAMAGED/ DESTROYED/ MAINTENANCE</i>	<i>LOCATION</i>	<i>DATE NON-AVAILABLE</i>	<i>REMARKS</i>	<i>TOTAL DAYS</i>
Combat Vehicles Listed						
Recovery Vehicles Listed						
Supply Vehicles Listed						
Command and Control Vehicles Listed						
<b>KEY EVENTS:</b>						

**Figure 6-10. Suggested format for an after-action review collection chart: combat service support—vehicle status**

<b>COMBAT SERVICE SUPPORT (REQUISITION STATUS SUPPLY ITEMS)</b>			
<b>UNIT PRIORITIES</b>	<b>02/03</b>	<b>05/06</b>	<b>12/13</b>
HHC			
A CO			
B CO			
C CO			
TOTAL			
<b>REMARKS:</b>			

**Figure 6-11. Suggested format for an after-action review collection chart: combat service support—requisition status supply items**

## Appendix A

# Combined Arms Training Strategy

### A-1. GENERAL

a. Combined arms training strategy (CATS) is an overarching training management strategy that uses proponent developed MTPs to support training to standard in the units. The two end states for unit (collective) CATS are the following:

(1) Provide a CATS, a training management strategy, for the units to enable them to train to standard and to achieve and maintain readiness.

(2) Provide Headquarters, Department of the Army (HQDA) with resource information that supports unit training and readiness.

b. Unit CATS is contractor developed and proponent approved strategy that permits units to plan effective task based training across the live-virtual-constructive domains within the various resource constraints of time, operating tempo (OPTEMPO); standards and training commission (STRAC); and TADSS. Unit CATS describes a sequence of training events that enable leaders to build and sustain proficiency in unit mission essential tasks. Unit CATS specifies gates (training events) that must be successfully executed before proceeding to more difficult, costly, or challenging training events. Strategies enumerate training resources needed to execute listed training events. These strategies will form the basis for unit training schedules, allow units to objectively evaluate their training readiness, and update the current battalion level training modes (BLTMs) in the training resource module (TRM), thereby establishing the linkage between training readiness reporting and training resourcing. Training strategies are based on current doctrine through the direct automation linkage (currently automated systems approach to training [ASAT]) to the MTPs.

c. Unit training strategies. The unit training portion of the CATS is a series of separately generated training strategies. CATS is designed to be descriptive, not prescriptive training strategies that will assist the commander in an effort to identify, quantify, and acquire required training resources. These strategies describe the events, frequencies, and prerequisite gates recommended training to standard. As part of the unit training strategy development process, TRADOC established a standard format to depict unit training strategies. The unit training strategy is a descriptive strategy for training and sustaining Soldier and collective task proficiency. The tasks to be trained are based on the unit's METL and commander's assessment.

**A-2. ACCESSING THE CATS MATRIXES.** The CATS matrixes are available for viewing and downloading on the AKO homepage ([www.us.army.mil](http://www.us.army.mil)). First-time users need to establish a user name and password to login.

**A-3. USING THE CATS MATRIXES.** Generally, the leader using the matrixes for planning will have a METL (or other list of critical tasks in which the unit must be proficient) and will be looking for guidance about appropriate training methods. The key to using CATS for unit training management is understanding the strategy and its various components. The strategy is organized by functional area and echelon to be trained. It has eight interactive components. Table A-1 is an example of a matrix for one mission and task.

a. Task: This is the CATS task selection for the element to train in support of the battlefield mission listed in table A-1.

b. Supporting tasks: This is a list of those MTP collective T&EOs that the element must attain and sustain proficiency in to support the CATS task selection and mission.

c. Frequency: This indicates the interval and number of times a year that this CATS task selection should be trained to attain and sustain T1 combat readiness.

- d. Types of events: This suggests a training event or events (from classroom training to an external evaluation FTX) that the unit can use to train the task.
- e. Training audience: This indicates the unit elements and/or individuals for which this CATS task selection is designed.
- f. Means (event) (TADSS): This entry further describes this training event by selecting from the types of events for which this CATS task selection is designed.
- g. Title: This is the title of the training event, as it might be depicted in a unit training schedule), for the CATS task selection.
- h. Estimated duration: This depicts the suggested duration of the training event in hours (in this case 96 hours).
- i. Replication of conditions (A through D): This entry shows a means quality rating, related to the cost and realism of the event/medium. When choosing events and media, you will have to balance the resource costs of different training media against the needs for realism and repetition. Generally, as your unit becomes more proficient, realism should increase.
  - j. An "A" level means is identified as a CTC deployment and training activity.
  - k. A "B" level means is described as a well assigned home station training exercise.
  - l. A "C" level means is described as a partial task training exercise.
  - m. A "D" level means is described as a subtask training exercise.
- n. Multiechelon training: This is the simultaneous conduct of different exercises by the unit or the training of different tasks by elements of the unit. Multiechelon training occurs whenever collective training is conducted (FM 7-0). Units should structure events to allow the integration of required task training and proficiency (through gate tasks) by each element of the audience and, to permit vertical linkage of unit training strategies.
  - o. Critical training gates: These gates facilitate efficient use of training time and other resources during scheduled events. They provide those tasks critical to effective and safe training.
  - p. Resources: This identifies to the training and resource manager the class III, V, and VII resources expended as a cost of the training event.
  - q. Comments: The purpose of this section of CATS is to provide descriptive guidance on the purpose of the task selection, the expected outcome of the training event, and execution guidance.
  - r. Purpose statement: A description of the rationale for including the event in the overall training strategy for the task. It also provides the basis for describing the event's training objectives.
  - s. Outcome statement: A description of the event in terms of proficiencies that the unit should achieve by training in the event. The outcome is described by the end state proficiency in tasks trained.
  - t. Execution guidance: A description of information and coordinating instructions related to training the task (task selection) in the event.

**Table A-1. Example of a CATS task matrix**

<i>MOVE</i>	
Task: Conduct Tactical Movement (34-TS-2004 )	
Supported Mission(s): AIR ASSAULT, CONDUCT AIR ASSAULT	
Supporting Task(s):	Generic mission
07-3-C211.34-0001	Move tactically
07-3-C227.34-0001	Perform a tactical road march
07-3-C228.34-0001	Occupy assembly area
07-3-C229.34-0001	Perform passage of lines
55-2-C324.34-0001	Conduct a convoy
Frequency: QUARTERLY	
Types of Events: FTX, LTX, TEWT	
Training Audience: COMPANY HEADQUARTERS, 2 AVN SPT PLTS	
Means (Event) (TADSS): 2 - Company FTX (Air Ground Engagement System II (when available)/Unit Miles Set)	
Title: FTX for Conduct Tactical Operations – Assault Helicopter Company	
Estimated Duration: 96 Hours	
Training Audience: COMPANY HEADQUARTERS, 2 AVN SPT PLTS	
Means (Event) (TADSS): 2 - Company FTX (Air Ground Engagement System II (when available)/Unit Miles Set)	
Title: FTX for Conduct Tactical Operations – Assault Helicopter Company	
Estimated Duration: 96 Hours	
Training Audience: COMPANY HEADQUARTERS, 2 AVN SPT PLTS	
Means (Event) (TADSS): 2 - Company FTX (Air Ground Engagement System II (when available)/Unit Miles Set)	
Title: FTX for Conduct Tactical Operations – Assault Helicopter Company	
Estimated Duration: 96 Hours	
EXECUTION GUIDANCE: This is the capstone training event for the company. The company FTX is part of the battalion FTX. The FTX is a 4-day (96 hours) event designed to train the company to execute its combat functions in a realistic tactical environment using all available combined arms assets. The FTX will use realistic time-distance factors to stress all systems. The duration proposed for conducting maneuver operations provides 72 hours for planning, preparation, execution, and AAR, allowing for repeat training as required. The overall duration of this FTX could be shortened if training objectives do not include training of all tactical operations. Two 4-day FTXs a year are suggested. Additional training can be conducted during the battalion's semiannual gunnery training related CPX, if necessary. The FTX should be able to train and sustain company proficiency in combat operations while under battalion control. This is a "run" level training event supported by an appropriate number of OCs and squad size OPFOR (to initiate protect the force counter-tasks) and a divisional air defense artillery section acting as OPFOR anti-air. Training is greatly enhanced for both aircraft types if it is conducted during the field training of habitually supported units.	

**A-4. AVIATION COMBINED ARMS TRAINING STRATEGY.** Aviation CATS includes a crosswalk of individual, crew, and collective METL tasks that require flying hours and provides a basis for preparing a unit's flying-hour program. Aviation training principles involve developing and maintaining currency and proficiency at the individual, crew, and collective levels, require unique considerations. Effective individual and crew training programs form the foundation for an aviation battle-focused training program. These programs produce combat-ready crews and are the basis for the unit's collective training program.

a. The aviation CATS includes a crosswalk among individual, crew, and collective tasks that require flying hours to determine the OPTEMPO for training and sustaining individual, crew, and collective proficiency.

b. The aviation CATS reflects multiechelon training to optimize training opportunities at all levels. Thus, individual and crew sustainment training must be an integral part of a unit's ongoing collective training. Approximately 75 percent of individual and crew aviator sustainment training can be done while performing collective tasks. Not all individual and crew training can be done; however, while units are

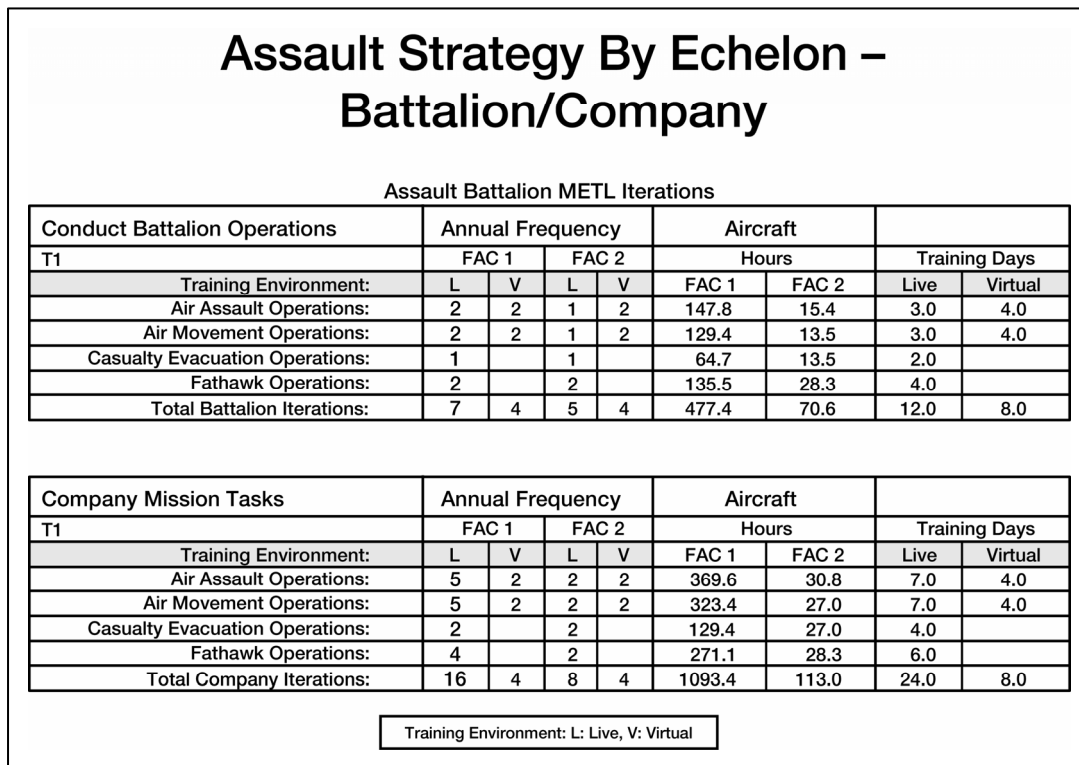
engaged in training a collective task. Some training resources must be allocated to individual and crew training as outlined in the appropriate ATMs. The aviation CATS is cross walked with the BLTM to ensure adequate OPTEMPO resourcing. Aviation CATS is also cross walked with the readiness requirements in AR 220-1.

c. The aviation CATS is crosswalked with available simulators and simulations to provide guidance on tasks that can be accomplished in these devices. Commanders should develop structured simulation training exercises.

d. A commander and the staff use aviation CATS (figure A-1) to prepare an aircrew training strategy. Assumptions include—

- (1) The unit is at 100 percent of assigned strength.
- (2) The unit has a 33 percent turnover rate.
- (3) There are requirements to train four brigade staff aviators and four aviation support company (ASC) aviators.
- (4) Aviation combined arms tactical trainer simulator and flight simulators are available (if not, an equivalent live OPTEMPO is required).
- (5) There are no forward air controller (FAC) 3 aviators.
- (6) Based on a records check, 33 percent of newly assigned aviators are progressed to RL1(P).

The applicable aircraft aircrew training manual (ATM) contains specific aviation CATS guidance. Aviation CATS has been represented in this appendix so that commanders can plan and develop a comprehensive and resourced flying-hour program.



**Figure A-1. Assault helicopter battalion/company METL/battle task iterations**



## Appendix B

## Exercise Operation Orders

**B-1. GENERAL.** Exercise scenarios present a general situation. This situation provides those taking part with the background information normally available in a combat situation. Exercise OPORDs issued from a higher headquarters are the primary instruments used to give sufficient detail and guidance. From this guidance, the training unit can prepare OPORDs, annexes, and overlays. Exercise OPORDs also ensure the training unit takes actions that lead to achieving the training objectives of the exercise. Exercise OPORDs may be identical to standard OPORD formats (See FM 5-0). These OPORDs may use peculiarities that make modularity, retraining, administrative conditions, flexibility, and re-usability easier. (For example, the dates used in the exercise OPORD may be in terms of training days rather than actual dates. This especially applies for exercises that use simulations since battlefield conditions can be manipulated easily to allow a unit to repeat a particular day's training with little resource impact.) Figure B-1 is a sample of an aviation brigade exercise OPORD that makes use of this feature. It portrays the general scenario; the missions of higher and adjacent units (live, virtual, or constructive) and the training the battalion/squadron will conduct.

UNCLASSIFIED	
	Copy ___ of ___ Copies Aviation Brigade, 25 <sup>th</sup> ID (L) WAAF, HI 161600OCT04
<b>OPORD 0410-01 (WARFIGHTER 04-04)</b>	
REFERENCES: 25 <sup>th</sup> INFANTRY DIVISION OPERATIONS ORDER 08-04 (LIGHTNING STRIKE) I (U.S.) CORPS OPORD 04-02 (CASCADE STRIKE)	
TIME ZONE USED THROUGHOUT THE ORDER: WHISKEY (LOCAL)	
TASK ORGANIZATION: See ANNEX A	
1. SITUATION.	
a. Enemy forces. See ANNEX B (INTELLIGENCE).	
b. Friendly forces:	
(1) Corps	
(a) Mission. On order I (U.S.) CORPS attacks to destroy OSC 1 offensive military capabilities, in order to protect the eastern flank of 26 MND, and on order continues the attack to complete the destruction of OSC 3 offensive military capabilities in order to restore the international border.	

**Figure B-1. Suggested format for an exercise operations order**

## (b) Intent.

- Purpose. Restore the international border between Atropia and Ariana. The decisive operation is the attack to defeat OSC 1 forces. We will accomplish this by destroying enemy's offensive military capability, namely armored, mechanized, combat aviation and offensive support assets in area of operations (AO). The tempo of the attack must be rapid enough to penetrate and defeat the light infantry in the enemy's defenses while preventing the enemy's ability to conduct coherent operations by uncommitted armored and mechanized forces, at the same time we must do everything we can to protect and secure Atropian oil infrastructure as we regain control of it from the enemy. Having defeated OSC 1 we will then continue the attack to defeat OSC 3 by destroying the enemy's offensive military capability. I anticipate a 5 to 7 day attack with a 1 to 3 day transition to defense in order to secure the international border. Rapid penetration of the enemy defense on two axes and the preservation of our lines of communications (LOCs) as they are extended will be critical to this operation. We must also be prepared to support 4 (CF) CORPS operations to linkup with 6 (CF) DIV in BAKU.
- Endstate. I (U.S.) CORPS will have: (1) defeated OSC 1 forces in AO; (2) defeated OSC 3 forces in AO; (3) regained control of principle oil fields and production facilities in AO; (4) restored the international border; (5) forces positioned along the international border deterring further Arianan offensive action; and (6) forces prepared to pursue enemy forces in Ariana, or transition to phase V (Transition and Redeployment) of CJTF-CS OPLAN (PRINCIPLE CHALLENGE) 4999-XX.

(2) 25<sup>th</sup> ID (L).

(a) Mission. On order, 25ID (L) attacks in AO to destroy the 303 SMIB on OBJ SIOUX in order to protect the southern flank of 40 ID (M). On order, Defend along PL WILLOW and LINE B to defeat Arianan aggression in order to facilitate restoration of the international border.

(b) 25<sup>th</sup> ID (L) CDR's intent.

- Purpose. The purpose of the operation is to facilitate 40ID (M)'s destruction of Arianan offensive capability. The decisive operation is the destruction of armored and mechanized forces vicinity OBJ SIOUX.
- Key tasks.
- All units will conduct aggressive counter-reconnaissance that results in destruction of enemy fire support observers. Units will never cease their efforts to find and kill SPF and commando elements operating in and around our tactical assembly areas (TAAs), along our LOCs, and in the vicinity of our critical assets.
  - We will maintain continuous shaping operations targeting the 303 SMIB, IFC, IADS, and engineers. There will be no respite for the 303 SMIB. Our division-level operations will also include shaping the brigades' fight with the 121TMB and the 111 MIB to allow our main effort to defeat the 303 SMIB.
  - Penetration and collapse of the disruption zone will be accomplished through a recon pull by the division cavalry squadron with the maneuver brigades. I see this fight as approximately 2 to 3 days of integrated recon-fires-maneuver battles that establish an axis for the 29eSB attack.
  - The destruction of the armor and mechanized forces is our stated task and will be the centerpiece of our shaping operations. We will establish the optimal conditions for the 116SAB attack to destroy these forces.
  - Destruction of other armored/mechanized threats that enter the AO, potentially the 302 SMIB from the south, will cause us to focus combat power in a different direction. We will maintain our options to address flank threats and monitor the 302 SMIB movements.

**Figure B-1. Suggested format for an exercise operations order (continued)**

- The transition to defense along the Corps southern boundary and LINE B will be executed quickly to defeat further Arianan aggression. We will resupply and reorganize as required to be prepared to continue the offense if necessary.
- End state. This operation ends with OSC 1 forces defeated and 25ID(L) defending along Corps southern boundary and LINE B prepared to defeat further Arianan aggression.

(c) Attachments/Detachments: See ANNEX A

### 3. EXECUTION.

#### a. Commander's intent.

(1) Purpose. Aviation (AVN) brigade (Bde) must support and contribute to the division's efforts to destroy armored and mechanized forces IOT secure the flank of 40<sup>th</sup> ID and facilitate restoration of the international border.

#### (2) Key tasks.

- Conduct aggressive counter-reconnaissance to destroy enemy SPF and fire support officers (FSOs).
- Deny the enemy access to logistics convoys by conducting aerial resupply.
- Support division shaping and decisive operations through close combat attacks, air assaults, and deliberate attacks.
- Posture brigade forces to augment or assume division cavalry squadron mission.
- Maintain robust and redundant command and control (C2) networks to increase flexibility.

(3) Endstate. Arianan forces are defeated and brigade postured to support 25 ID (L) to defeat further Arianan aggression.

b. Concept of the operation. This operation will be conducted in three phases according to 25<sup>th</sup> ID (L) OPOD 01-04 (Lighting Strike).

#### (1) Scheme of maneuver.

(a) Phase I (Defend in attack POS TIGER) G-5 to G-Day: This phase begins with 3-4 Cavalry conducting FPOL with 278 ACR. From G-5 to G-1 aviation brigade equipment and personnel are in transit from SPOD to TAA WINGS. At G-5, 2-25 Aviation ADVON receives OPCON one (1) x Corps medium lift company (14 x CH-47) and one (1) x Corps assault helicopter company (10 x UH-60L) to assist with aerial movements/resupply and air assaults prior to receiving organic aircraft. NET 201400LOCT03 2-25 Aviation inserts three (3) x LRS teams IOT support destruction of enemy in AO. Once operational, O/O, 1-25 Aviation conducts zone reconnaissance and hasty attacks in division rear area to destroy enemy recon and SPF IOT allow division to preserve combat power. 68<sup>th</sup> MED, C/25 Aviation, G/58 AVIATION, HHC, and TOC will establish operations in TAA WINGS IOT support aviation brigade missions. This phase ends with the Div in ATTACK POS TIGER and AVN BDE in TAA WINGS, postured for further operations.

(b) Phase IIA (Shaping operations) G-Day to G+4: Begins with 2 BCT attacking to defeat the 121TMB vicinity OBJ COLLIER IOT facilitate 29eSB attack. During this phase, O/O 1-25 Aviation conducts close combat attacks (CCAs) to destroy enemy IOT support 2 BCT attack on 121 TMB and 29eSB attack on the 111 BTG. Also, 1-25 Aviation continues zone reconnaissance in division rear area to destroy enemy recon and SPF IOT allow division to preserve combat power. O/O 2-25 Aviation conducts aerial resupply and air movements IOT support division attack on Arianan forces. 68<sup>th</sup> MED, C/25 Aviation, G/58 Aviation, and HHC continue to support the aviation brigade and 25 ID (L) from TAA WINGS. Brigade TOC conducts C2 operations from TAA WINGS IOT allow the brigade to conduct operations throughout AO. At the end of this phase lead elements of the division are arrayed along PL OAK, prepared to commence the decisive operation.

**Figure B-1. Suggested format for an exercise operations order (continued)**

(c) Phase IIB (Decisive operations) G+4 to G+6: Begins when 29eSB attacks to fix the 301TMB. During this phase, O/O 1-25 Aviation conducts CCAs to destroy enemy IOT support 116 SAB attack on enemy positions. Also, 1-25 Aviation continues zone reconnaissance in division rear area to destroy enemy recon and SPF IOT allow division to preserve combat power. O/O 2-25 Aviation conducts aerial resupply and air movements IOT support division attack on Arianan forces. Also, O/O 2-25 Aviation and 1-25 Aviation conduct air assault and attacks on ARAZ River crossing vicinity QK547030 IOT support 116 SAB as it seizes the bridge. 68th MED, C/25 AVN, G/58 AVN, and HHC continue to support the aviation brigade and 25 ID (L) from TAA WINGS. Brigade TOC conducts C2 operations from TAA WINGS IOT allow the brigade to conduct operations throughout AO. O/O aviation brigade and subordinates will jump assembly area and establish a new TAA WINGS further south (location TBD). This phase ends with the destruction of the 303 SMIB and seizure of the crossing sites over the ARAZ River.

(d) Phase III (Defend in AO) G+6 to G+9: This phase begins when the 303 SMIB is destroyed. During this phase, O/O 1-25 Aviation conducts CCAs to destroy enemy IOT support division defense along southern boundary. Also, 1-25 Aviation continues zone reconnaissance in division rear area to destroy enemy recon and SPF IOT allow division to preserve combat power. O/O 2-25 AVN conducts aerial resupply and air movements IOT support division defense. Also, O/O 2-25 Aviation conducts air assaults vicinity Belayquan IOT secure oil fields. 68th MED, C/25 Aviation, G/58 Aviation, and HHC continue to support the aviation brigade and 25 ID (L) from TAA WINGS. Brigade TOC conducts C2 operations from TAA WINGS IOT allow the brigade to conduct operations throughout AO. This phase ends when the 116 SAB defends along line B and the Corps southern boundary.

(2) Fires. See ANNEX D (FIRE SUPPORT) to AVN Bde OPORD 04-10-01 (WARFIGHTER).

(a) Phase I. (Defend in attack position tiger). The purpose of fires during this phase is the destruction of enemy air defense artillery (ADA) systems to allow AVN Bde to conduct unrestricted movement throughout area of operations. Division assets will provide general support (GS) fires in support of targets of opportunity, air assaults and convoy movements.

(b) Phase II A & B (Shaping operations & decisive operation). The purpose of fires during this phase is the destruction of enemy high value targets to the continued freedom of movement throughout area of operations.

(c) Phase III (Defend along line B). The purpose of fires during this phase is to destroy the remnant forces of the OSC 3.

c. Tasks to maneuver units.

(1) 1-25 Aviation.

(a) NLT 180001OCT04 OPCON 1 x attack helicopter platoon to tactical combat force (TCF) through completion of phase III.

(b) NLT 180001OCT04 OPCON 1 x attack helicopter platoon to reserve through completion of phase III.

(c) NLT 180001OCT04 OPCON 1 x attack helicopter company to 3 to 4 cavalry through completion of phase II B.

(d) O/O, conduct zone recon and hasty attacks in division (Div) rear area to destroy enemy recon and SPF IOT allow division to preserve combat power.

**Figure B-1. Suggested format for an operation order (continued)**

(e) O/O, conduct CCAs IOT support Div main effort during each phase (2 BCT, O/O 29eSB, O/O 116SAB).

(f) O/O, conduct CCAs on ARAZ River crossings vicinity QK547030 IOT support 116SAB in seizing bridge.

(g) O/O, conduct CCA vicinity OBJ SIOUX IOT facilitate 116SAB attack on 303 SMIB.

(h) BPT assume 3 to 4 CAV mission to conduct zone recon from PL MAPLE to PL BOYLE IOT facilitate the coordinated penetration of 2 BCT & 3 BCT(j) BPT conduct CCAs vicinity TERTER river crossing to facilitate 2 BCT and 3 BCT attack.

(i) BPT conducts zone reconnaissance from PL MAPLE to PL BOYLE along AXIS THRUST and AXIS JAB to locate and identify complex obstacles and identify routes through the disruption zone.

(j) BPT assume 3 to 4 CAV mission to conduct zone recon from PL OAK to PL WILLOW along AXIS KILL IOT support 116 SAB attack on 303 SMIB (m) BPT assume 3 to 4 CAV mission to ID disposition of 121TMB and 122TMB IOT support 2 BCT and 3 BCT attack.

(k) BPT screen CORPS southern boundary to provide early warning of attack by 302 SMIB.

(l) BPT assumes 3 to 4 CAV mission to screen Div southern boundary IOT provide early warning of 302 SMIB.

(m) BPT screen along LINE B.

(2) 2 to 25 Aviation.

(a) NLT 201400LOCT04 insert three long-range surveillance detachment (LRSD) teams IOT support destruction of enemy recon in AO.

(b) O/O, conduct aerial resupply IOT support division attacks.

(c) O/O conduct air assaults vicinity Belayquan IOT allow division secure oil fields.

(d) O/O, conduct air assault on ARAZ River crossing vicinity QK547030 IOT support 116SAB in seizing bridge.

(e) O/O conduct air assaults vicinity Belayquan IOT secure oil fields.

(f) O/O conducts aerial resupply to support Div operations.

(g) BPT emplace air volcano vicinity bridges on ARAZ River to block movement of the 305TB.

(h) BPT air assault TCF forces to destroy enemy recon and SPF in Div rear area IOT allow division to preserve combat power.

(i) BPT emplaces Air Volcano vice OBJ HALL to support 3 BCTs isolation of 122TMB.

(j) BPT conducts air assault on bridges and/or crossing sites across Terter River to facilitate 2 BCT and 3 BCT attack.

(k) BPT emplace 2 557m x 320m, 48 hr duration, air volcano minefields (minefield 1 - SP: PK 628 659 - EP: PK 629 650, minefield 2 - SP: PK 622 676 - EP: PK 623 672) IOT disrupt 122 movement/attack from the west toward 2-5 IN.

**Figure B-1. Suggested format for an operation order (continued)**

d. Tasks to combat support units.

(1) HHC AVN Bde.

(a) NLT 180500OCT04, attaches III/V teams to TF 3-4 CAV for the duration of the operation to facilitate aviation brigade operations.

(b) NLT 18 OCT 04 establishes TOC operations in TAA WINGS IOT C2 brigade operations.

(c) BPT establishes jump FARPs throughout the AO IOT support 1 to 25 aviation attacks and 2 to 25 aviation air assaults.

(2) C/25 Aviation.

(a) NLT 180500OCT04, attaches maintenance team TF 3-4 CAV to facilitate aviation operations within AO.

(b) NLT 18 OCT 04 establishes TOC operations in TAA WINGS to support aviation brigade operations.

(c) Conduct ASC maintenance from TAA WINGS to support AVN Bde operations for the duration of the operation.

(d) Battle position team (BPT) provides ASC maintenance team to 1-25 Aviation IOT support attack/reconnaissance operations.

(3) G/58 AVN.

(a) Conduct tower operation vicinity TAA WINGS NLT 18 OCT 04 to provide safe, orderly, expeditious airflow around airfield.

(b) Attach TTCS team to TF 3-4 CAV NLT 180500OCT04 to provide air traffic services during tactical operations.

(c) Establish operations vicinity TAA WINGS NLT 180500OCT04 to support AVN Bde operations.

(d) Provide en route air traffic service support from TAA WARRIOR IOT support AVN Bde operations in rear area.

(e) BPT attaches TTCS team to 1-25 aviation IOT support attack/reconnaissance operations.

(4) 68<sup>th</sup> MED CO.

(a) NET 180500OCT04, establish operations vicinity TAA WINGS IOT support Bde operations.

(b) Provide MEDEVAC support from TAA WINGS to support AVN Bde and 25th ID (L) operations.

**Figure B-1. Suggested format for an exercise operations order (continued)**

## e. Coordinating instructions:

## (1) CCIR.

## (a) PIR.

- Where are enemy ADA assets? (DP: commit A/C to alternate routes; HVT: SA Systems).
- Where are enemy surface-to-air missile (SAM) radars positioned? (DP: commit A/C to alternate routes,
- HVT: Tube arm and fire dome.
- Where are the IFC and FC nodes? (DP: execution of shaping operations; HVT: C2 Centers).
- When will the 311<sup>th</sup> CAR employ their attack aviation assets? (DP: commit A/C to alt routes; HVT: AH1W, HOKUM).
- When and where will SPF and Commandos attack TAA WINGS? (DP: jump AA and commit TCF; HVT: SPF C2 and Commando CPs).
- Where are the 301 and 303 long-range artillery systems? (DP: launch deep attack; HVT: 9A52s, 155mm, 9P140s).

## (b) FFIR.

- Combat loss of aircraft/personnel.
- Loss of FARP.
- Nonmission capable (NMC) to below 80 percent FMC, OH-58D, UH-60, and CH-47.
- Aviation related fratricide incident.

## (2) This OPORD effective upon receipt.

(3) All elements will conduct detailed risk management prior to the operation. Commanders will provide risk management briefbacks to BDE CDR time TBD. Commanders will submit risk management plans to CW5 Struck, AVN Bde safety officer prior to 201600 OCT 04.

## (4) ROE according to ANNEX E.

## (5) Units conduct tactical planning and movement planning simultaneously.

(6) Units will update family readiness group (FRG) products/functions to ensure families are self-sufficient during deployment. Units will insure that the Bde S1 has updated FRG alert roster prior to deployment.

(7) All subordinate units will deploy with no less than 14 DOS of all classes of supply except I, III (B), and V.

## (8) Point of Contact for BDE S3 coordination is CPT John Doe @ 555-1212.

## (9) Point of Contact for BDE S4 coordination is CPT John Doe / MAJ Jane Doe @ 555-1212.

## (10) Point of Contact for BDE S6 coordination is CPT John Doe @ 555-1212.

## (11) TIMELINE:

- |             |   |
|-------------|---|
| • 161600OCT | WFX OPORD Brief in Wheeler Chapel Annex |
| • 191000OCT | WFX MiniEX start                        |
| • 201400OCT | WFX MiniEX end                          |
| • 211800OCT | WFX 04-02 START (G-Day)                 |

**Figure B-1. Suggested format for an exercise operations order (continued)**

4. SERVICE AND SUPPORT

a. Concept of support. 593<sup>rd</sup> CSG, located in the Corps rear area, will provide reinforcing DS support to the 25<sup>th</sup> ID (L). 45<sup>th</sup> CSG (F) will provide GS and DS support to the 25<sup>th</sup> ID (L). 2MED BDE will provide CHS support to the 25<sup>th</sup> ID (L) by providing two combat support hospitals (CSH). DISCOM 25<sup>th</sup> ID (L) will provide DS to divisional units. 725 MSB provides DS from the DSA located ATK POS TIGER.

b. Aviation brigade receives all DS support via supply point distribution fro 725 MSB in the DSA less class III(B), class IV in CCLs, and class V for aircraft. C/725 MSB provides DS combat service support and combat health support from the DSA. Corps throughput will be maximized to AA wings for class III(B), class IV in CCLs, and class V for AVN. The COSCOM will position limited stocks of class III and V in caches in the Bde area of operations to support unit basic load (UBL) replenishment. Host nation support will not be employed forward of the brigade rear boundaries.

c. Supported units inform the DISCOM of impending displacements as soon as possible.

d. The risks to MSRs and logistical centers from SPF and direct action commandos are high. The risk will be mitigated where practicable by hardening logistical centers, providing convoy protection and escort, and by implementing an aggressive counter recon plan.

e. Supply and services. See ANNEX I (SERVICE SUPPORT).

5. COMMAND AND SIGNAL.

a. Command.

(1) The Bde TOC will be located vicinity TAA WINGS.

(2) Succession of command: Aviation brigade commander, 2 to 25 aviation commander, 1 to 25 aviation commander, aviation brigade XO.

b. Signal. See ANNEX H (SIGNAL).

ACKNOWLEDGE:

J. DOE  
COL

OFFICIAL:

J. DOE  
S3

ANNEXES:

ANNEX A (TASK ORGANIZATION).

ANNEX B (INTELLIGENCE).

APPENDIX 1 (INTELLIGENCE ESTIMATES).

TAB A (TERRAIN ANALYSIS).

TAB B (ORDER OF BATTLE).

TAB C (SITTEMP).

TAB D (COMMITTED FORCES).

ANNEX C (OPERATIONS).

APPENDIX 1 (OPERATIONS OVERLAY [MCS-L]).

APPENDIX 2 (BDE BATTLE RHYTHM).

Figure B-1. Suggested format for an exercise operations order (continued)



ANNEX D (FIRE SUPPORT).

ANNEX E (ROE).

    APPENDIX 1 (ROE MATRIX)

    APPENDIX 2 (ROE CARD)

ANNEX F (AIR DEFENSE)

ANNEX G (SIGNAL)

ANNEX H (SERVICE SUPPORT).

    APPENDIX 1 TBP.

    APPENDIX 2 TBP.

    APPENDIX 3 (TRAFFIC CIRCULATION AND CONTROL).

        TAB A (TRAFFIC CONTROL PLAN).

            ENCLOSURE 1 (MOVEMENT CLEARANCE REQUEST).

            ENCLOSURE 2 (TRANSPORTATION SPOT REPORT).

        TAB B (MOVEMENT ROUTES OVERLAY).

    APPENDIX 4 (LEGAL).

    APPENDIX 5 TBP.

    APPENDIX 6 (RELIGIOUS SUPPORT).

    APPENDIX 7 (FOREIGN AND HOST NATION SUPPORT).

    APPENDIX 9 (CL V CONTROLLED SUPPLY RATE).

ANNEX I {CHEMICAL, BIOLOGICAL, RADIOLOGICAL, AND NUCLEAR (CBRN)}.

    APPENDIX 1 (DECON SITES).

ANNEX J (A2C2)

    APPENDIX 1 (A2C2)

DISTRIBUTION:

    CDR, AVN Bde

    CDR, 1-25 AVN

    S3, 1-25 AVN

    CDR, 2-25 AVN

    S3, 2-25 AVN

    CDR, 3-4 CAV

    S-3, 3-4 CAV

    CDR, C/25 AVN

    CDR, 68<sup>TH</sup> MED

    CDR, G/58 AVN

    CDR, HHC AVN Bde

**Figure B-1. Suggested format for an exercise operations order (continued)**

**B-2. TAILORING ORDERS.** Subsequent higher headquarters' OPORDs/FRAGOs are developed that portray various factors that affect the difficulty of the missions. These orders give commander/exercise director options to tailor the exercise to the unit's level of proficiency. The commander/exercise director uses the *crawl/walk/run* training philosophy. For example, as portrayed in the upper half of figure B-2, based on the assessment of the unit, the commander/exercise director used the crawl version of the mission 1 FRAGO. Based on the unit's performance, this was followed by the walk version of the Mission 2 FRAGO and then the run version of the mission 3 FRAGO. In the lower half of figure B-2, the commander/exercise director also began with the crawl version of the mission 1 FRAGO. However, based on the unit's performance and the commander/exercise director's judgment, the unit repeated mission 1; but, this time the walk version of the mission 1 FRAGO was issued. These are just two of the many options/combinations that are possible.

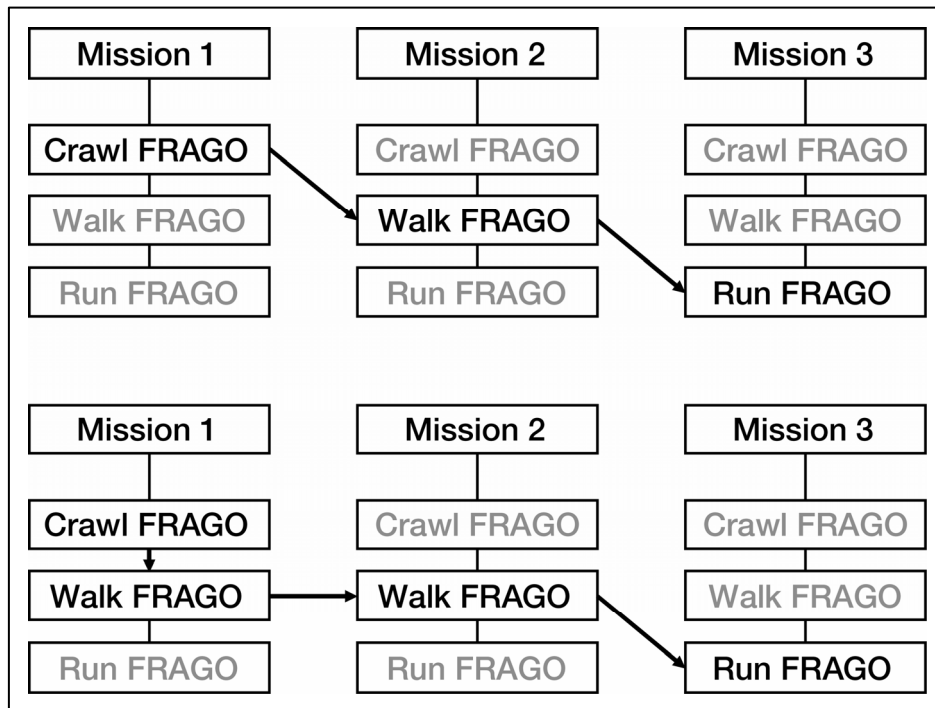


Figure B-2. Tailoring orders

---

## Appendix C

# Risk Management

**C-1. INTRODUCTION.** Risk management is the process that assists decision makers in reducing the risk or eliminating the hazard (by systematically identifying, assessing, and controlling risk arising from operational factors) and making informed decisions that weigh risks against mission benefits. Risk is an expression of a possible loss or negative mission impact stated in terms of probability and severity. The risk management process provides leaders and individuals a method to assist in identifying the optimum course of action (COA). Risk management must be fully integrated into planning, preparation, and execution both in training and operations. Anyone who directs or affects the actions of others will use the risk management process during the planning, preparation for, and execution of all operations for which they are responsible. Risk management facilitates the mitigation of the risks of threats to the force. The fundamental goal of risk management is to enhance operational capabilities and mission accomplishment while protecting the force. This appendix provides a summary of how to-do-it information based on guidance found on FM 100-14. For additional information on risk management procedures, please visit the combat readiness center at <https://crc.army.mil/home>.

---

**Note.** Key risk management terms are defined at the end of this appendix.

---

## C-2. APPLICATION

a. When assessing the risk of hazards in operations, the commander and staff evaluates both tactical risk and accidental risk.

(1) Tactical risk is risk associated with hazards that exist due to the presence of the enemy or an adversary. It applies to all levels of war and across the spectrum of operations. The commander alone determines how and where tactical risks are taken.

(2) Accident risk includes all operational risk considerations other than tactical risk. It includes risks to the friendly force. It also includes risks posed to civilians by an operation, as well as an operations impact on the environment. It can include activities associated with hazards involving friendly personnel, civilians, equipment readiness, and environmental conditions. Accident risks exist regardless of enemy action. Hazards that contribute to accident risks include; personnel that are not adequately trained to conduct certain kinds of operations, equipment that is not fully operational and environmental conditions that make operations more dangerous, such as limited visibility and extreme cold weather. Both the commander and the staff manage accident risk. Staff members are constantly looking for accident hazards associated with their areas of expertise, and recommend controls to reduce risk.

b. The same risk management process is used to assess and evaluate both tactical and accident risks. Risk management is a systematic process—it identifies and assesses the hazard, develops controls to reduce the risk, it decides if the benefits from the operation justifies the risk and then implements controls and supervise/evaluate the effectiveness of the controls.

c. If the commander determines the risk level is too high, the commander directs the development of additional controls or alternate controls, or the commander modifies, changes, or rejects the COA. The commander may also need to elevate the decision to a higher level of authority. Leaders should use the risk assessment matrix found in this appendix. This is a matrix of risk management steps as they relate to each step of the MDMP. The risk management matrix in conjunction with the commanders' guidance is used to communicate how much risk commanders are willing to allow subordinate leaders to accept. Risk management is applied to reduce the risk of the full range of mission, enemy, terrain and weather, troops and support available, time available, and civil considerations (METT-TC) hazards, including enemy action. Figure C-1 illustrates how risk management is integrated into the MDMP.

*Military Decision-Making Process	Identify Hazards	Assess Hazards	Develop Controls and Make Risk Decision	Implement Controls	Supervise and Evaluate
1. Receipt of Mission	X				
2. Mission Analysis	X	X			
3. COA Development	X	X	X		
4. COA Analysis (War Game)	X	X	X		
5. COA Comparison					
6. COA Approval			X		
7. Orders Production				X	
8. Rehearsal	X	X	X	X	X
9. Execution and Assessment	X	X	X	X	X

\* FM 5-0 (FM 101-5)

**Figure C-1. Risk management integrated into the military decisionmaking process**

**C-3. RESPONSIBILITIES.** The commander has the responsibility of weighing mission requirements and force protection measures, and must compare and balance the risk against mission expectations. This process forms a direct relationship between force protection and risk management. In the force protection process, we consider three elements: planning, operations, and sustainment. Risk management facilitates the force protection process by integrating risk assessment and control development in each element.

a. General responsibilities at battalion/squadron and higher. Successful risk management is underwritten by the chain of command. Minimizing risk is the responsibility of everyone in the chain of command, from the highest commander, through the subordinate leaders, to each individual service member. Every staff officer must integrate risk management into planning and executing training and operational missions. Staff officers assist the commander in minimizing unnecessary risk by increasing certainty in all operations. Managing risk is critical for all operations, whether for training or operations. Commanders should issue clear risk guidance. Staff officers use the risk management process to assess operational areas of responsibility. They also use it to make control measure recommendations to reduce or eliminate risk to support the combat power dynamic of force protection. Examples of this process include the following—

- (1) Applying risk management during the MDMP to identify force-protection shortcomings in warfighting functions.
- (2) Developing and implementing controls for the commanders that support the mission by avoiding unnecessary risk and loss of combat power.
- (3) Providing support to operational requirements and establishing procedures and standards that are clear and practical for each specified and implied task.

b. Specific responsibilities at battalion/squadron and higher.

---

**Note.** There must be a hierarchy for residual risk approval authority. Overall, approval authority guidance must support the major Army command (MACOM) policy. Basically the higher the risk involved, the higher the approval authority.

---

- (1) Commander (overall). The commander—
  - Issues clear risk guidance; what risk to accept or where to accept risk.
  - Selects hazard-control options.

- Makes risk decision for COA; demonstrates full confidence in subordinates' ability, both tactically and technically, to execute a chosen COA.
  - Enforces and evaluates the unit's execution of risk controls during the mission.
  - Provides training on the risk management process; ensures that subordinates understand the who, what, where, when, and why of managing risk.
  - Supervises and evaluates the unit's execution of risk controls during the mission.
  - Assesses the effectiveness of the unit's risk management program.
- (2) Executive officer (staff supervision). The XO—
- Supervises risk management integration across the entire staff.
  - Coordinates development of risk controls with emphasis on deconflicting controls that affect multiple functional areas and units.
  - Identifies both constraints and limitations of the commander's risk guidance.
  - Implements risk controls by coordinating and integrating them into the appropriate paragraphs and graphics of the OPORD and into products such as SOPs and OPLANs.
  - Supervises, evaluates, and assesses risk management integration during an operation.
  - Implements commander's intent on acceptance of risk in current operations.
  - Ensures that the staff monitors and enforces controls during execution.
- (3) Staff officers (functional area). Staff officers—
- Identify hazards most likely to result in loss of combat power if not adequately controlled.
  - Mitigate risk hazards by developing control options that address the reasons for hazards.
  - Integrate hazards and selected controls into functional area paragraphs, graphics, and annexes of the OPORD, SOPs, and OPLANs.
- (4) Safety officer/noncommissioned officer (coordination). The safety officer/NCO—
- Assists the commander and staff with risk management integration during mission planning, execution, and assessment.
  - Assesses unit risk management performance during planning and execution; recommends changes to risk reduction control measures as needed.
  - Coordinates staff risk management and makes recommendations to the S3.
- c. Responsibilities at company/troop and lower. The commander/leader performs or delegates performance of the risk-management process for each step in troop-leading procedures (figure C-2).

Troop-Leading Steps		Identify Hazards	Assess Hazards	Develop Controls & Make Risk Decision	Implement Controls	Supervise and Evaluate
1	<b>Receive mission</b>	X				
	Perform initial METT-TC analysis	X				
2	<b>Issue the warning order</b>	X				
3	<b>Make a tentative plan</b>	X	X			
3A	Make an estimate of the situation	X	X			
3B	Detailed mission analysis	X	X			
3C	Develop situation and courses of action for	X	X			
3C1	-Enemy situation (enemy COAs)	X	X			
3C2	-Terrain and weather (OCOKA)	X	X			
3C3	-Friendly situation (troops and time available)	X	X			
3C4	-Courses of action (friendly)	X	X			
3D	Analyze courses of action—war-game	X	X			
3E	Compare courses of action			X		
3F	Make decisions			X		
3G	Expand selected COA into tentative plan			X		
4	<b>Initiate movement</b>				X	
5	<b>Reconnoiter</b>				X	
6	<b>Complete the plan</b>				X	
7	<b>Issue the order</b>				X	
8	<b>Supervise and refine the plan</b>					X

Figure C-2. Risk management integrated into troop-leading procedures

**C-4. RISK MANAGEMENT PROCESS**

a. All operational environments contain hazards. Combat operations, stability operations and support operations, base support operations, and even day-to-day training present unique hazards for all units involved. The ability of commanders, staff, and unit leaders to identify hazards is essential. Once hazards are identified they are entered on the risk management work sheet (figure C-3).

COMPOSITE RISK MANAGEMENT WORKSHEET									
For use of this form, see FM100-14; the proponent agency is TRADOC.									
1. MSN/TASK Perform Air Assault Security Operations			2a. DTG BEGIN 042100SEP05		2b. DTG END 042200SEP05		3. DATE PREPARED (YYYYMMDD) 20050901		
4. PREPARED BY a. LAST NAME			b. RANK MAJOR		c. POSITION ASSISTANT S3				
5. SUBTASK	6. HAZARDS	7. INITIAL RISK LEVEL	8. CONTROLS	9. RESIDUAL RISK LEVEL	10. HOW TO IMPLEMENT	11. HOW TO SUPERVISE (WHO)	12. WAS CONTROL EFFECTIVE?		
	ADVERSE ENVIRONMENT -0% Illumination -Complete Blackout -Visibility During Flight -Brownout								
	CONTINUOUS OPERATIONS -Fatigue								
	UNFAMILIAR TERRAIN -Flight Plan -Landing Zone								
	INADEQUATE PLANNING TIME								
<p style="text-align: center;">Additional space for entries in Items 5 through 11 is provided on Page 2.</p> <p style="text-align: center;">13. OVERALL RISK LEVEL AFTER CONTROLS ARE IMPLEMENTED (Check one)</p> <p style="text-align: center;"> <input type="checkbox"/> LOW                      <input type="checkbox"/> MODERATE                      <input type="checkbox"/> HIGH                      <input type="checkbox"/> EXTREMELY HIGH             </p>									

Sample

Figure C-3. Risk-management work sheet—identify hazards

(1) Identify hazards based on the factors of METT-TC for each COA for the mission or task (figure C-4). Sources include the following—

- Mission order/task instructions.
- Commander's critical information requirements.
- Mission planning systems.
- Tactical SOP.
- Unit accident history.
- Reconnaissance.
- Experience.

<p><b>MISSION:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Perform air assault security operations in support of air assault troop insertion mission.</li><li>• Provide overwatch security during insertion mission into rover beach LZ.</li><li>• Insertion of troops will take place NLT 042100 Sep 04, same LZ.</li><li>• Provide air assault security during extraction of troops NLT 042200 Sep 04, same LZ.</li></ul> <p><b>CONDITIONS:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• One company/troop UH-60, 2 CH-47D, 2 AH-64D or 2 OH-58D.</li><li>• Load: 14 fully equipped Soldiers, 540 lb special equipment.</li><li>• Blackout conditions.</li><li>• LZ: 114 mi from departure point, 100 yd wide, sand/dirt/grass.</li><li>• WX: restricted visibility en route &amp; LZ (illum, rain, fog, loose sand).</li></ul> <p><b>SITUATION:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Crew: fully qualified, experienced, superb teamwork.</li><li>• Mission brief at 041530 Sep 03 (crew &amp; PAX).</li></ul>
---

**Figure C-4. Example of mission factors collected**

(2) Review the mission's METT-TC factors to identify those enemy and accident/fratricide hazards that are most likely to cause loss of combat power. Identify those hazards that are not adequately controlled at this or the next-lower echelon of command. Answer the questions in the matrix in figure C-5 to determine if the hazard needs to be risk managed.



<b>QUESTIONS</b>	<b>Adequate</b>	
	<b>YES</b>	<b>NO</b>
<b>Support</b> —Is type/amount/capability/condition of support adequate to control hazard?		
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Personnel.</li> <li>• Supplies.</li> <li>• Equipment/materiel.</li> <li>• Services/facilities</li> </ul>	<b>Yes</b>	<b>No</b> <b>No</b>
<b>Standards</b> —Is guidance/procedure adequately clear/practical/specific to control hazard?	<b>Yes</b>	
<b>Training</b> —Is training adequately thorough and recent enough to control hazard?	<b>Yes</b>	
<b>Leadership</b> —Is leadership ready, willing, and able to enforce standards required to control hazard?	<b>Yes</b>	
<b>Unit Self-Discipline</b> —Is unit performance and conduct self-disciplined to control hazard?	<b>Yes</b>	
<b>If all answers are “yes,” then no further action is required. If one or more answers are “no,” this hazard needs risk management. Enter hazard on risk management work sheet.)</b>		

**Figure C-5. Determining if hazard requires risk management**

(3) Hazards that require risk management are identified to the safety officer/NCO; identified hazards are then entered in block 5 of the work sheet (figure C-3).

b. Assess hazards.

(1) This step examines each hazard in term of probability and severity to determine the risk level of one or more hazardous incidents that can result from exposure to the hazard.

(2) An incident must be credible in that it must have a reasonable expectation of happening. The result is an estimate of risk from each hazard and an estimate of the overall risk to the mission caused by hazards that the unit cannot eliminate.

(3) Determine the risk level of each hazard that is not adequately controlled. Figure C-6, experience and best judgment are the basis for selecting the risk level.

		<b>HAZARD PROBABILITY</b>				
		<i>Frequent</i>	<i>Likely</i>	<i>Occasional</i>	<i>Seldom</i>	<i>Unlikely</i>
<b>s e v e r i t y</b>	<i>Catastrophic</i>	<b>E</b>	<b>E</b>	<b>H</b>	<b>H</b>	<b>M</b>
	<i>Critical</i>	<b>E</b>	<b>H</b>	<b>H</b>	<b>M</b>	<b>L</b>
	<i>Marginal</i>	<b>H</b>	<b>M</b>	<b>M</b>	<b>L</b>	<b>L</b>
	<i>Negligible</i>	<b>M</b>	<b>L</b>	<b>L</b>	<b>L</b>	<b>L</b>

*Risk Level:*  
**E - Extremely High**  
**H - High**  
**M - Moderate**  
**L - Low**

**Figure C-6. Risk assessment matrix—assess hazards**

(4) Provide the risk level for each hazard to the safety officer/NCO. It is then entered in block 6 of the risk management work sheet as the initial risk level for each hazard (figure C-7).

COMPOSITE RISK MANAGEMENT WORKSHEET									
For use of this form, see FM100-14; the proponent agency is TRADOC.									
1. MSN/TASK Perform Air Assault Security Operations			2a. DTG BEGIN 042100SEP05		2b. DTG END 042200SEP05		3. DATE PREPARED (YYYYMMDD) 20050901		
4. PREPARED BY a. LAST NAME			b. RANK MAJOR		c. POSITION ASSISTANT S3				
5. SUBTASK	6. HAZARDS	7. INITIAL RISK LEVEL	8. CONTROLS	9. RESIDUAL RISK LEVEL	10. HOW TO IMPLEMENT	11. HOW TO SUPERVISE (WHO)	12. WAS CONTROL EFFEC-TIVE?		
	ADVERSE ENVIRONMENT -0% Illumination -Complete Blackout	EH							
	-Visibility During Flight -Brownout								
	CONTINUOUS OPERATIONS -Fatigue	H							
	UNFAMILIAR TERRAIN -Flight Plan -Landing Zone	H							
	INADEQUATE PLANNING TIME	EH							
Note: Hazards are Assessed to ID Initial Risk Level Additional space for entries in Items 5 through 11 is provided on Page 2.									
13. OVERALL RISK LEVEL AFTER CONTROLS ARE IMPLEMENTED (Check one)									
<input type="checkbox"/> LOW <input type="checkbox"/> MODERATE <input type="checkbox"/> HIGH <input type="checkbox"/> EXTREMELY HIGH									

Figure C-7. Risk management work sheet—assess hazards

c. Develop controls.

(1) After assessing each hazard, leaders develop one or more controls that either eliminate the hazard or reduce the risk (probability/severity) of a hazardous incident. For each hazard identified, develop one or more control options that either avoid the hazard or reduce its risk to a level that meets the commander's risk guidance.

(2) Controls should address the reasons that the hazard needs to be mitigated (see C-4a (2) above).

(3) Provide controls to the safety officer/NCO, this information is entered in block 7 of the risk management work sheet (figure C-8).

COMPOSITE RISK MANAGEMENT WORKSHEET									
For use of this form, see FM100-14; the proponent agency is TRADOC.									
1. MSN/TASK Perform Air Assault Security Operations			2a. DTG BEGIN 042100SEP05		2b. DTG END 042200SEP05		3. DATE PREPARED (YYYYMMDD) 20050901		
4. PREPARED BY a. LAST NAME		b. RANK MAJOR		c. POSITION ASSISTANT S3					
5. SUBTASK	6. HAZARDS	7. INITIAL RISK LEVEL	8. CONTROLS	9. RESIDUAL RISK LEVEL	10. HOW TO IMPLEMENT	11. HOW TO SUPERVISE (WHO)	12. WAS CONTROL EFFECTIVE?		
	ADVERSE ENVIRONMENT -0% Illumination -Complete Blackout	EH	En route altitude greater than 500 ft AGL. Ensure that crew has current hazard map.						
	-Visibility During Flight -Brownout		NVDs will be used. PC/AC will brief brownout procedures. Aircraft ramp lights and cargo door closed.						
	CONTINUOUS OPERATIONS -Fatigue	H	Ensure that crew wear plans adhered to.		Note: Once Controls are Developed, Enter Them in Column 8.				
	UNFAMILIAR TERRAIN -Flight Plan -Landing Zone	H	Ensure that crew has current photos/maps of LZ.						
	INADEQUATE PLANNING TIME	EH	Full rehearsal will be conducted						
13. OVERALL RISK LEVEL AFTER CONTROLS ARE IMPLEMENTED (Check one)									
Additional space for entries in items 5 through 11 is provided on Page 2.									
<input type="checkbox"/> LOW <input type="checkbox"/> MODERATE <input type="checkbox"/> HIGH <input type="checkbox"/> EXTREMELY HIGH									

Figure C-8. Risk management work sheet—develop controls

d. Determine residual risk.

(1) An essential element of the risk decision is determining if the risk is justified. Commanders must compare and balance the risk against mission expectations. They alone decide if controls are sufficient and acceptable and whether to accept the resulting residual risk. If they determined that the risk level is too high, they then direct the development of additional controls or alternate controls or modify, change, or reject the COA. Commanders may place constraints on subordinates that restrict their freedom of action to accept risk in instances in which the risk might imperil—

- Their intent or their higher commander's intent.
- A critical capability of their unit.

(2) Determining overall mission risk by averaging the risks of all threats is not valid. If one threat has high residual risk, the overall residual risk of the mission is high, no matter how many moderate or low risk threats are present.

(3) For each hazard, use the risk-assessment matrix (figure C-6), experience and judgment to determine the level of risk remaining, assuming that the controls are implemented.

(4) Provide the residual risk level for each hazard to the safety officer/NCO, applicable risk level designator is then entered in block 8 of the risk-management work sheet (figure C-9).

COMPOSITE RISK MANAGEMENT WORKSHEET									
For use of this form, see FM100-14; the proponent agency is TRADOC.									
1. MSN/TASK Perform Air Assault Security Operations			2a. DTG BEGIN 042100SEP05		2b. DTG END 042200SEP05		3. DATE PREPARED (YYYYMMDD) 20050901		
4. PREPARED BY a. LAST NAME		b. RANK MAJOR		c. POSITION ASSISTANT S3					
5. SUBTASK	6. HAZARDS	7. INITIAL RISK LEVEL	8. CONTROLS	9. RESIDUAL RISK LEVEL	10. HOW TO IMPLEMENT	11. HOW TO SUPERVISE (WHO)	12. WAS CONTROL EFFECTIVE?		
	ADVERSE ENVIRONMENT -0% Illumination -Complete Blackout	EH	En route altitude greater than 500 ft AGL. Ensure that crew has current hazard map.	H					
	-Visibility During Flight -Brownout		NVDs will be used. PC/AC will brief Brownout procedures. Aircraft ramp tongue and cargo door closed.						
	CONTINUOUS OPERATIONS -Fatigue	H	Ensure that crew-test plan is adhered to.	M	Note: Once Residual Controls are Determined Enter Them in Column 9.				
	UNFAMILIAR TERRAIN -Flight Plan -Landing Zone	H	Ensure that crew has current photos/maps of LZ.	M					
	INADEQUATE PLANNING TIME	EH	Full rehearsal will be conducted.	H					
Additional space for entries in Items 5 through 11 is provided on Page 2.									
13. OVERALL RISK LEVEL AFTER CONTROLS ARE IMPLEMENTED (Check one)									
<input type="checkbox"/> LOW <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> MODERATE <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> HIGH <input type="checkbox"/> EXTREMELY HIGH									

Figure C-9. Risk management work sheet—residual risk

e. Determine course of action risk.

(1) An overall risk level for each COA is determined, assuming that the commander selects the controls and that they are implemented. The COA's overall risk level is the same as the hazard with the highest residual risk. The COA's risk level is circled in block 9 (figure C-9).

(2) The feasibility and acceptability of each COA in terms of residual risk is analyzed. The residual risk criterion for each COA is scored, using weights determined by the XO. These scores are entered on the decision matrix.

(3) Hazards, controls, and risks are briefed to the commander. Risk management work sheets may be used for this purpose.

f. Make risk decision.

---

**Note.** The Chief of Staff (XO) coordinates development of controls with emphasis on deconflicting controls that affect multiple functional areas and adjacent units. This allows for the staff mission planners to be more directly involved whereas the safety officer/NCO may not have the expertise to do so, depending on the mission.

---

(1) The commander selects the COA and decides whether to accept the COA's risk level. The commander decides which level of residual risk is acceptable and approves control measures that will result in that level or a lower level of risk. The commander obtains the higher commander's approval to accept any level of residual risk that might imperil the higher commander's intent or is not consistent with the commander's risk guidance. In block 10, the name, rank, and duty position of the commander accepting the COA's risk level is entered (figure C-9).

(2) The S3 develops and issues a warning order (WARNO) that contains the commander's refined risk guidance.

g. Implement controls.

(1) Based on the commander's decision and risk guidance, the staff determines how each control will be put into effect or communicated to the personnel who will make it happen (for example, FRAGO, OPORD, TACSOP, mission briefing, and rehearsals). The information is entered in block 11 of the risk management work sheet (figure C-10).

COMPOSITE RISK MANAGEMENT WORKSHEET									
For use of this form, see FM100-14; the proponent agency is TRADOC.									
1. MSN/TASK <b>Perform Air Assault Security Operations</b>		2a. DTG BEGIN 042100SEP05		2b. DTG END 042200SEP05		3. DATE PREPARED (YYYYMMDD) 20050901			
4. PREPARED BY a. LAST NAME			b. RANK MAJOR		c. POSITION ASSISTANT S3				
5. SUBTASK	6. HAZARDS	7. INITIAL RISK LEVEL	8. CONTROLS	9. RESIDUAL RISK LEVEL	10. HOW TO IMPLEMENT	11. HOW TO SUPERVISE (WHO)	12. WAS CONTROL EFFECTIVE?		
	ADVERSE ENVIRONMENT -0% Illumination -Complete Blackout	EH	En route altitude greater than 500 ft AGL. Ensure that crew has current hazard map.	H	Mission Brief Rehearsals				
	-Visibility During Flight -Brownout		NVDs will be used. PC/AC will brief brownout procedures. Aircraft ramp, engine and cargo door closed.		Mission Brief Rehearsals				
	CONTINUOUS OPERATIONS -Fatigue	H	Ensure that crew-rest plan is adhered to.	M	TACSOP	Note: Once Residual Risks are ID, Enter Implementation Methods in Column 10.			
	UNFAMILIAR TERRAIN -Flight Plan -Landing Zone	H	Ensure that crew has current photos/maps of LZ.	M	Mission Brief Rehearsals				
	INADEQUATE PLANNING TIME	EH	Full rehearsal will be conducted.	H	FRAGO				
Additional space for entries in Items 5 through 11 is provided on Page 2.									
13. OVERALL RISK LEVEL AFTER CONTROLS ARE IMPLEMENTED (Check one)									
<input type="checkbox"/> LOW <input type="checkbox"/> MODERATE <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> HIGH <input type="checkbox"/> EXTREMELY HIGH									

Figure C-10. Risk management work sheet—implement



(2) The staff coordinates controls, integrates them into the FRAGO/appropriate paragraphs and graphics of the OPORD, and confirms understanding by subordinate units during the rehearsal.

h. Supervise.

(1) Leaders supervise mission rehearsal and execution to ensure that standards and controls are enforced. Techniques may include spot checks, inspections, situation reports (SITREPs), and backbriefs, buddy checks, and close supervision.

(2) During the mission, leaders must continuously monitor controls to ensure that these controls remain effective. Leaders and individuals anticipate, identify, and assess new hazards to implement controls and mitigate identified hazards. Leaders must continually assess variable hazards (such as fatigue, equipment serviceability, and the environment).

(3) Leaders must modify controls to keep risks within acceptable levels throughout assigned missions. Leaders must continuously plan to ensure that controls emplaced at the beginning of the mission apply to changes in the operation's current situation and to hazardous conditions.

(4) The staff provides control supervision methods to the safety officer/NCO, applicable information is then entered in block 12 (figure C-11).

COMPOSITE RISK MANAGEMENT WORKSHEET									
For use of this form, see FM100-14; the proponent agency is TRADOC.									
1. MSN/TASK Perform Air Assault Security Operations			2a. DTG BEGIN 042100SEP05		2b. DTG END 042200SEP05		3. DATE PREPARED (YYYYMMDD) 20050901		
4. PREPARED BY a. LAST NAME GAME			b. RANK MAJOR		c. POSITION ASSISTANT S3				
5. SUBTASK	6. HAZARDS	7. INITIAL RISK LEVEL	8. CONTROLS	9. RESIDUAL RISK LEVEL	10. HOW TO IMPLEMENT	11. HOW TO SUPERVISE (WHO)	12. WAS CONTROL EFFECTIVE?		
	ADVERSE ENVIRONMENT -0% Illumination -Complete Blackout	EH	En route altitude greater than 500 ft AGL. Ensure that crew has current hazard map.	H	Mission Brief Rehearsals	Direct Supervision			
	-Visibility During Flight -Brownout		NVDs will be used. PC/AC will brief brownout procedures. Aircraft ramp tongue and cargo door closed.		Mission Brief Rehearsals	Mission Updates			
	CONTINUOUS OPERATIONS -Fatigue	H	Ensure that crew-rest plan is adhered to.	M	TACSOP	Direct Supervision			
	UNFAMILIAR TERRAIN -Flight Plan -Landing Zone	H	Ensure that crew has current photos/maps of LZ.	M	Mission Brief Rehearsals	Direct Supervision Mission Updates			
	INADEQUATE PLANNING TIME	EH	Full rehearsal will be conducted.	H	FRAGO	Direct Supervision			
Additional space for entries in Items 5 through 11 is provided on Page 2.									
13. OVERALL RISK LEVEL AFTER CONTROLS ARE IMPLEMENTED (Check one)									
<input type="checkbox"/> LOW <input type="checkbox"/> MODERATE <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> HIGH <input type="checkbox"/> EXTREMELY HIGH									

Figure C-11. Risk management work sheet—supervise

## i. Risk management assessment.

(1) Staff members evaluate the effectiveness of each control in reducing the risk of the targeted hazard. They provide a “yes,” if it is effective, or “no,” if it is not, to the safety officer/NCO, responsible individual enters applicable information in block 13.

(2) For each control judged not effective, the staff determines why and what to do the next time that the hazard is identified. (Examples of these procedures are changing the control, developing a different control, or changing the method of implementation or supervision.) Staff members provide this information to the safety officer/NCO, who reports it during the AAR.

(3) The safety officer/NCO evaluates the unit’s risk-management performance and reports it during the AAR. The matrix in figure C-12 may be used for this report.

	GO	NO-GO
<b>Identified the most important hazards.</b>		
• Available facts for each METT-TC factor gathered and considered?		
Hazards (enemy and accident) most likely to result in loss of combat power identified?		
<b>Assessed risk level of each hazard.</b>		
• Valid method/tool used to assess initial risk levels?		
<b>Developed appropriate control options and determined residual risk.</b>		
• Each control addressed hazard reasons?		
• Residual risk level realistic for each hazard?		
Valid method/tool used to determine the residual risk level for each COA?		
• Residual risk level for each COA entered on the decision matrix?		
<b>Made risk decision for selected COA.</b>		
• Valid procedure/guidance used for determining risk decision authority?		
<b>Hazards and controls clearly communicated to responsible unit/leadership.</b>		
Controls integrated into appropriate paragraphs and graphics of the OPORD/FRAGO and rehearsals?		
<b>Implemented and enforced controls.</b>		
• Effective methods used to supervise/enforce controls?		

**Figure C-12. Risk management task standards and performance assessment**

## j. Risk management assessment tools and pitfalls.

(1) In an unchanging environment or static situation, units may find a tool such as a standardized risk assessment card or checklist to be of some value in the initial mission analysis and COA development. However, such a tool used alone will probably not identify all hazards for every mission in a fluid contemporary operating environment. Units should continually strive to gain and maintain situational and operational awareness.

(2) Completing the risk assessment alone and then failing to identify effective controls usually results in a GO or NO-GO decision based on the initial risk only.

(3) The risk-management process provides reasonable controls to support mission accomplishment without exposing the force to unnecessary residual risk.

(4) Pitfalls arise when commanders, leaders, and units use risk management tools without adapting them to the factors of METT-TC.

## C-5. DEFINITIONS

- a. Acceptable risk. The portion of identified risk that is allowed to persist without further controls.

b. Condition. Condition is the readiness status of personnel and equipment with respect to the operational environment during mission planning, preparation, and execution. Readiness that is below standard leads to human error, material failure, and inadequate precautions for environmental factors, which may cause accidents, fratricide, and mission degradation.

c. Controls. Actions taken to eliminate threats or reduce their risk.

d. Exposure. The frequency and length of time personnel and equipment are subjected to a hazard.

e. Extremely high risk. Risk that could result in loss of ability to accomplish the mission if threats occur during the mission. A frequent or likely probability of catastrophic loss or frequent probability of high loss exists.

f. Hazard. A hazard is an actual or a potential condition that can cause injury, illness, or death of personnel; damage to or loss of equipment or property or mission degradation.

g. High risk. Risk that could result in significant degradation of mission capabilities in terms of the required mission standard, inability to accomplish all or parts of the mission, or inability to complete the mission to standard if threats occur during the mission.

h. Low risk. Risk that could result in expected losses having little or no impact on accomplishing the mission.

i. Moderate risk. Risk that could result in degraded mission capabilities in terms of the required mission standard. In addition, will have a reduced mission capability if hazards occur during the mission.

j. Operational protection. The conservation of the forces' fighting potential so that it can be applied at the decisive time and place. This activity includes actions taken to counter the enemy's forces by making friendly forces (including operational formations, personnel, and so forth) systems and operational facilities difficult to locate, strike, and destroy.

k. Probability. Probability is the likelihood that an event will occur. Levels of probability are—

- Frequent—Occurs often, continuously experienced.
- Likely—Occurs several times.
- Occasional—Occurs sporadically.
- Seldom—Unlikely, but could occur at some time.
- Unlikely—Can assume that it will not occur, but not impossible.

l. Residual risk. The level of risk remaining after controls have been identified and selected for threats that may result in loss of combat power. This term and its definition are applicable only in the context of this publication and should not be referenced outside this publication.

m. Risk assessment. Identification and assessment of hazards; an identified hazard is assessed to determine the risk (both the probability of occurrence and resulting severity) of a hazardous incident due to the presence of a hazard.

n. Risk decision. The decision to accept or not to accept the risk associated with an action; made by the commander, leader, or individual responsible for performing the action.

o. Risk management. The process of identifying, assessing, and controlling risks arising from operational factors and making decisions that weigh risks against mission benefits.

p. Risk. Chance of hazard or bad consequences; the probability of exposure to chance of injury or loss from a hazard; risk level is expressed in terms of hazard probability and severity.

q. Severity. Severity is the expected consequence of an event (hazardous incident) in terms of degree of injury, property damage, or other mission-impairing factors (potential loss of combat power). Levels of severity are—

- Catastrophic – Loss of ability to accomplish the mission or mission failure. Death or permanent total disability (accident risk). Loss of major or mission-critical system or equipment. Major property (facility) damage. Severe environmental damage. Mission-critical security failure. Unacceptable collateral damage.

- Critical – Significantly (severely) degraded mission capability or unit readiness. Permanent partial disability, temporary total disability exceeding three months time (accident risk). Extensive (major) damage to equipment or systems. Significant damage to property or the environment. Security Failure. Significant collateral damage.
- Marginal – Degraded mission capability or unit readiness. Minor damage to equipment or systems, property or the environment. Lost day due to injury or illness not exceeding three months (accident risk).
- Negligible – Little or no adverse impact on mission capability. First aid or minor medical treatment (accident risk). Slight equipment or system damage, but fully functional and serviceable. Little or no property or environmental damage.

r. Threat. Source of danger; any opposing force, condition, source, or circumstance with the potential to negatively impact mission accomplishment and/or degrade mission capability. This term and its definition are applicable only in the context of this publication and should not be referenced outside this publication.

**This page intentionally left blank.**

## Appendix D

## Aircraft Survivability

### SECTION I. FUNDAMENTALS AND THREAT CONSIDERATIONS

**D-1. FUNDAMENTALS OF AIRCRAFT SURVIVABILITY.** Aircraft survivability equipment (ASE) protects tactical helicopters operating throughout the battlefield while conducting their assigned missions. Aircraft survivability encompasses a vast array of disciplines. ASE does not equate to the whole of aircraft survivability. ASE is a portion of EW, which is but one pillar that supports information operations (IO) and information warfare (IW). FM 3-13 changed EW terminology to three functions: electronic attack, electronic protection, and electronic support.

a. Electronic attack (EA). EA (formerly electronic countermeasure [ECM]) is that division of EW involving the use of electromagnetic or directed energy. EA is used to attack personnel, facilities, and equipment. Its intent is to degrade, neutralize, or destroy enemy combat capability. EA includes actions taken to prevent or reduce the enemy's effective use of the electromagnetic spectrum through jamming, destruction, and electromagnetic deception. EA also includes the employment of weapons using either electromagnetic or directed energy; for example, using lasers, radio frequency (RF), and particle beams as their primary destructive mechanism or using sources of electromagnetic energy as the primary means of terminal weapons guidance to damage or destroy personnel, facilities, or equipment. ASE systems include chaff, flares, radar jamming, and infrared jamming.

b. Electronic protection (EP). EP (formerly electronic counter-countermeasure [ECCM]) is part of EW. EP involves those actions taken to protect personnel, facilities, and equipment from the effects of friendly or enemy EW actions that may degrade, neutralize, or destroy friendly combat capability. To minimize its vulnerability to electronic attack, EP should be considered for all battlefield systems deriving operational capabilities from the electromagnetic spectrum. Included are optical, electronic, infrared, and radar target acquisition and non-cooperative target recognition (NCTR) systems, as well as smart weapons systems' sensors, fuses, guidance, and control components. ASE systems include antenna design, signature reduction, and infrared-absorbing paint.

c. Electronic support (ES). ES (formerly electronic support measures [ESM]) is that part of EW involving actions tasked by, or under the direct control of, an operational commander. The purpose of ES is to search for, intercept, identify, and locate sources of radiated electromagnetic energy for immediate threat recognition. ES supports EW operations and other tactical actions such as threat avoidance, homing, and targeting. ES focuses on surveillance of the electromagnetic spectrum to support the commander's immediate decisionmaking requirements for the employment of EW or other tactical actions. These activities may include threat avoidance, targeting, or homing. ES is normally provided by organic intelligence and sensing devices based on EW technology integrated into other weapon systems. ES may also be provided by assets from other echelons that can provide combat information to the supported command. ES ensures that EA and EP applications receive the input needed to operate effectively. (Examples of ES actions are battlefield systems executing direction-finding operations, detecting and identifying enemy missions or other electromagnetically-measured signatures for immediate exploitation, locating high-value targets for electronic attack, and providing threat-avoidance information.) ASE systems include radar, laser, and infrared missile-detecting sets.

**D-2. AIRCRAFT SURVIVABILITY EQUIPMENT TENETS.** Aircraft ASE reduces aircraft vulnerability, thus allowing the aircrew to accomplish its immediate mission and to survive to fight another day. ASE tenets support the methodology to achieving survivability. ASE tenets are a five-fold approach to ensuring that Army aircrews are able to accomplish their mission again and again. These five tenets include the following—in order of least cost and most effective to the greatest cost and least effective.

a. Tactics (EP). Proper tactics reduce exposure times to enemy weapons. Nap of the earth (NOE) flight not only limits line of sight (LOS) exposure times but also places the aircraft's radar, infrared, and optical signature in a cluttered environment. NOE tactics, combined with ASE protection and standoff ranges, allow Army aviation to not only survive but also to perform its mission on the battlefield. ASE protection is severely degraded when the aircraft is not flown tactically sound (such as against a blue-sky background).

b. Signature reduction (EP). These measures are taken into account by engineering or design changes such as flat canopies, exhaust suppressers, and coating the aircraft with low-infrared reflective paint. Signature reduction alone greatly increases survivability. Without signature reduction, ASE effectiveness is degraded or, in some cases, erased. The aviator chooses how much signature to expose to the threat, thereby also performing signature control.

c. Warning (ES). The next step in ASE protection is to warn aircrews when they are about to be engaged, allowing them time to react. Radar and laser-detecting sets and infrared missile warning systems are examples.

d. Jamming and decoying (EA). When aircrews must stay on station, despite warnings, countermeasures are required. Countermeasures that can jam/decoy the fire control or guidance systems of threat weapons include chaff, flares, and radar and IR jammers.

e. Aircraft hardening (vulnerability reduction). Aircraft hardening provides for ballistic tolerance, redundant critical flight systems, and crashworthy features. Aircraft hardening minimizes the damage to an aircraft after it has been hit.

f. Sequence. Sound tactical flight and signature reduction provide the baseline. Warning leads to jamming; each tenet is sequential, starting from the most effective and least expensive to the least effective and most expensive.

**D-3. THREAT CONSIDERATIONS.** This information on threat considerations provides a general knowledge of threat systems that can be applied to specific threats on a case-by-case basis. This information is not system specific.

a. Threat engagement sequence. All weapon systems must complete a series of events, called an engagement sequence, to affect the target (aircraft). Any missed step in the engagement sequence forces the threat to start over again. Weapon systems sensors must—

- Detect.
- Acquire.
- Track.
- Launch and guide (or fire and ballistics).
- Assess damage.

b. Example of threat system. The five elements required to compute an anti-aircraft artillery fire-control solution are range, azimuth, elevation, velocity, and time of flight. If one of the fire elements is incorrect, the anti-aircraft artillery (AAA) system will not hit the target.

c. Time and space. The threat must detect, acquire, track (establish fire-control solution), and fire at the aircraft. The time of flight (TOF) of the projectile must be determined. The threat must predict where the aircraft target will be (within a few meters) when its ordnance travels to a point in space and time.

d. Tools. Tactics, signature reduction, warning, jamming, and decoys are available to preclude a successful threat engagement. If hit, the aviator may have to count on aircraft hardening.

e. Acquisition versus track. The difference between detection and acquisition compared to tracking is important. In detection and acquisition, the threat weapon system does not have refined data to fire at a target. The threat weapon system must track the aircraft long enough to determine range, azimuth, elevation, and velocity to predict when and where to fire to hit its target. Indications of search or acquisition activity may indicate, to the aircrew, time to increase its vigilance (such as changing mode of flight and actively searching for masking terrain features). Tracking indications alert the aircrew to an



immediate action requirement (masking or, when terrain is not readily available) ASE decoys and evasive maneuvers.

f. Engagement envelope. All threat systems are confined by physics. Each system has a maximum altitude and range in which its projectile will travel. In addition, all threat systems have a minimum and maximum effective altitude and range. These numbers are computed against a cooperative engagement (such as nonmaneuvering aircraft, blue-sky background, flat terrain, and steady velocity), if any. The effective envelope for a threat system is based on a 50 percentile. That is, at the maximum (or minimum) effective range (or altitude), the weapon system is able to hit the target one out of two times. As the target gets further into the threat's envelope, the probability of a first-shot kill increases. As the target gets further outside of the threat envelope, the probability decreases until the target is outside the threat's maximum range (or altitude), where the target is physically impossible to hit.

g. Decreasing the probability of hit. The aircrew can make the engagement more difficult for the threat. A stationary target, for example, allows the threat to adjust each shot off the last until a shot hits the aircraft. A more difficult engagement would be a moving, constant-velocity shot. A prediction can be made, and if a miss occurs, an adjustment can be based on the last shot. The most difficult engagement is against a moving target that varies range, altitude, elevation, and velocity. Prediction is impossible because all four factors are changing at differing rates.

**D-4. THREAT WEAPON SENSORS.** There are four major types of threat weapon sensors: radar, infrared, laser and directed-energy weapons (DEW), and optical/electro-optical. These must be man portable or transportable by land, sea, or aerial platforms. The actual sensor type and guidance package for each threat should be determined and its inherent capabilities and limitations understood. (In-depth information about particular threat systems is available from the unit ASE/electronic warfare officer or TACOPS officer). The four major types of threat weapon sensors are discussed below—

a. Radar. Direct-threat radar weapons require LOS to hit the target. Direct-threat radar weapons are either fire-controlled AAA or, for missile systems, controlled by command, semiactive radar homing (SARH), active-radar homing, track via missile (TVM), or ground-aided seeker (GAS). Radar weapons must detect, acquire, track, launch and guide (or fire a ballistic solution), and assess damage. Radar systems have trouble with ground clutter. To pick out targets from ground clutter, radar systems can detect movement using a moving target indicator (MTI), Doppler (continuous-wave radar), or pulse Doppler. Some modern radar systems can and do track not only the movement of the aircraft itself but also the movement of rotor blades. A few older radar systems had blind speeds (called a Doppler notch) where they could not detect an aircraft flying a specific speed towards or away from the radar. However, modern radar systems cancel blind speeds. Even with older radar systems, an aircraft had difficulty maintaining constant speed and angle to or from the one radar; it is impossible to be in the Doppler notch of more than one radar. Radar systems can be detected, avoided, decoyed, jammed, and destroyed by direct and indirect fires (self, artillery, and antiradiation missiles).

b. Infrared (IR). All IR direct-threat weapons require LOS to be established before launch; the in-flight missile must maintain LOS with the target until impact or detonation of the proximity fuse. IR missiles require the operator to visually detect the target and energize the seeker before the sensor acquires the target. The operator must track the target with the seeker caged to the LOS until it is determined that the seeker is tracking the target and not background objects (such as natural or manmade objects to include vehicles, the sun, or reflected energy of the sun off clouds). The IR sensor is also susceptible to atmospheric conditions (haze or humidity), the signature of the aircraft and its background, flares, decoys, and jamming. Generally, IR systems are difficult to—

- Detect before launch (passive sensor).
- Predict where they may be located (portability).
- Respond to (short time of flight after launch).
- Hard kill (requires shooting at an in-flight missile).

c. Laser and directed-energy weapons (DEW). Laser/DEW weapons are two distinct categories (laser-guided or laser-aided weapons and pure laser/DEW weapons). Laser-guided or laser-aided weapons use the laser for ranging, tracking, or guiding functions for conventional explosive missiles or projectiles. Pure laser/DEW weapons use laser and other forms of DEW to inflict damage to the aircraft or

its sensors (as a by-product, the aircrew's eyes may be damaged). Pure laser/DEW weapons are not required to burn a hole in the target to destroy it (although these weapons are reaching that capability). Simply igniting fuel vapor near vents or burning through fuel lines is effective as well as glazing the cockpit glass so that the aircrew cannot see out. Inherently, laser/DEW weapons are of short duration, hard to detect, extremely hard to decoy or jam, and hard to kill. Fortunately, they must rely upon LOS and atmospheric conditions and have a somewhat short range.

d. Optical/electro-optical (EO). Optical/EO sensors are used as either the primary or secondary sensor for all weapon systems. Although they rely on LOS, they are (with very few exceptions) completely passive. They are limited by human eyes, atmospheric conditions, distance, jitter, and in many cases, by darkness. The optical/EO sensors are most difficult to detect, seldom can be decoyed, and can be jammed in the sense of obscurants but, when located, can be hard killed.

## SECTION II. AIRCRAFT SURVIVABILITY EQUIPMENT

**D-5. CATEGORIES.** ASE systems fall into three categories: aircraft signature reduction, situational awareness, and active countermeasures.

a. Aircraft signature reduction: All tactical helicopters are painted with nonreflective IR-absorbing paint. OH-58D (Kiowa Warrior) aircraft are equipped with an exhaust gas suppression system that reduces the IR signature by diverting hot exhaust gases into the rotor system. AH-64D aircraft have exhaust suppression called *Black Hole*, which reduces their IR signature. Reducing the aircraft exhaust-gas signature aids the effectiveness of the AN/ALQ-144A IR missile jammer by reducing missile lock-on ranges. The radar and IR signatures of tactical helicopters are least when viewed from the front. The maximum IR signature is from the rear quadrants; the maximum radar signature is from the side aspects. The aircrews can decrease the signature exposed to threats by changing the aircraft's aspect.

b. Situational awareness: All tactical helicopters are equipped with pulsed-wave radar signal detecting systems (RSDS) (for example AN/APR-39A(V)1) which alerts the aircrew to radar activity. OH-58D and AH-64D aircraft have additional situational awareness provided by the AN/AVR-2/2A. The AN/AVR-2/2A system alerts aircrews to laser activity. Aircrews use the cues from the RSDS to change modes of flight (contour to NOE) or increase vigilance (actively seek masking terrain features).

c. Active countermeasures: ASE countermeasures are required when masking terrain is not available to buy time until the aircraft can maneuver to masking terrain or outside of threat range. The AN/ALQ-144A(V)1 can jam IR threats. The M-130 with chaff can decoy radar threats, this system is not normally found on OH-58Ds.

**D-6. UH-60 A/L AIRCRAFT SURVIVABILITY EQUIPMENT SUITE.** The UH-60 A/L is equipped with the following ASE suite. The UH-60 A/L suite (figure D-1) provides for pulsed wave (PW) radar signal detection for radar-directed threats. The ALQ-44A(V)1 jams IR threats and the M-130 chaff decoys radar threats. The UH-60 A/L suite will soon receive the AAR-57 common missile warning receiver and ALE-47 improved countermeasure dispenser as protection from IR threats.

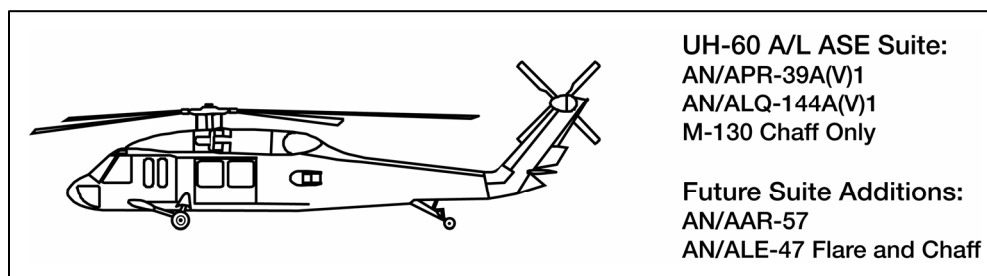
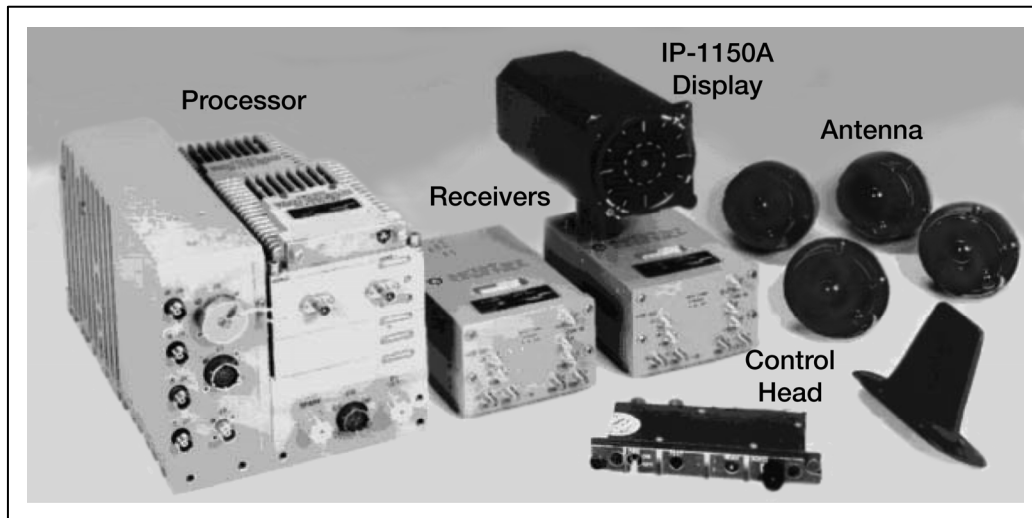


Figure D-1. UH-60A/L (Blackhawk) ASE suite

**D-7. SYSTEM DESCRIPTIONS.** The following paragraphs briefly describe each ASE system. The information also covers configuration requirements that are available to optimize the ASE system.

a. AN/APR-39A(V)1. The AN/APR-39A(V)1 RSDS (figure D-2) is an upgraded version of the AN/APR-39(V)1. It uses a digital processor, alphanumeric symbology display, and synthetic voice warning to alert the aircrew to radar-directed AD threat systems. It provides coverage for C-/D- and E-through M-band pulsed-wave radar. The theater-specific emitter identification database software is reprogrammable.



**Figure D-2. AN/APR-39A(V)1**

b. AN/AVR-2/2A. The AN/AVR-2/2A (figure D-3) laser-detecting set is a passive laser-warning system. It provides input to the AN/APR-39A(V)1 to detect laser energy. The 2A version is also used as sensors for the multiple integrated laser engagement (MILES) air ground engagement system (AGES). The system has a reprogrammable electronic identification (EID).



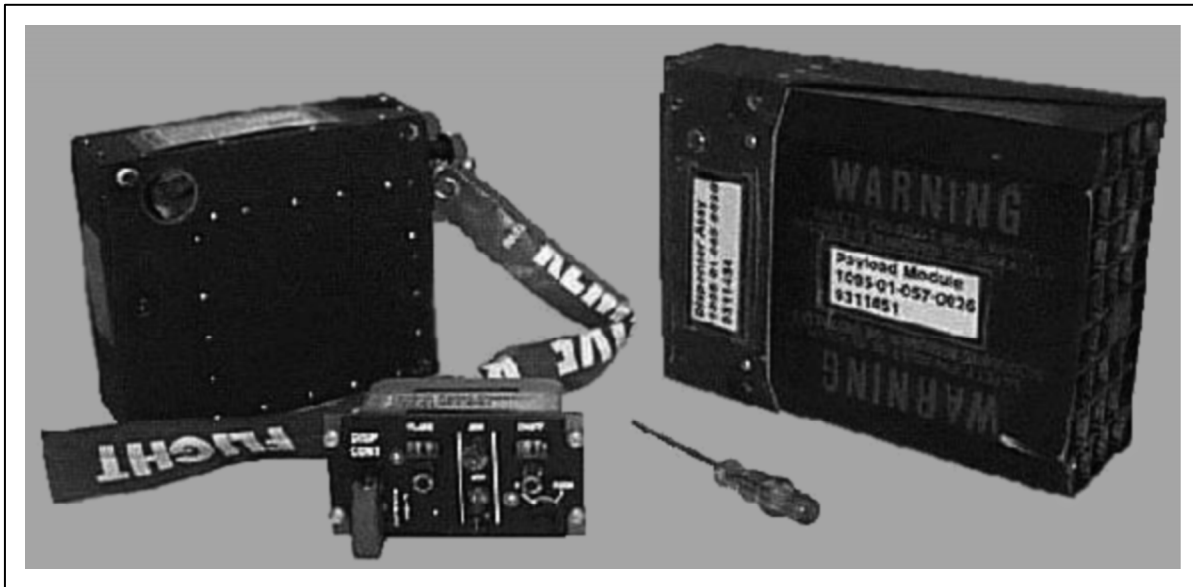
**Figure D-3. AN/AVR-2/2A**

c. AN/ALQ-144A(V)1. The AN/ALQ-144A(V)1 (figure D-4) countermeasure set is an active, continuously operating, omnidirectional, IR jammer system for helicopters. It confuses or decoys threat IR missile systems. On an aircraft that has been equipped with low-reflective paint and engine exhaust suppressors, the AN/ALQ-144A(V)1 countermeasure set (CMS) jams all known threat infrared missile systems. The system has specific jam program number (JPN) settings that must be set before flight.



**Figure D-4. AN/ALQ-144A setting**

d. M-130. The M-130 (figure D-5) general-purpose dispenser dispenses chaff and flares. The system is operated either manually or automatically through interface with other countermeasure systems. The chaff protects against radar-directed anti-aircraft weapon systems, while the flares protect against IR-directed missile systems. When dispensing chaff, the M-130 reduces or eliminates the enemy's ability to use radar-controlled anti-aircraft weapons to hit and destroy aircraft. When dispensing flares, the M-130 reduces or eliminates the enemy's ability to use infrared-guided missiles to hit and destroy aircraft. When the M-130 is set to dispense chaff, the electronic control module must be set with the program setting for the aircraft before flight.



**Figure D-5. M-130 chaff and flare dispenser**

e. AN/AAR-57. The AN/AAR-57 common missile warning system (CMWS) (figure D-6) provides an advanced airborne countermeasure system that can detect IR missiles and then uses IR expendables or directed IR jammers to defeat the missile. Electro-optical missile sensors (EOMS) detect the missile plume using ultra-violet (UV) imagery. The CMWS can provide automatic flare dispensing upon detection of a missile threat to the aircraft.



**Figure D-6. AN/AAR-57 Common Missile Warning System (CMWS)**

f. AN/ALE-47. The AN/ALE-47 counter measures dispenser system (figure D-7) provides an integrated, reprogrammable, computer controlled system to dispense expendables/decoys to enhance aircraft survivability. The ALE-47 countermeasure dispenser system is an integrated, reprogrammable, computer controlled system to dispense expendables/decoys, designed to employ electronic and infrared countermeasures according to a program developed and implemented by the aircrew. ALE-47 provides the aircrew with a "smart" countermeasures dispensing system, allowing the aircrew to optimize the countermeasures employed against anti-aircraft threats.



Figure D-7. AN/ALE-47 counter measures dispenser system

**D-8. AIRCRAFT SURVIVABILITY EQUIPMENT AIRCRAFT MATRIXES.** Some UH-60A/L, UH-60Q, and CH-47D will receive the AN/AAR-57 and AN/ALE-47 combination in FY2005 (figure D-8).

	AH-64A	AH-64D	OH-58D	UH-1H/V	UH-60A/L	UH-60Q	CH-47D
AN/APR-39(V)1	X		X	X	X		X
AN/APR-39A(V)1	X	X	X		X	X	X
AN/APR-44(V)1/3			X		X		
AN/ALQ-136(V)5	X	X					
M-130 (CHAFF)	X	X			X		
M-130 (FLARE)							X
AN/ALQ-144(V)1			X		X	X	
AN/ALQ-144(V)3	X	X					
AN/ALQ-156(V)1						X	
AN/AVR-2A	X	X	X				
AN/AAR-57*					X	X	X
AN/ALE-47*					X	X	X

Figure D-8. Aircraft survivability equipment (ASE) aircraft matrix

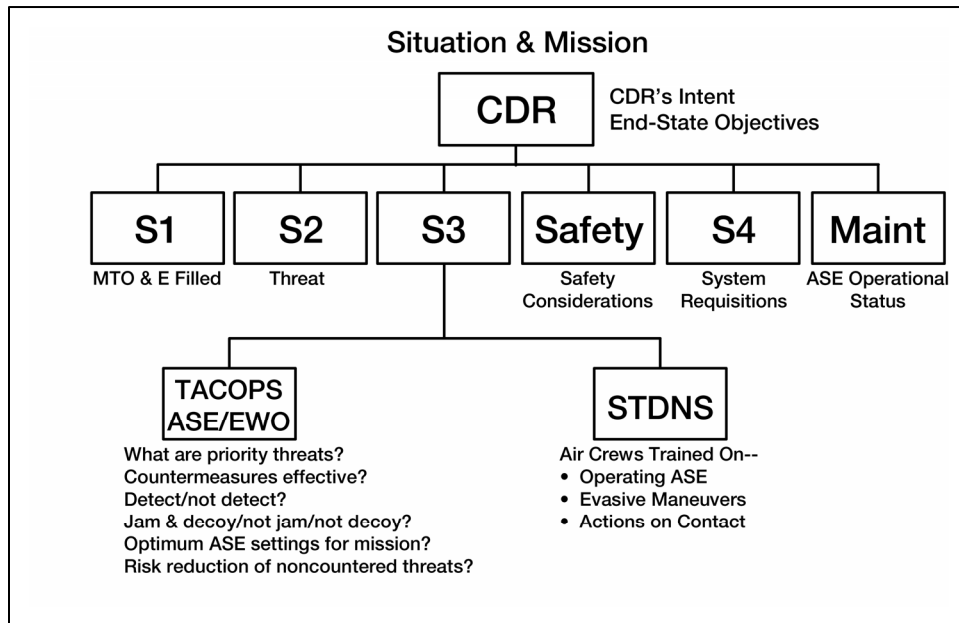
**D-9. CONFIGURATION SETTINGS.** Configuration settings for ASE are located on the classified multiservice electronic combat bulletin board system (MSEC-BBS), sponsored by the Army reprogramming analysis team (ARAT), located at Eglin Air Force Base, Florida. Connection to the MSEC-BBS requires an accredited computer, communications software, null modem cable, and a STU-III. The MSEC-BBS must be contacted to ensure that each unit has the most current ASE settings for each theater of operations.

**D-10. TACTICAL OPERATIONS OFFICERS AND STAFF.** For ASE to provide effective protection during a mission, configuration settings must be optimized for the threats encountered. The TACOPS officer at the brigade and battalion staff assists the S3 in mission planning for aircraft survivability during the mission. TOE places the TACOPS officer in the aviation company as a CW3, in battalion operations as a CW4, and in the brigade/regiment as a CW5. The TACOPS officer is identified by the SQI I (such as 152DI). The ASE/EW officer is a WO1/CW2 in each platoon of an aviation company. The ASE/EW officer has the additional skill identifier (ASI) of H3 (for example, 152D0H3). The ASE/EW officer ensures that optimum ASE configuration settings are prepared for each flight. DA Pam 611-21 describes the tactical operations officer (TACOPS) position as a warrant officer qualified to assist commanders and the S-3 in the planning, coordination, briefing and execution of tactical Army aviation and warfare in a combined/joint environment. Additionally, to provide commanders technical/tactical expertise of Army airspace command and control (A2C2), personnel recovery, electronic warfare, threat analysis, digital operations and joint tactics, techniques and procedures.

### **SECTION III. OPERATIONAL EMPLOYMENT CONSIDERATIONS**

**D-11. TACTICAL OPERATIONS OFFICERS AND AIRCRAFT SURVIVABILITY EQUIPMENT/ELECTRONIC WARFARE OFFICERS.** The aviation tactical operations officer and ASE/electronic warfare officers (EWO) are the commander/leader's tactical advisor, and a technical resource. They assist the commander and the operations officers in the planning, coordination, and execution of tactical Army aviation and warfare in a combined/joint environment (figure D-9). Additionally they provided commanders technical and tactical expertise and management of A2C2 (SPIN), personnel recovery, electronic warfare/ASE, threat analysis, and development of joint tactics, techniques and procedures. The TOE places the TACOPS officer in the aviation in the brigade as a CW5, in battalion operations as a CW4, and in the troop/company as a CW3. The TACOPS officer is identified by the SQI I (such as 152 DI). The ASE/EWO is a WO1/CW2 in each platoon of an aviation company. The ASE/EWO officer has the ASI of H3 (for example, 152DOH3). The ASE/EWO ensures that optimum ASE reprogramming has been completed for each AOR, assists the commander with ASE/threat analysis, performs tactical route mission planning and recommends ASE training programs. Aircraft survivability functions must be included throughout mission planning, rehearsal, execution, and recovery operations. Intelligence drives the operations.





**Figure D-9. Roles and functions**

**D-12. MISSION PLANNING.** Mission planning begins with the receipt of the situation and mission (figure D-9). It continues through completion of mission execution and after-action review. From receipt of the enemy situation and mission, aircraft survivability functions should be planned by the TACOPS/ASE/EWOs and implemented by the chain of command. ASE and EW must be considered in all phases of mission planning. The level of planning is always predicated on the time, information, and personnel available. OPORDs for military operations are extensive in scope and contain information that acts as a baseline for most unit operations.

a. OPORD. The OPORD is generated upon receipt of the enemy and friendly situation, the mission, and the commander's intent. The TACOPS officer is responsible for developing the EW annex of the OPORD. The EW annex (figure D-10) supports the OPORD, using this information. The enemy and friendly situations are further defined, emphasizing the EW capabilities that each has to find, fix, jam, deceive, disrupt, or destroy each other. Once the situation is clearly defined, the mission is analyzed to evaluate the risk to friendly forces while accomplishing the mission within the prescribed guidelines. After the risk assessment is complete, risk-reduction techniques are specified in the execution instructions. These techniques require the commander's approval if the mission constraints need to be altered significantly from the original intent. The next step is to determine service support for EW and command and signal guidance needed for the EW phase of the mission.

**SECURITY CLASSIFICATION**

ISSUING HEADQUARTERS  
LOCATION  
DAY, MONTH, YEAR, HOUR, ZONE

**ANNEX I (ELECTRONIC WARFARE) TO OPORD XXXX-XX (U)**

( ) References: List basic documents required.

**1. ( ) Situation**

**a. ( ) Enemy.** Refer to annex B. Provide an estimate of the enemy's communications, noncommunications, and EW systems capabilities, limitations, and vulnerabilities including the ability to interfere with the accomplishment of the EW mission stated herein. Determine the ability to detect radar altimeter, Doppler, FM, VHF, and UHF communications and the ability to interrogate transponder for modes 1, 2, 3A, and 3C. Determine air defense EW systems and analyze parameters (for example, frequencies, PRF, PRI, scan type, and wavelength) for use in risk analysis.

**b. ( ) Friendly.** Provide a list of friendly EW systems available for the mission (for example, communications, noncommunications, navigation, sensors, countermeasures, and electro-optical systems). Include friendly EW assets that can exploit and disrupt the enemy's usage of the electromagnetic spectrum.

**c. ( ) Assumptions.** State any assumptions about friendly or enemy EW capabilities and possible courses of action that may influence the planning or execution of EW operations.

**2. ( ) Mission.** State the mission to be accomplished by EW operations to support the mission in the basic plan.

**3. ( ) Execution**

**a. ( ) Concept of operations.** Summarize the scope of EW operations and the methods and resources to be used. Include tactics, techniques, and procedures (TTPs) for the threats that may be encountered.

**b. ( ) Tasks.** In separate subparagraphs, assign individual tasks to EWOs and crews including instructions and references.

**c. ( ) Coordinating instructions.** Place instructions applicable to two or more subunits in the final subparagraph.

**(1) ( ) Guiding principles.** State or refer to policies, doctrine, tactics, techniques, and procedures that provide guidance to be followed. Establish any additional guidance and authorized deviations from standardized practices. Describe any constraints that may apply to the mission.

**(2) ( ) Special measures.** Provide any special procedure to be used that is not provided elsewhere.

**4. ( ) Support.** Specify support units to provide EW service support. Include verification of threat parameters and ASE settings through the ARAT.

**Figure D-10. Suggested format for an electronic warfare annex to an operation order  
(continued)**

**5. ( ) Command and Signal.** Provide such information as IFF mode settings and mode activation/deactivation line, ASE configuration settings, HAVE Quick settings, SINCGARS settings, A2C2 frequencies, AWACS contact points, and brevity codes.

Acknowledge:

Name (commander's last name)  
Rank (commander's rank)

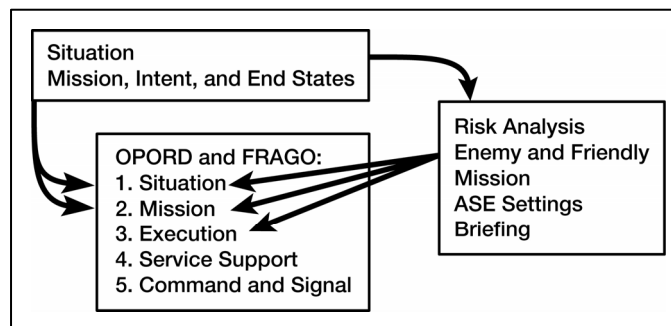
OFFICIAL:  
APPENDICES:  
DISTRIBUTION:

**(SECURITY CLASSIFICATION)**

(This sample EW appendix is unclassified, but when actually accomplished should show proper classification markings of each paragraph.)

**Figure D-10. Suggested format for an electronic warfare annex to an operation order (concluded)**

b. FRAGO. Once the OPORD (and EW annex) is generated (figure D-11), it becomes the base document. For specific missions, complete OPORDs may not always be required. In these instances, FRAGOs outlining the changes from the basic OPORD are created and issued to affected units. Upon receipt of the FRAGO, staff planners must evaluate the information available and revalidate the EW annex. Any changes to the EW annex must be detailed and disseminated to the aircrews as part of the mission briefing.



**Figure D-11. OPORD and FRAGO**

**D-13. AIRCRAFT SURVIVABILITY EQUIPMENT CONSIDERATIONS IN RISK MANAGEMENT**

a. Identify the risk. To perform a thorough risk assessment, detailed information about threat system operating procedures, tactics, system capabilities, and locations must be analyzed to determine the enemy's EW advantages or disadvantages. The capabilities and limitations of friendly EW systems must be compared to the threat's to assess the mission's level of risk. The S2 and TACOPs identify the following—

- (1) Operating frequencies of radar threats.
- (2) RF threats that can or cannot be detected.
- (3) RF threats that radar-jamming equipment will affect.
- (4) RF threats that can be decoyed.
- (5) IR threats that may be encountered.
- (6) IR threats that can be detected.
- (7) IR threats that can be jammed or decoyed.
- (8) Laser/DEW threats that can or cannot be detected.
- (9) Optical/electro-optical threats.

b. Assess the risk. The S2 and the TACOPS officer will prioritize the threat systems and optimize ASE settings for the highest priority threats. The S2 and TACOPS officer determine the level of risk based on the threat's capabilities and limitations, the capabilities and limitations of the ASE, and the mission (figure D-12). They use the highest risk to determine the overall risk to the mission. If the risk from IR threats is high, then the overall mission risk would continue to be high risk. DA Form 7573 (*Aircraft Survivability Equipment (ASE) Risk Assessment Worksheet, Survivability Risk Analysis*) (figure D-13) is used to determine what is causing the highest risks so that controls can be developed to reduce those risks.

c. Make decisions and develop controls. The S2 and TACOPS officer will determine the optimum ASE configuration settings for each aircraft type and the threats in the mission area.

(1) Threats that are highly lethal and not countered by ASE are identified. The priority intelligence requirement (PIR) can then be developed and submitted by the S2 to higher headquarters (for example, the SA-X is lethal and no organic countermeasures are present. This threat poses a high risk to mission accomplishment. Where is the SA-X located in the area of operations? The latest time of value for this information is XXXX hours.).

(2) Risk reduction techniques are applied to minimize the risk and enhance the probability of survival. Risk reduction measures include the following—

- Plan mission time earlier or later to take advantage of night operations.
- Use only suppressed aircraft for the higher risk portions of the mission.
- Request escort aircraft to suppress threats.
- Plan SEAD at critical points to reduce vulnerability.
- Prepare LZ/PZ with indirect fires.
- Alter flight routes to avoid known air defense (AD) areas.
- Include the deception plan in the false insertion.
- Reduce electronic signature (EMCON).
- Determine formation/sortie size.
- Ensure all aircraft have operable ASE installed and programmed for the area of responsibility (AOR).

(3) The ASE/EW mission briefing disseminates information and instructions to the aircrews before the mission begins. The briefing will alert aircrews to the risks associated with the threats and the optimum ASE settings and review the tactics specific to the mission. These tactics include evasive maneuvers, actions on contact, multiship breakup and reformation procedures, and rules of engagement for countermeasure weapons' employment. Figure D-12 contains a sample ASE/EW mission briefing to assist ASE/EWOs in completing this task.

d. Implement controls and supervise. Commanders and aircrews must take an active role in reducing risks by implementing controls and supervising their implementation.

(1) Commanders ensure that ASE/EW considerations and configuration settings are considered and briefed to all aircrews and maintenance personnel.

(2) During preflight checks, aircrews ensure that ASE configuration settings are correct.

(3) During the mission, aircrews ensure that IFF codes are activated and deactivated at proper times and locations during flight.

(4) During the after-action review, debriefings from aircrews are collected.

(5) Aircrews report ASE/EW problems (such as ambiguities, false alarms, equipment failures, or shortcomings) to higher headquarters.

(6) Aircrews collect data and ensure that they are input to AMPS for the next mission (such as threat data, countermeasure responses, locations of false alarms, or friendly systems reported as threat).

<b>ASE/EW BRIEFING FORMAT</b>			
OVERALL RISK:	Low	Medium	High
CAUSED BY:	Mission profile ASE suite Threat		
ASE and IFF configuration settings:			
ASE can detect:			
ASE cannot detect:			
Sample			
ASE can jam:			
ASE cannot jam:			
Primary threats:	IR RF EO Laser/DEW		
Risk-reduction measures:			
Changes to standard TTPs:			
QUESTIONS:			

**Figure D-12. Suggested format for an ASE mission brief**

## SECTION IV. MISSION EXECUTION

**D-14. MISSION EXECUTION.** During the mission, aircrews should be familiar with the ASE situational awareness displays and expected threat indications. Some actions must be performed without delay. With the visual indications of a gun or missile fired at the aircraft or ASE indications of radar track or launch, the aircrew has only seconds to prevent the aircraft from being engaged.

- a. Reacting to threat engagements. There are three distinct parts of reacting to threat engagements:
  - (1) Indication (determine immediate actions).
  - (2) Evasive maneuver (when masking terrain is not readily available).
  - (3) Actions on contact (decision to continue or abort mission).

- b. Crew coordination. To perform evasive maneuvers, crew members must rehearse crew coordination. Standardized terminology (such as “missile three o’clock, break right” and “breaking right”) should be used to avoid confusion. At other times, such as radar search or acquisition, indications do not require evasive maneuvering.

- c. Multiship considerations. Formations and spacing intervals should be selected that provide all aircraft with maneuver space to evade hostile fire. Standardized terminology (such as *chalk two breaking right missile* or *chalk three tracers three o’clock breaking left*) should be used. Briefings should include evasive formation breakup procedures and how to reform the formation after breaking the engagement. An aircraft’s ASE indications must be communicated to other aircraft in the formation because it may be the only aircraft receiving the indications because of terrain, narrow radar beam, altitude, or maintenance problems.

**D-15. CONCLUSION.** Survivability for Army aviation on the modern battlefield and in stability operations and support operations requires extensive coordination with other staffs. Because Army aviation can cover broad spaces at high speeds, coordination for airspace and fire-control measures is paramount. The TACOPS officer and ASE/EWO are trained to incorporate ASE/EW considerations into mission planning and execution. ASE is only effective if configured properly and used with tactics to counter the threat’s capabilities (figure D-13). Army aviation must plan to make maximum use of the electromagnetic spectrum and fully exploit the weaknesses of the threat’s EW capabilities.

<b>AIRCRAFT SURVIVABILITY EQUIPMENT (ASE) RISK ASSESSMENT WORKSHEET</b> <b>SURVIVABILITY RISK ANALYSIS</b>		
For use of this form, see ARTEP 1-113UA-MTP and ARTEP 1-126 MTP; the proponent agency is TRADOC.		
1. AIRCRAFT TYPE	2. MISSION	3. DATE (YYYYMMDD)
4. MISSION PROFILE		
NIGHT <input type="checkbox"/> LOW DAY <input type="checkbox"/> MEDIUM	a. < 100' AGI <input type="checkbox"/> LOW <input type="checkbox"/> MEDIUM	b. > 100' AGI <input type="checkbox"/> MEDIUM <input type="checkbox"/> HIGH VALUE _____
5. IR THREATS		
IRCM <input type="checkbox"/> LOW Non-IRCM <input type="checkbox"/> MEDIUM	a. SUPPRESSED <input type="checkbox"/> LOW <input type="checkbox"/> MEDIUM	b. UNSUPPRESSED <input type="checkbox"/> MEDIUM <input type="checkbox"/> HIGH VALUE _____
6. RF THREAT		
RFCM <input type="checkbox"/> LOW Non-RFCM <input type="checkbox"/> MEDIUM	a. WARNING <input type="checkbox"/> LOW <input type="checkbox"/> MEDIUM	b. NO WARNING <input type="checkbox"/> MEDIUM <input type="checkbox"/> HIGH VALUE _____
7. EO THREAT		
MASKING <input type="checkbox"/> LOW NO MASKING <input type="checkbox"/> MEDIUM	a. Low Visibility and Contrast <input type="checkbox"/> LOW <input type="checkbox"/> MEDIUM	b. High Visibility and Contrast <input type="checkbox"/> MEDIUM <input type="checkbox"/> HIGH VALUE _____
8. LASER/DEW THREAT		
NO MASKING <input type="checkbox"/> LOW <input type="checkbox"/> MEDIUM	a. WARNING <input type="checkbox"/> LOW <input type="checkbox"/> MEDIUM	b. NO WARNING <input type="checkbox"/> MEDIUM <input type="checkbox"/> HIGH VALUE _____
9. OVERALL RISK. If overall risk is medium or high, reevaluate mission profile, ASE or flight routes.		
<input type="checkbox"/> LOW	<input type="checkbox"/> MEDIUM	<input type="checkbox"/> HIGH HIGHEST VALUE _____
10. PRIORITY THREATS		
IR <input type="checkbox"/> A <input type="checkbox"/> B <input type="checkbox"/> C <input type="checkbox"/> D	RF <input type="checkbox"/> A <input type="checkbox"/> B <input type="checkbox"/> C <input type="checkbox"/> D	EO <input type="checkbox"/> A <input type="checkbox"/> B <input type="checkbox"/> C <input type="checkbox"/> D
LASER/DEW <input type="checkbox"/> A <input type="checkbox"/> B <input type="checkbox"/> C <input type="checkbox"/> D		
11. ASE CONFIGURATION SETTINGS		
ALQ-144A Suppressed: _____ Unsuppressed: _____		
ALQ-162 Jam Program: _____		
APR-39A(V)1 OFP: _____ EID: _____		
APR-39(V)2 Low/High: _____ Theater Position: _____		
M-130 Chaff Program _____ UH-60: _____ EH-60: _____ ALQ-156: _____		
IFF: Mode 1: _____ Mode _____ Mode _____ Mode 4: _____		
IR = Infrared IRCM = IR Countermeasures	Suppressed = IR Paint and Exhaust RF = Radio Frequency	RFCM = RF Countermeasures EO = Electro-Optical

DA FORM 7573, JUNE 2005

APD V1.00

Figure D-13. ASE risk assessment work sheet

**This page intentionally left blank.**



## Appendix E

## Training Aids, Devices, Simulators, and Simulations

**E-1. GENERAL.** Much of the success aviation units enjoyed in recent combat and stability operations and support operations originated with the training accomplished in individual and crew mission simulators. Development of new simulation and simulator technology provides essential tools to train individual aviators and crews. It allows air and ground units, and their staffs, to train for a myriad of operations under trying contemporary operating environments (COE) and environmental conditions.

**E-2. OVERVIEW.** Modeling and simulation (M&S) are vital tools for achieving combat readiness. The Army has a long history of using M&S worldwide in every facet of operations. Decision makers consider analytical results derived from M&S. M&S are used to improve the quality of the acquisition process and the products delivered to Soldiers.

a. Definitions.

(1) Model. A model represents some or all of the properties of a device, system, or object. The three basic classes of models are mathematical, physical, and procedural.

(2) Simulation. A simulation is an operating representation of selected features of real-world or hypothetical events and processes. It represents activities and interactions over time. A simulation may be fully automated (that is, it executes without human intervention), or it may be interactive or interruptible—that is, the user may intervene during execution. The Corps battle simulation (CBS) is a simulation that integrates various models. The functionality of a simulation depends on the numerous models that serve as the building blocks. (For example, an Apache-equipped attack helicopter unit within CBS requires a model of how an AH-64 fights under different conditions.) Likewise, the simulation needs models of an M1 Abrams tank, M2 Bradley fighting vehicle and M3 cavalry fighting vehicle and other systems, operating under different conditions. These different models are then consolidated and processed to build the simulation.

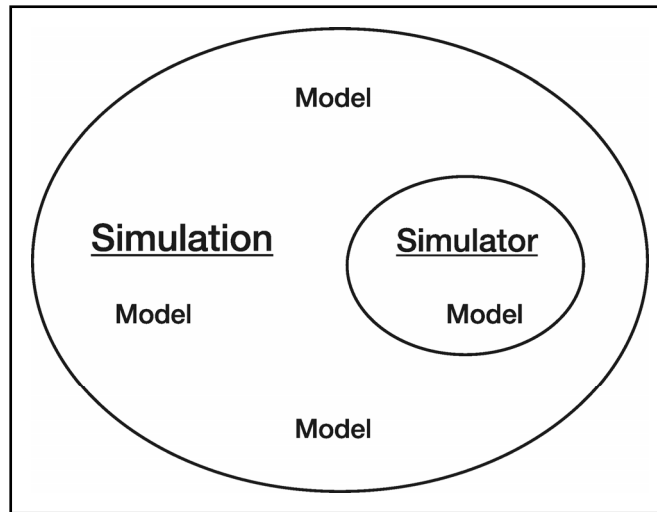
(3) Models and simulations. M&S often are used as synonyms. They relate significantly to each other; however, they are not exactly the same in a technical sense. Models are the essential elements or characteristics of a simulation.

---

**Note.** The abbreviation M&S is used as both singular and plural for models and simulations.

---

(4) Simulator. M&S are sometimes used as synonyms (both internal and external to Department of Defense [DOD]). However, the terms simulators and simulations should not be used in that manner. In the training context, simulators are most often associated with either individual or crew skill training. These simulators replicate either significant segments or the entire piece of equipment. An example of simulators that are associated with crew training is the AH-64A Apache countermeasure set (CMS). Figure E-1 gives the relationship of simulations, simulators, and models.



**Figure E-1. Relationship of simulations, simulators, and models**

(5) Wargame. Wargaming is used in both training simulations and simulators. A wargame is a simulation of a military operation that involves two or more OPFOR. Rules, data, and procedures designed to depict an actual or assumed real-life situation are used. Wargaming allows the participants to experiment with alternative tactics and operations against an OPFOR. This process forces participants to react to the OPFOR to develop plans and execute operations. The complexity and sophistication of current simulations bring a high degree of reality to wargame participants.

b. Types of simulations. Simulations can be categorized as constructive, virtual, and live (see figure E-2).

(1) Constructive simulation. A constructive simulation consists of war games and models. Many of these rely heavily on mathematical methods. (Examples include Janus (A), and brigade/battalion battle simulation.)

(2) Virtual simulation. A virtual simulation focuses largely on manned simulators. It interacts within a synthetic environment and, in many cases, with other simulators. Well known examples are the simulation network (SIMNET) simulators in common use throughout the Army for both training and developmental work.

(3) Live simulation. The best description of live simulation is actual Soldiers and equipment operating together, often on instrumented ranges. The Army's CTCs are highly instrumented, live simulation facilities.

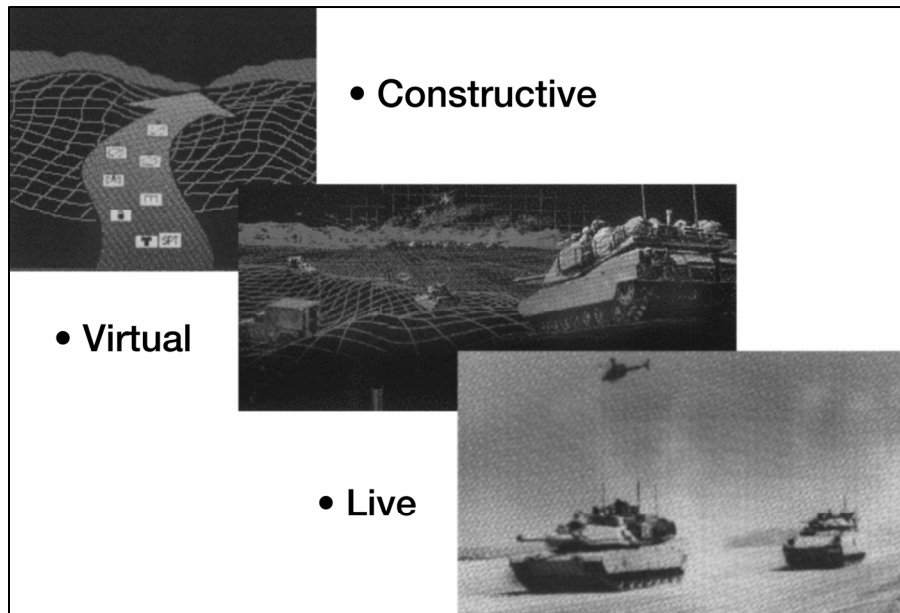


Figure E-2. Types of simulation

**E-3. UNIT-LEVEL TRAINING.** An integrated use of live, virtual, and constructive training tools can provide commanders the best trained Army aviators and units. Igor Sikorsky wrote that the use of the helicopter is limited only by the imagination of the user. This wisdom also holds true for the use of simulations and simulators.

a. How simulations support training. Simulations support training in unique ways. Understanding how simulations support training benefits the commander. The commander incorporates the unique features listed below into an overall unit training strategy. Simulations—

- Portray large areas for conducting operations.
- Portray large, capable, and doctrinally correct OPFOR.
- Stress commanders and staffs and provide realistic conditions under which commanders make decisions.
- Allow different units to train under the same conditions and to the same standards.

b. Battalion training.

(1) In the constructive environment, simulations (such as BBS, Janus, or modular semi-automated forces [ModSAF]) can give commanders, crews, and staff members some mission battlefield visualization skills. BBS and Janus enable the user to portray friendly and enemy forces on a two-dimensional map using high fidelity terrain information. ModSAF accomplishes the same objective, but in a three-dimensional world.

(a) Staffs can wargame various mission options and judge the effectiveness of their plans accordingly. Crews can gain an appreciation of terrain intervisibility or movement effect as the battle unfolds.

(b) In future developments, warfighters' simulation (WARSIM) will replace BBS/CBS and Janus; OneSAF will replace ModSAF. In an upgraded target acquisition designation system (TADS) selected task trainer (TSTT), a gunner can integrate with the WARSIM or OneSAF simulation. The pilot flies from a control workstation. The pilot can execute various mission options—evasive actions, multiple target engagements, and actions on contact.

(c) Enhancements to the AH-64 CMS also allow WARSIM or OneSAF integration. The TSTT and the CMS can pair on missions and conduct limited engagements. Leaders develop battle drills

and visually display those drills under the conditions the crews may expect to encounter. Maintenance personnel can observe the commander's desired operational tempo and determine appropriate support options.

(d) Increased portability of the WARSIM, OneSAF, or some other type of mission planning rehearsal tool (MPRT), allows the battalion to transport simulation equipment to the field. The battalion then conducts training using simulations while deployed. Digital terrain walks can be conducted, and crews can see the terrain over which they will operate.

(2) In the virtual environment, The aviation combined arms tactical trainer simulator – aviation (AVCATT-A), reconfigurable manned simulator allows units to replicate the battlefield and conduct a full spectrum of aviation operations at a level not attainable in the live or constructive realm. It supports training of crew skill through company collective tasks. The battalion commander has near perfect vision of the training. The battalion commander can tailor teaching, coaching, and mentoring according to each of the commander's strengths and weaknesses. Crews can observe the full effect of their decisions. By linking WARSIM or OneSAF to the AVCATT-A, battlestaffs can work large-scale operations in real time.

(3) Crews may conduct operations under various mission profiles; they examine potential branches and sequels. With appropriate home station instrumentation (HIS), live crews and virtual crews conduct operations when maintenance posture does not support actual aircraft flight. The situational experience gained from the constructive and virtual environment is value added. Crews are exposed to multiple challenges in realistic environments. These virtual and constructive situational experiences should be viewed as opportunities to enhance readiness and ensure mission success. Live missions are still conducted. The overall training tempo will increase without a corresponding increase in resource requirements.

c. Company training. The company commander and the crews benefit from the integration of simulators and simulations into their training. Without integrated use of simulators and simulations, aircraft readiness and funding drives unit training tempo.

(1) In the past, units would slow the training tempo to have funding available for major events, such as national training center (NTC) or joint readiness training center (JRTC) training rotations. With an integrated training vision, the training does not slow down. The commander has more options available to support the commander's plan while allowing the commander's Soldiers the opportunity to maintain complex aircraft systems.

(2) During a typical weekly training schedule, events like motor stables, rotor stables, sergeant's time, and readiness level (RL) training are included. Windows for simulator and simulations training to support the overall training plan are integrated throughout the week. WARSIM, OneSAF, TSTT, CMS, and AVCATT-A are used by company commanders, platoon leaders, and standardization pilots (SPs) to prepare for live training.

(3) Crews work in the appropriate simulator or simulation to reinforce the live training conducted during the week or to prepare for the next week's training. While aircraft are being repaired and readied for the next mission, crews can train at nearly the same level of fidelity and stress. Units are able to train and maintain without compromising readiness.

d. Individual training. TADSS will never replace live training events. Aviators require a baseline of hands-on experience. This experience can be gained only through realistic training on actual equipment in tough, demanding conditions. This baseline, called situational experience, is the basis for individual success. Once this solid foundation of situational experience is established, we can begin to exploit the tremendous potential of simulators and simulations.

(1) Consider figure E-3 as an example. Aviators need time in their primary airframe's cockpit to fully develop air sense and understand the complexities of their particular airframe. The feel developed during this time is partially developed in a simulator (such as during initial aircraft qualifications). However, simulators cannot replace actual flight time.

(2) As the aviator's situational experience and understanding increase, other simulation tools can be used to supplement the aviator's baseline. If we can demonstrate certain mission profiles via a mission simulator or simulation, the overall situational experience of the aviator can grow. This is a key safety concept, especially considering the potential dangers that exist in most mission profiles. Those missions or events that cannot be realistically conducted in actual flight conditions (such as certain

emergency procedures, selected weapons engagements, specific weather conditions) must be conducted in either virtual or constructive simulations.

(3) As the aviator matures, the complexities of modern mission profiles and drills require training that can be replicated to exacting standards or rehearsed to validate certain drills or missions. This is when simulations and simulators can assist units directly in increasing combat readiness. We also must develop those senior aviators who will lead aviation forces in future engagements and missions. The only way to hone their skills is by placing them in a training environment where they can experience the most demanding missions possible. Simulations are a means of doing so.

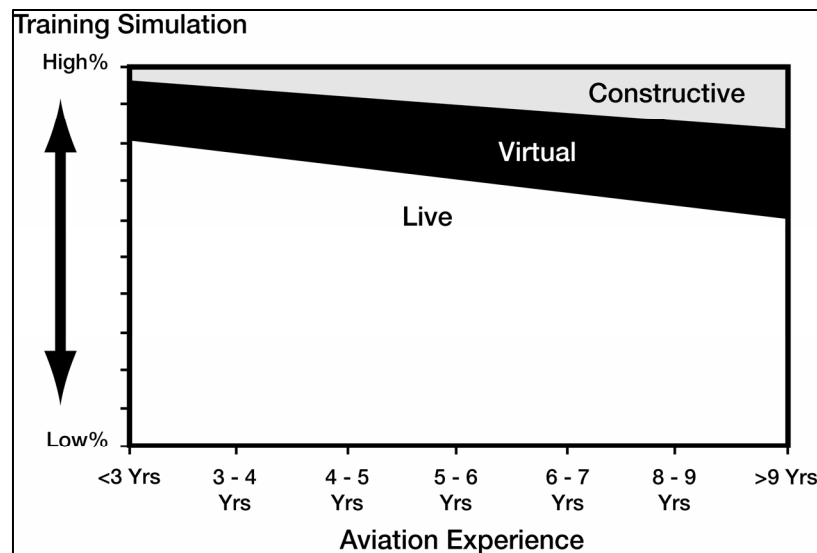


Figure E-3. Example of an aviator experience and simulation training

**E-4. SIMULATIONS IN COMMAND AND CONTROL TRAINING.** The Army's command and control (C2) training simulations are computer-driven simulations that help train commanders and their staffs. Most of these simulations place C2 elements in a combat-like environment that stimulates Decisionmaking, command and staff interaction, and staff coordination. In a simulation-driven exercise, the participating commanders and staffs (the trainees or training audience) may operate in CPs or TOCs at field locations. Specifically, C2 training simulations—

- Assist units in preparing for external evaluations while minimizing costs and resources.
- Exercise and evaluate internal staff training and unit SOPs.
- Aid units in developing an awareness of the lethality and complexity of the modern battlefield.
- Provide a forum to evaluate written material and verbal communication processes between units, vertically and horizontally.
- Provide feedback to measure situational responses and staff ability to develop alternative course of action (COA).

**E-5. SIMULATIONS AND SIMULATORS AVAILABLE FOR BATTALION AND BELOW TRAINING**

a. The family of simulations (FAMSIM).

(1) The Army FAMSIM consists of a proponent-approved group of simulations. These simulations are for training unit commanders and battle staffs in command post exchanges (CPXs) and leader development training simulations. The overall objective for FAMSIM is to continue evolutionary enhancements to ensure that the simulations remain relevant. Current objectives are to give commanders the ability to train subordinate commanders and staffs from platoon through corps. Subordinate

commanders and staffs are trained to synchronize all the warfighting functions under conditions that closely replicate the battlefield. Each corps and division will be able to conduct home station CPXs for a variety of theaters and scenarios—integration of heavy, light, aviation, and special operations forces. The six fielded simulations in FAMSIM are—

- Janus.
- Brigade/battalion battle simulation.
- Corps battle simulation.
- Tactical simulation.
- Combat service support training simulation system (CSSTSS).

(2) The FAMSIM members are effective training tools when their capabilities are matched with the targeted echelons and trainees. FAMSIM members are normally used to support training as outlined in figure E-4. Janus, Spectrum, and brigade/battalion battle simulation (BBS) (discussed below) are most appropriate for battalion and below training.

<b>Simulation</b>	<b>Training Audience</b>
TACSIM	Intelligence staffs at all echelons in the joint and combined communities, including analysts.
Janus	Platoon leaders to brigade/regiment commanders and staffs.
BBS	Battalion and brigade/regiment commanders and staffs (company commanders secondary).
CBS	Division to echelons above corps (EAC) commanders and staffs (brigade commanders secondary).
CSSTSS	CSS commanders and staffs from battalion to EAC.

**Figure E-4. FAMSIM training audiences**

(a) Janus. Janus is a low-cost, flexible, interactive, event-driven war-gaming simulation used to train platoon and company-level commanders. It also is used to train battalion and brigade/regiment staffs. As a staff trainer, Janus provides an environment requiring detailed interaction between the commander and S2/S3. During this detailed interaction, they develop and execute the tactical plan. Commanders must apply sound warfighting principles and achieve full synchronization of the warfighting functions to fight a successful Janus battle.

(b) Brigade/battalion battle simulation. BBS is designed as a low-cost training simulation. It gives maneuver brigade and battalion commanders and their battle staffs an opportunity to practice decisionmaking skills in a realistic, multi-threat, time-stressed combat environment. They must be able to develop, correlate, and assess large quantities of tactical and logistics data. They must be able to formulate situational estimates and make immediate decisions in C2 and synchronize combat, CS, and CSS assets. BBS supports training of combat maneuver commanders and the staffs at brigade/regiment and battalion levels. Company commanders, CS, and CSS units also receive valuable secondary training as part of any BBS driven CPX.

(3) Future developments. The major development effort for FAMSIM is WARSIM 2000. WARSIM 2000 will exploit new technology to enable CPs at all echelons to train in a realistic, distributed interactive simulation (DIS) compliant environment. The increased realism of WARSIM 2000 over existing models will allow units to synchronize across each operating system in-depth. WARSIM 2000's design allows warfighting CPs to interact with the simulation using TOE equipment to train in the field, not in simulation centers. WARSIM 2000 also will be capable of depicting a joint and combined environment across the operational continuum.

b. Other Army simulations/simulators.

(1) Simulation networking-trainer. SIMNET was a joint Army/Defense Advanced Research Projects Agency (DARPA) project. It exploited the ability of computer technology to transfer data streams across networks containing large numbers of simulators with real-time update of all simulators in the network. Simulation network-trainer (SIMNET-T) trains combat units at the crew through battalion

echelons. Existing simulators are in the form of reconfigurable helicopter simulators, M-1 tanks, and infantry fighting vehicles. Emulation of artillery, engineer, dismounted infantry, AD, and CSS also exists. The follow-on systems are the combined arms tactical trainers (CATT).

(2) The CATT concept. This is a simulation concept that links the training requirements of several functional areas to form a combined arms virtual battlefield. The close combat tactical trainer (CCTT) and the AVCATT-A are the first components in this concept. The training audience for this concept consists of crew, company, and battalion elements.

(a) CATT supports units as they work on fundamentals that directly or indirectly support their METLs. These fundamentals include battle drills, tactical maneuvers, combat engagements, communications, SOPs, synchronization of unit and supporting elements' activities and interface, and fire support coordination. Used in a preexercise situation, the CATT can help units gain higher levels of proficiency prior to field training. As a postexercise medium, CATT can hone skills from the field and limit skill degradation between field training opportunities. When this concept is totally operational, the combat trainers that will be part of CATT are—

- CCTT.
- AVCATT-A.
- Fire Support Combined Arms Tactical Trainer (FSCATT).
- Air Defense Combined Arms Tactical Trainer (ADCATT).
- Engineer Combined Arms Tactical trainer (ENCATT).

(b) When networked, the CATT family of simulators will permit units to conduct combined arms training. When the systems are used separately with the workstations representing other warfighting functions, units will be able to train in a combined arms environment. As each follow-on CATT manned simulator is fielded, a semiautomatic forces (SAF) component is replaced by that manned simulator. The components of most significance to aviation training are the CCTT and the AVCATT-A.

(c) Close combat tactical trainer. CCTT is a collective training system. In this system, armor and mechanized infantry units man full-crew simulators to conduct unit training in a combined arms environment. CCTT has a great deal of flexibility to support the commander's training intent and exercise design. It can stretch to accommodate a battalion or task force training exercise when leaders are in the trainers and subordinate vehicles are represented by computer generated forces that report and shoot. Commanders must exercise normal C2 of these forces.

- CCTT consists of networked vehicle simulator manned-modules, SAF, combat support workstations, computer networks and protocols, and AAR systems. CCTT manned-modules consist of the M1A1, M1A2, M2/3A2, fire support team-vehicle (FIST-V), M113A3, high mobility multipurpose wheeled vehicle (HMMWV), and dismounted Soldier. These manned-modules are high fidelity simulators. These simulators require individuals and crews to perform their respective tasks correctly to accomplish their collective missions.
- SAF have the capacity to create a variety of OPFOR and BLUFOR vehicles and units with which units can train. SAF entities exhibit highly realistic behaviors. They can be tailored to varying levels of competence. The components of this system combine to create a highly complex synthetic battlefield on which Soldiers can conduct training in a combined arms environment. The system allows unit commanders to train collective tasks in a variety of virtual environments (day, night, and varying limitations on visibility). The AVCATT-A can be integrated with the CCTT to provide combined arms training for aviators with their ground counterparts manning the virtual simulators of the CCTT.

(d) AVCATT-A. The AVCATT-A is a modular suite of reconfigurable aviation warfighting platforms, which is driven by software that creates a virtual battlefield. It provides a realistic, high-intensity, task-loaded combat environment. This combat environment is composed of attack/reconnaissance, and lift aircraft platforms; SAF work stations; aviation mission planning system (AMPS); AAR capability; and battalion level staff work stations. AVCATT can be tailored to specific unit needs (such as mission planning and rehearsal and collective task training) through use of DIS protocols and tactical simulation interface units (TSIUs). AVCATT is an aviation-specific system. It is designed to complement and function together with the CATT family of virtual-reality simulators. It provides the third

dimension of maneuver on the virtual battlefield. AVCATT supports institutional, organizational and sustainment training for aviation units worldwide.

## **E-6. UNIT SIMULATIONS TRAINING STRATEGY**

a. Incorporating simulations into the training plan. The commander and staff determine how simulations are incorporated into a unit's training strategy. Chapter 3 of this mission training plan (MTP) outlines the training planning process. It links the organization's METL with subsequent execution and evaluation of training. A relatively centralized process, planning develops mutually supporting METL-based training at all levels within an organization. Thus, higher and lower command echelons may train simultaneously in the same exercise at different levels of realism based on participation. The commander and staff must determine who is to be trained, the specific tasks on which they need training, which simulation can provide that training, and the availability of the simulation and resources necessary to provide the required training. Guidance on simulation uses and capabilities can be found in *Training with Simulations: A Handbook for Commanders and Trainers* (National Simulation Center, January 1999). Guidance also can be found in simulation users' guides and from the experienced staff at simulation facilities. Simulation users' guides specify the actions necessary to plan and conduct simulation exercises by addressing most of the following items—

- Exercise organization.
- Key personnel resources and their primary responsibilities.
- Planning time lines.
- Development of the commander's training objectives.
- Assigned responsibilities for planning.
- Conduct of the exercise.

b. Selecting the proper command and control training simulation to meet training needs. When simulations are selected, they should be selected because they can assist the commander in achieving or maintaining task performance. They should not be selected if a more appropriate training vehicle is available.

(1) The commander should not get caught in a trap by thinking that simulations use equals training or that simulations can train everything well 100 percent of the time. Simulations do not train. They are merely training aids that allow the commander to practice certain tasks and skills in a scenario specifically developed to test them. In addition, simulations do not give a 100 percent replication of the real world. They can simulate a number of battlefield and operational conditions very well. However, most simulations are limited in imposing psychological stresses, a major factor on the battlefield and in the success of military operations.

(2) The assistance that simulations provide the commander is invaluable as long as the commander places the simulation experience into the overall development of the unit and its individual members. Tactical success in a C2 simulation exercise will not necessarily equate to tactical success on the battlefield.

(3) Simulations use can be broken down into leader development training and collective task training.

(a) The primary purpose of the leader development training is to develop the skills of an individual. Often this is accomplished in a formal educational setting designed to train and test individual skills. Some of the characteristics of this area of training are the following—

- Development of specific skills, knowledge, and attitudes.
- Some built-in flexibility for individual experimentation.
- Focused interaction between the trainer and trainee.
- Immediate individual feedback.

(b) The second area of simulation use, collective task training, is best incorporated in a unit setting where team-building is desired so collective task effectiveness can be improved. This is not to say that individual training does not occur here. However, by design the focus is on collective tasks rather than on individual leadership development or skills performance. Selecting the C2 simulation that provides the level of resolution needed is based primarily on the specific end use and focus of the



simulations. Figure E-5 shows the level, type, and echelon of trainee for each of the C2 simulations in the family of simulations.

(4) The following items should be taken into consideration when developing the unit simulation training strategy—

(a) Integrate into the overall training strategy during the training plan process.

(b) Determine which simulations would be beneficial to units with upcoming training events, such as external evaluation. The trainer must determine the echelon to train, the upcoming event requirements, and the simulation most likely to benefit this echelon when used as a train-up device. In developing a training strategy, one must answer the following questions:

- Who am I trying to train?
- What tasks am I trying to train?
- What conditions must be presented against which tasks are to be trained?
- What are the training objectives?
- What training tool will assist in meeting the training objectives?

(c) Determine which leaders and staff members must be trained. It is possible that they can receive training with other units, as well as specific opportunities for their unit.

<b>Leader Development Training* (Individual Skill Development)</b>	
<b>Trainees</b>	<b>Simulation</b>
Squad Leaders Crew Chiefs Platoon Leaders Company, and Battalion Commanders	Janus (excellent for S2 and S3 skill development, weak in CSS)
<b>Collective Task Training* (Team Building)</b>	
<b>Trainees</b>	<b>Simulation</b>
Company (Combat or CS)	BBS (Command and Staff Trainer, CPX, for all warfighting functions), Janus
Battalion (Combat or CS)	BBS (Command and Staff Trainer, CPX, Seminar Trainer)
Battalion (CSS)	CSSTSS (Command and Staff Trainer, CPX, Seminar Trainer)
Battalion and Brigade/Regiment (Combat or CS)	Janus (Command and Staff Trainer, but weak on CSS)
Brigade/Regiment (CSS)	BBS/CBS (Command and Staff Trainer, CPX, Seminar Trainer)
<b>DISCOM, COSCOM, TAACOM</b> Groups (CSS) (Corps and EAC)	CSSTSS (Command and Staff Trainer, CPX, Seminar Trainer)
Division Corps Echelons Above Corps (EAC) Joint and Multinational	CSSTSS/CBS (Command and Staff Trainer, CPX, Seminar Trainer)

**Figure E-5. Command and control simulation training applications**

(d) Review the higher commander's guidance to assure that the higher commander's intent is met. List each training activity and determine how sister units can assist and support training activities and receive secondary reinforcement in their skills in the process.

(e) Use simulation to complement live training. When a live training event cannot be conducted, simulations should be considered as an alternate.

**E-7. TRAINING IN PRACTICE.** An attack/reconnaissance helicopter unit is used in this conceptual example; however, this discussion is applicable to all types of aviation units. At the weekly company training meeting, the commander decides to plan a training session on the METL item *Conduct Close Combat Attack*. As part of the analysis, the commander identifies battle tasks that must be conducted to support the training. These battle tasks are—

- Prepare for operations.
- Move to and occupy a battle position/attack by fire position.
- Engage targets.
- Call for indirect fires.
- Employ close air support (CAS).
- Provide spot and status reports.
- Depart from a battle position/attack by fire position.
- Conduct rearm and refuel operations.

The commander realizes that the training plan must be supportable by qualified crews and a responsive maintenance flow. With this focus identified, the commander begins the training process as outlined in chapter 3 of this MTP. This process is discussed below as it relates to simulation training.

a. Plan the training. The commander conducts an initial assessment of the battle tasks to be trained and the tools available. This assessment is presented in figure E-6. The simulation/simulator tools rated with a 1 provide a high level of task replication and fidelity. Tools in this range also provide excellent visualization properties. A 2 rating indicates an adequate level of value, while a 3 rating indicates a low end support tool with several shortcomings that may detract from training efforts.

<b>Task</b>	<b>Janus</b>	<b>BBS</b>	<b>ModSAF</b>	<b>TSTT</b>	<b>CMS</b>	<b>AVCATT</b>
<b><i>Prepare for operations</i></b>	1	3	1	2	2	1
<b><i>Move to and occupy a battle position/attack by fire position</i></b>	2	3	1	3	2	1
<b><i>Engage targets</i></b>	3	3	3	2	2	1
<b><i>Call for indirect fires</i></b>	1	2	1	3	3	1
<b><i>Employ CAS</i></b>	1	3	1	3	3	1
<b><i>Provide spot and status reports</i></b>	2	3	2	2	2	1
<b><i>Depart from a battle position/attack by fire position</i></b>	2	3	1	3	2	1
<b><i>Conduct rearming and refueling operations</i></b>	2	2	2	3	2	1

**Figure E-6. Simulation/simulator training assessment**

(1) Task analysis.

(a) Prepare for operations. Janus and ModSAF provide excellent constructive simulations to review company TACSOPs and battle drills. Depending upon location, high-fidelity terrain databases of the home station may be acquired and used to portray the operation from start to finish. By using ModSAF, 3D fly-through reviews can be conducted. In some cases, terrain databases can be modified to replicate local landmarks, further heightening sensory cues. The terrain analysis capability of Janus and ModSAF provides graphical presentation of line of sight (LOS), intervisibility conditions, and maneuver

corridors. Threat forces can be portrayed and alternative scenarios, based upon unit battle drills, can be conducted. Other combined arms tasks that can be trained include call for fire, CAS, and air-ground maneuver coordination. AVCATT-A's virtual training environment encompasses all of the functionality specified for Janus and ModSAF; however, it is superior in its integrated approach to replicating a specific training environment. The key point concerning the use of simulations and simulators with this battle task is that they are tools that set the stage for the remaining tasks. Every aspect of how to prepare and conduct a mission can be viewed; a common understanding of the battlespace can be gained.

(b) Move to and occupy a battle position/attack by fire position. Simulators and simulations give the commander a tool to verify the common understanding of procedures the unit will follow during the execution of this task. By rehearsing this task in the constructive or virtual environment, the commander allows subordinate leaders the opportunity to plan and execute their portion of the mission before live execution. With minimal costs and resources, a short situational training exercise (STX) can be conducted. Platoon leaders and their crews can work at operator stations and conduct dry runs of the upcoming live mission. The commander can observe, validate, and lead the mission from a master control station that lets him observe the entire situation. Since this task involves the mechanics of flying, the CMS and AVCATT-A are the best tools to use for route orientation and visualization. The CMS uses a geotypical terrain database in contrast to a geospecific database; therefore, the unit will not be able to train on the same route it will fly in the live environment. In addition, the CMS is a stand-alone system that does not currently link with other training systems. AVCATT allows the integration of multiple cockpits on a common database. ModSAF also provides a 3D view; however, it does not allow a crew to operate the full array of systems they normally would use in flight. Janus' terrain database is excellent but does not allow 3D viewing.

(c) Engage targets. Rapid and efficient execution of target engagements is vital to a successful mission. Simulation flight missions cannot replicate completely the engagement of targets in a full fidelity tactical scenario. Factors like accurate OPFOR targets, comprehensive electronic warfare conditions, and battlefield clutter can be achieved only in a virtual simulator. CMS and AVCATT-A are the primary tools for training this task. AVCATT-A is interconnected with other cockpits and the OPFOR can be dynamically adjusted to meet the needs of the commander's training. TSTT permits gunners to conduct limited crew engagements; however, it cannot be linked for platoon or company operations. Constructive simulations (such as Janus and ModSAF) can be used to demonstrate target engagement priorities and procedures. They cannot, however, replicate individual aircraft engagement procedures.

(d) Call for indirect fires. The skills needed to integrate indirect fires during a mission are best supported using AVCATT or ModSAF. Janus also replicates indirect fires; it is an excellent tool to evaluate the current level of unit training. CMS and TSTT can be used to a limited extent but require numerous work-arounds. If crews execute calls for fire and subsequent adjustments to standard, the commander can tailor upcoming training to match that level of expertise.

(e) Employ close air support. The tools used for *call for indirect fires* also can be used with this task. In addition, airspace management issues can be fully replicated in the virtual environment and, to a lesser extent, in the constructive realm.

(f) Provide spot and status reports. Any of the simulators or simulations can support this task, but virtual systems are better suited for this training. Janus provides intelligence that normally would not be available to a crew. To add realism, crews could filter this information to the commander. While this may be an acceptable training tradeoff, crews are not provided the opportunity to track battle engagements and results accurately. Other factors like fuel and ammunition status are not simulated to the same fidelity in Janus as they are in AVCATT-A or CMS.

(g) Depart from a battle position/attack by fire position. The same tools used for *move to and occupy a battle position/attack by fire position* can be used to train this battle task.

(h) Conduct rearm and refuel operations. CSS operations are not replicated to a high fidelity in any current simulation or simulator designed for battalion training. BBS provides the best logistics play of any of the systems; however, it does not allow a crew to fly to a forward arming and refueling point (FARP) to rearm and refuel. The system tracks an icon moving to a CSS unit's location; however, it does not provide the fidelity to address specific issues normally found in a unit's SOP.

(2) Training guidance. The commander weighs the OPTEMPO of the unit and the availability of selected simulators and simulations. The identification and lock-in of resources several weeks before

execution gives the commander training tools (such as AVCATT-A, Janus, ModSAF, and TSTT). Armed with this analysis, the commander issues the training guidance to the unit as shown in figure E-7.

(a) The plan outlined illustrates a “crawl/walk/run” approach to training the task *Conduct Close Combat Attack*. Janus and ModSAF will be used to demonstrate how the mission should be executed. On Monday, the company conducts a complete review of the upcoming training. The digital playback capability of both constructive simulations allows training at a pace that supports unit needs. All aspects of the mission, as addressed in SOPs, can be accommodated.

(b) On Tuesday, the company conducts a rehearsal of the mission in the AVCATT-A. The commander reviews all missions and corrects any problem areas before expending live resources later that day. Particular focus during the AVCATT-A mission is on engaging targets with direct, indirect, and CAS fires. The afternoon mission is the walk portion of the training. Since the unit does not have home station instrumentation and a live OPFOR to conduct their training against, it performs as many aspects of the mission as possible with emphasis on moving to and leaving from battle positions.

(c) Wednesday is an in-depth review of training to date and retraining of selected tasks, if necessary. Emphasis is on preparing for the mission on Thursday night. The run portion of training starts on Thursday afternoon. Again, the unit conducts a full mission rehearsal in the AVCATT-A.

(d) On Thursday night, the commander leads the unit on the night execution of the mission. As mentioned earlier, the commander balances the execution of the mission with the tools available. During the night phase, emphasis is again placed on moving to and leaving from battle positions. Use of the AVCATT-A is stressed, since it provides a robust and dynamic threat environment.

(e) Friday is used to review the week’s training and to retrain crews as required.

<b>DAY</b>	<b>TIME</b>	<b>EVENT</b>	<b>TOOL</b>
<b>Monday</b>	1300-1700	Prepare for operations	Janus, ModSAF
<b>Tuesday</b>	0800-1200	Move to and depart from battle position (BP), engage targets, call for fire, employ CAS, provide reports	AVCATT-A, ModSAF
	1300-1700	Move to and depart from BP, engage targets, call for fire, employ CAS, provide reports	Aircraft
<b>Wednesday</b>	0800-1200	Review previous training, retrain tasks	Janus, ModSAF
	1300-1700	Prepare for operations	Janus, ModSAF
<b>Thursday</b>	1300-1700	Full-dress rehearsal for night mission	AVCATT-A, ModSAF
	2000-2400	Move to and depart from BP, engage targets, call for fire, employ CAS, provide reports	Aircraft
<b>Friday</b>	1300-1700	Review previous mission, retrain tasks	Janus, ModSAF

**Figure E-7. Example simulation training**

b. Train and certify leaders. Training with simulations and simulators requires all participants to have a solid working knowledge of how the systems operate. Platoon leaders and SPs must understand how each tool can be used to support their training needs. One of the aviators in the unit may be assigned the mission to become versed fully on the use of simulations and simulators for training; however, it is critical that all members work to achieve a comfortable level of familiarity with these systems. SPs cannot be the sole source of knowledge concerning these systems. If the unit does not commit itself to understanding these tools, the full benefit of using simulators and simulations will not be realized.

c. Reconnoiter the training sites. This is an important step that applies to the virtual and constructive realms. It is critical that the leadership of the unit visit the battle simulation center (BSC) to verify the availability of the systems and the terrain database. The BSC personnel can be an asset to support training as long as they are aware of requirements.

d. Issue the training plan. Issuing the training plan early allows the aviators to review it and prepare for the upcoming mission. It is critical that the commander fully explains the upcoming training and the commander's expectations.

e. Conduct rehearsals. The commander and platoon leaders must review the training for the week and validate the plan by reviewing all aspects with key personnel. The 1SG and SPs must understand their respective roles in the training. The 1SG ensures that all aircraft are ready for training, and the SPs validate individual training levels for all members and provide the commander recommendations concerning crew mix. Failure to rehearse and review the upcoming mission sets the stage for less than satisfactory training.

f. Execute training. Units train to achieve and maintain readiness. The amount and quality of work expended before this event will become evident as the training is conducted. Failure to plan adequately reduces the effectiveness of the training for the unit and expends resources needlessly.

g. Conduct an AAR. The commander's plan has AAR periods embedded. The use of AVCATT-A, Janus, and ModSAF allows high-fidelity reviews of the mission using digital playbacks.

h. Retrain (time permitting). Retraining is often neglected. Time and resources must be allocated to correct deficiencies identified during training events. The use of virtual simulators minimizes the expenditure of critical, high cost resources.

**This page intentionally left blank.**

## Appendix F

# Digital Annex

### F-1. GENERAL

a. This appendix is designed as a tool to introduce the Army Battle Command System (ABCS) with special emphasis on FBCB2 and its capabilities at the company/platoon/platform level. This is only a tool; it is not intended to replace applicable field manuals, technical manuals, or any other how-to publication. METT-TC will drive the use of FBCB2 on the battlefield. This appendix is not intended to teach Soldiers how to operate FBCB2 but rather how the system, when used correctly, is a command and control combat multiplier and how it interacts with other digital systems.

b. Digitization is the ongoing effort to integrate the Army's diversified battlefield operating systems into an information exchange network, while also enhancing the mission capabilities necessary in a multi-dimensional battle space. The 21<sup>st</sup> century battle space will be characterized by the effective use of information technology to mass the effects of dispersed firepower, rather than relying exclusively on the physical massing of weapons and forces that was the primary method employed in the past. Digitization will provide rapid sharing of enemy and friendly information among all forces within the battle space and it will enhance combat power by making combat forces more effective and survivable.

c. Digitization does not markedly change the way the unit plans and executes operations from a tactical perspective. However, digitized equipment, employed by highly trained and proficient Soldiers, enhances the unit's capabilities to conduct operations with greater lethality, survivability, and better command and control. The digitized unit has enhanced capability to maneuver against the enemy and employ direct and indirect-fire weapons systems. Digitization increases friendly and enemy situational data, reduces the risk of fratricide, and increases the accuracy of fires. In addition, digitization streamlines the battlefield planning process for the leader and allows an increased tempo of combat actions.

**F-2. ARMY BATTLE COMMAND SYSTEM.** ABCS is a component of the Army tactical command and control system (ATCCS). ABCS provides for the interface of brigade and below with division to corps. ABCS pushes and or pulls information to and or from ATCCS databases. ABCS is comprised of the maneuver control system (MCS), all source analysis system (ASAS), forward area air defense command and control, intelligence (FAAD C2I), advanced field artillery tactical data system (AFATDS), combat service support control system (CSSCS), and FBCB2. ABCS depends on FBCB2 to receive current blue force (friendly) and or red force (enemy) situational data and status information. All these systems have the capability to communicate with each other to provide the commander timely and accurate information enabling him to exercise C2 and make appropriate decisions. Each system is briefly addressed below:

a. MCS is the ABCS automated C2 system for the maneuver battlefield operating systems. MCS integrates the systems that comprise the ABCS. This integration improves the commander's maneuver abilities by providing enhanced and timely information, assisting in the direction and synchronization of subordinate and supporting units, and aids in the identification, analysis, comparison and selection of courses of action.

b. ASAS is the ABCS automation system for the intelligence battlefield operating systems located at battalion level and higher. ASAS aids in the decisionmaking process by rapidly processing large volumes of combat information and intelligence data from all input sources. It also assists in providing timely enemy assessments.

c. FAAD C2I is the ABCS automation system for the air defense battlefield operating systems. It provides automated processing and dissemination of air tracking data.

d. AFATDS is the ABCS automation system for the field artillery battlefield operating systems and is the successor to the tactical fire (TACFIRE) direction system. AFATDS supports the planning,

coordinating, control and execution of close support, counter fire, interdiction, deep operations and suppression of enemy air defense.

e. CSSCS is the ABCS automation system for the combat service support battlefield operating systems. It collects CSS information from subordinate units and consolidates the information for the commander's use in the decisionmaking process. CSSCS assists in determining the current and projected capabilities of a force based on the availability of logistical support.

f. FBCB2 is a digital, battle command information system that provides on-the-move, real-time command and control information to tactical combat arms, combat support and combat service support Soldiers and leaders. FBCB2 provides blue force and red force situational data down to the platform level. (Data that subordinate elements receive is based on filters established by higher headquarters.) blue force and red force data includes: the user's location, the location of other friendly forces, observed enemy locations, and all known battlefield obstacles. FBCB2 consists of—

- Software for embedded TOCs.
- Hardware and software for nonembedded air and ground platforms.
- ABCS Interfaces/Integration.
- Supporting communication systems (single channel ground air radio system [SINCGARS] and enhanced position location reporting system [EPLRS]).

### F-3. FBCB2 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

a. FBCB2 is a battle command information system designed for units performing missions at the tactical level. FBCB2 integrates with each of the warfighting functions providing seamless battle command capability with increased battlefield operational capabilities. FBCB2 provides the ability to receive and input status information provided by weapons systems, sensors, and support platforms (for example, vehicles) and visually displays the information. FBCB2 receives, develops, and distributes a common battlefield picture and prepares and distributes orders and graphics. FBCB2 capabilities include—

- Automatic exchange of digital information.
- Status information between ground and ground forces and ground and air forces.
- Rapid acquisition and correlation of information.
- Communication of target data to weapon platforms.
- On-board computer decision support processor.
- Real-time fusion and dissemination of the intelligence picture.
- Electronic dissemination of maps, overlays, and orders.
- Automated target hand-off among close combat ground, air, and fire support systems.
- Giving commanders the ability to:
  - Operate and maintain a digital database connection when away from their command posts.
  - Digitally control and monitor their subordinate unit's status and position.

b. FBCB2 receives data across the tactical internet (TI) via the internet controller (INC). The INC is a tactical router built into the SINCGARS. The EPLRS data radio and SINCGARS data or voice radio transmit and receive digital information between vehicles. Each FBCB2 derives its own location via the precision lightweight global positioning system (GPS) receiver (PLGR). Utilizing these interfaces, FBCB2 automatically updates and broadcasts its current location to all other FBCB2 and embedded battle command (EBC) platforms. EBC is a separate software package that enables FBCB2 platforms to share blue and or red situational data and C2 with battalion and brigade TOCs.

c. FBCB2 and other digital systems on the battlefield pass messages using the joint variable message format (JVMF). JVMF is a Department of Defense standardized message format. It prescribes uniform message formats for all branches of the armed services.



**F-4. FBCB2 ROLE BASED FUNCTIONALITY**

a. Different levels of leadership require unique demands of FBCB2. (Some positions require more C2 capability). FBCB2 is designed to provide functionality based upon its configured platform role. Roles are configured into one of the following four categories for functionality.

- Platform/wingman/squad leader.
- Platoon leadership.
- Company leadership.
- Battalion/brigade leadership/staff.

b. Some players do not cleanly fit into these roles. These unique players possess the highest level of functionality. This enables them to perform critical functions (such as network wide deletions of spot reports) normally reserved for a staff level role. Listed below are the current roles that do not fit into the typical groupings:

- Strikers.
- Scouts.
- Task force and brigade cavalry troop.
- Company TOCs.
- Military police platoons.

**F-5. FBCB2 SYSTEM SECURITY.** ABCS systems have or will have, in the future, security architecture. These security measures include firewalls, intrusion detection systems, in-line network encryptors, and host security. FBCB2 users are required to enter a password at the session manager screen login box before the battle command operations (BCOPS) map screen will appear. FBCB2 also has a "self destruct" button under the SysAdmin screen. This should only be selected in a real world combat scenario when there is a possibility the enemy will gain access to the computer. If the FBCB2 self destruct button is selected, all the information on the hard drive will be deleted. The hard drive will have to be reloaded in order for it to be operational. More stringent security measures are being, or have been, developed. Some of these include authentication requirements, message classification, role-based access according to material classification, and user and or security officer ability to disable the system.

**F-6. FBCB2 COMMON OPERATIONAL PICTURE.** The COP is a collection of data referenced to a geographical location and displayed on the screen of FBCB2. The primary pieces of the COP are Blue force, red force, terrain, and obstacles data and civilian activities of military concern. What the user actually sees depends on how the individual sets up the system. The COP is established through settings and filters. The COP settings tell the system how often to update the network with the platform's position. They also dictate how long both blue and red icons stay visible. The filters dialog box allows users to set which icons (unit type and echelon), overlays, labels, and geo-referenced graphics are displayed as part of the overall COP. Filter settings are a tool used to reduce screen clutter and simplify C2.

**F-7. FBCB2 HARDWARE DESCRIPTION.** The Appliqué + computer consist of hardware and software. The hardware consists of a computer processing unit (CPU), a display unit (DU), keyboard and interconnecting cables. The software consists of the Solaris operating system and the FBCB2 application software. Figure F-1 shows the basic components of the Appliqué + computer.



**Figure F-1. Appliqué + system**

a. CPU. The CPU (figure F-2) has a microprocessor and support chip-set compatible with Intel Pentium™. The processor is 200MHz, with 64-Megabytes dynamic random access memory and a 1.6 Gigabyte minimum hard disk drive cartridge. The hard drive is removable from the CPU without a tool. The power distribution portion of this equipment provides the voltage necessary to operate the CPU, the DU, and the keyboard.



**Figure F- 2. CPU**

b. Display unit. The DU (figure F-3) incorporates a flat-panel active matrix color liquid crystal display screen capable of displaying 256 colors. The screen is sunlight readable with a glare-reducing finish. Not all DUs have the eight-button function keys at the bottom of the screen. All displays have a touch screen that is touch activated with a finger or a nonmetallic stylus.



**Figure F- 3. Display unit**

c. Keyboard unit. The keypad is sealed with a rubber membrane for protection from the environment. The keys have adjustable back lighting for use at night. The keyboard (figure F-4) also has a mouse device that provides easy cursor navigation.



**Figure F-4. Keyboard**

## **F-8. DIGITAL BATTLE COMMAND**

a. The principles of command and control do not change with ABCS. Commanders still plan, direct and control the operations of their unit. FBCB2 improves situational awareness and enhances the commander's ability to make timely and accurate battlefield decisions by providing a timely picture of the contemporary operating environment (COE). One key benefit of FBCB2 is the COP. It allows the user to see the relationship of terrain, friendly forces, and enemy forces (if they are acquired and reported). Fighting on a digital battlefield requires mental agility that is acquired through realistic digital training.

b. FBCB2 provides C2 tools that assist leaders in the decisionmaking process. C2 data is defined as all data other than situational data. There are four categories of C2 digital messages:

- Alerts and warnings [example: CBRN reports, warnings of contaminated areas].
- Joint support information (interfaces with other branches of service).
- Combat reporting (example: Commanders SITREP).
- Mission planning information (example: OPORDs, FRAGOs).

**F-9. FREQUENCY MODULATED VERSUS DIGITAL.** Commanders should not rely on digital communications alone. Digitization does not eliminate the requirement for maps and frequency modulated (FM) communications. The decision to use FM versus FBCB2 depends on the COE and unit SOP. Some message traffic should be sent digitally followed with an FM alert directing recipients to check their message queues. Use free text messaging in the absence of clear FM communications to ensure that ambiguity is eliminated while conducting assigned tactical missions.

a. FM radios remain the primary means of communication after crossing the line of departure/line of contact (LD/LC) because they are more responsive, multiple stations can monitor the net and parties convey emotion during the transmission—a critical tool in assessing and understanding the battlefield situation. Light discipline in night operations may dictate the use of FM communications. For example, aviation brigade soldiers may go to blackout FBCB2 operations and send SPOT reports via FM means to a vehicle (usually the brigade CP which is stationary and postured to use the FBCB2 display while maintaining light discipline). The CP could generate and manage FBCB2 SPOT reports based on the FM radio SPOT reports and updates.

- b. FM radio is recommended as the primary means of communication for:
- Initial contact and/or SPOT reports.
  - Coordinating operations when in contact or moving.
  - Call for fire (CFF) on targets of opportunity; particularly moving targets.
  - Subsequent adjustment of fires on planned and unplanned targets.
  - Urgent medical evacuation (MEDEVAC) requests.
  - Enemy air.

#### **F-10. FBCB2 FORMATS**

a. FBCB2 provides doctrinal formats for creating all required operation orders. Some considerations when using these formats are listed below.

- b. Each field has a limited number of characters available. The field limitations are—
- Situation – 4,000.
  - Mission – 2,000.
  - Commander's Intent – 2,000.
  - Execution – 6,000.
  - Comments – 200.
  - Service Support – 6,000.
  - Command and Signal – 2,000.
  - Annexes – 6,000 each.

---

**Note.** Currently, FBCB2 does not have a print capability. FBCB2 can save an order to the system hard drive but not to a floppy disk. The larger the order, the longer it takes to transmit. Recommend when sending an order of any kind, user's send the five-paragraph order as one and send each annex separately. If desired, the order can be cut and pasted into one order once received. Keep in mind; if there is a requirement to disseminate the order, it is easier to keep it in sections as it was received.

**Note.** Commanders should provide written orders when possible. The effectiveness of face-to-face order briefs and rehearsals cannot be replaced by digital orders. Passing FRAGOs or WARNO via FBCB2 is highly recommended.

---

**F-11. GRAPHICS AND OVERLAYS.** FBCB2 assists in C2 through the creation and transmission of digital graphics. Digital graphics provide excellent graphical control measures applied in battle space management. Simplicity is the rule for effective digital graphics. Simplicity reduces file size, screen clutter, transmission time and the volume of digital traffic on the Internet (TI). The size of the file is important when sending over the TI. Users may calculate the size of the overlay while creating it by periodically checking and recalculating the size on the “overlay toolbox creation tab.”

---

**Note.** Users may find graphics easier to view with the background map color faded.

---

#### **F-12. UNIT TASK ORGANIZATION/UNIT TASK REORGANIZATION**

a. FBCB2 has the capability to re-task organize units, battalion size and lower, as mission dictates. When the unit task organization/unit task reorganization (UTO/UTR) is changed, the associated elements of the TI are changed accordingly.

b. The events triggering a UTO change should be addressed in the OPORD and unit SOP. The battalion TOC should send an FM alert, followed by a free text message, prior to a UTO change. The S3 should build and the brigade commander approves the different UTO's. Preprogrammed UTOs should be part of the S3's precombat checks and precombat inspections.

c. ONCE a UTO change is directed all platforms will reboot their FBCB2 and reenter the digital net. When reentering the digital net the affected units and platforms must manually change FM hopsets as required. There will be no need to change radio set identification (RSID) on EPLRS equipped platforms. As FBCB2 reboots, it will make its own internal corrections to appropriate message routing and database tables. Units should verify FBCB2 UTO fidelity by conducting C2 digital radio checks.

**F-13. UNICAST AND RELIABLE MULTICAST MESSAGES.** C2 messages are sent either unicast (platform to platform) or multicast (multiple platforms). FBCB2 automatically defaults to multicast.

---

**Note.** If the message is more than 576 bytes it is sent unicast.

---

a. Nicast is a point-to-point transmission that is sent on a route via the net control station (NCS). Even though it reliably sends large messages, unicast is slow because the messages are sent one at a time.

b. Multicast messaging quickly creates a simultaneous network “broadcast” to every selected platform. Transparent to the user, the FBCB2 platform checks the message header and determines if it is addressed to that platform. If the header does not contain the platform address, the message is discarded. If the header does contain the platform address, the message is forwarded to the flash immediate priority routine (FIPR) queue.

c. Also transparent to the user is FBCB2's automatic message acknowledgement from the receiving platform to the sender's platform. (FBCB2 will send the message unicast if no acknowledgement is received after three multicast attempts.)

**F-14. FBCB2 MESSAGING.** Message handling procedures should be directed by unit SOPs. Standard message management procedures reduce confusion and extra work. Message management includes:

- Message/overlay naming conventions.
- Filing procedures.
- Message precedence.
- Message use.

a. FBCB2 provides two ways to send messages, the long JVMF and the short/combat JVMF message format. The short/combat message is an abbreviation of the long format message and is designed to allow the user to quickly create messages with only key information.

b. There is a relationship between the long form and the short/combat form messages. When selected from the long form creation dialog box, the following messages will default to the short/combat message input screen:

- MEDEVAC.
- CFF.
- Check fire.
- End of mission and surveillance.
- On call fire command.
- Subsequent adjust.
- CBRN 1.
- SPOT report.
- Situation report.

---

**Note.** If a user wishes to fill in more information, the long form button can be selected from the menu and all data that is filled out will be transferred to the long form message.

---

c. The long form message affords the user more detail when known or required. Role based functionality provides different message creation capabilities based on the users' role or echelon (all roles can receive/read incoming messages). Users can preview messages in textual format while in the process of creating or editing the long form message.

d. When selected from the long form creation dialog box, the following messages will default to the application/threaded message input screen:

- Logistics (LOG) task order (also accessed from the Apps screen).
- LOG task status.
- LOG task sync.
- Logistics report (also accessed from the Apps screen).
- Personnel report (also accessed from the Apps screen).
- Situation report (SITREP).
- CFF.

**F-15. MAINTENANCE AND SYSTEM SUPPORT.** The FBCB2 maintenance concept is intended to mirror the Army maintenance system. It is comprised of 4 levels that include operator, unit, direct support, general support, and depot. Users have multiple documents available to assist in maintaining and operating the Appliqué + system. These are:

- Appliqué + user's pocket guide.
- Unit maintenance manual.
- Equipment operators manual.
- System administrators manual.

a. System support. FBCB2 has easily accessible help capabilities such as balloon help, context sensitive help, and online software users manual (SUM).

b. System administrative (SysAdmin) support. The systems administration button (accessible from the session manager screen) gives the user access to certain tools in the software. The user will sign in under "SysAdmin" by using the password FBCB2".

(1) The first screen shown is the miscellaneous tab. From here, the operator can clear queues and logs. (This is recommended if your disk space is over 75 percent used.) One indicator that the disk space is nearly full, messages will be slow to open.

(2) The user can also clean the INC (Router) under SysAdmin. From SysAdmin, the user should select "Tools>Clear Router". After the INC (Router) has been cleared, the user should select "Reload Router".

c. Configure system tab. The configure system tab is also under the SysAdmin function. This tab allows you to easily configure the hard drive to the desired role. The operator must know what unit role

number (URN) is associated with their platform. Each platform has its own unique URN, which is basically its address in the software. An example URN is 1000130 with the associated Role PL/1/A/1-22 (Platoon Leader, 1st Platoon, A Company, 1-22 Infantry). Once the user has entered the URN, the system will verify with the user that it is the correct URN and reboot itself. Users should never exchange hard drives without reconfiguring the URN. (For example, the commanders' vehicle is down for maintenance resulting in another platform becoming the command vehicle. The user takes the hard drive and inserts it into this new platform because of the needed files and overlays. Even though the hard drive is showing their URN, the user should reconfigure it.) Simply stated, this associates the INC on the new platform with the commander's URN. The INC realizes that a different URN is receiving data through it.

d. Tools tab. The tools tab contains functions such as, set time, set mouse; calibrate touch screen and communications tools. The communications tools function allows the operator to load, clear, reboot the INC and emulate the EPLRS user readout.

e. Precombat checks (PCCs). PCCs are a critical part of a unit's combat readiness. PCCs should be standardized and part of unit SOP. Some suggested PCCs for a digital unit are:

- Message folders established.
- Message address groups established.
- Message transmission settings for all message types set (default settings should not be deleted).
- Correct blue and red filter settings.
- Correct "own settings."
- Correct GPS, SINCGARS and or EPLRS fills and settings.
- MEDEVAC call signs and frequency set in "platform setting dialog box."
- Perform a communications check by verifying your server. (Users should also send a message with a machine acknowledgement required to verify the net is working properly.)
- Clear all queues and logs.

#### **F-16. TACTICAL INTERNET OVERVIEW**

a. The TI systems are designed to provide real time, shared situational data. It consists of tactical radios linked with routers using commercial protocols that allow digital systems to inter-operate in a dynamic battlefield environment. The TI provides the reliable, seamless communications connectivity to deliver situational and C2 data to digital systems.

b. The TI is comprised of 2 echelons, warfighter information network terrestrial (WIN-T) (or upper TI) and the lower TI. Company and below operate on the lower TI. WIN-T passes situational data and C2 between command posts at battalion level and higher.

c. The lower TI provides digital communications capability for brigade and below. It is comprised of three primary components: EPLRS provides data only communication (for example, platform position information, network coordination and data communication) capability. SINCGARS provides data only and voice/data communications capability. The INC provides routing and interface capability.

#### **F-17. DISMOUNTED SOLDIER SYSTEM UNIT**

a. The dismounted soldier system unit (DSSU) is comprised of the helmet mounted display, hand held control unit, PLGR, video capture card, and the hand held SINCGARS radio. A sub-component is the video camera—Appliqué for the dismounted Soldier.

b. The DSSU is normally issued to squad leaders and above, or to individual Soldiers when the mission requires it. The DSSU is connected to a handheld SINCGARS radio and communicates with other DSSU's and V2/3 computers using digital burst transmissions. Using the DSSU, a leader or Soldier can see their own position on a digital map, where other elements in the company are in relation to their own position and access operational graphics for the mission. The DSSU provides critical information simultaneously to each platoon/squad leader in the company. Using the V2/3 and DSSU the company commander and the subordinate leaders can monitor their Soldiers' locations digitally without actually seeing them. The commander knows precisely where all of the platoons are in relation to one another

and the enemy. Digital maps and overlays contained in the V2/3 and DSSU provide the company with a COP of the terrain and all relevant operational graphics.

c. Like the V2/3, the DSSU can originate, process, and receive tactical and support status reports (SITREPs and operations overlays, and so forth) and can send and receive spot reports, CBRN reports, obstacle reports, position updates, and situation reports with accompanying graphics. It also has interconnectivity with the company headquarters and some assets within the battalion main command post.

**F-18. MORTAR FIRE CONTROL SYSTEM.** Digitized fire control system down to gun level provides GPS and collimator on guns thus eliminating need to optically lay with aiming circle. Mortar fire control system (MFCS) is interoperable with AFATDS. MFCS requires a wireless local area network (LAN) from guns to vehicles.

**F-19. DIGITAL RECONNAISSANCE SYSTEM.** Digital reconnaissance system (DRS) is a hand-held data collection device used by the reconnaissance section to record terrain data that is then transferred to the terrain database in the DTSS. (DTSS is located at division or higher and provides the digital terrain data and terrain visualization to support mission planning, rehearsal and execution.)

**F-20. DIGITAL JAMMING.** Currently, with the capability of SINCGARS frequency hopping, digital jamming rarely occurs. If the enemy has the capability to jam a barrage of frequencies (the full spectrum) in SINCGARS, then no digital equipment will operate. FBCB2 is as secure as the medium used to transmit the data.



# Glossary

## SECTION I—ABBREVIATIONS AND ACRONYMS

- (s) Plural Suffix** plural suffix – normally found at the end of an acronym (for example, AAR[s], BTC[s], kg[s], LTA[s], MA[s], MES[s], mg[s], SOP[s], and so forth)
- \* (Leader Task Step)** Asterisk (\* = Indicates a leader task step)
- A/C** aircraft
- A2C2** Army airspace command and control
- AA** assembly area
- AAA** antiaircraft artillery
- AAR** after-action review
- AATF** air assault task force
- AATFC** air assault task force commander
- ABCS** aircraft battlefield countermeasures and survivability; Army Battle Command System
- AC** Active component
- ACO** airspace control order
- AD** Air Defense
- ADA** Air Defense Artillery
- ADC** area damage control
- ADCATT** air defense combined arms tactical trainer
- Admin** administrative
- AFATDS** Advanced Field Artillery Tactical Data System
- AFTP** additional flight training periods
- AG** Adjutant General
- AGES** air—ground engagement system
- AGSE** aviation ground support equipment
- AH** attack helicopter
- AHB** assault helicopter battalion
- AI** area of interest
- AKO** Army knowledge online
- ALOC** administrative and logistics operations center
- ALSE** aviation life support equipment
- ALSS** advanced logistic support site
- AMB** air mission brief
- AMC** aviation maintenance company
- AMO** aircraft maintenance officer
- AMPS** Aviation Mission Planning System
- ANVIS** Aviator's Night Vision Imaging System

<b>AO</b>	area of operations
<b>AOAP</b>	Army oil analysis program
<b>AOR</b>	area of responsibility
<b>AR</b>	Army regulation
<b>ARAT</b>	Army reprogramming analysis team
<b>ARB</b>	attack reconnaissance battalion
<b>ARMS</b>	aviation resource management survey
<b>ARNG</b>	Army National Guard
<b>ARNGUS</b>	Army National Guard of the United States
<b>ARTEP</b>	Army training and evaluation program
<b>ASAM</b>	aviation safety action message
<b>ASAS</b>	All Source Analysis System
<b>ASAS-L</b>	All Source Analysis System-Light
<b>ASAT</b>	automated systems approach to training
<b>ASB</b>	aviation support battalion
<b>ASC</b>	aviation support company
<b>ASE</b>	aircraft survivability equipment
<b>ASET</b>	Aircraft survivability equipment trainer
<b>ASI</b>	additional skill indicator
<b>ASO</b>	aviation safety officer
<b>AT</b>	Army training
<b>ATACM</b>	Army Tactical Missile System
<b>ATB</b>	annual training brief
<b>ATCCS</b>	Army Tactical Command and Control System
<b>ATIA</b>	Army training information architecture
<b>ATIA-M</b>	Army training information architecture–migrated
<b>ATM</b>	aircrew training manual
<b>ATO</b>	air tasking order
<b>ATP</b>	aircrew training program
<b>ATS</b>	air traffic services
<b>AUEL</b>	automated unit equipment list
<b>AUTL</b>	Army universal task list
<b>AVCATT</b>	aviation combined arms tactical trainer simulator
<b>AVMED</b>	aviation medicine
<b>AVN</b>	aviation
<b>AWACS</b>	Airborne Warning and Control System
<b>AWOL</b>	absent without leave
<b>AXP</b>	ambulance exchange point
<b>BAMO</b>	battalion aviation maintenance officer
<b>BBS</b>	brigade and battalion simulation

<b>BCBST</b>	brigade command and battle staff training
<b>BCOPS</b>	battle command operations
<b>BCT</b>	brigade combat team
<b>BCOC</b>	base cluster operations center
<b>BDA</b>	battle damage assessment
<b>BDAR</b>	battle damage assessment repair
<b>BFACS</b>	battlefield functional area control system
<b>BF</b>	battle fatigue
<b>BFT</b>	blue force tracker
<b>BLTM</b>	battalion level training mode
<b>BMO</b>	battalion maintenance officer
<b>BP</b>	battle position
<b>BPT</b>	battle position team
<b>BSC</b>	battle simulation center
<b>BSX</b>	battle simulation exercise
<b>C2</b>	command and control
<b>C3</b>	command, control, and communication
<b>C4</b>	command, control, communications, and computers
<b>C4I</b>	command, control, communications, computers, and intelligence
<b>C4 systems</b>	command, control, communications, and computer systems
<b>C4ISR</b>	command, control, communications, computers, intelligence, surveillance, and reconnaissance
<b>CADST</b>	civil affairs detachment support team
<b>CALFEX</b>	combined arms live fire exercise
<b>CALL</b>	Center for Army Lessons Learned
<b>CAS</b>	close air support
<b>CASEVAC</b>	casualty evacuation
<b>CATS</b>	combined arms training strategy
<b>CATT</b>	combined arms tactical trainer
<b>CAX</b>	computer assisted exercise
<b>CBRNE</b>	chemical, biological, radiological, nuclear and high yield explosives
<b>CBRN</b>	chemical, biological, radiological, and nuclear (formerly NBC)
<b>CBS</b>	Corps battle simulation
<b>CC</b>	control center
<b>CCA</b>	close combat attack
<b>CCD</b>	camouflage, concealment, and deception
<b>CCIR</b>	commander's critical information requirements
<b>CCP</b>	casualty collection point; consolidation and containerization point
<b>CCR</b>	closed-circuit refueling
<b>CCTT</b>	close combat tactical trainer

<b>CDM</b>	chemical downwind message
<b>CDR</b>	commander
<b>CD-ROM</b>	compact disk-read only memory
<b>CE</b>	communications–electronics
<b>CF</b>	correlation factor; covering force
<b>CFF</b>	call for fire
<b>CFX</b>	command field exercise
<b>CFZ</b>	critical friendly zone
<b>CHS</b>	combat health support
<b>CIP</b>	command inspection program
<b>CIS</b>	Command Information System
<b>CJCS</b>	Chairman, Joint Chiefs of Staff
<b>CMDS</b>	Counter Measure Dispenser System
<b>CMO</b>	Civil-Military Operations
<b>CMS</b>	countermeasure set
<b>CMWS</b>	Common Missile Warning System
<b>CO</b>	commanding officer
<b>COA</b>	course of action
<b>COE</b>	contemporary operation environment
<b>COL</b>	Colonel (United States Army)
<b>COLT</b>	combat observation lasing team
<b>COMEX</b>	communications exercise
<b>COMSEC</b>	communication security
<b>CONPLAN</b>	contingency plan
<b>COOP</b>	continuity of operations
<b>COP</b>	common operational picture
<b>COSCOM</b>	corps support command
<b>CP</b>	command post
<b>CPT</b>	Captain (United States Army)
<b>CPR</b>	cardiopulmonary resuscitation
<b>CPX</b>	command post exercise
<b>CRT</b>	combat repair team
<b>CS</b>	combat support
<b>CSM</b>	command sergeant major
<b>CSS</b>	combat service support
<b>CSSCS</b>	Combat Service Support Control System
<b>CSSTSS</b>	Combat Service Support Training Simulation System
<b>CTA</b>	common table of allowances
<b>CTC</b>	combat training center
<b>CTG</b>	command training guidance

<b>CTT</b>	common task test
<b>CTX</b>	combined training exercise
<b>DA</b>	Department of the Army
<b>DA Form</b>	Department of the Army form
<b>DAP</b>	decontaminating apparatus, portable
<b>DARPA</b>	Defense Advanced Research Projects Agency
<b>DART</b>	downed aircraft/recovery team (JP 1-02)
<b>DC</b>	dislocated civilian
<b>DD</b>	Department of Defense
<b>DD Form</b>	Department of Defense Form
<b>DE</b>	directed energy
<b>DEW</b>	direct energy weapon (or warfare)
<b>DEPEX</b>	deployment exercise
<b>DIS</b>	distributed interactive simulation
<b>DISCOM</b>	division support command
<b>Div</b>	division
<b>DMX</b>	decisionmaking exercise
<b>DPICM</b>	dual purpose improved conventional munitions
<b>DOD</b>	Department of Defense
<b>DOTD</b>	Directorate of Training and Doctrine
<b>DOTMLPF</b>	doctrine, organization, training, materiel, leadership and education personnel, and facilities
<b>DRS</b>	Digital Reconnaissance System
<b>DS</b>	direct support
<b>DS2</b>	decontaminating solution #2
<b>DSSU</b>	dismounted Soldier system unit
<b>DTC</b>	data transfer cartridge
<b>DTSS</b>	Digital Topographic Support System
<b>DTX</b>	digital training exercise
<b>DZ</b>	drop zone (aviation)
<b>DU</b>	display unit
<b>EA</b>	electronic attack (formerly ECM)
<b>EAC</b>	echelons above corps
<b>EBC</b>	embedded battle command
<b>ECCM</b>	electronic counter-countermeasures
<b>ECM</b>	electronic countermeasures
<b>EOA</b>	enemy/threat courses of action
<b>EDRE</b>	emergency deployment readiness exercise
<b>EEFI</b>	essential elements of friendly information
<b>EFMC</b>	electronic field medical chart – automated digitized version of the field medical chart

<b>EFST</b>	essential fire support tasks
<b>EID</b>	electronic identification
<b>ENCATT</b>	engineer combined arms tactical trainer
<b>EO</b>	electro-optical
<b>EOC</b>	emergency operations center
<b>EOD</b>	explosive ordnance disposal
<b>EOMS</b>	Electro-optical missile sensor
<b>EPLRS</b>	Enhanced Position Location Reporting System
<b>EP</b>	electronic protection (formerly ECCM)
<b>EPW</b>	enemy prisoner of war
<b>ES</b>	electronic support (formerly ESM)
<b>ETA</b>	estimated time of arrival
<b>ETM</b>	extension training material
<b>EW</b>	electronic warfare
<b>FAAD</b>	forward area air defense
<b>FAC</b>	forward air controller
<b>FAMSIM</b>	family of simulations
<b>FARE</b>	forward arming refueling equipment
<b>FARP</b>	forward arming and refueling point
<b>FBCB2</b>	Force XXI Battle Command Brigade and Below
<b>FCR</b>	fire control radar
<b>FCX</b>	fire coordination exercise
<b>FER</b>	final exercise report
<b>FIST-V</b>	fire support team-vehicle
<b>FLOT</b>	forward line of own troops
<b>FM</b>	field manual; frequency modulation (radio)
<b>FMC</b>	field medical card; fully mission capable
<b>FO</b>	forward observer
<b>FORSCOM</b>	forces command
<b>FPF</b>	final protective fires
<b>FPL</b>	final protective line
<b>FRAGO</b>	fragmentary order
<b>FRIES</b>	Fast Rope Insertion and Extraction System
<b>FS</b>	fire support
<b>FSB</b>	forward support battalion
<b>FSCATT</b>	fire support combined arms tactical trainer
<b>FSCL</b>	fire support coordination line
<b>FSE</b>	fire support element
<b>FSO</b>	fire support officer
<b>FST</b>	field sanitation team/forward surgical team (depends on use)

<b>FTS</b>	flight training simulator
<b>FTX</b>	field training exercise
<b>G1</b>	Assistant Chief of Staff, Personnel
<b>G2</b>	Assistant Chief of Staff, Intelligence
<b>G3</b>	Army or Marine Corps component operations staff officer (Army division or higher staff, Marine Corps brigade or higher staff [JP 1-02])
<b>G4</b>	Assistant Chief of Staff, Logistics
<b>G5</b>	Assistant Chief of Staff, Civil Affairs
<b>GAS</b>	ground-aided seeker
<b>GCCS-A</b>	Global Command and Control System-Army
<b>GO/NO-GO</b>	This is a pass-fail criterion of evaluation whereby the Soldier cannot be "partially correct." The Soldier either meets the standard or does not meet the standard.
<b>GPS</b>	Global Positioning System
<b>GS</b>	general support
<b>GSR</b>	ground surveillance radar
<b>GTA</b>	graphic training aid; ground to air
<b>HAZMAT</b>	hazardous materiel
<b>HHC</b>	headquarters and headquarters company
<b>HIS</b>	home station identifier
<b>HMMWV</b>	high mobility multipurpose wheeled vehicle
<b>HN</b>	host nation
<b>HPT</b>	high-payoff targets
<b>HQ</b>	headquarters
<b>HQDA</b>	Headquarters, Department of the Army
<b>hr</b>	hour
<b>HSS</b>	health service support
<b>HUD</b>	heads-up display
<b>HUMINT</b>	human intelligence
<b>HVT</b>	high-value targets
<b>IADS</b>	Integrated Automated Design System
<b>IATF</b>	individual aircrew training folders
<b>ID</b>	identification
<b>IDT</b>	Inactive duty training
<b>ID (M)</b>	infantry division (mechanized)
<b>IFF</b>	identification, friend, or foe
<b>IFRF</b>	individual flight records folder
<b>IMC</b>	instrument meteorological conditions
<b>IMINT</b>	imagery intelligence
<b>INC</b>	Internet controller
<b>IP</b>	instructor pilot
<b>IPB</b>	intelligence preparation of the battlefield

<b>IPC</b>	initial planning conference
<b>IR</b>	intelligence requirements
<b>ISOPREP</b>	isolated personnel report
<b>ISR</b>	individual school requirement
<b>ITEP</b>	individual training evaluation program
<b>ITO</b>	installation transportation officer
<b>IW</b>	information warfare
<b>JAAT</b>	joint air attack team
<b>JCS</b>	Joint Chiefs of Staff
<b>JIM</b>	joint, interagency and multinational
<b>JP</b>	joint publication
<b>JPN</b>	jam program number
<b>JRTC</b>	joint readiness training center
<b>J-SEAD</b>	joint suppression of enemy air defenses
<b>JSRC</b>	joint search and rescue center
<b>JTX</b>	joint training exercise
<b>KCC</b>	knowledge collaboration centers
<b>LAN</b>	local area network
<b>LC</b>	line of contact
<b>LCSS</b>	Lightweight Camouflage Screen System
<b>LCX</b>	logistics coordination exercise
<b>LD</b>	line of departure
<b>LD/LC</b>	line of departure is line of contact
<b>LFX</b>	live fire exercise
<b>LNO</b>	liaison officer
<b>LOC</b>	lines of communication
<b>log</b>	logistics
<b>LOGEX</b>	logistics exercise
<b>LOGPAC</b>	logistics package
<b>LOGSTAT</b>	logistics statistics
<b>LOI</b>	letter of instruction
<b>LOS</b>	line of sight
<b>LP</b>	listening post
<b>LRP</b>	logistic release point
<b>LRSD</b>	long-range surveillance detachment
<b>LTX</b>	lane training exercise
<b>LZ</b>	landing zone
<b>MA</b>	marshalling area
<b>MAC</b>	maintenance allocation chart
<b>MACOM</b>	major Army command



<b>MAJ</b>	Major (United States Army)
<b>MAPEX</b>	map exercise
<b>MCP</b>	maintenance collection point
<b>MCS</b>	maintenance control system, maneuver control system
<b>MDMP</b>	military decisionmaking process
<b>MEDCAP</b>	medical civilian-assistance program
<b>MEDEVAC</b>	medical evacuation
<b>METL</b>	mission essential task list
<b>METT-TC</b>	mission, enemy, terrain and weather, troops and support available, time available, and civil considerations
<b>MFCS</b>	Mortar Fire Control System
<b>MI</b>	military intelligence
<b>MIJI</b>	meaconing, interference, jamming, and intrusion
<b>MILES</b>	Multiple Integrated Laser Engagement System
<b>MLRS</b>	Multiple Launch Rocket System
<b>MMC</b>	materiel management center
<b>MO</b>	medical officer; movement order
<b>MOBEX</b>	mobilization exercise
<b>MOBPLAN</b>	mobilization plan
<b>MOC</b>	maintenance operational checks
<b>MOGAS</b>	motor gas
<b>MOPP</b>	mission-oriented protective posture
<b>MOPP4</b>	mission-oriented protective posture level 4 (mask, protective suit, boots, and gloves worn)
<b>MOS</b>	military occupational specialty
<b>MOU</b>	memorandum of understanding
<b>MP</b>	military police
<b>MPRT</b>	mission planning rehearsal tool
<b>MQS</b>	military qualification standard
<b>MSEC-BBS</b>	Multiservice Electronic Combat Bulletin Board System
<b>MSR</b>	main supply route
<b>MST</b>	maintenance support team
<b>MTF</b>	medical treatment facility
<b>MTI</b>	moving target indicator
<b>MTOE</b>	modified table of organization and equipment
<b>MTP</b>	mission training plan
<b>MWO</b>	modification work order
<b>MWR</b>	morale, welfare, and recreation
<b>NA</b>	not applicable
<b>NAI</b>	named area(s) of interest
<b>NATO</b>	North Atlantic Treaty Organization

<b>NBC</b>	nuclear, biological, and chemical (changed to CBRN)
<b>NCO</b>	noncommissioned officer
<b>NCOIC</b>	noncommissioned officer in charge
<b>NCS</b>	net control station
<b>NCTR</b>	noncooperative target recognition
<b>NET</b>	new equipment training
<b>NFA</b>	no-fire area
<b>NG</b>	National Guard
<b>NGO</b>	non-government organization
<b>NLT</b>	no later than
<b>NMCM</b>	not mission capable maintenance
<b>NMCS</b>	National Military Command System; not mission capable, supply
<b>NOD</b>	night observation devices
<b>NOE</b>	nap of the earth
<b>NRTS</b>	not repairable at this station
<b>NTC</b>	national training center
<b>NVD</b>	night vision device
<b>O/O</b>	on order
<b>OBJ</b>	objective
<b>OC</b>	observer/controller
<b>OCOKA</b>	observation, concealment, obstacles, key terrain, and avenues of approach
<b>ODSS</b>	offensive, defensive, stability, or support
<b>OE</b>	operational environment
<b>OEG</b>	operational exposure guide/guidance
<b>OI</b>	operations and intelligence
<b>OIC</b>	officer in charge
<b>OJT</b>	on-the-job training
<b>ONESAF</b>	one semiautomatic forces
<b>OP</b>	observation post
<b>OPCON</b>	operational control
<b>OPFOR</b>	opposing forces
<b>OPLAN</b>	operation plan
<b>OPORD</b>	operation order
<b>Ops</b>	operations
<b>OPSEC</b>	operations security
<b>OPTEMPO</b>	operating tempo
<b>OSC</b>	United States Army Operations Support Command
<b>OT</b>	observer-target
<b>P (Proficiency Rating)</b>	needs practice (commander/leader assessment)

<b>PAC</b>	personnel administration center
<b>PAO</b>	public affairs office
<b>PAX</b>	passengers
<b>POSNAV</b>	position navigation
<b>PC</b>	pilot in command
<b>PCC</b>	precombat checks; primary control center
<b>PCI</b>	precombat inspection
<b>PDDE</b>	power-driven decontamination equipment
<b>PERSTEMPO</b>	personnel tempo
<b>PEWS</b>	Platoon Early Warning System
<b>PFPX</b>	partnership for peace exercise
<b>PGM</b>	precision guided munitions
<b>PI</b>	point of impact
<b>PIR</b>	priority intelligence requirements
<b>PK</b>	probability of kill
<b>PL</b>	phase line
<b>PLL</b>	prescribed load list
<b>PLT SGT</b>	platoon sergeant
<b>PMCS</b>	preventive maintenance checks and services
<b>PMOS</b>	primary military occupational specialty
<b>POC</b>	point of contact
<b>POE</b>	point of embarkation
<b>POI</b>	program of instruction
<b>POL</b>	petroleum, oils, and lubricants
<b>POM</b>	preparation for overseas movement
<b>POSNAV</b>	position navigation
<b>PPR</b>	periodic personnel report
<b>PSNCO</b>	personnel service noncommissioned officer
<b>PSYOP</b>	psychological operations
<b>PT</b>	physical training
<b>PVNTMED</b>	preventive medicine
<b>PW</b>	pulsed wave
<b>PX</b>	post exchange
<b>PZ</b>	pickup zone
<b>QC</b>	quality control
<b>QRF</b>	quick reaction force
<b>QTB</b>	quarterly training briefing
<b>QTG</b>	quarterly training guidance
<b>R&amp;R</b>	rest and relaxation
<b>R&amp;S</b>	reconnaissance and surveillance

<b>RAA</b>	redeployment assembly area
<b>RC</b>	Reserve Component
<b>RCC</b>	rescue coordination center
<b>RDL</b>	Reimer Digital Library
<b>RDS</b>	requirements data sheet
<b>REDCON</b>	readiness condition
<b>REMBASS</b>	Remotely-Monitored Battlefield Sensor System
<b>RF</b>	radio frequency
<b>RFA</b>	restricted fire area
<b>RFI</b>	radar frequency interference
<b>RFL</b>	restrictive fire line
<b>RII</b>	request for intelligence information
<b>RMC</b>	rescue mission commander
<b>ROC</b>	rehearsal of concept
<b>ROE</b>	rules of engagement
<b>ROI</b>	rules of interaction
<b>ROM</b>	read only memory
<b>ROZ</b>	restricted operations zone
<b>RP</b>	release point
<b>RS</b>	radiation status
<b>RSDS</b>	radar signal detecting sets
<b>RSID</b>	radio set identification
<b>RSOP</b>	redeployment standing operating procedures
<b>RSTA</b>	reconnaissance, surveillance, and target acquisition
<b>S1</b>	adjutant
<b>S2</b>	intelligence officer (below division level)
<b>S3</b>	battalion or brigade operations staff officer (Army; Marine Corps battalion or regiment [JP 1-02])
<b>S4</b>	supply officer
<b>S5</b>	civil affairs officer (U.S. Army)
<b>S6</b>	communication-electronics officer; Signal officer
<b>SA</b>	situational awareness
<b>SA-X</b>	(future or non-specific) surface-to-air missile
<b>SAF</b>	semiautomatic forces
<b>SALUTE</b>	size, activity, location, unit identification, time, and equipment (format for reporting enemy information)
<b>SAM</b>	surface-to-air missile
<b>SAMS</b>	Standard Army Maintenance System
<b>SARH</b>	semiautomatic radar homing
<b>SARIR</b>	search and rescue incident report
<b>SARSS</b>	Standard Army Retail Supply System

---

<b>SCATMINWARN</b>	scatterable mine warning
<b>SCPE</b>	simplified collective protective equipment
<b>SDK</b>	skin decontaminating kit
<b>SDZ</b>	surface danger zone
<b>SEDRE</b>	sea emergency deployment readiness exercise
<b>SE</b>	synthetic environment
<b>SERE</b>	survival, evasion, resistance, and escape
<b>SFTS</b>	Synthetic Flight Trainer System
<b>SHELREP</b>	shelling report
<b>SHTU</b>	simplified handheld terminal unit
<b>SIDPERS</b>	Standard Installation/Division Personnel System
<b>SIGNIT</b>	signal intelligence
<b>SIGSEC</b>	signal security
<b>SIMNET</b>	simulation network
<b>SIMNET-T</b>	simulation network-trainer
<b>SINGARS</b>	signal channel ground and air radio system
<b>SIP</b>	standardization instructor pilot
<b>SITEMP</b>	situation template
<b>SITREPS</b>	situation reports
<b>SJA</b>	staff judge advocate
<b>SM</b>	Soldier's manual
<b>SMCT</b>	Soldier's manual of common tasks
<b>SMOS</b>	secondary military occupational specialty
<b>SOF</b>	safety of flight
<b>SOFA</b>	Status of Forces Agreement
<b>SOI</b>	signal operation instructions
<b>SOI/SSI</b>	signal operation instruction/signal supplemental instructions
<b>SO</b>	special operations (JP 1-02)
<b>SOP</b>	standing operating procedures
<b>SORTS</b>	Status of Resource and Training System
<b>SP</b>	start point
<b>SPO</b>	Support operations officer
<b>SPBS-R</b>	standard property book system—redesign
<b>SPIES</b>	special patrol infiltration/exfiltration system
<b>SPINS</b>	special instructions
<b>SPOTREP</b>	spot report
<b>SSC</b>	small scale contingency
<b>SSI</b>	special skill identifier
<b>SSN</b>	social security number
<b>STAARS</b>	Standard Army After-action review System

<b>STAFFEX</b>	staff exercise
<b>STAMIS</b>	Standard Army Information Management System
<b>STB</b>	supertropical bleach
<b>STP</b>	Soldier training publication
<b>STRAC</b>	standards and training commission
<b>STX</b>	situational training exercise
<b>T (Proficiency Rating)</b>	trained (commander/leader assessment)
<b>T&amp;EO</b>	training and evaluation outline
<b>TAA</b>	tactical assembly area
<b>TAACOM</b>	Theater Area Command
<b>TAC</b>	Tactical Air Command; tactical air coordinator; type of activity code
<b>TACAIR</b>	tactical air
<b>TACCS</b>	Tactical Army Combat Service Support Computer System
<b>TACLAN</b>	tactical local area network
<b>TACOPS</b>	tactical operations
<b>TACSIM</b>	tactical simulation
<b>TACSOP</b>	tactical standing operating procedures
<b>TADS</b>	Target Acquisition and Designation System
<b>TADSS</b>	training aids, devices, simulators, and simulations
<b>TAI</b>	TRADOC acquisition instruction; target area(s) of interest
<b>TAM</b>	training assessment module
<b>TAMMS</b>	The Army Maintenance Management System
<b>TAMMS-A</b>	The Army Maintenance Management System-Aviation
<b>TAT</b>	to accompany troops
<b>TB</b>	technical bulletin
<b>TBD</b>	to be determined
<b>TC</b>	training circular
<b>TCF</b>	tactical combat force
<b>TCP</b>	technical cooperation program; traffic control points
<b>TDY</b>	temporary duty
<b>TEWT</b>	tactical exercise without troops
<b>TF</b>	task force
<b>TG</b>	trainer's guide
<b>TI</b>	tactical internet
<b>TLP</b>	troop-leading procedures
<b>TM</b>	technical manual
<b>TMDE</b>	test, measurement, and diagnostic equipment
<b>TOC</b>	tactical operations center
<b>TOCEX</b>	tactical operations center exercise

<b>TOE</b>	table of organization and equipment
<b>TOF</b>	time of flight
<b>TOO</b>	tactical operations officer
<b>TRADOC</b>	United States Army Training and Doctrine Command
<b>TRM</b>	training resource module
<b>TRTG</b>	tactical radar threat generator
<b>TSBN</b>	training support battalion
<b>TSIU</b>	tactical simulation interface unit
<b>TSP</b>	training support package
<b>TSTT</b>	TADS selected task trainer
<b>TTP</b>	tactics, techniques, and procedures
<b>TVM</b>	track via missile
<b>U (Proficiency Rating)</b>	untrained (commander/leader assessment)
<b>UAA</b>	unit assembly area
<b>UAV</b>	unmanned aerial vehicle
<b>UBL</b>	unit basic load
<b>UCMJ</b>	Uniform Code of Military Justice
<b>UDL</b>	unit designation list
<b>UH</b>	utility helicopter
<b>UHF</b>	ultra high frequency
<b>ULLS</b>	Unit Level Logistics System
<b>ULLS-A</b>	Unit Level Logistics System—Aviation
<b>ULLS-G</b>	Unit Level Logistics System—Ground
<b>UMCP</b>	unit maintenance collection point
<b>UMO</b>	unit movement officer
<b>UO</b>	unit order
<b>URN</b>	unit role number
<b>U.S.</b>	United States
<b>USAAVNC</b>	United States Army Aviation Center
<b>USAF</b>	United States Air Force
<b>USAPD</b>	United States Army Publishing Directorate
<b>USAR</b>	United States Army Reserve
<b>USDA</b>	United States Department of Agriculture
<b>USO</b>	United Services Organization
<b>USR</b>	unit status report
<b>UTO</b>	unit task organization
<b>UTR</b>	unit task reorganization
<b>VCR</b>	video cassette recorder
<b>VHF</b>	very high frequency

<b>Vic</b>	vicinity
<b>VIP</b>	visual information processor
<b>VMC</b>	visual meteorological conditions
<b>WARNO</b>	warning order
<b>WARSIM</b>	warfighters' simulation
<b>WIN-T</b>	warfighter information network terrestrial
<b>WX</b>	weather
<b>XO</b>	executive officer

## SECTION II - TERMS

**Note:** The asterisk (\*) after the term denotes DOD-NATO acceptance. (See JP 1-02.)

**Classes of supply** There are ten categories into which supplies are grouped in order to facilitate supply management and planning:

Class I—Rations and gratuitous issue of health, morale, and welfare items.

Class II—Clothing, individual equipment, tentage, tool sets, and administrative and housekeeping supplies and equipment.

Class III—Petroleum, oils, and lubricants.

Class IV—Construction materials.

Class V—Ammunition.

Class VI—Personal demand items.

Class VII—Major end items, including tanks, helicopters, and radios.

Class VIII—Medical.

Class IX—Repair parts and components for equipment maintenance.

Class X—Nonstandard items to support nonmilitary programs such as agriculture and economic development. See also ammunition; petroleum, oils, and lubricants. (JP 4-09)

**land mine warfare** See mine warfare.

**mine (\*)** 1. In land mine warfare, an explosive or material, normally encased, designed to destroy or damage ground vehicles, boats, or aircraft, or designed to wound, kill, or otherwise incapacitate personnel. It may be detonated by the action of its victim, by the passage of time, or by controlled means. 2. In naval mine warfare, an explosive device laid in the water with the intention of damaging or sinking ships or of deterring shipping from entering an area. The term does not include devices attached to the bottoms of ships or to harbor installations by personnel operating underwater, nor does it include devices which explode immediately on expiration of a predetermined time after laying. See also land mine warfare; mine warfare. (JP 3-15)



- mine warfare** The strategic, operational, and tactical use of mines and mine countermeasures. Mine warfare is divided into two basic subdivisions: the laying of mines to degrade the enemy's capabilities to wage land, air, and maritime warfare; and the countering of enemy-laid mines to permit friendly maneuver or use of selected land or sea areas. Also called MIW (mine warfare). (JP 3-15)
- scatterable mine (\*)** In land mine warfare, a mine laid without regard to classical pattern and which is designed to be delivered by aircraft, artillery, missile, ground dispenser, or by hand. Once laid, it normally has a limited life. See also mine.
- WarMod** WarMod XXI synchronizes training acquisition with force modernization. WarMod's focus is to enforce DOD and Army policy for the development and procurement of system TSPs concurrently with the acquisition of the materiel system.

**This page intentionally left blank.**

## References

### SOURCES USED

These publications are sources that users must read in order to understand or to comply with this publication.

#### Army Regulations

- AR 165-1. *Chaplain Activities in the United States Army*. 25 March 2004.
- AR 190-8. *Enemy Prisoners of War, Retained Personnel, Civilian Internees, and Other Detainees*. 1 October 1997
- AR 25-400-2. *The Army Records Information Management System (ARIMS)*. 15 November 2004.
- AR 27-10. *Military Justice*. 13 June 2005.
- AR 200-1. *Environmental Protection and Enhancement*. 21 February 1997.
- AR 385-10. *The Army Safety Program*. 29 February 2000.
- AR 40-3. *Medical, Dental, and Veterinary Care*. 12 November 2002.
- AR 40-5. *Preventive Medicine*. 22 July 2005.
- AR 40-66. *Medical Record Administration and Health Care Documentation*. 20 July 2004.
- AR 40-400. *Patient Administration*. 12 March 2001.
- AR 40-501. *Standards of Medical Fitness*. 1 February 2005.
- AR 600-8. *Military Personnel Management*. 1 October 1989.
- AR 600-8-1. *Army Casualty Operations/Assistance/Insurance*. 20 October 1994.
- AR 600-8-101. *Personnel Processing (In-, Out-, Soldier Readiness, and Deployment Mobilization Processing)*. 15 July 2003.
- AR 600-8-104. *Military Personnel Information Management/Records*. 22 June 2004.
- AR 600-8-6. *Personnel Accounting and Strength Reporting*. 24 September 1998.
- AR 600-8-24. *Officer Transfers and Discharges*. 11 May 2005.
- AR 635-200. *Active Duty Enlisted Administrative Separations*. 6 June 2005.
- AR 700-4. *Logistics Assistance*. 20 August 2002.
- AR 700-138. *Army Logistics Readiness and Sustainability*. 26 February 2004.
- AR 710-2. *Supply Policy Below the National Level*. 8 July 2005.
- AR 735-5. *Policies and Procedures for Property Accountability*. 28 February 2005.
- AR 750-1. *Army Materiel Maintenance Policy*. 15 July 2005.
- AR 750-43. *Army Test, Measurement, and Diagnostic Equipment Program*. 14 December 2004.
- AR 95-1. *Flight Regulations*. 1 September 1997.

#### Army Training and Evaluation Program

- ARTEP 1-111-MTP. *Mission Training Plan for the Aviation Brigades*. 17 June 2002.
- ARTEP 1-500-MTP. *Mission Training Plan for Aviation Intermediate Maintenance (AVIM) Battalion and Company*. 1 April 2002.

#### Department of Army Forms

- DA Form 31. *Request Authority for Leave*.
- DA Form 67. *Personnel Register*.
- DA Form 638. *Recommendation for Award*.
- DA Form 647. *Personnel Register*.

DA Form 759. *Individual Flight Record and Flight Certificate—Army.*  
DA Form 1155. *Witness Statement on Individual.*  
DA Form 1156. *Casualty Feeder Report.*  
DA Form 3955. *Change of Address and Directory Card.*  
DA Form 4179. *Leave Control Log.*  
DA Form 4186. *Medical Recommendation for Flying Duty.*  
DA Form 7502. *Task Summary Sheet.*  
DA Form 7503. *Environmental Data Sheet.*  
DA Form 7504. *Personnel and Equipment Loss Report.*  
DA Form 7505. *Unit Data Sheet.*  
DA Form 7506. *Unit Proficiency/Evaluation Worksheet.*  
DA Form 7507. *ARTEP Mission Training Plan User Feedback.*  
DA Form 7573. *Aircraft Survivability Equipment (ASE) Risk Assessment Worksheet, Survivability Risk Analysis.*

### **Department of Army Pamphlets**

DA Pam 385-1. *Small Unit Safety Officer/NCO Guide.* 29 November 2001.  
DA Pam 600-8. *Management and Administrative Procedures.* 25 February 1986.  
DA Pam 710-2-1. *Using Unit Supply System (Manual Procedures).* 31 December 1997.  
DA Pam 710-2-2. *Supply Support Activity Supply System: Manual Procedures.* 30 September 1998.  
DA Pam 738-751. *Functional Users Manual for the Army Maintenance Management System - Aviation (TAMMS-A).* 15 March 1999.

### **Field Manuals**

FM 1-02. *Operational Terms and Graphics.* 21 September 2004.  
FM 1-05 (FM 16-1). *Religious Support.* 18 April 2003.  
FM 1-100. *Army Aviation Operations.* 21 February 1997 (will be revised as FM 3-04.100).  
FM 1-112. *Attack Helicopter Operations.* 1 April 1997 (will be revised as FM 3-04.112).  
FM 1-113. *Utility and Cargo Helicopter Operations.* 12 September 1997 (will be revised as FM 3-04.113.)  
FM 1-114. *Air Cavalry Squadron and Troop Operations.* 1 February 2000 (will be revised as FM 3-04.114).  
FM 1-120. *Army Air Traffic Services Contingency and Combat Zone Operations.* 22 September 1995 (will be revised as FM 3-04.120).  
FM 10-23. *Basic Doctrine for Army Field Feeding & Class I Operations Management.* 18 April 1996 (will be revised as FM 4-20.2).  
FM 10-27-4. *Organizational Supply and Services for Unit Leaders.* 14 April 2000 (will be revised as FM 4-20.05).  
FM 10-67. *Petroleum Supply in Theater of Operations.* 18 February 1983 (will be revised as FM 4-03).  
FM 10-450-3. *Multiservice Helicopter Sling Load: Basic Operations and Equipment.* 10 April 1997 (will be revised as FM 4-20.197).  
FM 10-450-4. *Multiservice Helicopter Sling Load: Single-Point Load Rigging Procedures.* 30 May 1998.  
FM 12-6. *Personnel Doctrine.* 9 September 1994 (will be revised as FM 1-0).  
FM 100-14. *Risk Management.* 23 April 1998 (will be revised as FM 5-19).  
FM 100-15. *Corps Operations.* 29 October 1996 (will be revised as FM 3-92).  
FM 100-17. *Mobilization, Deployment, Redeployment, Demobilization.* 28 October 1992 (will be revised as FM 3-35).  
FM 101-5-2. *U.S. Army Report and Message Formats.* 29 June 1999 (will be revised as FM 6-99.2).

- FM 2-0. *Intelligence Operations*. 17 May 2004.
- FM 20-3. *Camouflage, Concealment and Decoys*. 30 August 1999 (will be revised as FM 3-58.1).
- FM 21-10. *Field Hygiene and Sanitation*. 21 June 2000 (will be revised as FM 4-25.10).
- FM 21-60. *Visual Signals*. 30 September 1987 (will be revised as FM 3-21.60).
- FM 22-51. *Leader's Manual for Combat Stress Control*. 29 September 1994 (will be revised as FM 4-02.22).
- FM 24-1. *Signal Support in the Airland Battle*. 15 October 1990 (will be revised as FM 6-02).
- FM 24-18. *Tactical Single-Channel Radio Communications Techniques*. 30 September 1987.
- FM 24-24. *Signal Data References: Signal Equipment*. 29 December 1994.
- FM 24-35. *Signal Operation Instructions "The SOI"*. 26 October 1990.
- FM 3-0. *Operations*. 14 June 2001.
- FM 3-3. *Chemical and Biological Contamination Avoidance*. 16 November 1992.
- FM 3-04.111. *Aviation Brigades*. 21 August 2003.
- FM 3-04.140. *Helicopter Gunnery*. 14 July 2003
- FM 3-04.300 (FM 1-300). *Flight Operations Procedures*. 26 April 2004.
- FM 3-04.500. *Army Aviation Maintenance*. 26 September 2001.
- FM 3-04.508. *Aviation Life Support System Maintenance Management and Training Programs*. 23 April 2004
- FM 3-04.513 (FM 1-513). *Battlefield Recovery and Evacuation of Aircraft*. 27 September 2000.
- FM 3-5. *NBC Decontamination*. 28 July 2000 (will be revised as FM 3-11.5).
- FM 3-05.30. *Psychological Operations*. 15 April 2005.
- FM 3-05.60 (FM 1-108). *Army Special Operations Forces Aviation Operations*. 16 October 2000.
- FM 3-05.301. *Psychological Operations Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures*. 31 December 2003.
- FM 3-6. *Field Behavior of NBC Agents (Including Smoke & Incendiaries)*. 3 November 1986.
- FM 3-06. *Urban Operations*. 1 June 2003.
- FM 3-06.1 (FM 1-130). *Aviation Urban Operations for Multiservice Procedures for Aviation Urban Operations*. 9 July 2005.
- FM 3-06.11 (FM 90-10-1). *Combined Arms Operations in Urban Terrain*. 28 February 2002.
- FM 3-07. *Stability Operations and Support Operations*. 20 February 2003.
- FM 3-09.31. *Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Fire Support for the Combined Arms Commander*. 1 October 2002.
- FM 3-11. *Multiservice Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Nuclear, Biological, and Chemical Defense Operations*. 10 March 2003.
- FM 3-11.4. (FM 3-4) *Multiservice Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Nuclear, Biological, and Chemical (NBC) Protection*. 2 June 2003.
- FM 3-11.9 (FM 3-9). *Potential Military Chemical/Biological Agents and Compounds*. 10 January 2005.
- FM 3-11.19 (FM 3-19). *Multiservice Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Nuclear, Biological, and Chemical Reconnaissance*. 30 July 2004.
- FM 3-11.21. *Multiservice Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Nuclear, Biological, and Chemical (NBC) Aspects of Consequence Management*. 12 December 2001.
- FM 3-19.1. *Military Police Operations*. 22 March 2001.
- FM 3-19.4. *Military Police Leaders' Handbook*. 4 March 2002.
- FM 3-19.15 (FM 19-15). *Civil Disturbance Operations*. 18 April 2004.
- FM 3-19.30. *Physical Security*. 8 January 2001.
- FM 3-19.40 (FM 19-40). *Military Policy Internment/Resettlement Operations*. 1 August 2001.
- FM 3-20.15. *Tank Platoon*. 1 November 2001.

- FM 3-20.98. *Reconnaissance Platoon*. 2 December 2002.
- FM 3-21.11. *The SBCT Infantry Rifle Company*. 23 January 2003.
- FM 3-21.38 (FM 57-38). *Pathfinder Operations*. 1 October 2002.
- FM 3-52. *Army Airspace Command and Control in a Combat Zone*. 1 August 2002.
- FM 3-100.2. *ICAC2 Multiservice Procedures for Integrated Combat Airspace Command and Control*. 30 June 2000.
- FM 3-100.4. *Environmental Considerations in Military Operations*. 15 June 2000 (will be revised as FM 4-04.4).
- FM 3-100.12. *Risk Management for Multiservice Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures*. 15 February 2001.
- FM 34-130. *Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield*. 8 July 1994 (will be revised as FM 2-01.3).
- FM 34-80. *Brigade and Battalion Intelligence and Electronic Warfare Operations*. 15 April 1986 (will be revised as FM 2-19.4).
- FM 4-0. *Combat Service Support*. 29 August 2003.
- FM 4-01.011 (FM 55-9). *Unit Movement Operations*. 31 October 2002.
- FM 4-01.30. *Movement Control*. 1 September 2003.
- FM 4-02. *Force Health Protection in a Global Environment*. 13 February 2003.
- FM 4-02.6. *The Medical Company – Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures*. 1 August 2002.
- FM 4-02.7. *Health Service Support in a Nuclear, Biological, and Chemical Environment — Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures*. 1 October 2002.
- FM 4-02.283. *Treatment of Nuclear and Radiological Casualties*. 20 December 2001.
- FM 4-25.11. *First Aid*. 23 December 2002.
- FM 4-25.12. *Unit Field Sanitation Team*. 25 January 2002.
- FM 4-30.3 (FM 43-5/FM 43-11/FM 43-20). *Maintenance Operations and Procedures*. 28 July 2004.
- FM 41-10. *Civil Affairs Operations*. 14 February 2000 (will be revised as FM 3-05.40).
- FM 44-8. *Combined Arms for Air Defense*. 1 June 1999 (will be revised as FM 3-01.8).
- FM 44-100. *U.S. Army Air and Missile Defense Operations*. 15 June 2000 (will be revised as FM 3-01).
- FM 5-0. *Army Planning and Orders Production*. 20 January 2005.
- FM 55-1. *Transportation Operations*. 3 October 1995 (will be revised as FM 4-01).
- FM 55-30 (FM 55-312). *Army Motor Transport Units and Operations*. 27 June 1997 (will be revised as FM 4-01.40)
- FM 6-0. *Mission Command: Command and Control of Army Forces*. 11 August 2003.
- FM 6-20. *Fire Support in the Airland Battle*. 17 May 1988 (will be revised as FM 3-09).
- FM 63-11. *Logistics Support Element Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures*. 8 October 1996 (will be revised as FM 4-93.41).
- FM 7-0. *Training the Force*. 22 October 2002.
- FM 7-1. *Battle Focused Training*. 15 September 2003.
- FM 71-100. *Division Operations*. 28 August 1996 (will be revised as FM 3-91).
- FM 71-100-3. *Air Assault Division Operations for Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures*. 29 October 1996.
- FM 8-9. *NATO Handbook on the Medical Aspects of NBC Defensive Operations - AMEDP-6(B); Part I – Nuclear, Part II – Biological, Part III – Chemical*. 1 February 1996 (will be revised as FM 4-02.11)
- FM 8-10-6 (FM 8-35). *Medical Evacuation in a Theater of Operations: Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures*. 14 April 2000 (will be revised as FM 4-02.2).
- FM 8-10-26. *Employment of the Medical Company (Air Ambulance)*. 16 February 1999 (will be revised as FM 4-02.26).
- FM 8-34. *Food Sanitation for the Supervisor*. 30 December 1983.

- FM 8-42. *Combat Health Support in Stability Operations and Support Operations*. 27 October 1997 (will be revised as FM 4-02.42).
- FM 8-55. *Planning for Health Service Support*. 9 September 1994 (will be revised as FM 4-02.55).
- FM 8-284. *Treatment of Biological Warfare Agent Casualties*. 17 July 2000 (will be revised as FM 4-02.284).
- FM 8-285. *Treatment of Chemical Agent Casualties and Conventional Military Chemical Injuries*. 22 December 1995 (will be revised as FM 4-02.285).
- FM 9-43-2 (FM 20-22). *Recovery and Battlefield Damage Assessment and Repair*. 3 October 1995 (will be revised as FM 4-30.31).
- FM 90.4. *Air Assault Operations*. 16 March 1987 (will be revised as FM 3-18.12).
- TC 1-210. *Aircrew Training Program Commander's Guide to Individual and Crew Standardization*. 3 October 1995.
- TC 1-237. *Aircrew Training Manual Helicopter H-60 Series*. 27 September 2005
- TC 1-238. *Aircrew Training Manual, Attack Helicopter AH-64A*. 23 September 2005.

### Joint Publications

- JP 3-05.2. *Joint Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Special Operations Targeting and Mission Planning*. 21 May 2003.
- JP 3-54. *Joint Doctrine for Operations Security*. 24 January 1997.
- JP 3-57.1. *Doctrine for Joint Civil Affairs*. 14 June 2003.
- JP 4-01.6. *Joint Logistics Over-the-Shore (JLOTS)*. 5 August 2005.
- JP 6-0. *Doctrine for C4 Systems Support to Joint Operations*. 30 May 1995.
- JP 6-02. *Doctrine for Employment of Operational/Tactical C4 Systems*. 1 October 1996.

### Other Product Types

- DD Form 1833. *Isolated Personnel Report*.
- DD Form 2745. *Enemy Prisoner of War (EPW) Capture Tag*.

### Soldier Training Publications

- STP 8-91W15-SM-TG. *Soldier's Manual and Trainer's Guide, MOS 91W, Health Care Specialist, Skill Levels 1/2/3/4/5*. 10 October 2001.

### Technical Manuals

- TM 10-8415-209-10. *Operator's Manual for Individual Chemical Protective Clothing*. 31 March 1993.
- TM 1-1500-204-23-9. *Aviation Unit Maintenance (AVUM) and Aviation Intermediate Maintenance (AVIM) Manual for General Aircraft (Tools and Ground Support Equipment, Volume 9)*. 31 July 1992.
- TM 9-1345-203-12. *Operator's and Unit Maintenance Manual for Land Mines*. 3 October 1995.

### Training Circulars

- TC 1-201. *Tactical Flight Procedures*. 20 January 1984.
- TC 21-24. *Rappelling*. 10 October 1997.
- TC 24-12. *Communications in a "Come as You Are" War*. 17 July 1990.
- TC 24-21. *Tactical Multichannel Radio Communications Techniques*. 3 October 1988.
- TC 3-34.489. *The Soldier and the Environment*. 8 May 2001

**DOCUMENTS NEEDED**

These documents must be available to the intended users of this publication. They are not required in order to understand this publication.

**Army Regulations**

AR 220-1. *Unit Status Reporting*. 10 June 2003.

**Field Manuals**

FM 63-20. *Forward Support Battalion*. 26 February 1990 (will be revised as FM 4-93.20).

**READINGS RECOMMENDED**

NONE



**ARTEP1-113-MTP**  
**29 December 2005**

By Order of the Secretary of the Army:

**PETER J. SCHOOMAKER**  
*General, United States Army*  
*Chief of Staff*

Official:



**SANDRA R. RILEY**  
*Administrative Assistant to the*  
*Secretary of the Army*  
0534208

**DISTRIBUTION:**

*Active Army, Army National Guard, and US Army Reserve:* Not to be distributed.  
Electronic Means Only.

**This page intentionally left blank.**



